

VIPA SPEED7 Studio

SW | SPEED7 Studio | Manual













HB50 | SW | SPEED7 Studio | en | 19-24




















Software manual SPEED7 Studio - V1.8.6



















VIPA GmbH
Ohmstraße 4
91074 Herzogenaurach
Telephone: 09132-744-0
Fax: 09132-744-1864
Email: info@vipa.com
Internet: www.vipa.com

















Table of contents

































1	General information on this documentation	12
1.1	Copyright © VIPA GmbH	12
1.2	Purpose of the documentation	13
1.3	Validity of the documentation	13
1.4	Structure and contents of the documentation	13
1.5	Presentation and tags	14
2	To the <i>SPEED7 Studio</i> program	16
2.1	Product description	16
2.2	Technical features	16
2.3	Target group and qualification	17
2.4	Software identification	17
3	Installation and activation of <i>SPEED7 Studio</i>	18
3.1	System requirements	18
3.2	Installation of <i>SPEED7 Studio</i>	18
3.3	Activate <i>SPEED7 Studio</i>	18
3.4	Uninstallation of <i>SPEED7 Studio</i>	22
4	Working with <i>SPEED7 Studio</i>	23
4.1	Overview	23
4.2	Start <i>SPEED7 Studio</i>	23
4.3	End <i>SPEED7 Studio</i> 	23
4.4	Select language	23
4.5	Select syntax language (mnemonics)	24
4.6	Select interfaces	24
4.7	Symbolic and absolute addressing	24
4.8	User interface	26
4.9	Project tree 	28
4.9.1	Moving, copying and pasting objects	33
4.10	Catalog 	34
4.11	Properties 	37
4.12	Area of operations	38
4.13	Start page 	41
4.14	Output range	43
4.14.1	Output 	43
4.14.2	Programming events	44
4.14.3	Communication events 	44
4.14.4	Project logbook 	45
4.14.5	Consistency messages 	45
4.14.6	EtherCAT messages	46
4.15	Search / Replace in block  	46
4.16	Typed representation	49
4.17	CPU control centre 	49
4.18	Mouse and keyboard operation	52
4.18.1	Adjusting the user interface	52
4.18.2	Mouse operation – context menu	53
4.18.3	Mouse operation – drag & drop	54
4.19	Help and support during editing	55
4.19.1	Overview	55























4.19.2	Messages.....	55
4.19.3	Markings of changes and states.....	56
4.19.4	Points where objects can be added.....	57
4.19.5	Input fields.....	57
4.19.6	Tool tips.....	58
4.19.7	Automatic completion.....	59
4.19.8	Check symbol name.....	60
4.19.9	Calling up and using help ?.....	60
4.20	Menu and keyboard commands.....	61
5	Managing and editing projects.....	65
5.1	Project.....	65
5.2	Create a new project 	65
5.3	Open project 	66
5.3.1	Migration for symbolic programming.....	67
5.4	Closing a project 	67
5.5	Editing a project.....	68
5.6	Saving a project 	68
5.7	Save local project as 	68
5.8	Rename project 	68
5.9	Delete project 	68
5.10	Transfer project 	69
5.11	Export project 	70
5.12	Import project 	70
5.13	Print 	71
5.13.1	General print configurations.....	71
5.13.2	Select print areas.....	73
5.14	Print Preview 	74
5.15	"Documentation" folder 	74
5.16	Create new text document 	75
5.17	Text editor (text document) 	75
6	Selecting and configuring devices and components.....	76
6.1	"Project overview" editor 	76
6.2	"Devices and networking" editor 	77
6.2.1	Local components (= local modules).....	79
6.2.2	Connections.....	80
6.3	Add new device (PLC).....	81
6.4	Add new device (HMI).....	82
6.4.1	Movicon project configurations.....	85
6.5	Adding a new device (slave).....	86
6.6	Add control (CPU) as PROFIBUS DP slave (I-Slave).....	88
6.7	Add control (CPU) as a PROFINET IO device (I device).....	92
6.8	Removing devices.....	95
6.9	Duplicate device.....	95
6.10	Installing device description files.....	95
6.11	PROFIBUS – GSD 	96
6.11.1	New GSD file.....	96
6.11.2	Installed GSD files.....	97
6.12	PROFINET – GSDML 	98
6.12.1	New GSDML file.....	99

6.12.2	Installed GSDML files.....	100
6.13	EtherCAT – ESI 	101
6.13.1	New ESI file.....	101
6.13.2	Installed ESI files.....	102
6.14	“Device configuration” editor (PLC) 	103
6.14.1	Display output current and add power modules (SLIO only).....	106
6.14.2	Show output signals.....	106
6.15	"Device configuration" editor (slave) 	106
6.16	Adding components.....	108
6.17	Removing components.....	110
6.18	Printing labels.....	111
6.19	Changing device properties.....	111
6.20	“Device properties” editor (PLC) 	112
6.20.1	General device properties (PLC).....	112
6.20.2	Communication settings (PLC).....	113
6.20.3	Server configuration (<i>WebVisu</i>).....	115
6.21	Search for accessible partners.....	116
6.22	Interface properties (Ethernet).....	118
6.23	Properties of the module (CPU) 	120
6.23.1	General.....	121
6.23.2	Feature Sets.....	122
6.23.3	Start-up.....	122
6.23.4	Synchronous cycle interrupts	123
6.23.5	Cycle / Clock memory.....	124
6.23.6	Retentive memory.....	125
6.23.7	Local data.....	125
6.23.8	Interrupts.....	125
6.23.9	Time of day interrupts.....	126
6.23.10	Cyclic interrupts.....	126
6.23.11	Diagnostics/Clock.....	127
6.23.12	Protection.....	127
6.23.13	Advanced Configurations.....	128
6.23.14	PG/OP Ethernet	129
6.23.15	General.....	130
6.23.16	I/O addresses.....	130
6.23.17	Inputs (digital)	131
6.23.18	Outputs (digital).....	131
6.23.19	Inputs (analogue).....	132
6.23.20	Outputs (analogue).....	132
6.23.21	Basic parameters.....	132
6.23.22	Channel.....	132
6.23.23	Parameter.....	133
6.24	Properties of the module (SLIO modules) 	133
6.24.1	General.....	133
6.24.2	I/O addresses.....	134
6.24.3	Parameter.....	135
6.25	Component properties (MICRO modules) 	135
6.25.1	General.....	136
6.25.2	I/O addresses.....	136
6.25.3	Parameter.....	137

6.26	Export all (WLD) 	137
6.27	Export user program (WLD) 	138
6.28	Export hardware configuration (WLD) 	138
6.29	Copy RAM to ROM	138
6.30	“Component state” editor 	139
6.30.1	General	139
6.30.2	Blocks	140
6.30.3	Communication	141
6.30.4	Memory	143
6.30.5	Diagnostic buffer	144
6.30.6	Cycle times	146
6.30.7	B-Stack/U-Stack/L-Stack	146
6.31	Set time 	148
6.32	Memory reset 	150
6.33	Online diagnostics (SLIO module)	151
6.33.1	General	151
6.33.2	Diagnostic interrupt	152
6.34	Online diagnostics (MICRO module)	152
6.34.1	General	152
6.34.2	Diagnostic interrupt	152
7	Connect devices	154
7.1	Bus system properties (PROFIBUS DP) 	154
7.1.1	DP master system – General configurations	155
7.1.2	DP master system – Bus parameter	156
7.1.3	DP master system – Address overview	156
7.1.4	DP master – General configurations	158
7.1.5	DP master – Addresses	158
7.1.6	DP slave – General configurations	159
7.1.7	DP slave – Station parameters	160
7.1.8	Component – General configurations	161
7.1.9	Component – I/O addresses	161
7.2	Online diagnostics of the bus system (PROFIBUS DP) 	162
7.2.1	PROFIBUS DP – General	164
7.2.2	Controller – General	165
7.2.3	Device – General	166
7.2.4	Device – Diagnostics	167
7.2.5	Module – General	168
7.2.6	Module – Diagnostics	169
7.3	Bus system properties (PROFINET-IO system) 	169
7.3.1	PROFINET-IO system – General configurations	171
7.3.2	PROFINET-IO system – IO cycle	172
7.3.3	PROFINET-IO system – Address overview	173
7.3.4	IO controller – General configurations	174
7.3.5	IO controller – addresses	175
7.3.6	IO controller – I device	176
7.3.7	IO controller – I/O configuration	177
7.3.8	IO device – General configurations	179
7.3.9	IO device – IO cycle	180
7.3.10	IO device – Parameter	181

7.3.11	IO module – General configurations.....	182
7.4	Online diagnostics of the bus system (PROFINET-IO system) 	182
7.4.1	PROFINET-IO system – General.....	184
7.4.2	IO controller – General.....	185
7.4.3	IO controller – Interface.....	186
7.4.4	IO controller – Network connection.....	187
7.4.5	IO device – General.....	188
7.4.6	IO device – Diagnostics.....	189
7.4.7	IO device – Interface.....	190
7.4.8	IO device – Network connection.....	191
7.4.9	Port – General.....	192
7.4.10	Port – Network connection.....	193
7.4.11	IO module – General.....	194
7.4.12	IO module – Diagnostics.....	195
7.5	Bus system properties (EtherCAT) 	195
7.6	Configure Ethernet connections.....	196
7.6.1	Insert new connection.....	196
7.6.2	Connection settings – General.....	197
7.6.3	Connection settings – Local ID.....	197
7.6.4	Connection settings – Special properties.....	198
7.6.5	Connection settings – Address details.....	199
7.7	Configure OPC UA.....	200
7.7.1	Overview.....	200
7.7.2	Server configuration.....	200
7.7.3	Server settings - Connection 	201
7.7.4	Server settings - Certificate 	202
7.7.5	Data access 	203
7.7.6	User management 	204
7.7.7	Role management 	205
8	Creating, transferring and testing the user program.....	206
8.1	Program blocks 	206
8.2	Device overview (PLC) 	206
8.3	Add new block (OB, FB, FC).....	208
8.4	Editing program blocks.....	209
8.5	Block editor for program blocks (OB, FB, FC)   	209
8.5.1	Declaration section.....	211
8.5.2	Edit and use variables.....	212
8.5.3	Move, copy, paste and delete variables.....	215
8.5.4	Instruction section.....	216
8.5.5	Create / edit symbol.....	220
8.6	Programming languages.....	222
8.6.1	Instruction list (IL) 	222
8.6.2	Function block diagram (FBD) 	225
8.6.3	Ladder diagram (LD) 	230
8.7	Adding new data blocks (DB).....	232
8.8	Block editor for data blocks (DB) 	234
8.8.1	Edit and use variables.....	236
8.8.2	Move, copy, paste and delete variables.....	237
8.9	Adding a new structure block (UDT).....	238

8.10	Block editor for structure blocks (UDT) 	239
8.10.1	Edit and use variables.....	241
8.10.2	Move, copy, paste and delete variables.....	243
8.11	PLC variables 	244
8.11.1	Adding and editing a new variable table 	244
8.11.2	All variables 	245
8.11.3	System hardware configuration 	248
8.11.4	Variable tables and "Standard project configuration" 	251
8.12	Address overview 	254
8.13	Cross-reference list.....	257
8.14	Assignment list.....	261
8.15	Check and restore consistency 	266
8.16	Compile user program.....	267
8.16.1	Compile 	268
8.16.2	Compile all 	268
8.17	Simulate user program 	269
8.17.1	PLC simulation settings 	269
8.18	Transfer the hardware configuration and user program to the control.....	271
8.18.1	Transfer hardware configuration 	271
8.18.2	Transfer user program 	272
8.18.3	Transfer all 	273
8.19	Load blocks from the device 	274
8.20	Compare blocks 	277
8.21	Watch block 	280
8.21.1	Set program status display.....	281
8.21.2	Instruction list (IL).....	282
8.21.3	Function block diagram (FBD).....	283
8.21.4	Data block (DB).....	284
8.22	Add watch table 	284
8.23	Watch table 	285
8.24	Logic analysis 	290
8.24.1	Overview.....	290
8.24.2	Carry out logic analysis.....	292
8.24.3	Edit operand table.....	293
8.24.4	Start recording 	294
8.24.5	Stop recording 	295
8.24.6	Show time 	295
8.24.7	Measure a period of time 	296
8.24.8	Change section.....	297
8.24.9	Show/hide operands.....	299
8.24.10	Saving and opening a record:  	299
8.24.11	Make configurations 	299
8.25	Import S7 program 	300
8.26	Export ASCII sources 	301
8.27	Import ASCII sources 	304
8.28	Install block library 	308
8.29	Keyboard commands in the block editor.....	310
9	Creating a visualisation.....	311
9.1	HMI, WebVisu and Movicon projects.....	311

9.2	"Device overview" editor (HMI device) 	311
9.3	"Device properties" editor (HMI device) 	312
9.3.1	General device properties	313
9.3.2	Communication settings	313
9.3.3	Configurations	314
9.4	"Standard variables table" editor 	315
9.5	HMI elements 	317
9.6	HMI library 	318
9.6.1	Create, edit and use new element	318
9.6.2	Importing and using resources	318
9.6.3	Delete element 	319
9.7	Add new sub display 	319
9.7.1	Configurations	319
9.7.2	Background	319
9.8	Delete image 	319
9.9	"Image" editor 	320
9.9.1	Drawing a shape	320
9.9.2	Inserting elements from the catalog	321
9.9.3	Align and arrange objects	321
9.9.4	Edit object	322
9.9.5	Edit object properties	324
9.9.6	Edit dynamic samplings – "Simple dynamics"	325
9.10	Add new enumeration	329
9.11	Edit and use enumeration	329
9.12	Translations 	330
9.13	User management	331
9.14	Movicon projects	332
9.14.1	Opening a Movicon project	332
9.14.2	Changing the project path	333
9.15	Simulate HMI visualisation	333
9.16	Keyboard commands in "Image" editor (HMI)	334
10	Motion Control	336
10.1	Functions of Motion Control	336
10.2	Add drive 	336
10.2.1	Adaptation of the Sigma 5/7 drives, which are integrated via ESI file	338
10.3	Start <i>SigmaWin+</i> or <i>DriveWizard</i>	339
10.4	Editor "Motion Control Overview" 	339
10.4.1	General settings 	339
10.4.2	Axis overview 	341
10.4.3	Diagnostics 	342
10.5	Add new axis 	343
10.6	Editor "Motion Control axis" 	344
10.6.1	Basic settings 	344
10.6.2	User units 	345
10.6.3	Limit values 	348
10.7	Create cams	349
10.7.1	The "Electronic cam"	349
10.7.2	Add new cam 	349
10.7.3	Cam editor 	350

10.7.4	Motion functions.....	362
11	Deployment <i>SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager</i>.....	377
11.1	Overview.....	377
11.2	Automatic configuration of a slave system.....	378
11.3	Manual configuration of a slave system.....	380
11.4	Configuration - EC-Mastersystem.....	380
11.4.1	Preparation.....	380
11.4.2	Master.....	381
11.4.3	Process Data Image.....	382
11.4.4	Advanced Options (Expert mode).....	382
11.4.5	Distributed Clocks (Expert mode).....	385
11.4.6	I/O Address Overview.....	386
11.5	Configuration - slave station.....	387
11.5.1	Preparation.....	387
11.5.2	General.....	388
11.5.3	Modules.....	389
11.5.4	PDO Mapping.....	390
11.5.5	Advanced Options (Expert mode).....	393
11.5.6	Ethernet (EoE).....	396
11.5.7	Distributed Clocks (Expert mode).....	397
11.5.8	Init Commands (Expert mode).....	398
11.5.9	CoE Object Dictionary (Expert mode).....	400
11.5.10	Process Image.....	401
11.5.11	I/O Address Overview.....	401
11.5.12	Parameter.....	402
11.6	Configuration - modules.....	402
11.6.1	Please note.....	402
11.6.2	Preparation.....	402
11.6.3	MDP Slot Properties.....	403
11.6.4	Process Image.....	403
11.6.5	I/O Address Overview.....	404
11.6.6	Parameter.....	404
11.7	Diagnostics - EC-Mastersystem.....	405
11.7.1	Preparation.....	405
11.7.2	General.....	405
11.7.3	CoE Object Dictionary.....	407
11.7.4	History (Expert mode).....	407
11.8	Diagnostics - slave station.....	408
11.8.1	Preparation.....	408
11.8.2	General.....	408
11.8.3	ESC Register (Expert mode).....	409
11.8.4	EEPROM (Expert mode).....	410
11.8.5	Extended Diagnosis (Expert mode).....	410
11.8.6	DC Diagnosis (Expert mode).....	411
11.8.7	CoE Object Dictionary.....	411
11.8.8	FoE Download/Upload.....	412
11.9	Grouping logic.....	413
11.9.1	Overview.....	413
11.9.2	Create group with pinned process data offset.....	415

11.9.3	Create Hot Connect group.....	416
11.10	EtherCAT State Machine.....	418
11.11	Firmware update - VIPA System SLIO IM 053-1EC0x.....	419
12	Index.....	420

1 General information on this documentation

1.1 Copyright © VIPA GmbH

All Rights Reserved

This document contains proprietary information of VIPA and is not to be disclosed or used except in accordance with applicable agreements.

This material is protected by the copyright laws. It may not be reproduced, distributed, or altered in any fashion by any entity (either internal or external to VIPA), except in accordance with applicable agreements, contracts or licensing, without the express written consent of VIPA and the business management owner of the material.

For permission to reproduce or distribute, please contact: VIPA, Gesellschaft für Visualisierung und Prozessautomatisierung mbH Ohmstraße 4, D-91074 Herzogenaurach, Germany

Tel.: +49 9132 744 -0

Fax.: +49 9132 744-1864

E-Mail: info@vipa.de

<http://www.vipa.com>



Every effort has been made to ensure that the information contained in this document was complete and accurate at the time of publishing. Nevertheless, the authors retain the right to modify the information.

This customer document describes all the hardware units and functions known at the present time. Descriptions may be included for units which are not present at the customer site. The exact scope of delivery is described in the respective purchase contract.

EC Conformity Declaration

Hereby, VIPA GmbH declares that the products and systems are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions. Conformity is indicated by the CE marking affixed to the product.

Conformity Information

For more information regarding CE marking and Declaration of Conformity (DoC), please contact your local VIPA customer service organization.

Trademarks

VIPA, SLIO, System 100V, System 200V, System 300V, System 300S, System 400V, System 500S and Commander Compact are registered trademarks of VIPA Gesellschaft für Visualisierung und Prozessautomatisierung mbH.

SPEED7 is a registered trademark of profichip GmbH.

SIMATIC, STEP, SINEC, TIA Portal, S7-300, S7-400 and S7-1500 are registered trademarks of Siemens AG.

Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Inc., USA.

Portable Document Format (PDF) and Postscript are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems, Inc.

All other trademarks, logos and service or product marks specified herein are owned by their respective companies.

Information product support

Contact your local VIPA Customer Service Organization representative if you wish to report errors or questions regarding the contents of this document. If you are unable to locate a customer service centre, contact VIPA as follows:

VIPA GmbH, Ohmstraße 4, 91074 Herzogenaurach, Germany

Telefax: +49 9132 744-1204

E-Mail: documentation@vipa.de

Technical support

Contact your local VIPA Customer Service Organization representative if you encounter problems with the product or have questions regarding the product. If you are unable to locate a customer service centre, contact VIPA as follows:

VIPA GmbH, Ohmstraße 4, 91074 Herzogenaurach, Germany

Tel.: +49 9132 744-1150 (Hotline)

E-Mail: support@vipa.de

1.2 Purpose of the documentation

This documentation describes the *VIPA SPEED7 Studio* software package. Please also note ↪ *Chap. 1.4 'Structure and contents of the documentation' page 13*.

The manual is intended for persons who implement control functions for VIPA SPEED7 automation systems using *SPEED7 Studio*.

1.3 Validity of the documentation

This software description is valid for the *SPEED7 Studio* software package from version 1.8.6

Please also note ↪ *Chap. 2.4 'Software identification' page 17*

Information on more recent versions or service packs which will be issued after the publication of this software description are provided at www.vipa.com

1.4 Structure and contents of the documentation

Chapter	Contents
↪ <i>Chap. 1 'General information on this documentation' page 12 (of this chapter)</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Information on this documentation and on further documentations ■ Form of notes and information ■ Designation of interface elements
↪ <i>Chap. 2 'To the SPEED7 Studio program' page 16</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Product description and technical features of <i>SPEED7 Studio</i> ■ Information on the target group and its qualifications ■ Identification and scope of delivery
↪ <i>Chap. 3 'Installation and activation of SPEED7 Studio' page 18</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ How to install, uninstall and activate (license) <i>SPEED7 Studio</i>
↪ <i>Chap. 4 'Working with SPEED7 Studio' page 23</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Explanation of the user interface, menus and functions ■ Adaptation and operation options of <i>SPEED7 Studio</i>
↪ <i>Chap. 5 'Managing and editing projects' page 65</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Information and operating instructions regarding project administration and processing

Presentation and tags

Chapter	Contents
🔗 Chap. 6 'Selecting and configuring devices and components' page 76	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Information and operating instructions regarding the selection and configuration of devices
🔗 Chap. 7 'Connect devices' page 154	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Information and operating instructions regarding devices and communication networks
🔗 Chap. 8 'Creating, transferring and testing the user program' page 206	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> How to create a user program Information on the declaration of variables
🔗 Chap. 9 'Creating a visualisation' page 311	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> How to create HMI visualisations
🔗 Chap. 10 'Motion Control' page 336	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> How to configure drives Information and operating instructions regarding creation of cams
🔗 Chap. 11 'Deployment SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager' page 377	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Information about configuration and diagnostics of EtherCAT systems

1.5 Presentation and tags

Notes, tips, recommendations, examples and operating instructions are presented in this documentation as follows:

Safety notes



DANGER!

This icon refers to dangers that will lead to death or serious bodily injury if the precautionary measures named are not taken.



CAUTION!

This icon refers to dangers that can lead to death or serious bodily injury if the precautionary measures named are not taken.



NOTICE!

This icon refers to important information. Any disregarding may result in system errors or data loss.

Tips and recommendations



This icon refers to information which will facilitate the use of the system.

Example

Here you will get examples how to apply the operations or programming examples explained before.




Operating instructions

This documentation includes operating instructions for many functions which you can follow step by step. Operating instructions include the following elements:

- ➔ Every operating step tells you what to do. The individual steps of any operating instruction consisting of several steps will be successively numbered.
- ⇒ Here, the result of the operating step is presented.

Further tags and formatting

The following tags are used in this documentation for highlighting certain information:

Tags/formatting	Explanation
'Menu → Menu item'	Menu command Example: 'File → Open project'
'Text'	Text of the programming interface, e.g. edit field in a dialogue window Example: 'User name' - or - push button Example: 'Cancel'
[Key]	Key or key combination of the computer keyboard Example: [Ctrl]+[C]
<i>Product</i>	Product designation (italics) Example: <i>SPEED7 Studio</i>
Program code	Program code (monospace font)
	Icon / button of the programming interface
①	Reference number in the illustrations (encircled consecutive number) Example:  (1) Toolbar
■	List, e.g. for listing several operating options
	Cross-reference to further information Example: ↗ <i>Chap. 1.4 'Structure and contents of the documentation' page 13</i>

2 To the *SPEED7 Studio* program

2.1 Product description

Controls based on SPEED7 technology can be used to an optimum with the *SPEED7 Studio* engineering tool.

SPEED7 Studio maps the complete automation process - from hardware configuration, communication and programming to visualisation.

Intuitive user interfaces allow for the immediate access to different modules. Thus, additional tools of third-party suppliers for hardware configuration, for linking different field buses, for programming or for the visualisation and operation of the systems are no longer necessary.

Hardware configuration

With *SPEED7 Studio*, it is possible to directly configure System MICRO and System SLIO systems with their product-specific parameters and their PROFIBUS, EtherCAT and PROFINET bus systems. Pre-defined device templates can be added in the appropriate position using Drag & Drop for configuration.

Networking

No specific bus system knowledge is required for the configuration of networking via PROFIBUS, PROFINET and EtherCAT with *SPEED7 Studio*. *SPEED7 Studio* provides various device templates which allow for the graphic networking configuration.

Programming

The programming languages IL and FBD can be used in the current version for programming.

For easier textual programming, texts are structured by syntax highlighting. Moreover, it is possible to save notes in the code or define "regions" which allow for the clearly structured display of IL.

The graphic programming languages use different colours for different block groups which allows for easy functional allocation.

When entering the program code, the syntax is checked and the user is immediately informed about possible errors.

For diagnostics purposes, the current values can be displayed in the blocks or online in watch tables. A history and trend display are also available.

Visualisation

With *SPEED7 Studio*, it is possible to create a web-based visualisation. For this purpose, a SVG graphic editor is available which is used for the creation of individual pages. Ready-made elements provided in a library allow for very easy design.

The central data management in *SPEED7 Studio* allows for the access to all variables of the control.

The visualisation function is not only accessible via a conventional touch panel but also via any browser-enabled mobile end device such as a tablet PC or a smart phone. The only thing required is a Java-enabled web browser.

Further visualisation properties include loss-free scalable SVG vector graphics, pre-configured dynamic samplings and objects, object-oriented parametrising and client scripting.

2.2 Technical features

For *SPEED7 Studio* design, technologies and tools such as .net 4.0 and vector-based UI visualisation with Windows® Presentation Foundation are used.

Central data management	Hardware configuration, networking, programming and visualisation use a central database based on a central SQL server. This allows, for example, for the direct access to control variables for visualisation creation without having to synchronise the data of the different tools.
Vector-based graphics	Any graphics used in <i>SPEED7 Studio</i> are vector-based and used, for example, for the photo-realistic illustration of components which can thus be zoomed without losses.
Multilingualism	All graphic user interfaces are available in different languages. The interface and menu language in <i>SPEED7 Studio</i> can be changed during programming.

2.3 Target group and qualification

SPEED7 Studio may be used only by qualified personnel. Due to their training and experience, the qualified personnel are capable of recognising risks and avoiding possible dangers when using *SPEED7 Studio*.

2.4 Software identification

- ➔ In order to get information on the installed *SPEED7 Studio* version and on the plug-in modules, select 'Help ➔ Info' in the menu bar.
- ⇒ The dialogue window with information on *SPEED7 Studio* will open.

Please also note ↪ *Chap. 1.3 'Validity of the documentation' page 13*

3 Installation and activation of *SPEED7 Studio*

3.1 System requirements

The minimal system requirements for the installation of the *SPEED7 Studio* software package include:

- Processor: Intel® Pentium® 4 or AMD Athlon® 64
- Operating system: Microsoft® Windows 7®, Windows 8® or Windows 10®
- Working memory: At least 2 GB RAM
- Hard disk space: At least 12 GB (installation on portable flash memories not possible)
- Monitor and graphics card: Monitor resolution 1024 x 768 pixel (1920 x 1080 recommended), a colour depth of 16 Bit and 256 MB VRAM

3.2 Installation of *SPEED7 Studio*

You can install *SPEED7 Studio* with a downloaded file.

➔ Double-click on the installation diagram. Follow the instructions on the monitor.



*You must agree to the licensing agreement before you can use *SPEED7 Studio*. This must be confirmed during installation.*

Further components are required in order to operate *SPEED7 Studio*. If the following programs are not already available on your PC, they are installed automatically:

- Microsoft .NET Framework 4.52
- Microsoft SQL Server® 2014 SP1
- WinPcap

3.3 Activate *SPEED7 Studio*

You can use a 30-day demo version or activate a licence.

In order to use *SPEED7 Studio* without restrictions, you require a licence, which you can obtain from your local VIPA GmbH customer service organisation.

Use 30-day demo version

With the demo version, you can use *SPEED7 Studio* with no obligation and free of charge for 30 days. After this time has expired, you can use *SPEED7 Studio* again only when you activate a licence.

1. ➔ Start *SPEED7 Studio*. ↪ *Chap. 4.2 'Start *SPEED7 Studio*' page 23*

⇒ If no licence is activated, the dialogue window for activating the licence will open each time you start *SPEED7 Studio*.

2. ➔ Click on 'No'.


⇒ *SPEED7 Studio* is started.

Each time you start *SPEED7 Studio*, it is shown for how many days you can still use the demo version.

Activate licence online

If the PC on which you would like to use *SPEED7 Studio* is connected to the internet, you can activate the licence online.

1. ➤ Start *SPEED7 Studio*. ↪ *Chap. 4.2 'Start SPEED7 Studio' page 23*
 - ⇒ If no licence is activated, the dialogue window for activating the licence will open each time you start *SPEED7 Studio*.
2. ➤ Click on 'Yes'.
 - ⇒ The '*Product activation*' dialogue window will open.



The image shows a dialog box titled "Activation" for SPEED7 Studio. It contains the following elements:

- Logo:** The SPEED7 Studio logo, featuring the word "SPEED" in a bold, italicized font above "Studio", with a large blue "7" to the right.
- Licence Key:** An input field with the placeholder text "VIPA-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX".
- Your name:** An input field with the placeholder text "My Name".
- Email address:** An input field with the placeholder text "my_email@address.com".
- Buttons:** Two buttons at the bottom: "Activate" and "Activate offline".

Fig. 1: "Product activation" dialogue window

3. ➤ Enter the serial number that you received with your order of *SPEED7 Studio* in the '*Licence key*' input field.
4. ➤ Enter your name in the '*Your name*' input field.
5. ➤ If you enter your e-mail address in the '*Email address*' input field, you receive an e-mail confirmation regarding the product activation.

6. ➤ Click on *'Activate'*.

⇒ The licence is activated and *SPEED7 Studio* is started.

Activate licence offline

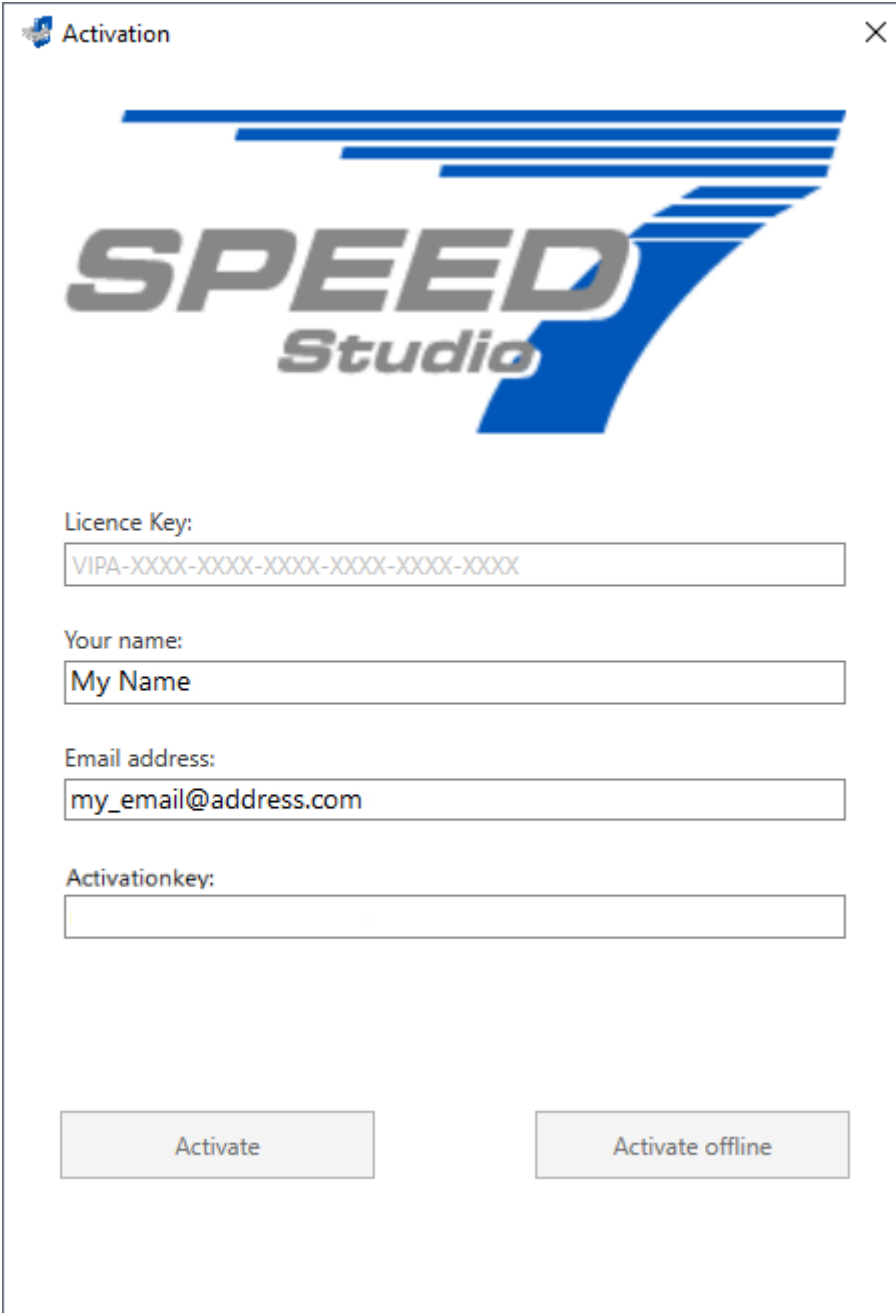
If the PC on which you would like to use *SPEED7 Studio* is not connected to the internet, you can activate the licence offline. For this, you need to obtain an activation key via another PC that is connected to the internet.

1. ➤ Start *SPEED7 Studio*. ↪ *Chap. 4.2 'Start SPEED7 Studio' page 23*

⇒ If no licence is activated, the dialogue window for activating the licence will open each time you start *SPEED7 Studio*.

2. ➤ Click on *'Yes'*.

⇒ The *'Product activation'* dialogue window will open.



Activation

SPEED7 Studio

Licence Key:
VIPA-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX

Your name:
My Name

Email address:
my_email@address.com

Activationkey:

Activate Activate offline

Fig. 2: "Product activation" dialog window

3. Enter the serial number that you received with your order of *SPEED7 Studio* in the 'Licence key' input field.
4. Enter your name in the 'Your name' input field.
5. If you enter your e-mail address in the 'Email address' input field, you receive an e-mail confirmation regarding the product activation.
6. Click on 'Activate offline'.
 - ⇒ A dialogue window with information on the subsequent steps will open.
7. Click on 'OK' in the dialogue window.
 - ⇒ The 'Save as' dialogue window will open.
8. Save the HTML file and transfer this file (e.g. with copy and paste) to a PC that is connected to the internet.

9. ➤ Double-click on the HTML file.
 - ⇒ The HTML page is opened in the browser. The activation key is accessed by the VIPA licence server and is shown in the browser.
10. ➤ Enter the activation key into the 'Activation key' input field in the 'Product activation' dialogue window.
11. ➤ Click on 'Activate offline' again.
 - ⇒ The licence is activated and *SPEED7 Studio* is started.

3.4 Uninstallation of *SPEED7 Studio*

You can use the system control to uninstall *SPEED7 Studio*. Follow the instructions on the monitor.

A dialogue window will open, where you can select whether your stored projects should be retained or deleted.

**NOTICE!****Data loss!**

All project data are removed from the data carrier!

- Make sure that the project data are no longer needed.

4 Working with *SPEED7 Studio*

4.1 Overview

This chapter explains the user interface of *SPEED7 Studio*. ↪ *Chap. 4.8 'User interface' page 26*

Moreover, it contains a description of various operating options with mouse and keyboard. ↪ *Chap. 4.18 'Mouse and keyboard operation' page 52*

4.2 Start *SPEED7 Studio*



→ Click on the program button. You can find *SPEED7 Studio* in Windows Start under 'VIPA GmbH'.

⇒ *SPEED7 Studio* is started. The "start page" appears.



*It is possible to run *SPEED7 Studio* simultaneously several times on one PC if you want to use it for various projects. It is not possible to open the same project in different instances of *SPEED7 Studio*.*

When *SPEED7 Studio* is restarted, the working interface is restored in the same position and size as when it was last used.

4.3 End *SPEED7 Studio*

→ Select one of the following options if you want to end the program:

- **Main window:** Click on the Close button of the *SPEED7 Studio* program window.
- **Menu bar:** Select 'File → Exit'.
- **Keyboard:** Press [Alt]+[F4].

After you have made changes to the project, a dialogue window will open, where you can select whether to save or ignore the changes.

⇒ *SPEED7 Studio* is ended.

4.4 Select language

You can select the language in which the user interface is to be displayed.

→ Select the menu command 'Language' and click on the desired language.

⇒ The user interface is displayed in the selected language.



If you change to another language while a project is open, not all elements can be changed to the selected language. Close the project and open it again to change all elements into the selected language.

4.5 Select syntax language (mnemonics)

You can select the language in which the language elements (mnemonics) of the user program are to be displayed.

1. ➤ Select the menu command *'Extras → Configurations'*.
2. ➤ Under *'Mnemonic configurations'*, select the desired syntax language.
 - ⇒ The language elements are displayed in the selected language.

Example

IL syntax in different languages:

- German: `U E0.1` (AND Input 0.1)
- International: `A I0.1` (AND Input 0.1)

4.6 Select interfaces

You can choose which interfaces to use for the data exchange.

1. ➤ Select the menu command *'Extras → Configurations'*.
2. ➤ Under *'Standard interfaces'*, select the desired network adapter or port:
 - *'Standard adapter Ethernet'* – Data exchange via an Ethernet interface between the programming device and the connected devices
 - *'Standard adapter simulation'* – To test (simulate) the user program on the programming device
 - *'Standard port serial'* – Data exchange via a serial interface between the programming device and the connected devices

Under "communication settings", you can change further configurations. ↪ *Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings (PLC)' page 113*

4.7 Symbolic and absolute addressing

You can select whether the operands in the block editor should be shown as symbolic or absolute:

1. ➤ Select the menu command *'Extras → Configurations'*.
2. ➤ Select type of addressing under *'Programming'*:
 - *'Symbolic'* (default setting) – Displays symbolic addresses upon entry and upon observation, e.g. `"MySymbol"`
 If an absolute address is entered in the block editor, *SPEED7 Studio* replaces this address with the available symbol, e.g. from the variable table. If no symbol is available, *SPEED7 Studio* automatically generates a symbol, e.g. entry: `E0.1`, symbol: `"x_E0.1"`. The new symbol is saved in the *'standard project configuration'* variable table. ↪ *Chap. 8.11.4 'Variable tables and "Standard project configuration"'* page 251
 - *'Absolute'* – Displays absolute addresses (direct addresses) upon entry and upon observation, e.g. `E0.1`, `MW8`, `FB1`
 If a symbolic address is entered in the block editor, *SPEED7 Studio* replaces this address with the absolute address, e.g. entry: `"x_E0.1"`, display: `E0.1`.



A symbol is always automatically created for each newly added operand, even if the "absolute" addressing type is selected.

Symbol format for automatically generated symbols

From Version 1.8 of *SPEED7 Studio*, symbols are automatically created for all absolute addresses used in the project for which no symbol yet exists.

You can define the prefix for all automatically generated symbols:

➔ Select symbol format under 'Programming':

- 'User-defined prefix' (default setting) – In the input field, define the character string which will be placed at the beginning of an automatically generated variable. Example prefix: `sym_`, address entry `E0.1`, automatically generated symbol: `sym_E0.1`
- 'Hungarian notation' – In "Hungarian notation", a letter and an underscore are placed at the beginning of an automatically generated variable in order to indicate the data width of the operands:

Data type	Prefix	Example
BOOL	x_	x_E0.0
BYTE, CHAR	b_	b_MB1
WORD, INT, S5TIME, DATE, COUNTER, TIMER	w_	w_MW20, w_T1
DWORD, DINT, REAL, TIME, TIME_OF_DAY, DATE_AND_TIME	d_	d_MD2

⇒ The settings are saved for all future processing of symbols. If, for example, you switch from a user-defined prefix to "Hungarian notation", this symbol format is only used for symbols which are subsequently newly generated.

Dialogue support for symbol input

If you activate 'dialogue support', a dialogue window in which the operand, data type and other properties can be defined for the new symbol opens upon entry of a new symbolic address. ↪ *Chap. 8.5.5 'Create / edit symbol' page 220*

Type checking for operands

For the graphic programming languages LD and FBD, you can specify whether just the data width is checked or whether the data type of an operand is checked as well:

- Type checking activated: An error message is displayed if the data type of the operand does not match the data type of the input or output parameter.
- Type checking deactivated: An error message is only displayed if the data wider of the operand does not match the data width of the input or output parameter.

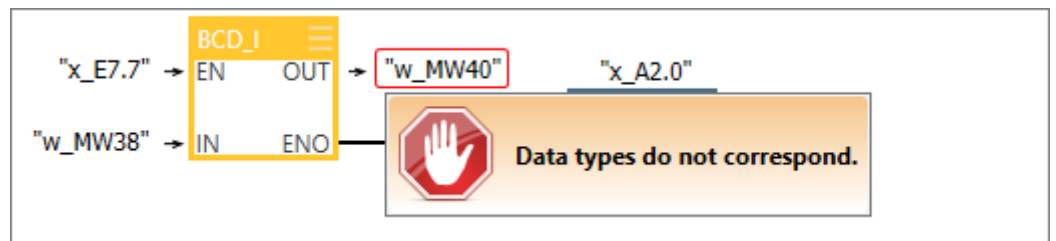


Fig. 3: Error message if the data type of the operand does not match the data type of the input or output parameter

User interface

Additional information in IL editor

You can define whether the additional information for newly added blocks should be shown or hidden in IL editor. You can also show or hide the additional information individually for each block in IL editor, see [Chap. 8.5.4 'Instruction section' page 216](#).

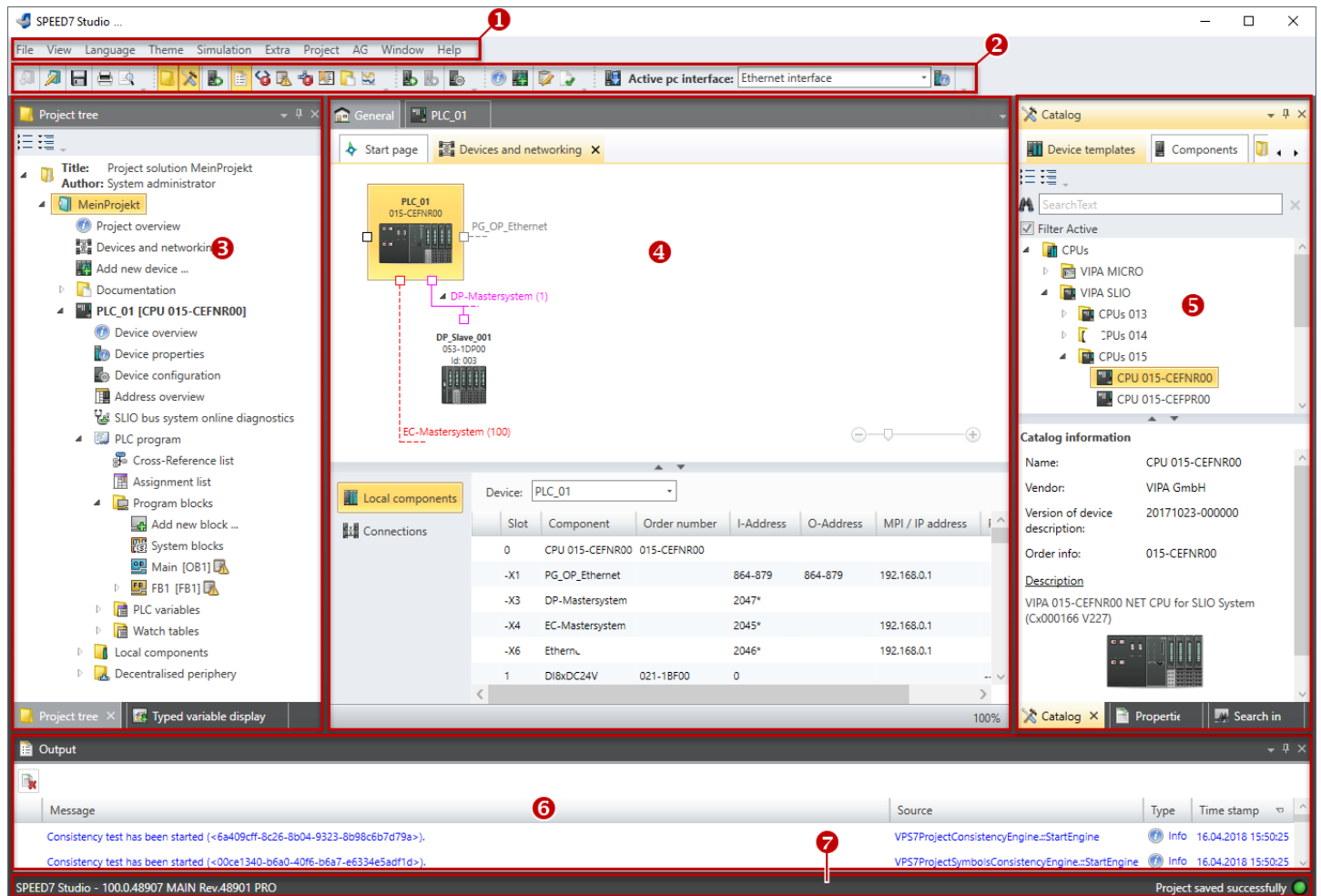
4.8 User interface

Fig. 4: SPEED7 Studio user interface (example)

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| (1) Menu bar | (5) Catalog/properties |
| (2) Toolbar | (6) Output range |
| (3) Project tree | (7) Status line |
| (4) Area of operations | |

You can show and hide further windows and adjust the arrangement and size of the windows. [Chap. 4.18.1 'Adjusting the user interface' page 52](#)

Information on the general use of SPEED7 Studio: [Chap. 4.18 'Mouse and keyboard operation' page 52](#)

(1) Menu bar

Most of the commands you need for working with SPEED7 Studio are provided in the menu bar. Further commands can be accessed via the context menus using the right mouse button, e.g. functions of a device in the project tree. [Chap. 4.18.2 'Mouse operation – context menu' page 53](#)

The menu commands 'Project' and 'Device' are only shown if a project is open.

You can use the menus with the mouse or the keyboard. ↪ *Chap. 4.20 'Menu and keyboard commands' page 61*

(2) Toolbar

Important commands you need for working with *SPEED7 Studio* are provided in the toolbar. More commands can be accessed via the toolbars and push buttons of different editors.

Some of the commands in the toolbar are only shown if a project is open.

(3) Project tree

Any project device and project data can be accessed via the project tree. The project tree includes any object which you have created in the project, e.g. devices, components, program blocks, HMI images. Here you can add or remove devices and components. Furthermore, you can open editors in order to edit settings, configurations, the control program and visualisation.

↪ *Chap. 4.9 'Project tree' page 28*

(4) Area of operations

Devices and project data can be edited in the area of operations. You can open different editors for this purpose. The register in the area of operations is divided into two register levels. You can switch through the editors in the area of operations via the tabs.

↪ *Chap. 4.12 'Area of operations' page 38*

(5) Catalogue/properties

Devices and components which you want to add to the project can be selected in the catalog. You can also select objects which you want to add to the PLC program or to HMI images.

↪ *Chap. 4.10 'Catalog' page 34*

↪ *Chap. 4.11 'Properties' page 37*

(6) Output range

Information on executed activities and background operations are displayed on the output range.

↪ *Chap. 4.14 'Output range' page 43*

(7) Status line

The version of *SPEED7 Studio* is displayed at the left edge of the status line. The progress bar for background operations and status messages is shown at the right edge. As long as there are no background operations, the status message created at last is shown.

4.9 Project tree

Any project device and project data can be accessed via the project tree. The project tree includes any object which you have created in the project, e.g. devices, components, program blocks or HMI images.

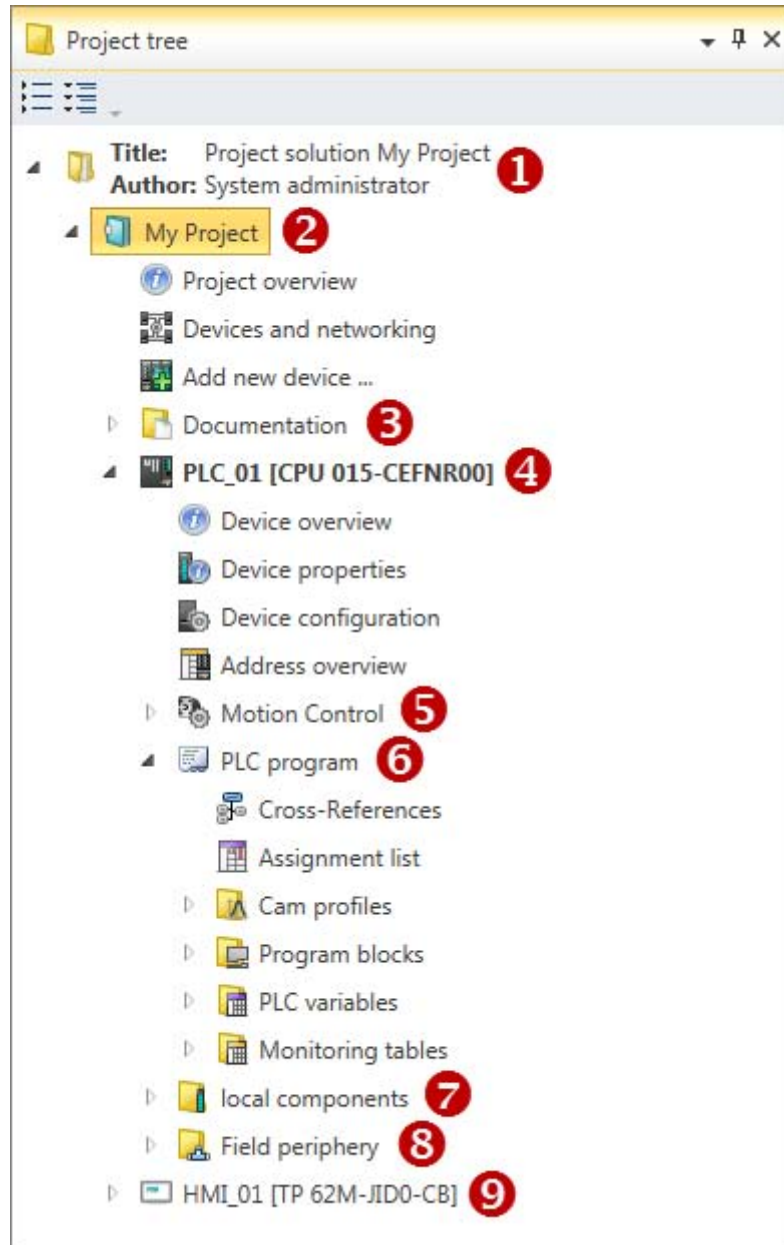


Fig. 5: Project tree, example

- (1) Title and author
- (2) Project
- (3) Documentation
- (4) PLC
- (5) Motion Control
- (6) PLC program
- (7) Local components (= local modules)
- (8) Decentralised periphery
- (9) HMI

In the project tree, you can access commands in order to add or delete objects, e.g. add/delete devices or add/delete blocks.

You can select individual or several objects in the project tree to move them or copy and paste them in another location. ↪ *Chap. 4.9.1 'Moving, copying and pasting objects' page 33*

You can open editors via the project tree if you want to edit settings, configurations, the control program and visualisation. Moreover, you can retrieve information, e.g. project overview, device properties or bus system properties.

Show project tree

If the project tree is not displayed, select 'View → Project tree' or press [Ctrl]+[Shift]+[P].





Show projects in the project tree

In order to display the project in the project tree, you must create a new project ↪ *Chap. 5.2 'Create a new project' page 65* or open a stored project ↪ *Chap. 5.3 'Open project' page 66*.

It is not possible to edit several projects at the same time. It is possible to run *SPEED7 Studio* simultaneously several times on one PC if you want to use it for various projects.

Show/hide objects


The objects in the project tree are arranged in a tree structure. You can show or hide objects:

-  Hide all objects ('Project → Collapse project tree')
-  Show all objects ('Project → Expand project tree')
-  Hide slave objects / close folder
-  Show slave objects / open folder





Recognise object state

Symbols behind an object in the project tree provide indications of the object state. ↪ *Chap. 4.19.3 'Markings of changes and states' page 56*

(1) Title and author






 Title and author	Here, project name and user are displayed ↪ <i>Chap. 5.2 'Create a new project' page 65</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Right mouse button: Context menu with commands and functions regarding the project
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

(2) Project











 Project name	Here, the project name is displayed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Right mouse button: Context menu with commands and functions regarding the project ■ [F2]: Rename project
 Project overview	■ Single click: Open "Project overview" ↪ <i>Chap. 6.1 "'Project overview' editor' page 76</i>
 Devices and networking	■ Single click: Open "Devices and networking" ↪ <i>Chap. 6.2 "'Devices and networking' editor' page 77</i>
 Add new device	■ Single click: Open "Add new device" dialogue window ↪ <i>Chap. 6.3 'Add new device (PLC)' page 81</i>

Project tree








(3) Documentation

 Documentation	Contains text documents and further sub-folders <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ↳ Chap. 5.15 "Documentation" folder  page 74 ↳ Chap. 5.17 'Text editor (text document)'  page 75
 <i>Text document</i>	Name of the text document <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Right mouse button: Context menu with commands and functions regarding the text document ■ Double-click: Open text document in the editor ↳ Chap. 5.17 'Text editor (text document)'  page 75 ■ [F2]: Rename text document



(4) PLC













 Device name	Here, the device name of the PLC is displayed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Right mouse button: Context menu with commands and functions regarding the PLC ■ Double-click: Open the "Device configuration" of the PLC ↳ Chap. 6.14 "Device configuration" editor (PLC)  page 103
 Device overview	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Single click: Open the "Device overview" of the PLC ↳ Chap. 8.2 'Device overview (PLC)'  page 206
 Device properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Single click: Open the "Device properties" of the PLC ↳ Chap. 6.20 "Device properties" editor (PLC)  page 112
 Device configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Single click: Open the "Device configuration" of the PLC ↳ Chap. 6.14 "Device configuration" editor (PLC)  page 103
 Address overview	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Single click: Open the "Address overview" of the PLC ↳ Chap. 8.12 'Address overview'  page 254

(5) Motion Control






 Motion Control Overview	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Single click: Open configurations for the Motion Control functions ↳ Chap. 10.4 'Editor "Motion Control Overview"'  page 339
 Motion Control axes	
 Add new axis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Single click: Open dialogue window "Add new axis" ↳ Chap. 10.5 'Add new axis'  page 343
 <i>Axis</i>	Name of the Motion Control axis <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Right mouse button: Context menu with commands and functions regarding the Motion Control axis ■ Double-click: Open the editor of the Motion Control axis ↳ Chap. 10.6 'Editor "Motion Control axis"'  page 344

(6) PLC program

 Cams	Includes cams for controls with Motion Control functionality ↳ Chap. 10.7 'Create cams' page 349
 PLC program	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Right mouse button: Context menu with commands and functions regarding the user program (PLC program)

 Program blocks	<p>Contains all blocks of the user program</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Right mouse button: Context menu with commands and functions regarding the blocks, e.g. add, open, rename, delete, transfer block, or add rename, delete folder [F2]: Rename directory
 Add new block	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Single click: Open "Add new block" dialogue window
 Organisation block [OB]	Name of the block
 Function block [FB]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Right mouse button: Context menu with commands and functions regarding the block
 Function [FC]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Double-click: Open block in the editor
 Data block [DB]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> [F2]: Rename program block
 Structure block [UDT]	<p>↳ Chap. 8.5 'Block editor for program blocks (OB, FB, FC)   </p> <p>↳ Chap. 8.8 'Block editor for data blocks (DB) </p> <p>↳ Chap. 8.10 'Block editor for structure blocks (UDT) </p>
PLC variables	
 All variables	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Right mouse button: Context menu with commands and functions regarding the variable table Double-click: Open variable table ↳ Chap. 8.11.2 'All variables 
 Add new variable table	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Single click: Open "Add variable table" dialogue window ↳ Chap. 8.11 'PLC variables 
 System hardware configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Right mouse button: Context menu with commands and functions regarding the variable table Double-click: Open variable table ↳ Chap. 8.11.3 'System hardware configuration 
 Standard project configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Right mouse button: Context menu with commands and functions regarding the variable table Double-click: Open variable table ↳ Chap. 8.11.4 'Variable tables and "Standard project configuration"  [F2]: Rename variable table
Watch tables	
 Add watch table	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Single click: Open "Add watch table" dialogue window ↳ Chap. 8.22 'Add watch table 
 Watch table	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Right mouse button: Context menu with commands and functions regarding the watch table Double-click: Open watch table ↳ Chap. 8.23 'Watch table  [F2]: Rename watch table
OPC UA configuration	
 OPC UA configuration	↳ Chap. 7.7 'Configure OPC UA' page 200
 Server settings	<p>↳ Chap. 7.7.3 'Server settings - Connection </p> <p>↳ Chap. 7.7.4 'Server settings - Certificate </p>

Project tree

 Data access	↳ Chap. 7.7.5 'Data access  ' page 203
 User management	↳ Chap. 7.7.6 'User management  ' page 204 ↳ Chap. 7.7.7 'Role management  ' page 205















(7) Local components

 Local components	↳ Chap. 6 'Selecting and configuring devices and components' page 76
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------

(8) Decentralised periphery

 Decentralised periphery	↳ Chap. 6.5 'Adding a new device (slave)' page 86
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------

(9) HMI

 HMI	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Right mouse button: Context menu with commands and functions regarding visualisation (HMI)
 Device overview	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Single click: Open the "Device overview" of the HMI device ↳ Chap. 9.2 "'Device overview" editor (HMI device) ' page 311
 Device properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Single click: Open the "Device properties" of the HMI device ↳ Chap. 9.3 "'Device properties" editor (HMI device) ' page 312
 HMI project	
Variables	
 Standard variables table	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Double-click: Open variable table ↳ Chap. 9.4 "'Standard variables table" editor ' page 315
Images	
 Add new image	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Single click: Open "Add new image" dialogue window
 Image	<p>Name of the HMI image</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Right mouse button: Context menu with commands and functions regarding the HMI image Double-click: Open HMI image in the editor ↳ Chap. 9.9 "'Image" editor ' page 320 [F2]: Rename HMI image [Del]: Delete HMI image
 Resources	
 Add resource	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Single click: Open "Add resource" dialogue window ↳ Chap. 9.6 'HMI library ' page 318
Resource	<p>Name of the resource</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Right mouse button: Context menu with commands and functions regarding the resource [F2]: Rename resource

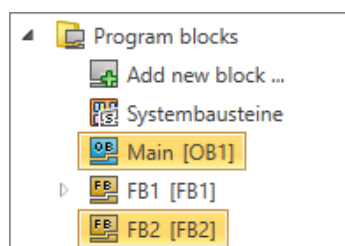
4.9.1 Moving, copying and pasting objects

In the project tree, you can select individual or several objects to move them or copy and paste them in another location.

Select an object

➔ Click on the desired object.

Select several objects



➔ Press and hold the *[Ctrl]* key and click on the objects you want to select.

- or -

In order to select a row of objects, press and hold the key *[shift]* and click on the first and the last element of the row.

- or -

In order to select a row of objects, click on the first object of the row. Press and hold the key *[shift]* and use the keys *[↓]* or *[↑]*, to select further elements.

- or -

You can also highlight a folder to select all elements contained. However, system folders such as e.g. 'Program blocks', 'PLC variables' or 'Watch tables' cannot be selected.



- You can only select objects of the same type. Example: You can select several program blocks, but not program blocks and variable tables at the same time.
- You can only select objects within one control (CPU). Example: You can select several program blocks from PLC_01 but are not able to add program blocks from PLC_02.

After selecting objects, proceed as follows:

- Drag & drop objects
- Copy objects
- Paste objects

Drag & drop objects

1. ➔ Left-click with the mouse on an object and hold the mouse button pressed down. To copy objects, also keep the *[Ctrl]* key pressed down.
2. ➔ Drag the object in the desired position, e.g. an organisation block from one control to another.
3. ➔ Release the mouse button.



While dragging the object, the mouse pointer changes its form (see example).



At each permitted dropping position, the mouse pointer changes its form again (see example).

Copy objects

➔ Press **[Ctrl]+[C]**.

- or -

Right-click with the mouse button on an object and select *'Copy'* or *'Copy to clipboard'*.

⇒ The selected objects are copied to the clipboard. When copying a function block, all related instance data blocks are also copied to the clipboard.

Paste objects

1. ➔ Select the folder or the element, where you want to paste the content of the clipboard.



You can only paste elements to positions matching the type of the elements on the clipboard. Example: You can only paste program blocks within the node 'Program blocks'.

2. ➔ Press **[Ctrl]+[V]**.

- or -

Right-click with the mouse button on the target object and select *'Paste'* or *'Paste from clipboard'*.

⇒ The objects copied to the clipboard are pasted.

Pasting objects with the same name or same number

Object type	Result
Program blocks	A dialogue window will open, where you can change the names or numbers of the blocks to be pasted. Only when all block names and numbers are distinct, the blocks can be added.
System blocks	A dialogue window will open, in which you can select whether present system blocks shall be overwritten or not.
Watch tables and variable tables	The watch and variable tables to be pasted will receive a new distinct name automatically.

4.10 Catalog

Devices and components which you want to add to the project can be selected in the catalog. You can also select objects which you want to add to the PLC program or to HMI images.

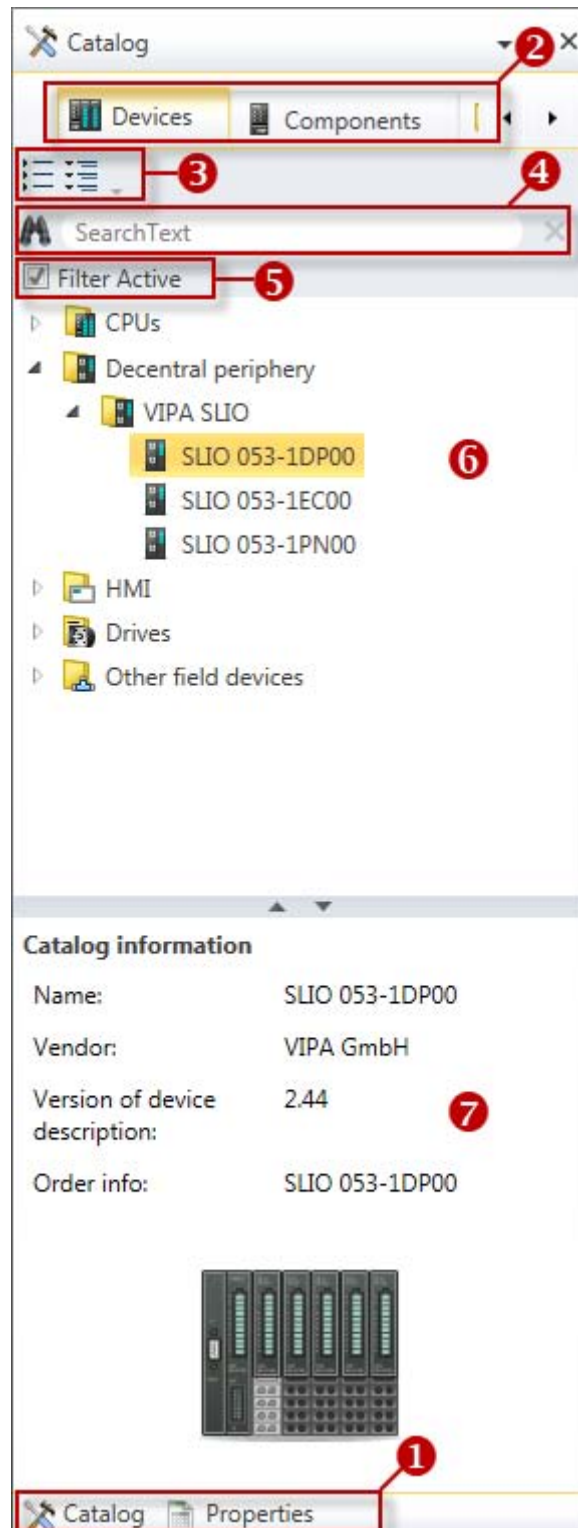





















Fig. 6: Catalog, "Device templates" example

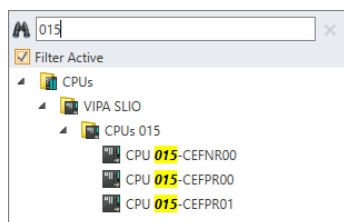
- (1) Switching to another view
- (2) Register
- (3) Show/hide objects
- (4) Search
- (5) Filter
- (6) Objects
- (7) Catalog information

Catalog




- Show catalog** If the catalog is not displayed, select 'View → Catalog' or press [Ctrl]+[Shift]+[C].
- (1) Switch to another view** If the properties are displayed instead of the catalog, you must click on 'Catalog' at the lower screen edge.
- (2) Register** Certain tabs are displayed in the catalog, depending on which editor window is opened in the foreground.
- Example** In the area of operations, the  'Devices and networking' editor is opened and visible in the foreground. The  'Device templates' and  'Components' tabs are available in the catalog.

Editor in the area of operations	Tabs in the catalog
 Devices and networking	 Device templates  Components
 Device configuration	 Components
 Organisation block [OB]	 Graphics library (IL, LD, FBD)
 Function block [FB]	 Code library
 Function [FC]	
 HMI image	 HMI elements



- (3) Show/hide objects** The objects in the catalog are arranged in a tree structure. You can show or hide objects:
-  Hide all objects ('Project → Collapse catalog tree')
 -  Show all objects ('Project → Expand catalog tree')
 -  Hide slave objects / close folder
 -  Show slave objects / open folder

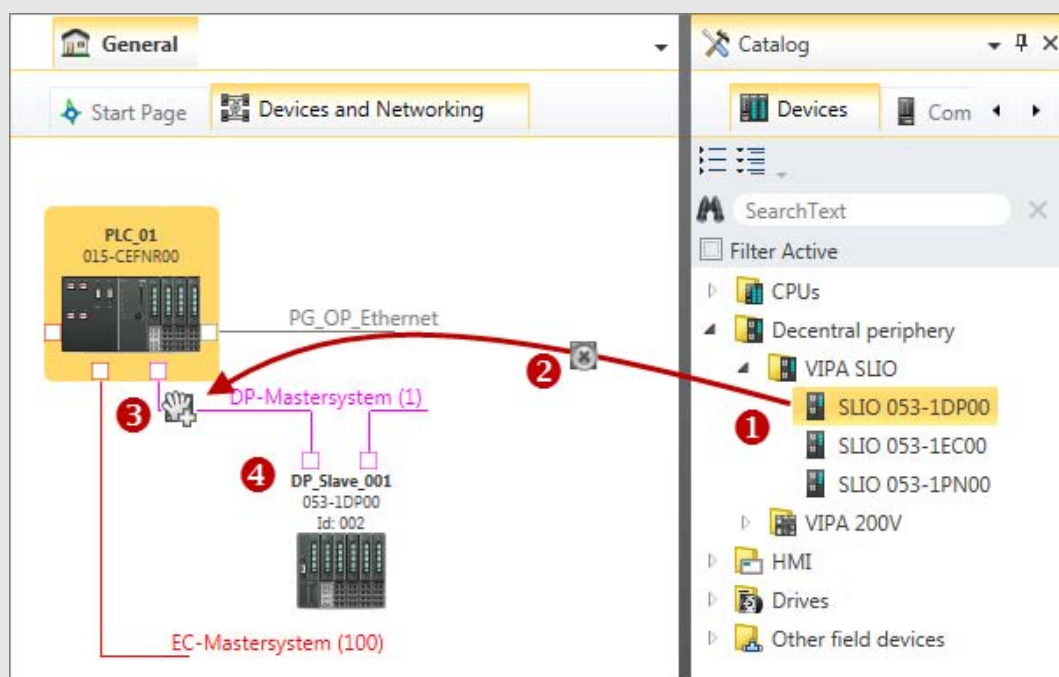
(4) Search

You can search for certain objects in the catalog.

- 1.**  Enter a search text in the input field.
 - ⇒ Only those objects which contain the search text are displayed in the catalog.
- 2.**  Click on  to delete the search text.
 - ⇒ All objects are displayed in the catalog.

(5) Filter**(6) Add object**

-  Drag the desired object from the catalog to a suitable position.  [Chap. 4.18.3 'Mouse operation – drag & drop' page 54](#)
 - ⇒ The object is added.

Example

- (1) Select the desired object (hold left mouse button down)
- (2) Drag the object
- (3) Drop the object at a suitable place (release the mouse button)
- (4) The object is added

(7) Catalog information

The catalog information shows details about the selected object, e.g. name, vendor, version, order information.

4.11 Properties 

Element properties can be displayed and edited in HMI images in the "Properties" window.

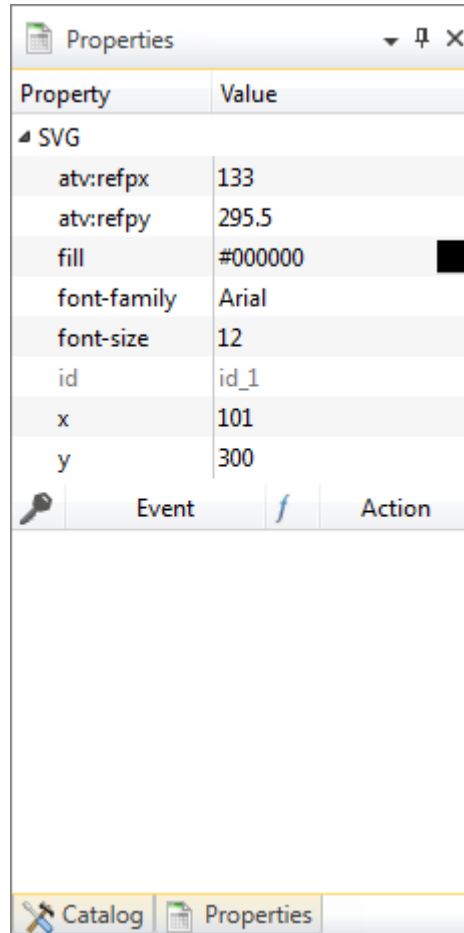


Fig. 7: Properties

Show "Properties" window

If the properties are not displayed, select 'View → Properties' or press [Ctrl]+[Shift]+[M].

(1) Switch to another view

If the catalog is displayed instead of the properties, you must click on 'Properties' at the lower screen edge.

(2) Show/hide properties

The properties are arranged in a tree structure. You can show or hide the properties:



Hide all properties ('Project → Collapse property tree')



Show all properties ('Project → Expand property tree')



Hide slave properties



Show slave properties

(3) Properties of an element

→ Click on an element in the HMI image.

⇒ The properties of the element are displayed.

4.12 Area of operations

Editors in the area of operations

Devices and project data can be edited in the area of operations. You can open different editors for this purpose, e.g. via the menu bar, the toolbar or the project tree.

🔗 *'Overview of tabs and editors' page 40*

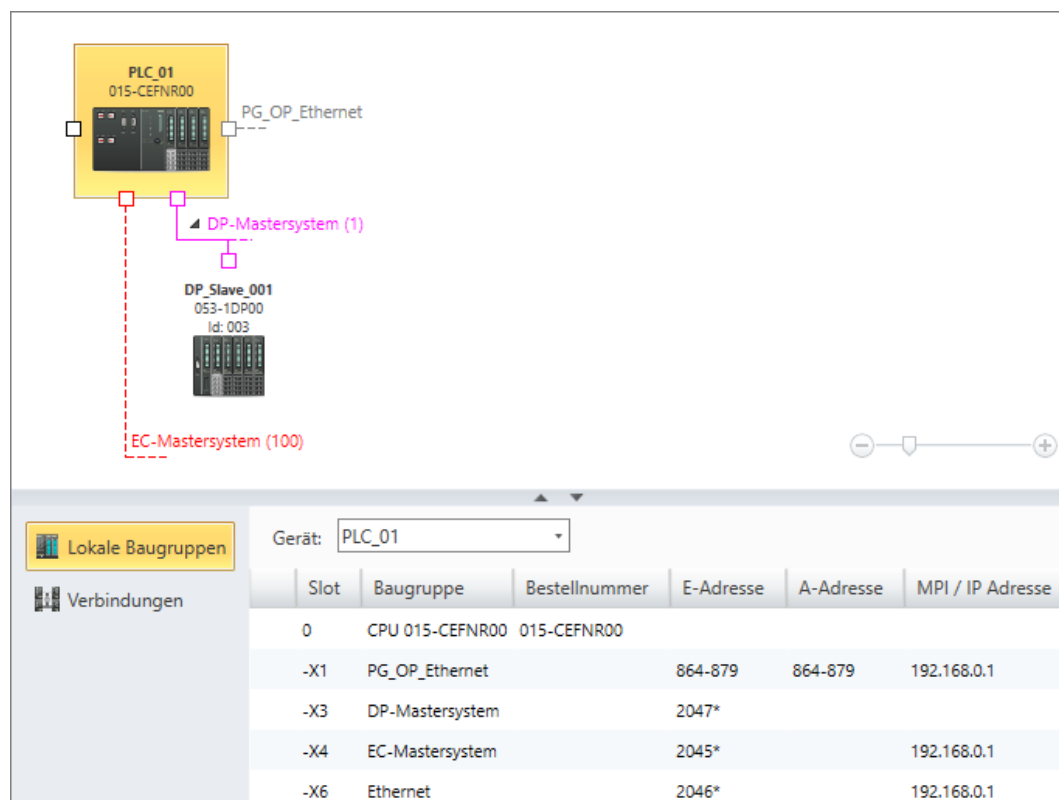


Fig. 8: Editors in the area of operations, "Devices and networking" example

Register in the area of operations



Fig. 9: Register and tabs

- (1) Main register
- (2) Sub-register

The register is located above the editors. It is divided into two register levels and contains the following tabs:

- **(1) Main register**

The 'General' tab contains sub-registers of the project.

Further tabs (e.g. "PLC01", "DPSlave_001", "HMI01") contain sub-registers of the devices.

- **(2) Sub-register**

Contains tabs with editors for the project (e.g. start page, devices and networking) or for the selected device (e.g. device properties, program blocks, images).

Adjusting the area of operations

You can enlarge or reduce the area of operations. 🔗 *Chap. 4.18.1 'Adjusting the user interface' page 52*

Switching to another editor



You can switch through the editors in the area of operations via the tabs. A tab for each open editor is displayed. Only the selected editor is visible.

Area of operations

If you want to switch to another editor, you must proceed as follows:

1. ➤ Click on the desired tab (Device or "General") in the main register.
 - ⇒ The editors corresponding to the selected device or to "General" are displayed in the sub-register.
2. ➤ Click on the desired tab in the sub-register.
 - ⇒ The editor is displayed in the area of operations.

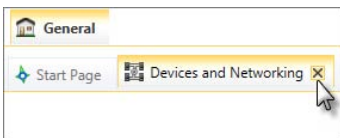
Example


You want to access the start page. First click on  'General' and then on  'Start page'.



You can also switch to another editor via the project tree. Click on the desired function in the project tree.

Closing the editor


























































1. ➤ Move the mouse pointer to the right edge of the tab.
 - ⇒ The  icon is automatically displayed.
2. ➤ Click on the icon.
 - ⇒ The editor is closed.

Closing all editors

- Select in the menu bar 'Window ➔ Close all documents'.
 - ⇒ All editors in the area of operations are closed. Only the start page remains open.

Overview of tabs and editors

Main register	Sub-register	Editor in the area of operations
 General	 Start page	 Chap. 4.13 'Start page  ' page 41
	 Devices and networking	 Chap. 6.2 "'Devices and networking' editor  ' page 77
	 Project overview	 Chap. 6.1 "'Project overview' editor  ' page 76
 PLC	 Device overview	 Chap. 8.2 ' Device overview (PLC)  ' page 206
	 Device properties	 Chap. 6.20 "'Device properties' editor (PLC)  ' page 112
	 Device configuration	 Chap. 6.14 "'Device configuration' editor (PLC)  ' page 103
	 Organisation block [OB]	 Chap. 8.5 'Block editor for program blocks (OB, FB, FC)    ' page 209
	 Function block [FB]	
	 Function [FC]	
	 Data block [DB]	 Chap. 8.8 'Block editor for data blocks (DB)  ' page 234
	 Structure block [UDT]	 Chap. 8.10 'Block editor for structure blocks (UDT)  ' page 239

Main register	Sub-register	Editor in the area of operations
	 System hardware configuration	 <i>Chap. 8.11.3 'System hardware configuration' page 248</i>
	 Standard project configuration	 <i>Chap. 8.11.4 'Variable tables and "Standard project configuration" page 251</i>
	 Variable table	 <i>Chap. 8.11.4 'Variable tables and "Standard project configuration" page 251</i>
	 Watch table	 <i>Chap. 8.23 'Watch table' page 285</i>
 Slave	 Device properties	 <i>Chap. 6.20 "'Device properties' editor (PLC) page 112</i>
	 Device configuration	 <i>Chap. 6.15 "'Device configuration' editor (slave) page 106</i>
 HMI	 Device overview	 <i>Chap. 9.2 "'Device overview' editor (HMI device) page 311</i>
	 Device properties	 <i>Chap. 6.20 "'Device properties' editor (PLC) page 112</i>
	 Standard variables table	 <i>Chap. 9.4 "'Standard variables table' editor page 315</i>
	 Image	 <i>Chap. 9.9 "'Image' editor page 320</i>

4.13 Start page

The major functions for project management are provided on the start page. The start page is always displayed. It cannot be closed.

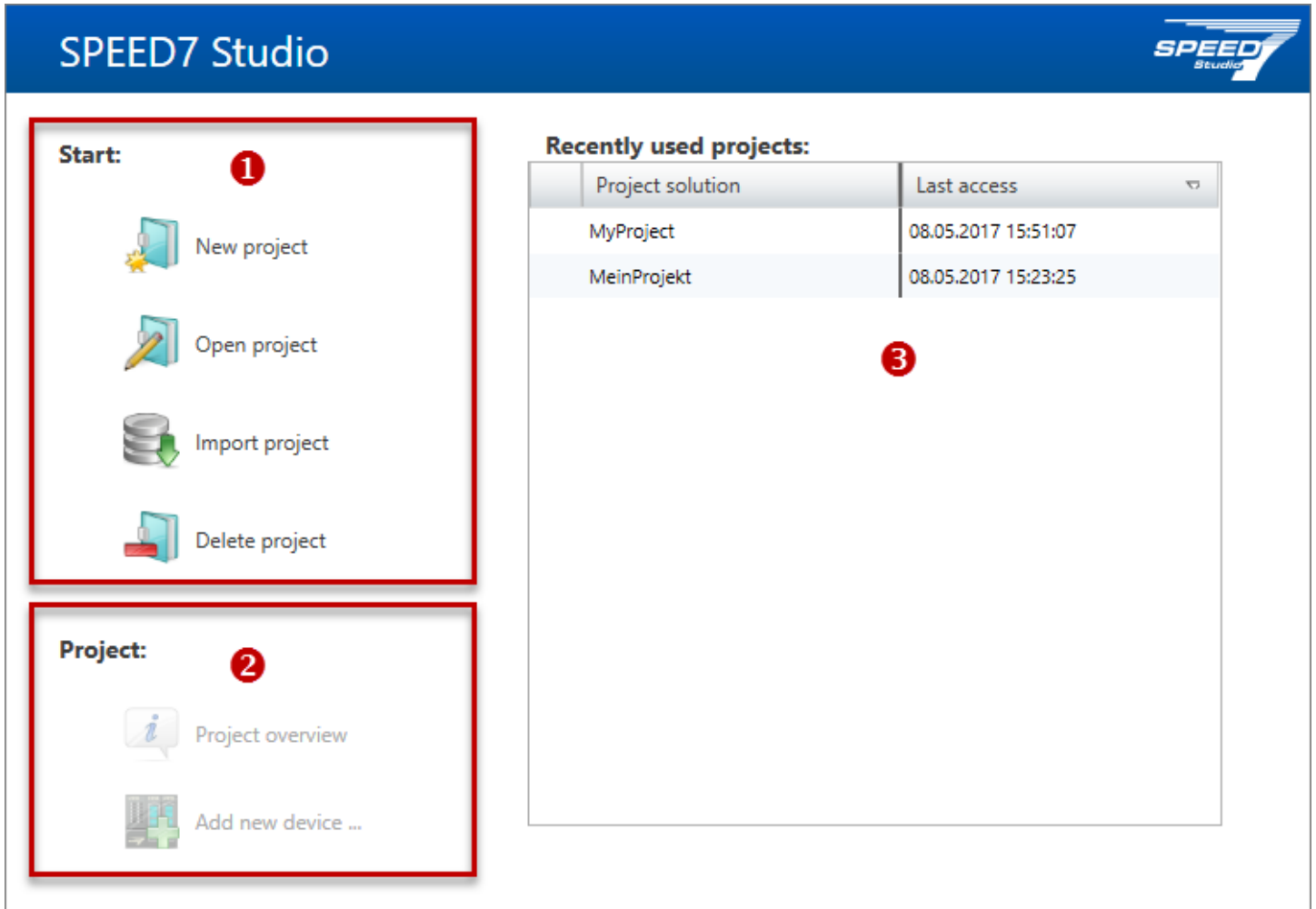










Fig. 10: Start page

- (1) Start
- (2) Project
- (3) Recently used projects

(1) Start




You can create a new project, open a stored project or delete projects.

- ➔ To create a new project, click on the icon .
 - ⇒ The dialogue window 'Create new project' will open. ↪ Chap. 5.2 'Create a new project ' page 65
- ➔ To open a stored project, click on the icon .
 - ⇒ The 'Open project' dialogue window will open. ↪ Chap. 5.3 'Open project ' page 66
- ➔ In order to import a project in VPP or VPZ file format, click on the icon .
 - ⇒ The 'Import project' dialogue window will open. ↪ Chap. 5.12 'Import project ' page 70

- ➔ To delete a project, click on the icon .
- ⇒ The 'Delete project' dialogue window will open. ↪ Chap. 5.9 'Delete project'  page 68

(2) Project

If a project is open, you can open the "Project overview" or add a new device.

- ➔ Click on the icon  to open the project overview. ↪ Chap. 6.1 "Project overview" editor  page 76
- or -
- Click on the icon  to add a new device. ↪ Chap. 6.3 'Add new device (PLC)' page 81

(3) Recently used projects

A list of recently opened projects appears.

'Project solution' – project name

'Source' – memory location of the project

'Last access' – date and time when the project has been opened or saved for the last time

- ➔ Double-click on the project you want to open.

4.14 Output range

Information on executed activities and background operations are displayed on the output range.

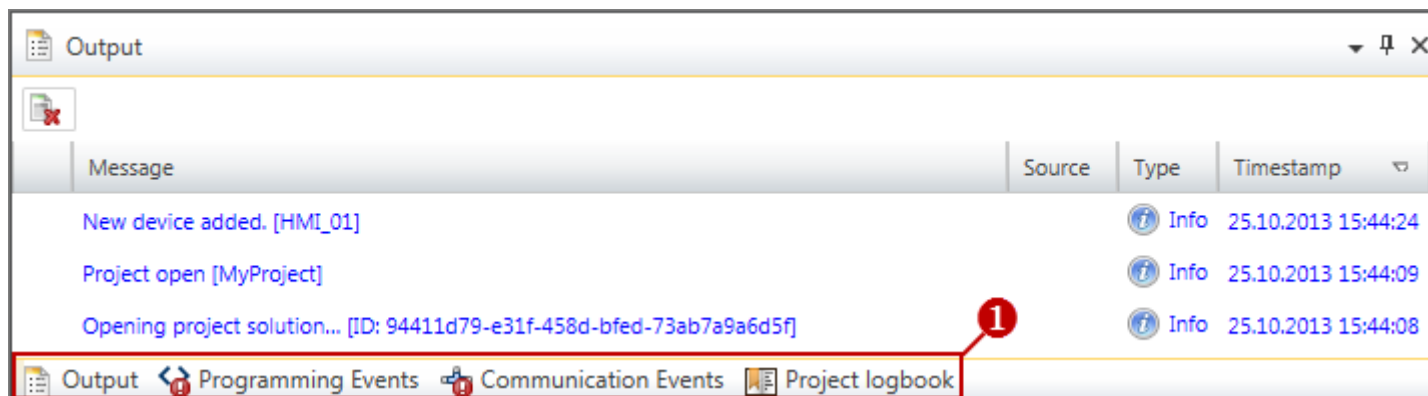


Fig. 11: Output range, "Output" example

(1) Switching to another view

(1) Switch to another view

In order to switch between different views, you must click on the desired output window at the lower screen edge, or select the appropriate menu command under 'View'.

4.14.1 Output

Information on executed activities and background operations are displayed in the "Output" window.

Output range > Communication events



Fig. 12: Output

(1) Delete all messages in the output window

4.14.2 Programming events

Information on events in the PLC program are provided in the "Programming events" window.

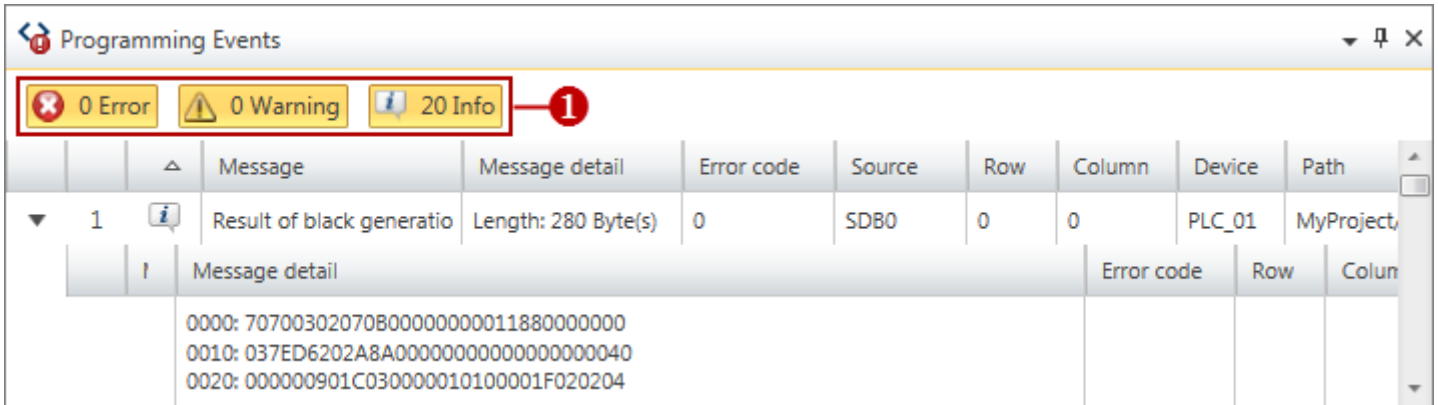


Fig. 13: Programming events

(1) Show/hide messages

Show/hide details

You can show or hide further details on a message:

- ▶ Hide message details
- ▼ Show message details

4.14.3 Communication events

Information on communication events between the programming device and the connected devices are provided in the "Communication events" window.

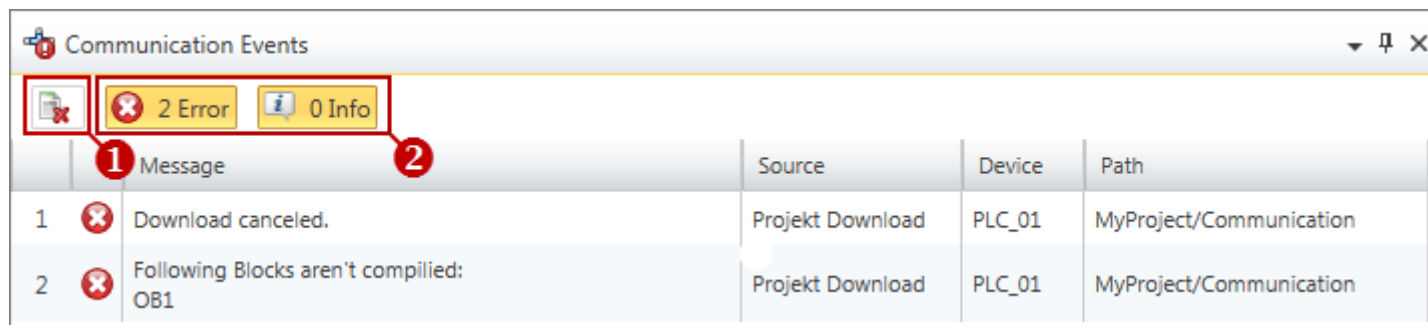


Fig. 14: Communication events

- (1) Delete all messages in the output window
- (2) Show/hide messages

4.14.4 Project logbook

All activities are chronologically listed in the "Project logbook" window.

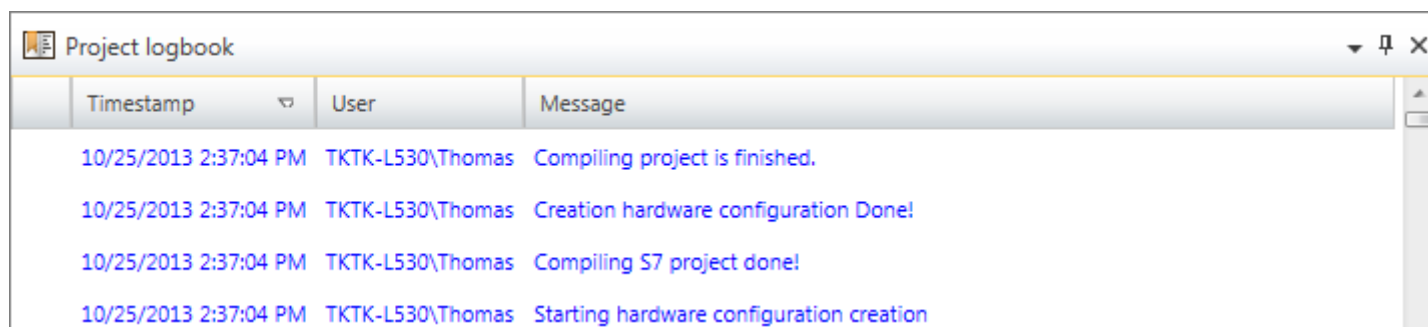


Fig. 15: Project logbook

4.14.5 Consistency messages

If you edit blocks, inconsistencies can arise, e.g. interface conflicts between two blocks. If you transfer inconsistent blocks into the control, this can lead to processing errors in the user program. In the "Consistency messages" window you are provided with information on block consistency.

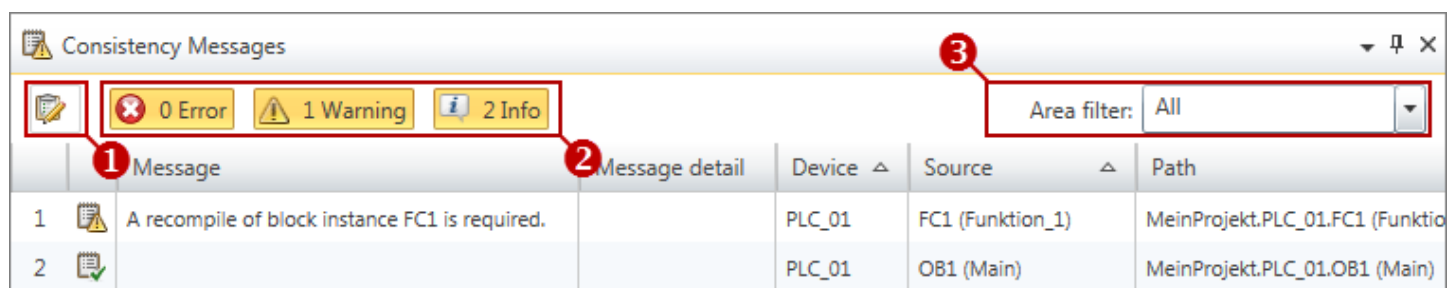



Fig. 16: Consistency messages

- (1) Restore consistency
- (2) Show/hide messages
- (3) Filter devices

Search / Replace in block

Restore consistency

- ➔ Click on the button  to remove existing inconsistencies.
- ⇒ A dialogue window will open. ↪ *Chap. 8.15 'Check and restore consistency' page 266*

Show problem area

- ➔ Double-click on a consistency message.
- ⇒ The inconsistent block is opened in the block editor and the problem area is shown.

4.14.6 EtherCAT messages

All EtherCAT messages of the individual devices are listed chronologically in this window.

Show EtherCAT messages

To open the "EtherCAT messages" window, select '*View → EtherCAT messages*'.

4.15 Search / Replace in block

You may search for and replace text or certain character patterns in the user program using the "Search in block" window.

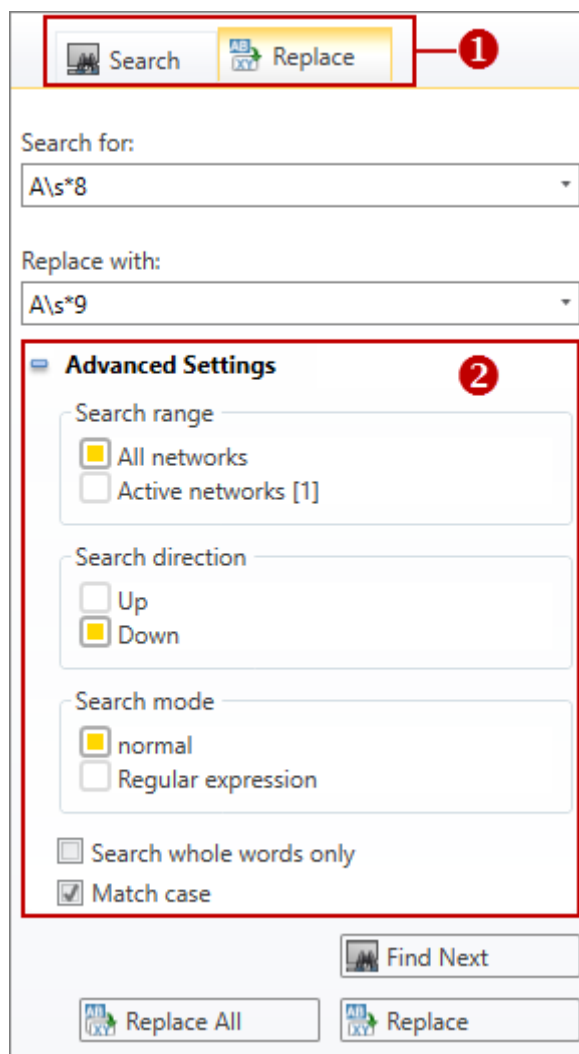




Fig. 17: Search / Replace in block

- (1) "Search" and "Replace" tabs
- (2) Advanced Configurations

Show Search / Replace

To open the "Search in block" window, select one of the following options:

- **Menu bar:** Select 'View → Search in block'.
- **Keyboard:** Press `[Ctrl]+[B]`.
- **Block editor:** Click on  (Search) or  (Replace).



(1) Switch to another view

You can switch between "Search" and "Replace" using the two tabs.






You must open the block editor  Chap. 8.4 'Editing program blocks' page 209 before you can search for or replace text.





Show/hide Advanced Configurations

-  Show/open Advanced Find options
-  Hide/close Advanced Find options

Search 

1.  Select the 'Search' tab.
2.  Enter the text that you want to search for in the input field 'Search for'.
3.  Click on 'Find Next'.

Replace 

1.  Select the 'Replace' tab.
2.  Enter the text that you want to search for and replace in the 'Search for' input field.
3.  Enter the new text in the 'Replace with' input field.
4.  Click 'Find Next' and carry out one of the following actions then:
 - If you want to replace the found text, click 'Replace'.
 - If you want to replace the text in the entire block, click 'Replace All'.
 - If you do not want to replace this text, but the next found text, click 'Find Next'.

(2) Search with advanced search settings

Here you can choose if only the current network or all networks of the block are to be searched.


You may select the search direction.

Moreover, you can choose if, in the search, only entire words are to be found and if the search is to be case-sensitive.

For the option 'Regular expressions', see below.

Search by means of regular expressions

You may use wildcard characters within so-called regular expressions to automate search or replace tasks.

-  Select the 'Regular expressions' option under 'Advanced Configurations'.

Example of wildcards:

Wildcard	Meaning	Search example	The following is found
	or	U UN	U UN
\s+	at least one white-space character	U\s+A0.0	U A0.0 U A0.0
\s*	any number of white-space characters	E\s*0.0	E0.0 E 0.0 E 0.0
()	Subexpression	(U UN)\s+(E A)\s*0.0	UN E 0.0 U A0.0 UN A 0.0



An overview of regular expressions is available in the Microsoft Developer Network at <https://msdn.microsoft.com/de-de>. Search for "Language elements for regular expressions" there.

4.16 Typed representation

A list of the control variables for "HMI images" is shown in the "Typed representation" window.

Variables name	Data type
bReset	Boolean
bSignal	Boolean
dwCounter	Numeric

Fig. 18: Typed representation

The variables of all elements of the current HMI image are shown in the table. ↗ Chap. 9.9 "Image" editor page 320

Show typed representation

If the window is not displayed, select 'View → Typed representation' or press [Ctrl]+[Shift]+[T].

You can use the mouse to drag control variables to the HMI image, thereby inserting a new element.

- ➔ Drag one variable from the "Typed representation" window to the desired position in the HMI image (drag & drop).
 - ⇒ A new element is inserted in the HMI image. The control variable is entered in the element's input field.

4.17 CPU control centre

In the CPU control centre, the current operating mode and other control data are shown. You can also control the CPU here.

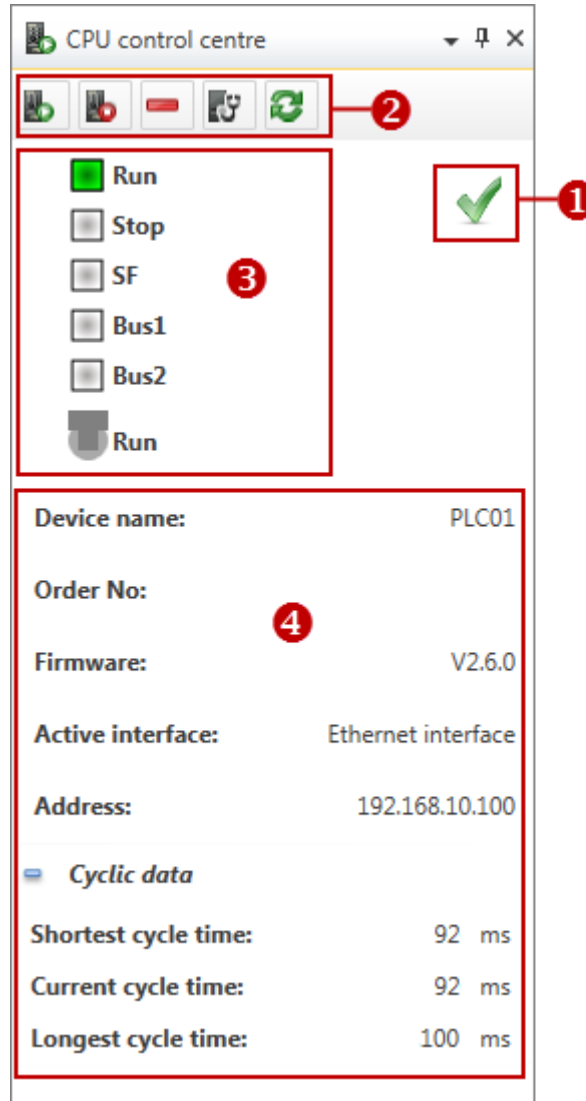


Fig. 19: CPU control centre

- (1) Communication status
- (2) Control CPU
- (3) Operating mode
- (4) CPU data

Show CPU control centre

If the CPU control centre is not displayed, select 'View → CPU control centre' or press [Ctrl]+[Shift]+[U].

Select CPU

If, in the project, a control is configured and a communication connection has been created with this control, you receive the current information from the CPU and can control the CPU.

If several controls are configured in the project, highlight the control that is to be shown and controlled in the CPU control centre.

(1) Communication status

Here you are provided with information on the communication connection between the programming device and the connected control:



Devices are connected – The current information from the CPU is shown.



Information is updated



Communication error – There is no current information from the CPU.

(2) Control CPU

You can control the connected control:



Start CPU – The CPU is switched to operating mode RUN.



Stop CPU – The CPU is switched to operating mode STOP.



Memory reset of CPU – The CPU is returned to its initial state. [↗ Chap. 6.32 'Memory reset' page 150](#)



Open component state – Here you are provided with further information on the connected control. [↗ Chap. 6.30 "Component state" editor page 139](#)



Refresh view – The information is read again from the connected control, e.g. after removal of a communication error.

(3) Show operating mode

Here, the LEDs and the switch setting of the connected CPU are shown. The display is constantly updated. If there is no communication connection or there is a communication error, no modes are shown.

LED/switch	Operating mode of the CPU
'Run'	RUN
'Stop'	STOP
'SF'	Collection error
'Bus1'	Bus error interface 1
'Bus2'	Bus error interface 2
'Run/Stop/MRES'	Current setting of the operating mode switch: RUN, STOP or memory reset

(4) CPU data

Here, further data concerning the connected control are shown:

'Device name' – Device name of the control [↗ Chap. 6.5 'Adding a new device \(slave\)' page 86](#)

'Order number' – Order number of the control (CPU)

'Firmware' – Firmware version of the control (CPU)

'Active interface' – communication connection with the control [↗ Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings \(PLC\)' page 113](#)

'Address' – IP address (Ethernet connection) or MPI-address (serial connection) of the control

'Cyclic data'



Show/open cyclic data



Hide/close cyclic data

'Shortest cycle time' – Shortest measured program processing cycle since the last transition from STOP to RUN (time base: milliseconds)

'Current cycle time' – Duration of the most recently run program processing cycle (time base: milliseconds)

'Longest cycle time' – Longest measured program processing cycle since the last transition from STOP to RUN (time base: milliseconds)



This and other CPU data are also shown in the 'component state' editor.
 ↪ Chap. 6.30 "Component state" editor  page 139

4.18 Mouse and keyboard operation

SPEED7 Studio offers various operating options with mouse and keyboard.













- The arrangement and size of the windows can be adjusted:
 ↪ Chap. 4.18.1 'Adjusting the user interface' page 52
- Functions can be accessed via the context menu:
 ↪ Chap. 4.18.2 'Mouse operation – context menu' page 53
- Objects can be added to the project using the mouse:
 ↪ Chap. 4.18.3 'Mouse operation – drag & drop' page 54
- Many functions can be accessed via the menu bar, toolbar or keyboard:
 ↪ Chap. 4.20 'Menu and keyboard commands' page 61

4.18.1 Adjusting the user interface

There are various options of adjusting the user interface.

Closing windows which are not required

If you want to enlarge a certain window of the user interface, you can close another window, see the following table. The closed windows can be opened at any time.

Icon and menu command		Keyboard command
	'View → Project tree'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[P]
	'View → Catalog'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[C]
	'View → Properties'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[M]
	'View → Typed representation'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[T]
	'View → Output'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[O]
	'View → Programming events'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[E]
	'View → Consistency messages'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[K]
	'View → Communication events'	[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[C]
	'View → Project logbook'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[H]
	'View → CPU control centre'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[U]
	'View → EtherCAT messages'	—
	'View → Logic analysis'	—

Enlarging / reducing the area of operations

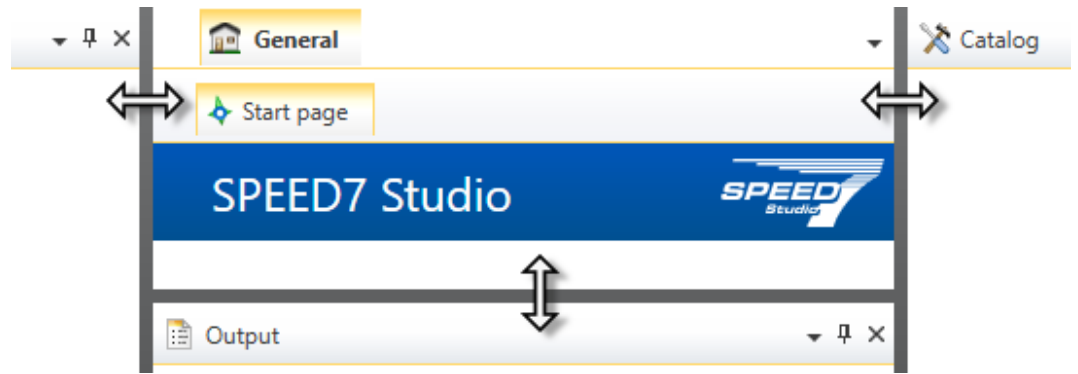


Fig. 20: Changing the size of the area of operations

➔ If you want to change the size of the area of operations, you must drag the left, right or lower frame of the area of operations.

Adjusting divided edit windows

There are edit windows which are divided into two sections e. g. the Device topology (top section) and Device details (bottom) section in the 'Devices and networking' editor.

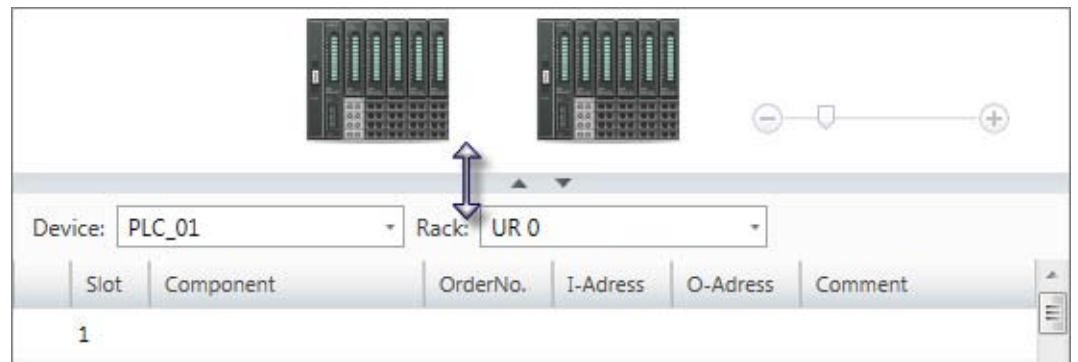


Fig. 21: Adjusting the edit window

➔ Draw a line between both sections so that you can shift them.

- or -

Click on the ▲ ▼ buttons in order to show or hide a section.

Changing the zoom factor

Many edit windows have a slider which is used to change the zoom factor.



➔ Move the slider or click on '+' or '-' to change the zoom factor.

⇒ The current zoom factor is displayed as percentage value at the bottom right of the area of operations.

4.18.2 Mouse operation – context menu

Functions and commands for many objects and elements of the *SPEED7 Studio* user interface are provided via the context menu. A right-click with the mouse button on an object or element will open the corresponding context menu.

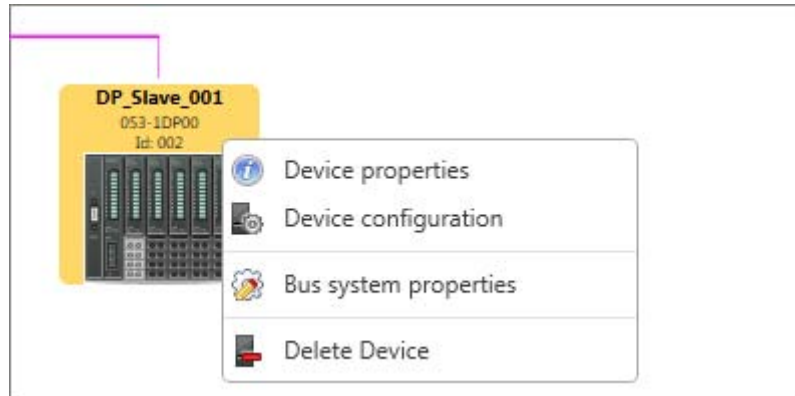


Fig. 22: Example of a context menu for a device

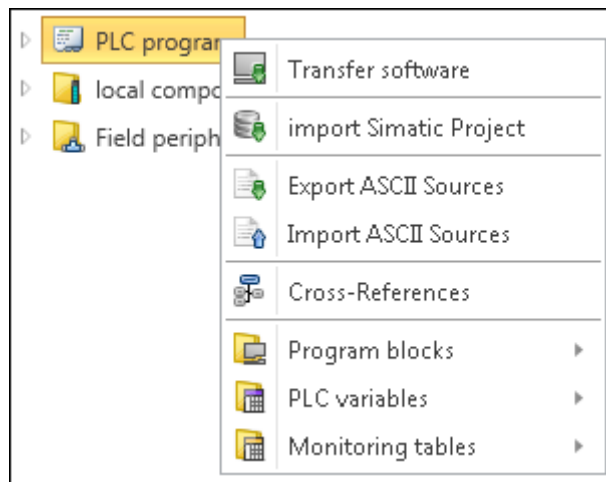


Fig. 23: Example of a context menu in the project tree

4.18.3 Mouse operation – drag & drop

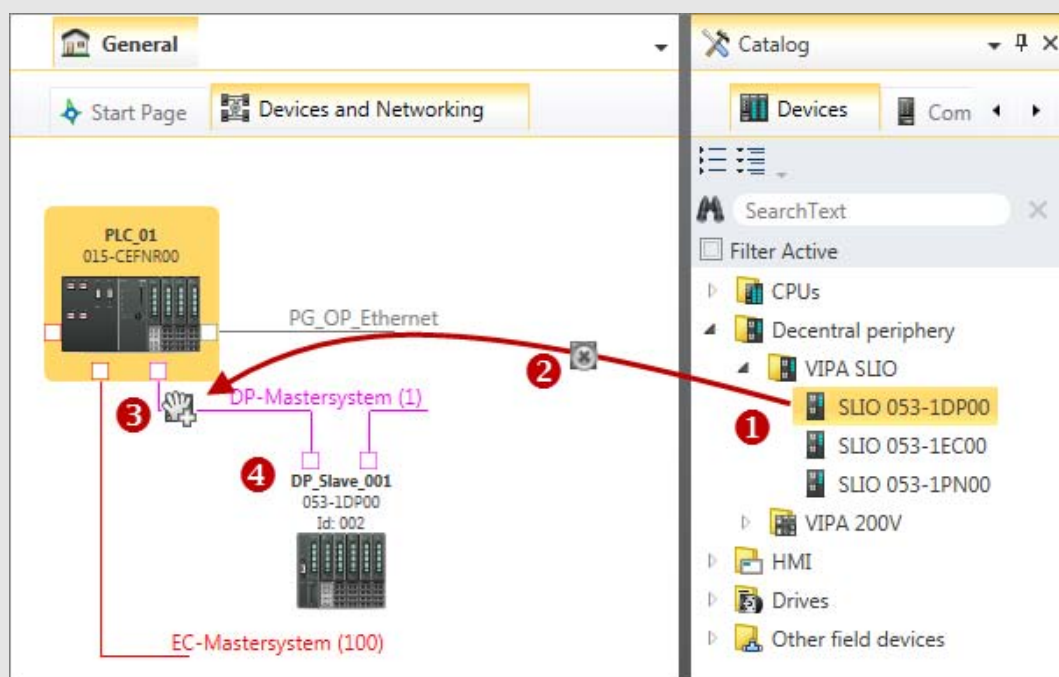
If you want to add objects to the project using the mouse, you can drag objects from the catalog to a suitable place in the area of operations and drop them there. This approach is referred to as "drag & drop".



This mouse pointer is displayed while you drag the object.



The object can be dropped at any position in the area of operations where the mouse pointer changes.

Example of adding an object by drag & drop

- (1) Select the desired object (hold left mouse button down)
- (2) Drag the object
- (3) Drop the object at a suitable place (release the mouse button)
- (4) The object is added

4.19 Help and support during editing

4.19.1 Overview

You will get the following help and support when working with *SPEED7 Studio*:

- Messages are displayed.
- Changes in the project and the input fields are marked.
- Points where objects can be added are highlighted.
- In many input fields, the admissible value range is monitored.
- When entering a symbol name, it will be checked whether it has been allocated already.
- Information on interface elements and input fields is displayed (tool tips).
- Context help can be accessed, e.g. regarding the current editor or regarding menu functions.

4.19.2 Messages

Messages regarding accomplished activities and background operations are displayed. Different colours differentiate between status messages and error messages.

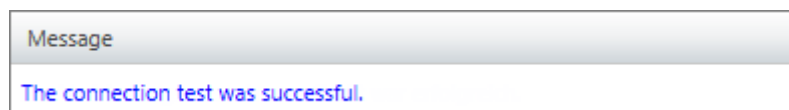
Messages in the output range

Fig. 24: Example of a status message

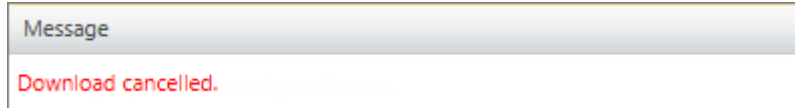


Fig. 25: Example of an error message

Messages in the status line



Fig. 26: Example of a status message



Fig. 27: Example of an error message

Messages in the dialogue window

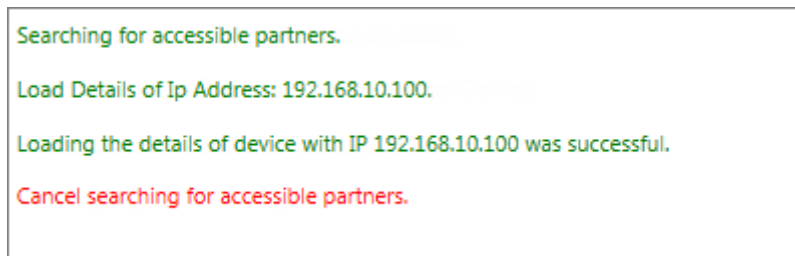


Fig. 28: Example of different successive messages

4.19.3 Markings of changes and states

Objects in the project tree

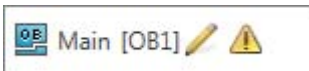





Fig. 29: Example

Symbols behind an object in the project tree provide indications of the object state.

Icon	Meaning	Example
	A new object was added	A new device was added. This icon is no longer shown once the project has been saved.
	Object was changed	A block was processed. This icon is no longer shown once the project has been saved.
	Object must be compiled	A block was changed and has not yet been compiled. The user program is not consistent.
	Error in the object	During compilation, a syntax error was recognised in a block.
	Consistency message: Warning	When checking the consistency, a problem was recognised in a block. The block needs to be recompiled.
	Consistency message: Error	When checking the consistency, an error was recognised in a block. The error needs to be resolved and the block needs to be recompiled.

Icon	Meaning	Example
	Comparison is error free	The comparison of an object in the project with the control is error free.
	Comparison is not error free	The comparison of an object in the project with the control is not error free.
	Watch object is active	The "Watch block" function is switched on.

Changes in an input field [↪ Chap. 4.19.5 'Input fields' page 57](#)

4.19.4 Points where objects can be added

Colours or highlights show the positions where elements can be added.

Points where components can be added

If you select a component in the catalog, the admitted positions where you can add the component are marked in green in the device configuration.

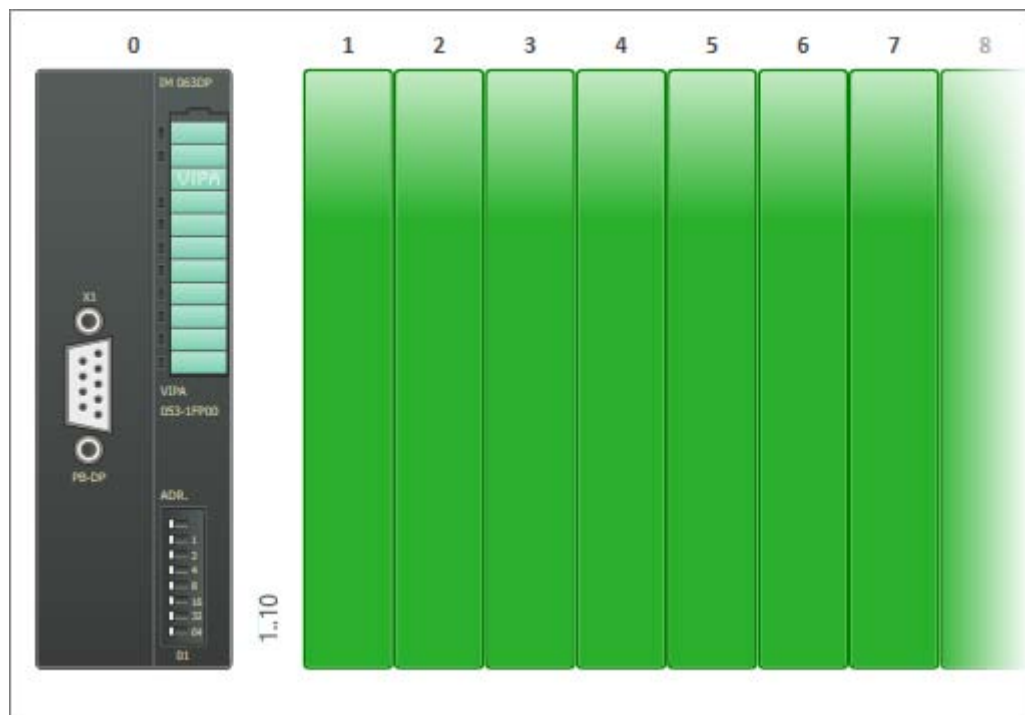


Fig. 30: Example of positions where components can be added (green marking)

4.19.5 Input fields

Admissible value range

Many input fields check already during input whether the admitted value range is complied with. Incorrect values are automatically corrected to the next possible value which is admitted.

Changing default values

If you overwrite the standard value (also: presetting, default value) with another value in the input or selection field, the frame of the input field changes.

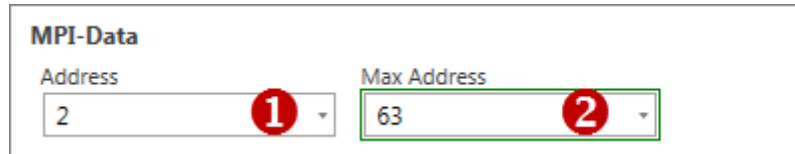


Fig. 31: Example of default value and changed value

- (1) Default value: grey frame
- (2) Changed value: green double frame

4.19.6 Tool tips

Tool tips are brief descriptive texts with information on the operating and input elements.

➔ If you rest the mouse pointer on an element, the tool tip is displayed.



Fig. 32: Example of a push button tool tip

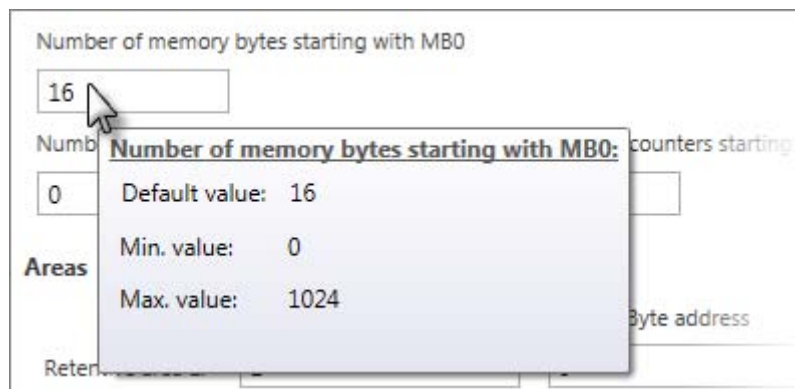


Fig. 33: Example of an input field tool tip

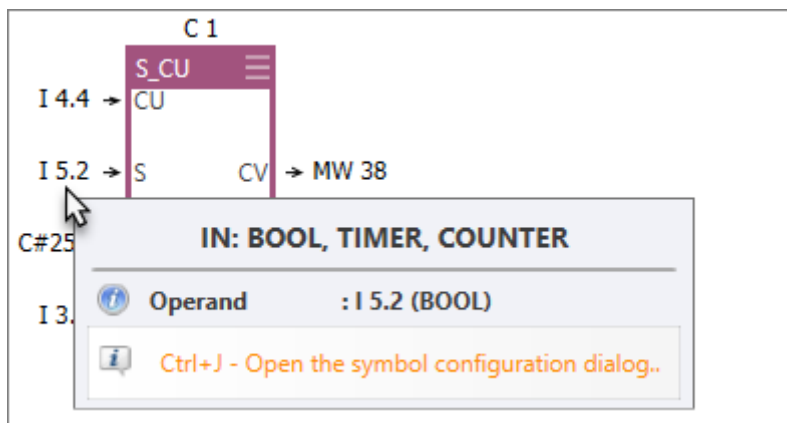


Fig. 34: Example of an operand field tool tip

4.19.7 Automatic completion

When you enter declarations or instructions, a selection list with input suggestions and other information will be shown as a tool tip. With each additional letter you enter, the suggestions are narrowed down.

Examples of input and selection fields

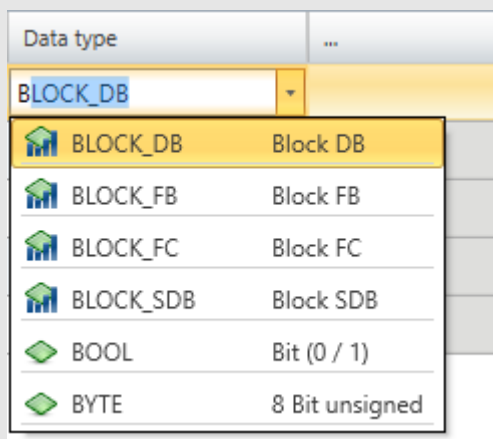


Fig. 35: Input suggestions in the selection field 'Data type' (input: B)

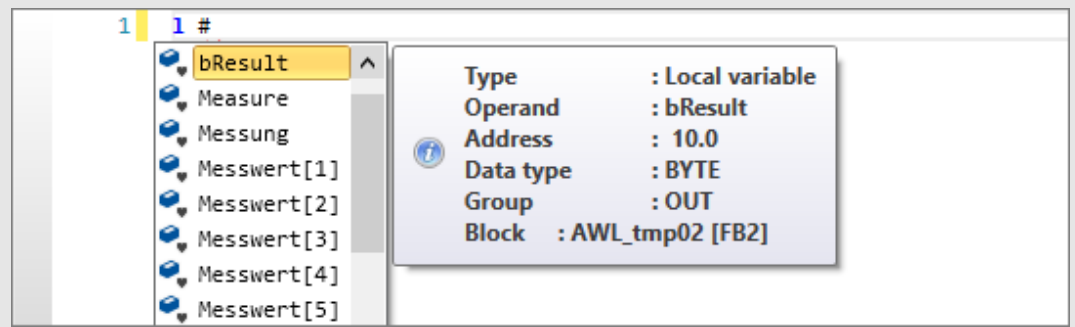
Examples for the input of instructions

Fig. 36: Input suggestions for local variables in the block editor (input: #)

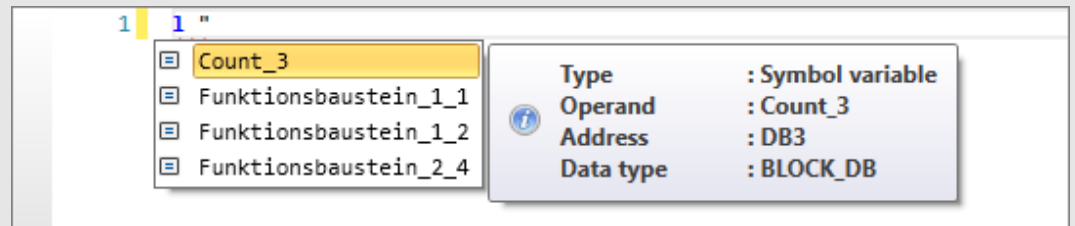


Fig. 37: Input suggestions for symbol names in the block editor (input: ")

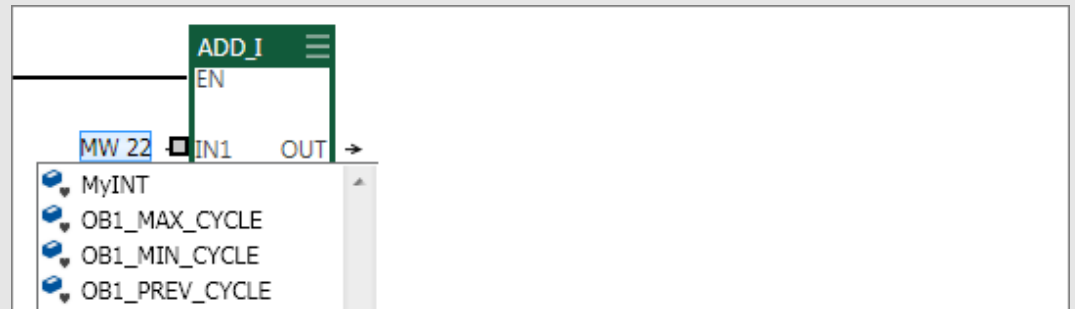


Fig. 38: Input suggestions for the input IN1 (data type INT) for the functional element ADD_I

4.19.8 Check symbol name

When entering a symbol name which has been allocated already, an error message is displayed.

4.19.9 Calling up and using help ?

SPEED7 Studio help contains the complete software description. Help is context-sensitive, i.e. it refers to a certain interface element or a certain section.

Calling up help with [F1]

1. Click in the section (e.g. project tree, editor) for which you need information.
2. Press [F1] to call up help.
 - ⇒ The help window will open.

Structure of the help window

The navigation frame is located at the left side of the help window. It contains three registers:





- Contents: Table of contents
- Index: Searching keywords in the index directory
- Search: Full-text search

The help topic is displayed at the right side of the help window.














4.20 Menu and keyboard commands

↳ Chap. 8.29 'Keyboard commands in the block editor' page 310

↳ Chap. 9.16 'Keyboard commands in "Image" editor (HMI)' page 334





Icon and menu command	Keyboard command	Description
File		
 'File → New project'	[Ctrl]+[N]	↳ Chap. 5.2 'Create a new project  ' page 65
 'File → Open project'	[Ctrl]+[O]	↳ Chap. 5.3 'Open project  ' page 66
 'File → Close project'	[Ctrl]+[W]	↳ Chap. 5.4 'Closing a project  ' page 67
 'File → Save'	[Ctrl]+[S]	↳ Chap. 5.6 'Saving a project  ' page 68
 'File → Save as'	[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[S]	↳ Chap. 5.7 'Save local project as  ' page 68
 'File → Delete project'	[Ctrl]+[L]	↳ Chap. 5.9 'Delete project  ' page 68
 'File → Import project'	[Ctrl]+[F12]	↳ Chap. 5.12 'Import project  ' page 70
 'File → Print'	—	↳ Chap. 5.13 'Print  ' page 71
 'File → Print preview'	—	↳ Chap. 5.14 'Print Preview  ' page 74
— 'File → Recently opened projects'	—	
 'File → Exit'	[Alt]+[F4]	↳ Chap. 4.3 'End SPEED7 Studio  ' page 23
View		
 'View → Project tree'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[P]	↳ Chap. 4.9 'Project tree  ' page 28
 'View → Catalog'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[C]	↳ Chap. 4.10 'Catalog  ' page 34
 'View → Search in block'	[Ctrl]+[B]	↳ Chap. 4.15 'Search / Replace in block   ' page 46
 'View → Properties'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[M]	↳ Chap. 4.11 'Properties  ' page 37
 'View → Typed representation'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[T]	↳ Chap. 4.16 'Typed representation' page 49
 'View → Output'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[O]	↳ Chap. 4.14.1 'Output  ' page 43
 'View → Programming events'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[E]	↳ Chap. 4.14.2 'Programming events' page 44
 'View → Consistency messages'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[K]	↳ Chap. 4.14.5 'Consistency messages  ' page 45
 'View → Communication events'	[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[C]	↳ Chap. 4.14.3 'Communication events  ' page 44
 'View → Project logbook'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[H]	↳ Chap. 4.14.4 'Project logbook  ' page 45

Menu and keyboard commands

Icon and menu command	Keyboard command	Description								
 'View → EtherCAT messages'	—	↪ Chap. 4.14.6 'EtherCAT messages' page 46								
 'View → Logic analysis'	—	↪ Chap. 8.24 'Logic analysis  ' page 290								
 'View → CPU control centre'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[U]	↪ Chap. 4.17 'CPU control centre  ' page 49								
Language										
— 'Language → German'	—	↪ Chap. 4.4 'Select language' page 23								
— 'Language → English'	—									
Theme										
— 'Theme → Small font size'	—									
— 'Theme → Normal font size'	—									
— 'Theme → Large font size'	—									
Simulation										
 'Simulation → Start PLC simulation'	—	↪ Chap. 8.17 'Simulate user program  'Simulation → End PLC simulation'	—							
 'Simulation → PLC simulation configurations'	[Alt]+[I]	↪ Chap. 8.17.1 'PLC simulation settings  Extra								
 'Extras → Install device description file (PROFIBUS – GSD)'	—	↪ Chap. 6.11 'PROFIBUS – GSD  'Extras → Install device description file (PROFIBUS – GSDML)'	—	↪ Chap. 6.12 'PROFINET – GSDML  'Extras → Install device description file (EtherCAT – ESI)'	—	↪ Chap. 6.13 'EtherCAT – ESI  'Extras → Install block library'	—	↪ Chap. 8.28 'Install block library  'Extras → Edit Ethernet partners'	—	↪ Chap. 6.21 'Search for accessible partners' page 116
 'Extras → Configurations'	—	↪ Chap. 4.5 'Select syntax language (mnemonics)' page 24 ↪ Chap. 4.6 'Select interfaces' page 24								
Project (is shown only if a project is open)										
 'Project → Collapse project tree'	—	↪ Chap. 4.9 'Project tree  'Project → Expand project tree'	—							
 'Project → Collapse catalog tree'	—	↪ Chap. 4.10 'Catalog  'Project → Expand catalog tree'	—							
 'Project → Collapse property tree'	—	↪ Chap. 4.11 'Properties  'Project → Expand property tree'	—							
 'Project → Project overview'	—	↪ Chap. 6.1 "'Project overview" editor  62								

Icon and menu command	Keyboard command	Description
 'Project → Devices and networking'	—	↪ Chap. 6.2 "'Devices and networking' editor  page 77
 'Project → Add new device'	[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[N]	↪ Chap. 6.3 'Add new device (PLC)' page 81
 'Project → Consistency test/restoration'	[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[K]	↪ Chap. 8.15 'Check and restore consistency  page 266
 'Project → Compile'	[F6]	↪ Chap. 8.16.1 'Compile  page 268
 'Project → Compile all'	[Shift]+[F6]	↪ Chap. 8.16.2 'Compile all  page 268
 'Project → Transfer'	[Shift]+[F9]	↪ Chap. 5.10 'Transfer project  page 69
 'Project → Export'	[F12]	↪ Chap. 5.11 'Export project  page 70
 'File → Print'	—	↪ Chap. 5.13 'Print  page 71
 'File → Print preview'	—	↪ Chap. 5.14 'Print Preview  page 74
Device (is shown only if a control is present in the project)		
 'Device → Device overview'	—	↪ Chap. 8.2 'Device overview (PLC)  page 206 ↪ Chap. 9.2 "'Device overview' editor (HMI device)  page 311
 'Device → Device properties'	—	↪ Chap. 6.20 "'Device properties' editor (PLC)  page 112
 'Device → Device configuration'	—	↪ Chap. 6.14 "'Device configuration' editor (PLC)  page 103
 'Device → Address overview'	—	↪ Chap. 8.12 'Address overview  page 254
 'Device → Transfer all'	[F9]	↪ Chap. 8.18.3 'Transfer all  page 273
 'Device → Transfer user program'	—	↪ Chap. 8.18.2 'Transfer user program  page 272
 'Device → Transfer hardware configuration'	—	↪ Chap. 8.18.1 'Transfer hardware configuration  page 271
 'Device → Export all (WLD)'	—	↪ Chap. 6.26 'Export all (WLD)  page 137
 'Device → Export user program (WLD)'	—	↪ Chap. 6.27 'Export user program (WLD)  page 138
 'Device → Export hardware configuration (WLD)'	—	↪ Chap. 6.28 'Export hardware configuration (WLD)  page 138
 'Device → Copy RAM to ROM'	—	↪ Chap. 6.29 'Copy RAM to ROM' page 138
 'Device → Component state'	[Ctrl]+[D]	↪ Chap. 6.30 "'Component state' editor  page 139
 'Device → Set time'	—	↪ Chap. 6.31 'Set time  page 148
 'Device → Memory reset'	—	↪ Chap. 6.32 'Memory reset  page 150
 'Device → Load blocks from device'	—	↪ Chap. 8.19 'Load blocks from the device  page 274
 'Device → Compare blocks'	—	↪ Chap. 8.19 'Load blocks from the device  page 274

Menu and keyboard commands

Icon and menu command	Keyboard command	Description
Window		
 'Window → Switch all ToolWindows'	—	
 'Window → Close all documents'	—	
Help		
 'Help → View help'	[F1]	↵ Chap. 4.19.9 'Calling up and using help ?' page 60
 'Help → Info'	—	↵ Chap. 2.4 'Software identification' page 17

5 Managing and editing projects

5.1 Project

Projects contain the configuration data of the devices which are required for the operation of a machine or system, e.g. control and components, visualisation devices, I/O components. Projects also contain the configurations of the communication connections as well as the control program.

- New projects can be created and existing projects can be edited.
- Projects can be renamed or deleted.
- Projects can be exported and imported so that they can be used on different computers.
- Transfer the completed project to the control together with the user program and activate it there.

5.2 Create a new project 📁

Make sure that no other project is open.

1. ➔ Select one of the following options if you want to create a new project:

- **Menu bar:** Select *'File → New project'*.
 - **Toolbar:** Click on 📁.
 - **Keyboard:** Press *[Ctrl]+[P]*.
 - **"Start page":** Click on *'New project'*.
- ⇒ The dialogue window *'Create new project'* will open.

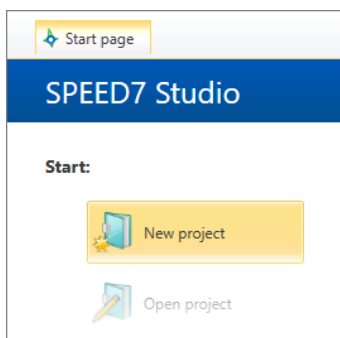


Fig. 39: New project via the "Start page"

Open project

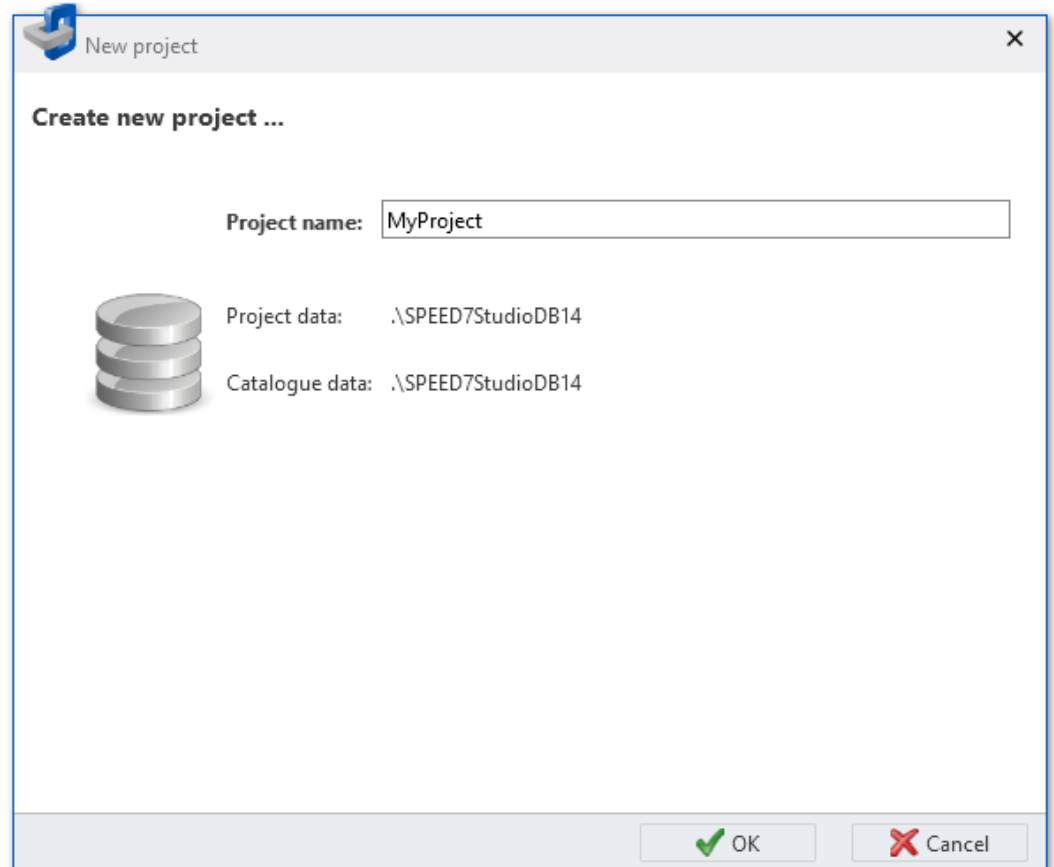




Fig. 40: Dialogue window "Create new project"

2. ➤ 'Project name' – Enter the name under which the project data are to be saved.
3. ➤ Click on 'OK'.
 - ⇒ The project is created and displayed in the project tree. The 'Devices and networking' editor will open. Device templates and components are now available in the 'Catalog'.

5.3 Open project

It is not possible to edit several projects at the same time. It is possible to run *SPEED7 Studio* simultaneously several times on one PC if you want to use it for various projects.

1. ➤ Select one of the following options if you want to open a project:
 - **Menu bar:** Select 'File → Open project'.
 - **Toolbar:** Click on .
 - **Keyboard:** Press [Ctrl]+[O].
 - **"Start page **: Click on 'Open project' or double-click on the desired project in 'Recently used projects'.
 - ⇒ The 'Open project' dialogue window will open.
2. ➤ You can choose whether all the projects or only the most recently used projects are to be shown in the dialogue window.
3. ➤ Select the desired project.

4. ➔ Click on 'Open'.
 - ⇒ The project is displayed in the project tree. Device templates and components are now available in the 'Catalog'. Any other open project will be closed.

5.3.1 Migration for symbolic programming

From version 1.8 of *SPEED7 Studio*, the operands can optionally be shown as symbolic or absolute in the block editor. Projects which were created before version 1.8 must be converted (migrated) into the new format. In the process, symbols are automatically created for all absolute addresses used in the project for which no symbol yet exists.

If you open a project which was created with *SPEED7 Studio* before version 1.8, the migration for symbolic programming dialogue window opens. In it, you can select what settings should be used for migration and further processing of the project.

1. ➔ Select the type of addressing (see [↗ Chap. 4.7 'Symbolic and absolute addressing' page 24](#)):
 - 'Symbolic' – Displays symbolic addresses upon entry and upon observation, e.g. "MySymbol"
 - 'Absolute' – Displays absolute addresses upon entry and upon observation, e.g. E0.1, MW8, FB1



New symbols are still created if you select the "absolute" type of addressing.

2. ➔ Select symbol format (see [↗ Chap. 4.7 'Symbolic and absolute addressing' page 24](#)):
 - 'User-defined prefix' – In the input field, define the character string which will be placed at the beginning of an automatically generated variable.
 - 'Hungarian notation' – In "Hungarian notation", a letter and an underscore are placed at the beginning of an automatically generated variable in order to indicate the data width of the operands:
3. ➔ Click on 'Next'.
 - ⇒ The migration process is started. Symbols are automatically created for all absolute addresses used in the project for which no symbol yet exists.

Carry out migration at a later point in time

Click on 'Cancel' in order to carry out the migration at a later point in time. The dialogue window for migration for symbolic programming is shown again the next time you open the project.

5.4 Closing a project

- ➔ Select one of the following options if you want to close an open project:
 - **Menu bar:** Select 'File → Close project'.
 - **Keyboard:** Press [Ctrl]+[F4].

After you have made changes to the project, a dialogue window will open, where you can select whether to save or ignore the changes.

- ⇒ The project is closed and the 'Start page' is displayed.

Delete project

5.5 Editing a project


You can select devices from the catalog and add them to the project tree. Then you can access the functions available in for devices and project slave components.

↳ Chap. 6 'Selecting and configuring devices and components' page 76

5.6 Saving a project

Save the open project in order to save all project data on the data carrier.

↳ Select one of the following options if you want to save a project data:

- **Menu bar:** Select 'Saving → file ...'.
- **Toolbar:** Click on .
- **Keyboard:** Press [Ctrl]+[S].

⇒ Project data are saved.

5.7 Save local project as

1. ↳ Select one of the following options if you want to save the project data under a different project name:

- **Menu bar:** Select 'File → Save as'.
- **Keyboard:** Press [Ctrl]+[Alt]+[S].

⇒ A dialogue window for the input of the new project name will open.

2. ↳ Enter the new project name in the input field and click on 'Save as'.

⇒ Project data are saved under a new name.


5.8 Rename project


The project has to be open.


1. ↳ Right-click with the mouse button on the project name in the project tree and select 'Rename project' or press [F2].

2. ↳ Enter the new project name in the input field.

3. ↳ Confirm your input with [Enter].

⇒ The  icon indicates that you have already changed but not yet saved the project name.

4. ↳ Save the project. ↳ Chap. 5.6 'Saving a project ' page 68

⇒ The project is saved under the new name, and the  symbol is no longer displayed.

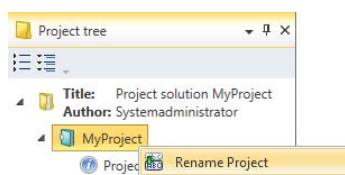


Fig. 41: "Rename project" context menu

5.9 Delete project


Delete any project which is no longer needed.

**NOTICE!****Data loss!**

All data of the deleted project are removed from the data carrier!

- Make sure that the project data are no longer needed.

➤ Select one of the following options if you want to delete a project:

- **Menu bar:** Select *'File → Delete project'*.
- **Keyboard:** Press *[Ctrl]+[L]*.
- **"Start page ":** Click on *'Delete projects'*.

⇒ The *'Delete project'* dialogue window will open.

Delete project

1. ➤ Right-click on the project and select *'Delete'*.

- or -

Select the desired project using the left mouse button and click on the *'Delete'* button.

⇒ A dialogue window will open, in which you can select whether the project should be deleted or not.

2. ➤ Click on *'Yes'*.

⇒ The project is deleted. All project data are removed from the data carrier.

Delete multiple projects

1. ➤ Press and hold the *[Ctrl]* key and click on the projects you want to delete.

- or -

If you want to delete several projects from one row, press and hold the *[Shift]* key and click on the first and the last projects in the row.

2. ➤ Right-click on a marked project and select *'Delete'*.

- or -

Click on the *'Delete'* button.

⇒ A dialogue window will open, in which you can select whether the projects should be deleted or not.

3. ➤ Click on *'Yes'*.

⇒ The projects are deleted. All project data are removed from the data carrier.



5.10 Transfer project 

Transfer a completely edited project together with the user program and the visualisation to the connected devices.

The project has to be open.

Import project

Create a communication connection to the control. ↪ *Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings (PLC)' page 113*

1. ➤ Select one of the following options if you want to transfer a project:
 - **Menu bar:** Select *'Transfer → project ...'*.
 - **Keyboard:** Press *[F9]*.
 - **"Project overview **": Click on .

⇒ The *'Transfer project'* dialogue window will open.
2. ➤ Highlight the devices for which you want to transfer the project data in the first column of the list.
3. ➤ Click on *'Check'*.

⇒ The communication connection is checked. If no connection can be established to the selected devices, check if the connection cables are connected correctly. If required, check the communication settings. ↪ *Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings (PLC)' page 113*
4. ➤ Click on *'Transfer'*.

⇒ The project data for the selected devices are transferred to these devices.

The dialogue window will show if the transfer has been successful or if an error occurred.
5. ➤ Click on *'Close'*.

5.11 Export project


Projects can be exported and imported e.g. to use them on different computers. The open project including the user program and the visualisation can be saved in VPP format in an export file. This export file can be transferred and imported to another computer.

The project to be exported has to be open.

1. ➤ Select one of the following options if you want to export a project:
 - **Menu bar:** Select *'Project → Export'*.
 - **Keyboard:** Press *[F12]*.
 - **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the project and, from the context menu, select *'Export'*.

⇒ The *'Export project'* dialogue window will open.
2. ➤ Select a directory from the *'Export directory'* and enter a file name.
3. ➤ Click on *'Export'*.

⇒ The export process is started. All project data are saved in the export file (VPZ data format).

For the import of the export file: ↪ *Chap. 5.12 'Import project * page 70

5.12 Import project

Projects can be exported and imported e.g. to use them on different computers. You can import an already created export file.

For creating an export file: ↪ *Chap. 5.11 'Export project * page 70


If you want to import a Simatic project: ↪ *Chap. 8.25 'Import S7 program * page 300

1. ➤ Select one of the following options if you want to import a project:
 - **Menu bar:** Select *'File → Project import...'*.
 - **Keyboard:** Press *[Ctrl]+[F12]*.
 ⇒ The *'Import project'* dialogue window will open.
2. ➤ Select the directory and the export file (VPP or VPZ file format) from the *'Choose project file'*.
3. ➤ Click on *'Import'*.
 - ⇒ The import process is started. Project data are imported. The individual steps and results are shown in the dialogue window.
4. ➤ Click on *'Done'*.

5.13 Print

You can print the project, parts of the project or single areas. In the print preview, you can check the layout.

Print project

- Select one of the following options:
 - **Menu bar:** Select *'File → Print'* or *'Project → Print'*.
 - **Toolbar:** Click on .
 ⇒ The *'Print'* dialogue window will open. ↪ *Chap. 5.13.1 'General print configurations' page 71*

Print single area

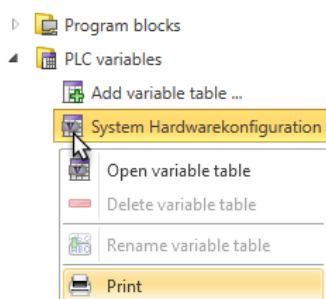


Fig. 42: Print area (example: variable table)

- In the project tree, click with the right mouse button onto the desired area and select *'Print'*.

The following areas can be printed:

- Project
- Control
- PLC program
- Program block
- Variable table
- HMI device
- HMI image

- ⇒ The *'Print'* dialogue window will open. ↪ *Chap. 5.13.1 'General print configurations' page 71*

5.13.1 General print configurations

Here, you can select a logo for the header and enter information for the footer of the document. In the print preview, you can check the layout.

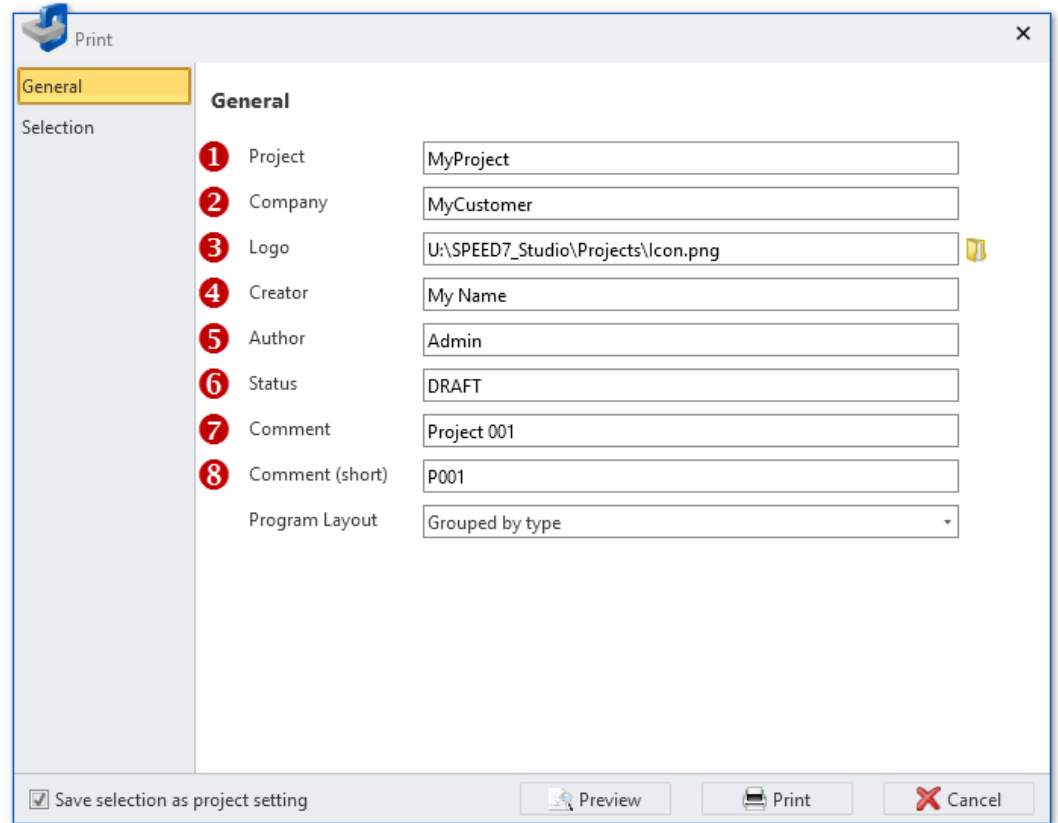


Fig. 43: "General print settings" dialogue window

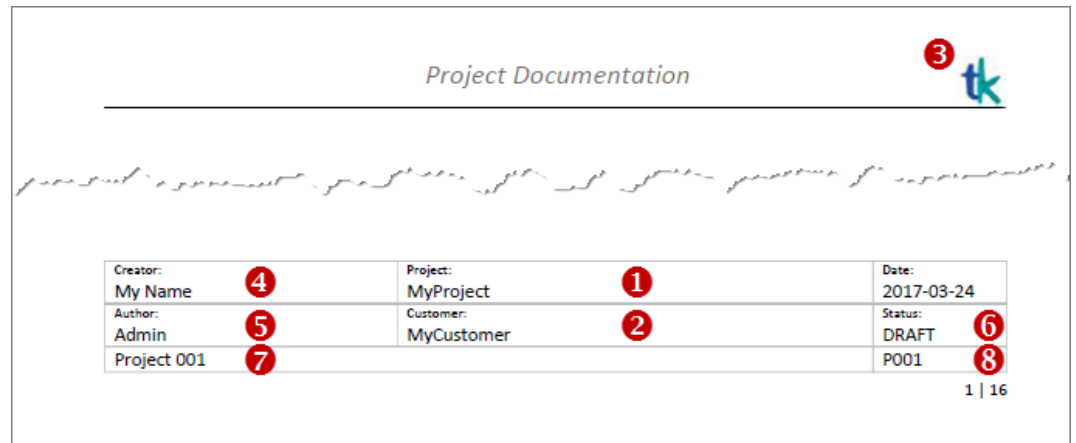


Fig. 44: Header and footer of the document

1. 'Program layout' –

In order to output the program blocks sorted according to block type, select 'Grouped according to type'.

In order to output the program blocks according to the order of calling, select 'Hierarchically'.

2. In order to adopt the configurations for all future print operations, select "Adopt selection as project configuration".

3. Click on 'Print' to print the document.

⇒ The dialogue window "Print" will open.

4. - or -

Click on 'Preview'.

⇒ The document will be generated and shown in the "Print preview". ↪ *Chap. 5.14 'Print Preview' page 74*

5.13.2 Select print areas

You can select here, which parts of the project to print. In the print preview, you can check the layout.

This dialogue window is not shown if you want to print single program blocks, variable tables or HMI images.

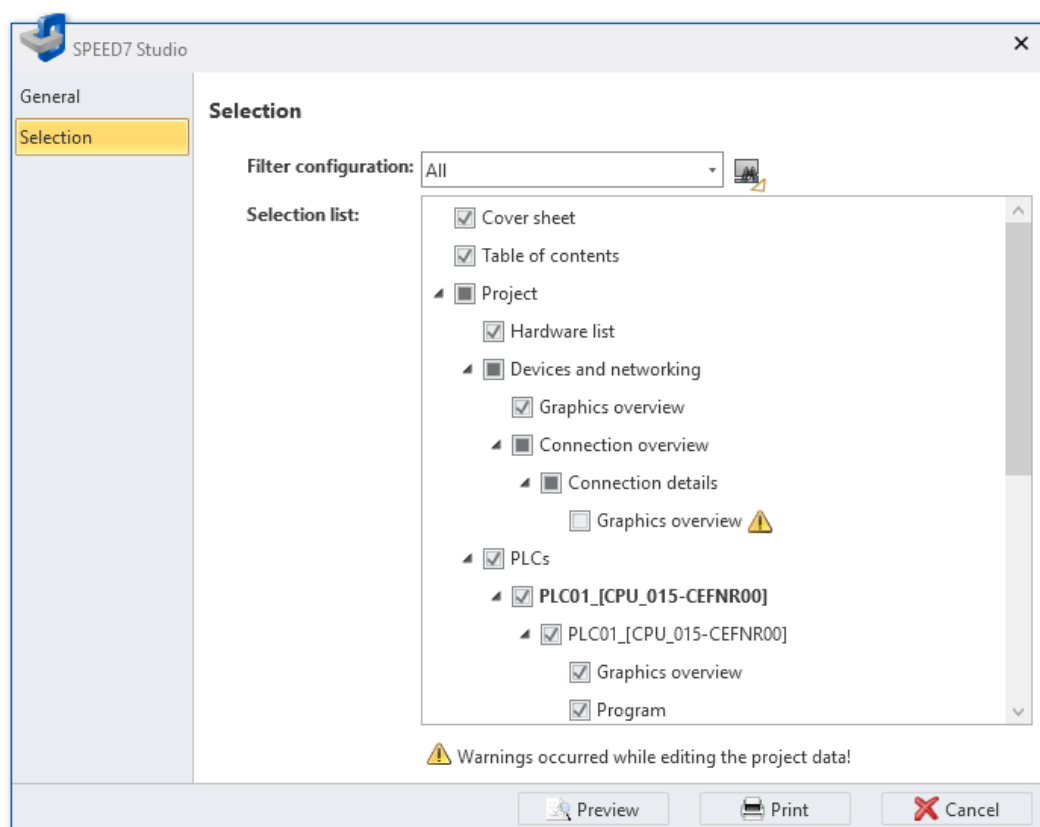


Fig. 45: Dialogue window "Select print areas"


- 1.** Highlight the areas you want to print. Deselect the areas you don't want to print. The symbol shows that not all parts are highlighted in one area.
- 2.** Click on 'Print' to print the document.
 - ⇒ The dialogue window "Print" will open.
- 3.** - or -
 - Click on 'Preview'.
 - ⇒ The document will be generated and shown in the "Print preview". ↪ *Chap. 5.14 'Print Preview' page 74*

"Documentation" folder

5.14 Print Preview

In the print preview, you can check the layout of the document to be printed. Then, you can print the document or save in PDF or DOC format.

➔ In order to create and view the print preview, select one of the following options:

- **Menu bar:** Select 'File ➔ Print preview' or 'Project ➔ Print preview'.
- **Toolbar:** Click on .

You can also call up the print preview in the dialogue window of the print settings.
 ↪ *Chap. 5.13.1 'General print configurations' page 71*

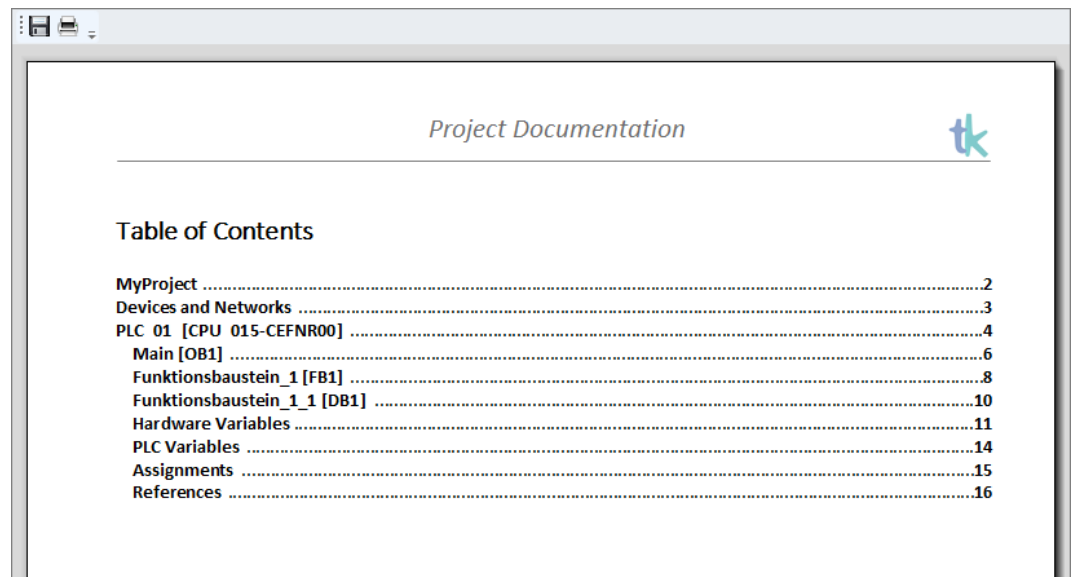




Fig. 46: Print Preview

Toolbar

-  **Save:** Save the document in PDF or DOC format
-  **Print:** Print document

5.15 "Documentation" folder


Text documents and further subfolders can be created in the 'Documentation' folder of the project tree.

➔ To create a new project, click on the icon 'Create new text document ...'.

- or -

Right-click with the mouse button on the folder and select the desired command, e.g. 'Add new folder'.

➔ Double-click on a text document in order to open it in the text editor.

↪ *Chap. 5.17 'Text editor (text document) ' page 75*

5.16 Create new text document

1. ➔ Click on 'Create new text document' in the 'Documentation' folder in the project tree.


⇒ A dialogue window for the input of a file name will open.

2. ➔ Enter the file name in the input field and click on 'OK'.

⇒ A new text document is created and displayed in the project tree.

If you have selected the option 'Open document after creation', the text editor is opened.

5.17 Text editor (text document)

Text documents can be edited and saved in the 'Text editor'. In the 'Documentation' folder, you can create a new text document or open an existing text document in the text editor. ↪ [Chap. 5.15 "Documentation" folder](#)  page 74

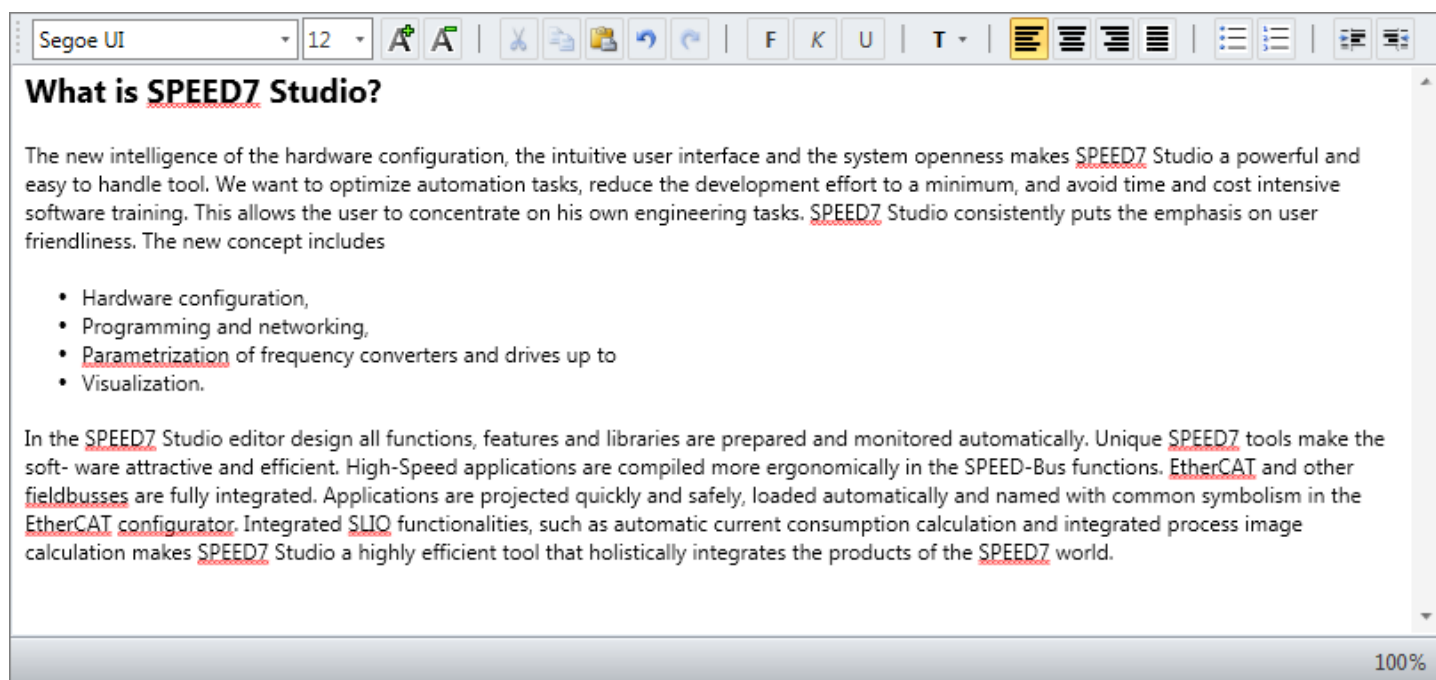


Fig. 47: Test editor

Editing a text document

➔ Click on the desired text document in the 'Documentation' folder in the project tree.

⇒ The text editor will open.

Enter and format text

You can enter text in the editing area. You can format text with the toolbar:

- Font type and size
- Markup bold, italics or underlined
- Font colour
- Text left-justified, centred, right-justified or fully justified
- Enlarging / reducing the indent
- Bullet points and numbering

“Project overview” editor

6 Selecting and configuring devices and components

6.1 “Project overview” editor

In the ‘Project overview’ editor, the devices of the open project are listed in a table. Here you can add devices. You can also translate, transfer and export the project.

If a project is open, you can open the ‘Project overview’. Select one of the following options to this end:

- **Menu bar:** Select ‘Project → Project overview’.
- **Toolbar:** Click on .
- **Project tree:** Click on ‘Project overview’.
- **“Start page”** : Click on ‘Project overview’.

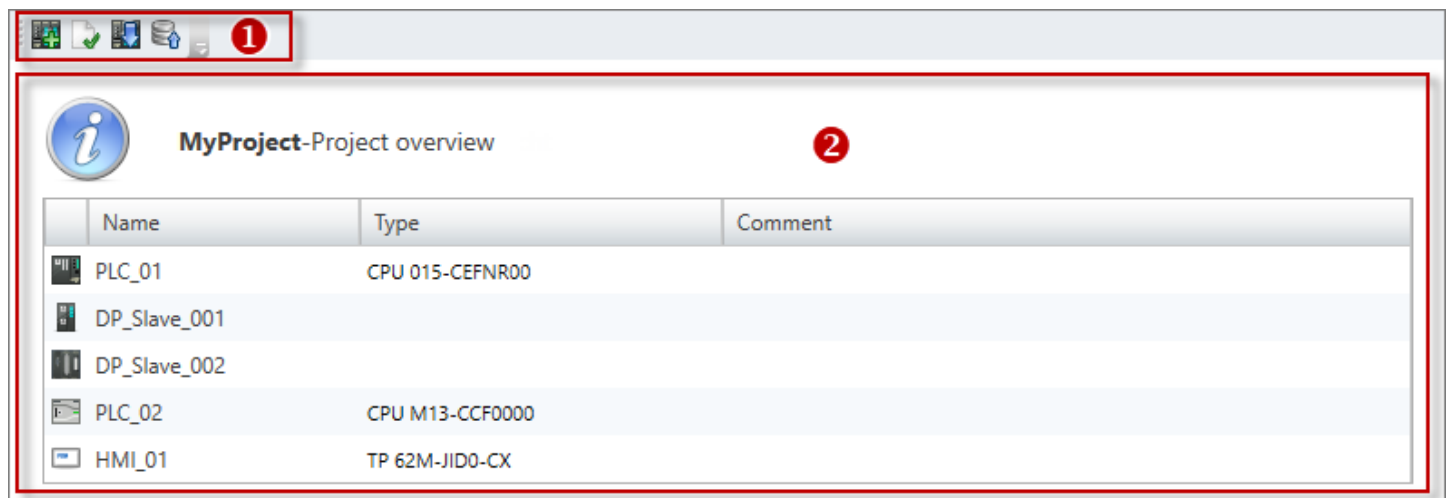








Fig. 48: Project overview

- (1) Toolbar
- (2) List of devices

(1) Toolbar

-  **Add new device:** Add controls (PLC) or visualisation devices (HMI)  Chap. 6.3 ‘Add new device (PLC)’ page 81
-  **Compile blocks:** Compile (translate) all changed project blocks into error-free machine code  Chap. 8.16 ‘Compile user program’ page 267
-  **Transfer project:** Transfers the user program as well as all device configurations and visualisations of the project to the control
-  **Export project:** Exports all project data to the VPP file

(2) List of devices

Provides a list of projected devices.

‘Name’

➔ Click on the input field to change the device name.

‘Type’ – Device type

‘Comment’ – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

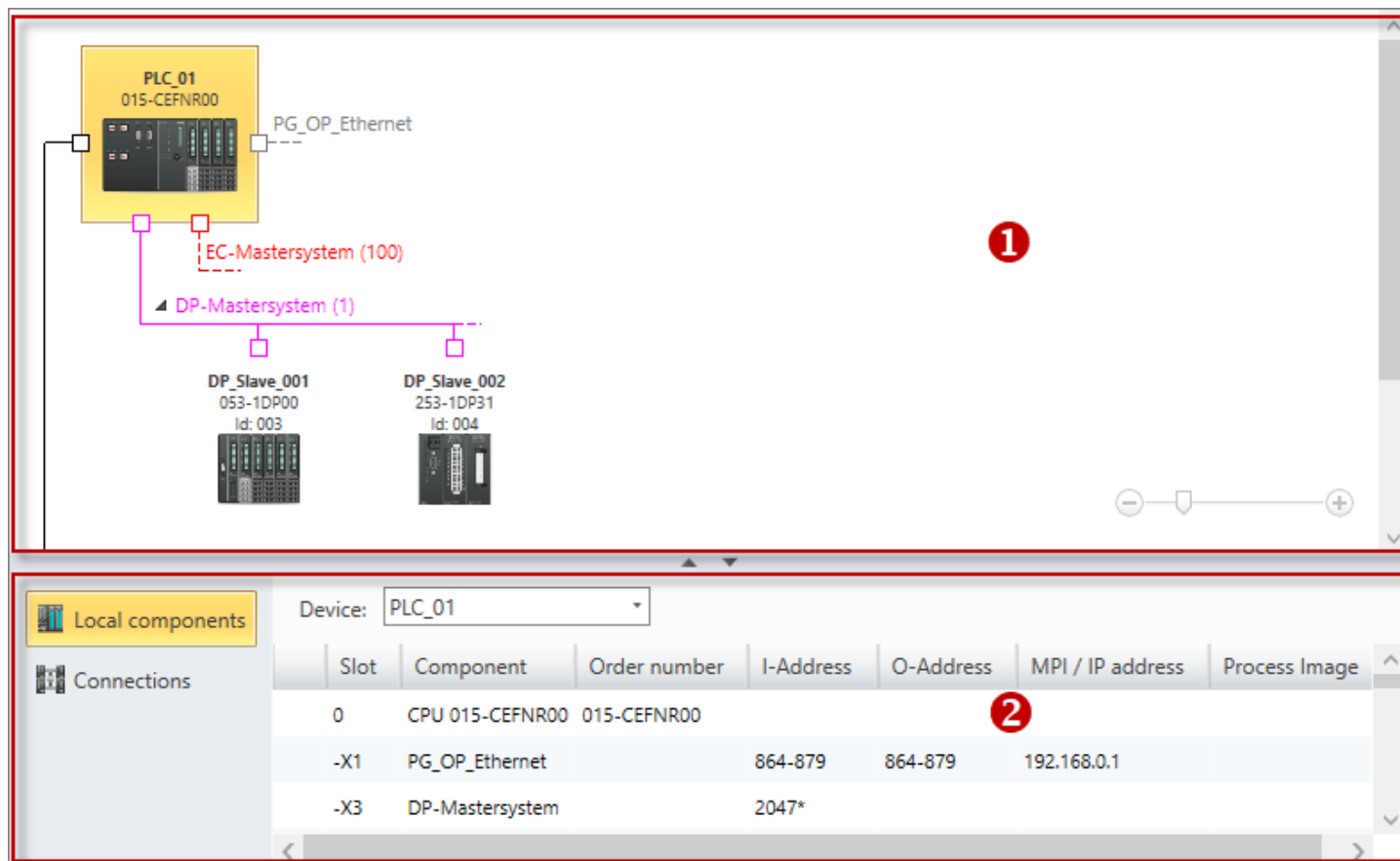
➔ Click on the input field to change the comment.

6.2 "Devices and networking" editor

In the 'Devices and networking' editor, the devices of the open project are topologically illustrated, and the device details are listed. Here you can add or remove devices and connections. You can also access further device functions.

If a project is open, you can open the 'Devices and networking' editor. Select one of the following options to this end:

- **Project tree:** Click on 'Devices and networking'.
- **Menu bar:** Select 'Project → Devices and networking'.



The screenshot shows the 'Devices and networking' editor interface. The top part displays a topological diagram of the network configuration. A central device, PLC_01 (015-CEFNR00), is connected to an Ethernet network (PG_OP_Ethernet). It is also connected to a DP-Mastersystem (1), which in turn connects to two DP-Slave devices: DP_Slave_001 (053-1DP00, Id: 003) and DP_Slave_002 (253-1DP31, Id: 004). A red circle with the number '1' is placed over the diagram area.

The bottom part of the screenshot shows the 'Device details' table for the selected device, PLC_01. A red circle with the number '2' is placed over the table.

Slot	Component	Order number	I-Address	O-Address	MPI / IP address	Process Image
0	CPU 015-CEFNR00	015-CEFNR00				
-X1	PG_OP_Ethernet		864-879	864-879	192.168.0.1	
-X3	DP-Mastersystem		2047*			

Fig. 49: Devices and networking

- (1) Device overview
(2) Device details

(1) Device overview

All devices of the project and their networking are displayed in the device overview. Here you can add or remove devices and connections. You can also access further device functions.

"Devices and networking" editor

Adding a device

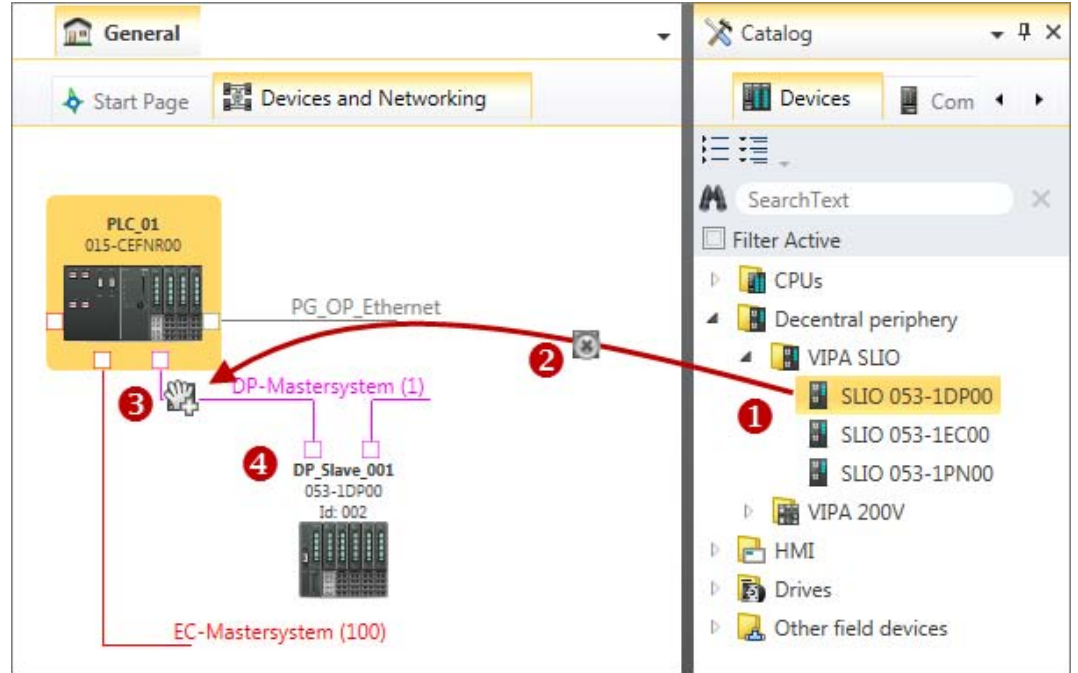


Fig. 50: Adding device via "Catalog"

- (1) Select the desired object (hold left mouse button down)
- (2) Drag the object
- (3) Drop the object at a suitable place (release the mouse button)
- (4) The object is added

- Drag the desired device from the 'Device templates' of the catalog to a suitable place.
 - ⇒ The device is added to the device overview.

Selecting a device

- Click on the device.
 - ⇒ The device details for the highlighted device are displayed. Fig. 49

Removing devices

Devices to which further devices are connected, e.g. via a bus system cannot be deleted. First, all connected devices must be deleted.

- 1.** ➤ Right-click with the mouse button on the device and select 'Delete device'.
 - ⇒ A dialogue window will open, where you can select whether the device should be removed or not.
- 2.** ➤ Click on 'Yes'.
 - ⇒ The device is removed from the device overview and the project.

Removing several devices

- 1.** ➤ Keep the key [Ctrl] pressed down and click on the devices you want to remove.
 - or -
 - If you want to remove several devices from one row, keep the key [Shift] pressed and click on the first and the last device in the row.

2. ➤ Right-click with the mouse button on a device and select *'Delete selected devices'*.
 - ⇒ A dialogue window will open, where you can select whether the devices should be removed or not.
3. ➤ Click on *'Yes'*.
 - ⇒ The devices are removed from the device overview and the project.

Opening device configuration or device overview

- Double-click on a device.
 - ⇒ **PLC:** The *'Device configuration'* editor will open.
 - HMI:** The *'Device overview'* editor will open.

Opening the bus system properties

- Double-click on the connecting line of the bus system.
 - ⇒ The *'Bus system properties'* dialogue window will open.

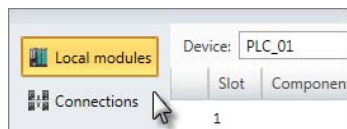
Add connection

- Right-click with the mouse button on the left connection point of the device from which the connection comes and select *'Insert new connection'*.
 - 🔗 *Chap. 7.6.1 'Insert new connection' page 196.*

Accessing further functions

- Right-click with the mouse button on the device or a connection point and select the desired command, e.g. *'Device properties'* or *'Bus system properties'*.

(2) Device details



The device details contain more information on a device or connections:

- 🔗 *Chap. 6.2.1 'Local components (= local modules)' page 79*
- 🔗 *Chap. 6.2.2 'Connections' page 80*

Further configurations or information on a component

- Double-click on a component.
 - ⇒ A dialogue window will open.

6.2.1 Local components (= local modules)

Provides a list of details on the selected device, e.g. component assignment, order numbers or I/O addresses.

Slot	Component	Order number	I-Address	O-Address	MPI / IP address	Prozessabbild	Comment
0	CPU 015-CEFNR00	015-CEFNR00					
-X1	PG_OP_Ethernet		864-879	864-879	192.168.0.1		
-X3	DP-Mastersystem		2047*				
-X4	EC-Mastersystem		2045*		192.168.0.1		

Fig. 51: "Devices and networking" editor: Local components (= local modules)

- Here you can select the device for which you need details.

"Devices and networking" editor > Connections

'Rack'

➔ Here you can select the rack for which you need details.

'Slot' – Slot number within the rack

'Component' – Component name

'Order number' – Order number of the component

'I-Address' – Configured input address (byte address) of an input component or an input module

'O-Address' – Configured output address (byte address) of an output component or an output module

'MPI/IP address' – Address of a communication interface

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

6.2.2 Connections

Show connections

To add connections: ↗ *Chap. 7.6.1 'Insert new connection' page 196.*

Connections are represented by a connecting line in the "Devices and networking" editor.

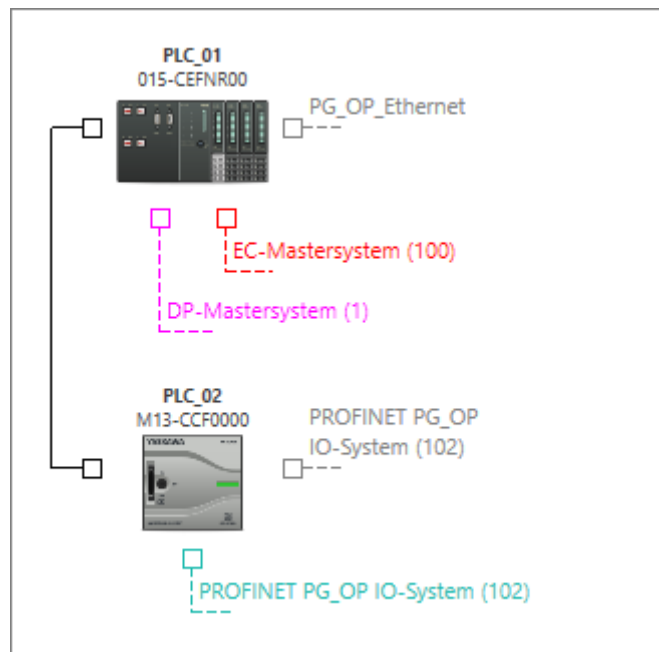


Fig. 52: Connection between two controls in the "Devices and networking" editor

If you mark a device in the device overview, the connections for this device are shown in the table.

Local modules		Filter: All connections				
Name	Local Id	Type	Active Connection	Partner	Partner Id	
PLC_01-1	1	S7 connection	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	PLC_02 [CPU 315-4EC12 315SN/EC]	1	

Fig. 53: Connections of the marked device in the "Devices and networking" editor

If you do not mark a device in the device overview, all connections are shown in the table.

Type	Connection endpoint 1				Connection endpoint 2			
	Endpoint	Id	Name	Active Connection	Endpoint	Id	Name	Active Connection
S7 connection	PLC_01 [CPU 315-4EC12 315SN/EC]	1	PLC_01-1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	PLC_02 [CPU 315-4EC12 315SN/EC]	1	PLC_02-1	<input type="checkbox"/>
S7 connection	PLC_02 [CPU 315-4EC12 315SN/EC]	2	PLC_02-2	<input type="checkbox"/>	PLC_03 [CPU 315-4EC12 315SN/EC]	1	PLC_03-1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Fig. 54: All connections in the "Devices and networking" editor

Make connection settings

➔ Double-click on a table entry.

⇒ The 'Connection settings' dialogue window will open. ↪ *Chap. 7.6.2 'Connection settings – General' page 197*

6.3 Add new device (PLC)

You can add controls (PLC) to a project. The added devices can then be configured, linked with further devices or provided with components e.g. signal module.

- Please also note ↪ *Chap. 6.4 'Add new device (HMI)' page 82* for adding HMI devices.
- Please also note ↪ *Chap. 6.5 'Adding a new device (slave)' page 86* for adding slaves.

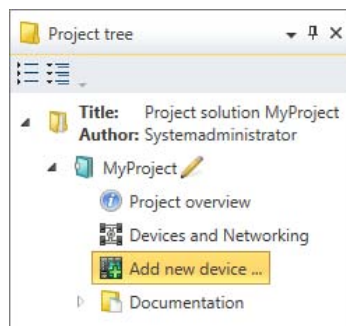






Fig. 55: Add new device via "project tree"

1. ➔ Select one of the following options if you want to add a new device:

- **Catalog:** Drag the desired device from the 'Device templates' register of the catalog (↪ *Chap. 4.10 'Catalog' page 34*) to a suitable place or connecting line in the 'Devices and networking' editor. The device is directly added and displayed in the project tree. ↪ *Chap. 4.18.3 'Mouse operation – drag & drop' page 54*
- **Menu bar:** Device 'Project → Add new device'.
- **Toolbar:** Click on .
- **Keyboard:** Press `[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[N]`.
- **Project tree:** Click on 'Add new device'.
- **"Start page"**  : Click on 'Add new device'.
- **"Project overview" editor**  : Click on .

⇒ The 'Add new device' dialogue window will open.

Add new device (HMI)

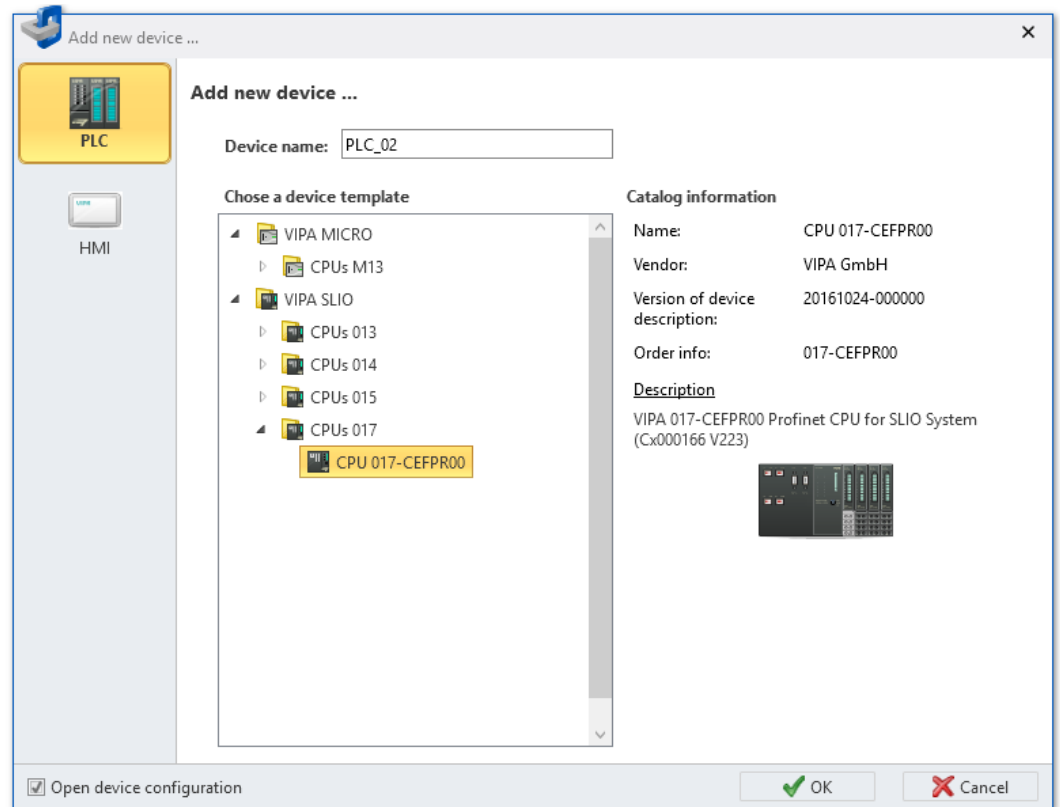


Fig. 56: "Add new device" dialogue window (PLC, HMI)

2. ➤ Select the desired device template from the list.
3. ➤ 'Device name': Enter a device name, if required.
4. ➤ Click on 'OK'.



If you select the option 'Open device configuration' and click on 'OK', the added device is opened in the "Device configuration" editor.

⇒ The device is added and displayed in the project tree.

6.4 Add new device (HMI)

You can add HMI devices to a project. The added devices can then be configured, linked with further devices or provided with components e.g. signal module.

- Please also note ↗ Chap. 6.3 'Add new device (PLC)' page 81 for adding controls (PLC).
- Please also note ↗ Chap. 6.5 'Adding a new device (slave)' page 86 for adding slaves.

To configure HMI devices and to create visualisations: ↗ Chap. 9 'Creating a visualisation' page 311

Connect HMI device to an Ethernet interface

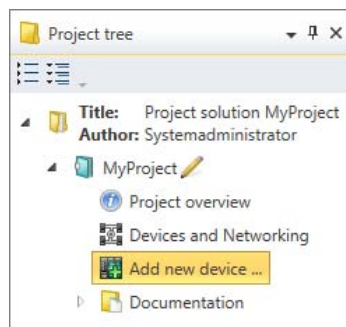






Fig. 57: Add new device via "project tree"

1. Select one of the following options if you want to add a new HMI device:

- **Catalog:** Drag the desired device from the 'Device templates' register of the catalog ([Chap. 4.10 'Catalog'](#) page 34) to a suitable place in the 'Devices and networking' editor. The device is directly added and displayed in the project tree. [Chap. 4.18.3 'Mouse operation – drag & drop'](#) page 54
- **Menu bar:** Device 'Project' → 'Add new device'.
- **Toolbar:** Click on .
- **Keyboard:** Press [Ctrl]+[Shift]+[N].
- **Project tree:** Click on 'Add new device'.
- **"Start page"** : Click on 'Add new device'.
- **"Project overview" editor** : Click on .

⇒ The 'Add new device' dialogue window will open.

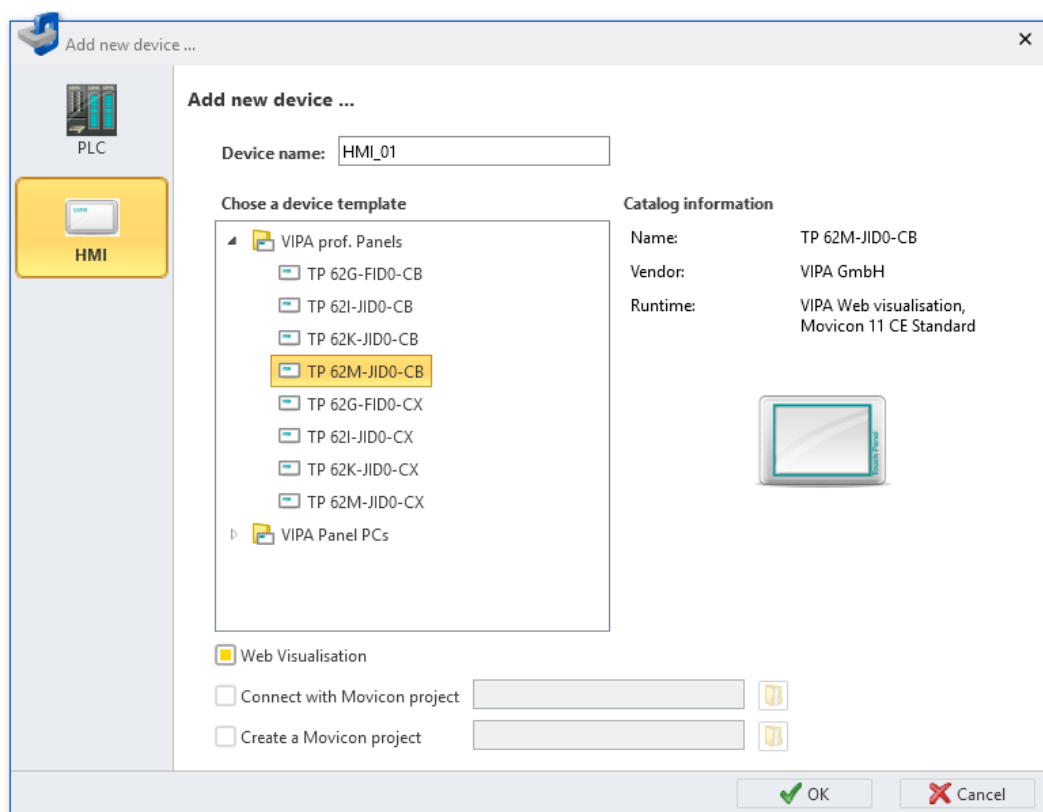


Fig. 58: "Add new device" (HMI device) dialogue window

2. Select 'HMI'.

3. Select the desired device template from the list.

4. 'Device name': Enter a device name, if required.

5. Select one of the following options:

- 'Web visualisation': Create standard HMI images
- 'Connect Movicon project': Use existing Movicon project.
- 'Create Movicon project': Create new Movicon project.

For more details on Movicon: [Chap. 6.4.1 'Movicon project configurations'](#) page 85.

6. Click on 'OK'.

⇒ The HMI device is added and displayed in the project tree.

Add new device (HMI)

7. ➔ To connect the HMI device to an Ethernet interface of the control (CPU), you need to insert a new connection. ↪ *Chap. 7.6.1 'Insert new connection' page 196*

Connect HMI device to the PG/OP interface

You can connect HMI devices to the Ethernet interface "PG/OP" of the control. However, you cannot then use this interface as a communication interface between the PC and the control.

A control with a PG/OP interface must be already available in the project. ↪ *Chap. 6.3 'Add new device (PLC)' page 81*

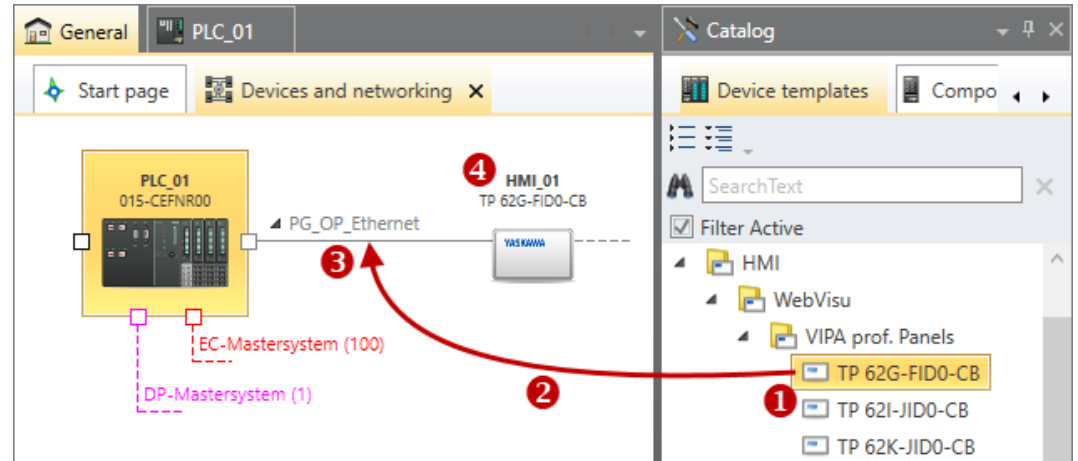


Fig. 59: Adding HMI device via "Catalog"

- (1) Select the HMI device (hold left mouse button down)
- (2) Drag HMI device
- (3) Drop the HMI device at a suitable place (release the mouse button)
- (4) The HMI device is added

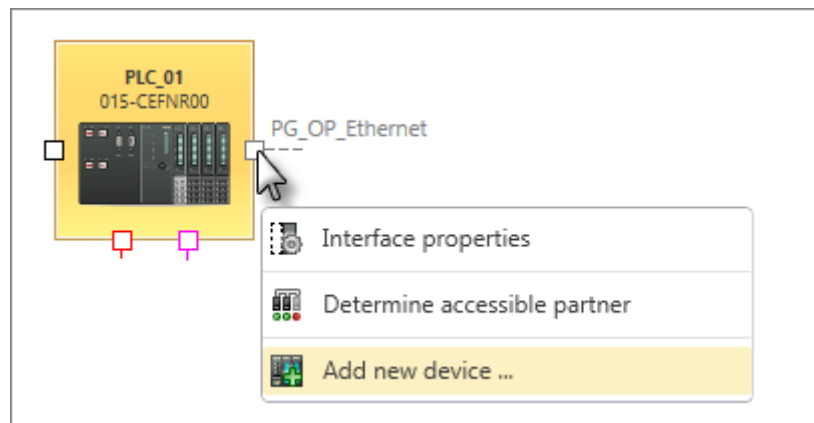


Fig. 60: Add HMI device on the connecting line

1. ➔ Select one of the following options if you want to add a new HMI device at the PG/OP interface of the control:
 - **Catalog:** Drag the desired HMI device from the 'Device templates' register of the catalog (↪ *Chap. 4.10 'Catalog' page 34*) to the connecting line "PG_OP_Ethernet" in the 'Devices and networking' editor. Fig. 59
The HMI device is directly added and displayed in the project tree.
 - **Editor "Devices and networking":** Right-click with the mouse button on the connecting line "PG_OP_Ethernet" and select 'Add new device'. Fig. 60
⇒ The 'Add new device' dialogue window will open.

2. ➤ Select the desired device template from the list. If necessary, enter a device name and click on 'OK'.
 - ⇒ The HMI device is added and displayed in the project tree.

6.4.1 Movicon project configurations

You can create an HMI device with the Movicon functionality. You can thus use the HMI device in a SCADA (Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition) system.

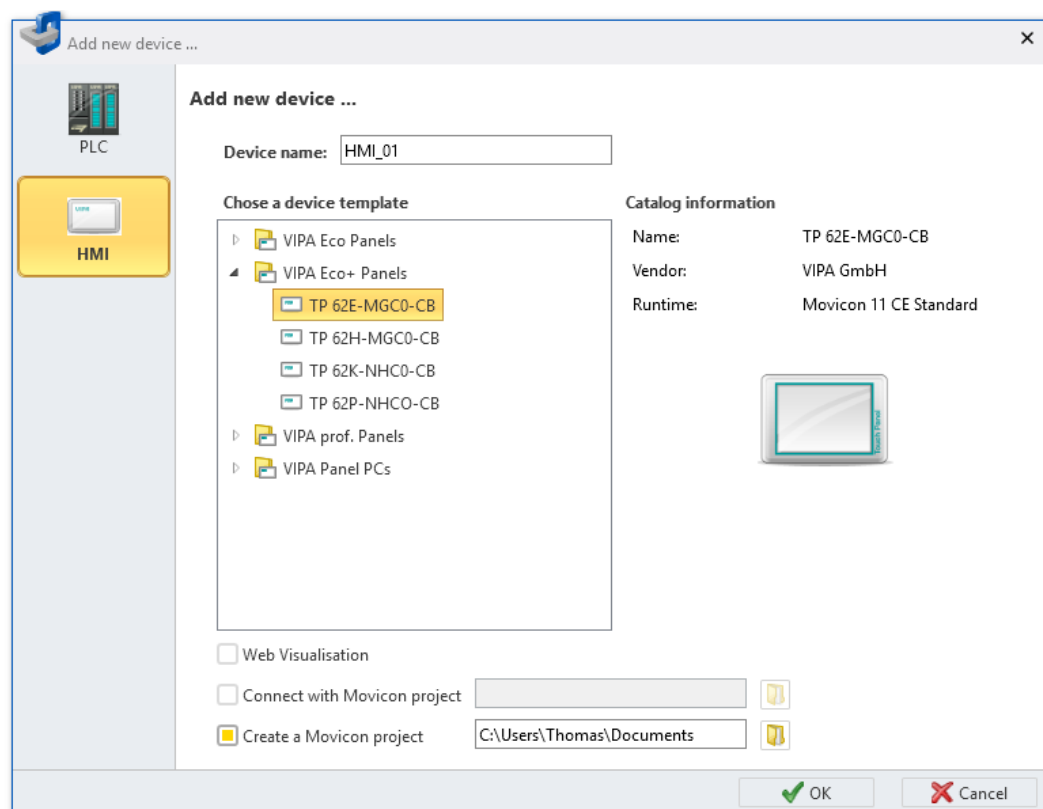





Fig. 61: "Add new device" (HMI device) dialogue window

1. ➤ If you add a new HMI device, you can select the Movicon functionality in the 'Add new device' dialogue window:
 - 'Connect Movicon project': Use existing Movicon project. Click on  and select an already existing Movicon project.
 - 'Create Movicon project': Create new Movicon project. Click on  and choose a directory in which the new Movicon project is to be saved.
2. ➤ Click on 'OK'.
 - ⇒ The HMI device is added and displayed in the project tree. You can recognise an HMI device with Movicon functionality by the symbol .
 - If you have selected the "Create Movicon project" option, the 'Movicon project settings' dialogue window will open.
3. ➤ Enter a name for the Movicon project in the 'Movicon project settings' dialogue window and click on 'Next'.

Adding a new device (slave)

4. Select the control you would like to connect to the HMI device. Enter the IP address of the Ethernet interface of the control to which the HMI device is being connected.

If you want to correct the entry, click on *'Remove connection'*. The control is deleted from the input field and you can select a different control.

Click on *'Done'*.

⇒ The Movicon project is created.

5. If you select the option *'Synchronise PLC variables marked for visualisation'* in the *'Summary'* dialogue window, the variables declared in the CPU are transferred into the standard variables table of the HMI project. ↪ *Chap. 9.4 "Standard variables table" editor* page 315

If you select the option *'Open Movicon project'*, the external Movicon application is started (if available) and the project in it is opened.

To configure HMI devices and to create visualisations: ↪ *Chap. 9 'Creating a visualisation' page 311*

6.5 Adding a new device (slave)

Different control systems support different bus systems e.g. PROFIBUS or EtherCAT. You can add slaves to the bus system of a control. The added slaves can then be configured or provided with components e.g. signal modules.

A control with the corresponding bus system must be already available in the project.

↪ *Chap. 6.3 'Add new device (PLC)' page 81*

Many device types are already pre-installed in *SPEED7 Studio* and are available in the 'catalog'. To be able to use further device types in the project, you must install the device description file of the individual device types. ↪ *Chap. 6.10 'Installing device description files' page 95*

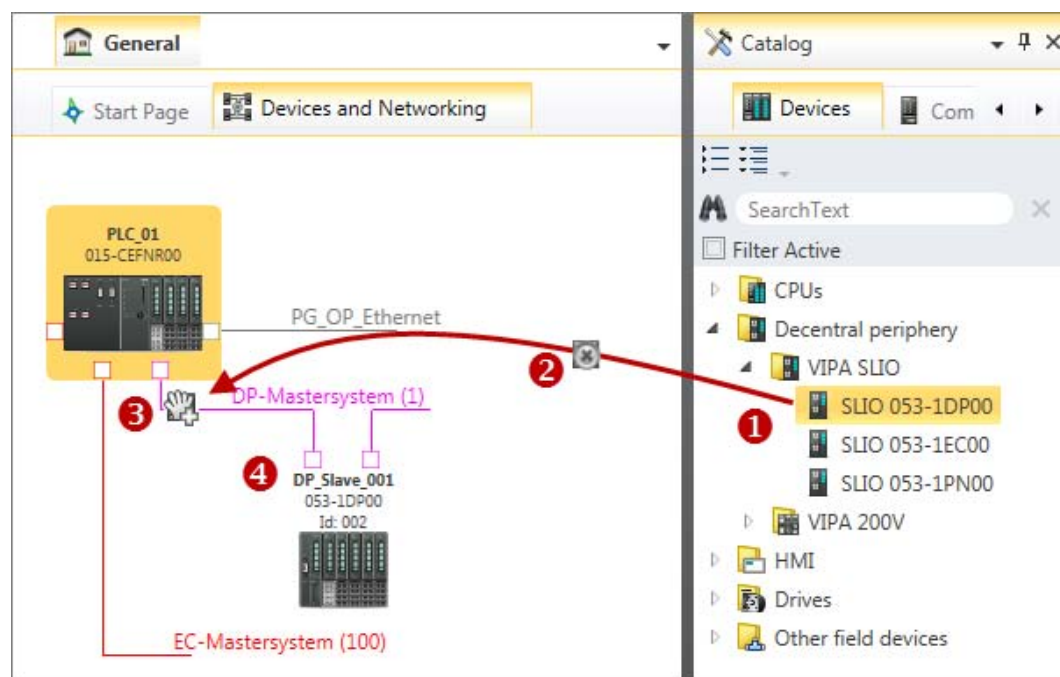


Fig. 62: Adding slave via "Catalog"

- (1) Select the slave (hold left mouse button down)
- (2) Drag the slave
- (3) Drop the slave at a suitable place (release the mouse button)
- (4) The slave is added

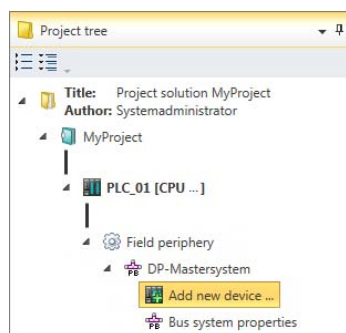



Fig. 63: Adding slave via "Project tree"

1. ➔ Select one of the following options if you want to add a new slave:

- **Catalog:** Drag the desired slave from the 'Device templates' register of the catalog (↪ *Chap. 4.10 'Catalog' page 34*) to the connecting line of the bus system in the 'Devices and networking' editor. Fig. 62
The slave is directly added and displayed in the project tree.
- **Project tree:** Within the PLC under 'Decentralised periphery' and the suitable bus system (e.g. DP master system), click on 'Add new device'. Fig. 63
- **"Devices and networking" editor** : Right-click with the mouse button on the connecting line of the corresponding bus system (e.g. DP master system) and select 'Add new device'.

⇒ The 'Add new device' dialogue window will open.

Add control (CPU) as PROFIBUS DP slave (I-Slave)

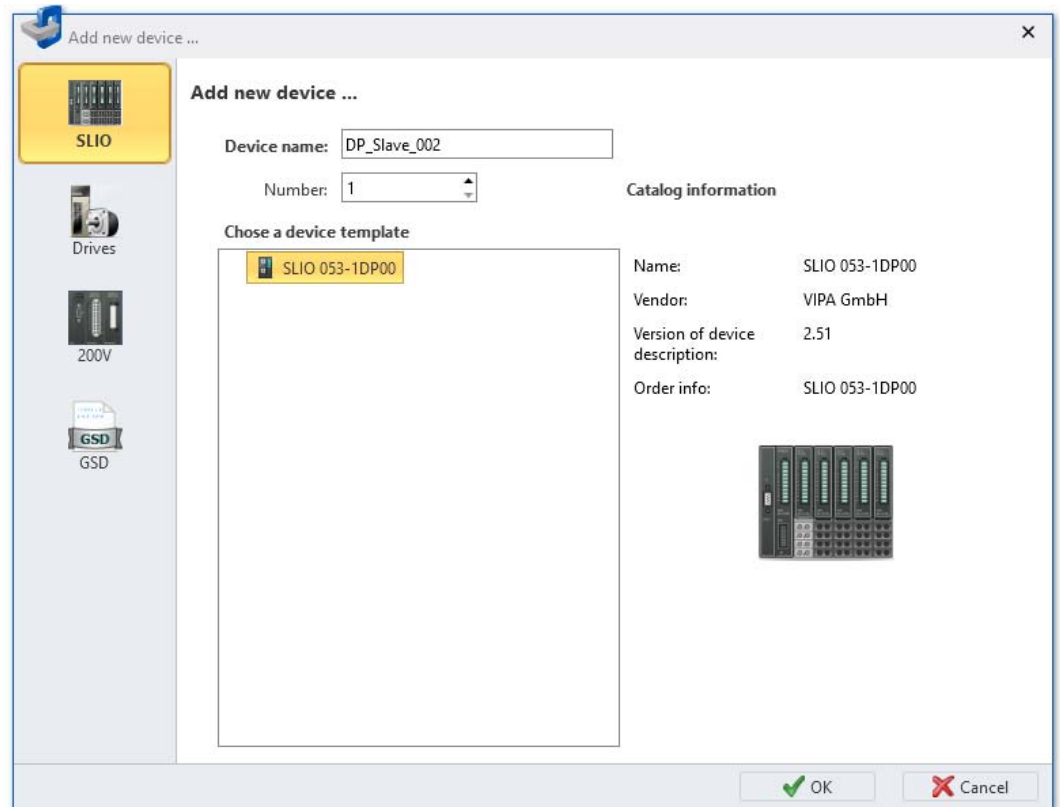


Fig. 64: "Add a new device" (slave) dialogue window

2. ➤ Select the device type on the left, e.g. 'SLIO'.
3. ➤ Select the desired device template from the list.
4. ➤ 'Device name': Enter a device name, if required.
5. ➤ 'DP address' (only for PROFIBUS-DP, GSD): Select the desired station address.
'DNS name' (only for PROFINET, GSDML): Enter the bus device name, if required.
6. ➤ Click on 'OK'.
 - ⇒ The slave is added and displayed in the project tree.



If you enter a value in the 'Number' box, several slaves of the same type are added.

6.6 Add control (CPU) as PROFIBUS DP slave (I-Slave)

You can connect controls to a DP master system as intelligent DP slaves.

If you want to connect a control, ensure that this control supports the PROFIBUS-DP-switching-on unit as slave.

You can add the slave to a control with the DP master system in a variety of ways:

- Automatic configuration: Drag & drop control
- Manual configuration: Configure control as a slave

Automatic configuration

➔ Drag the desired control from the 'Device templates' register of the catalogue to the connecting line of the DP master system in the 'Devices and networking' editor (drag & drop).

⇒ The control is automatically configured as a slave.

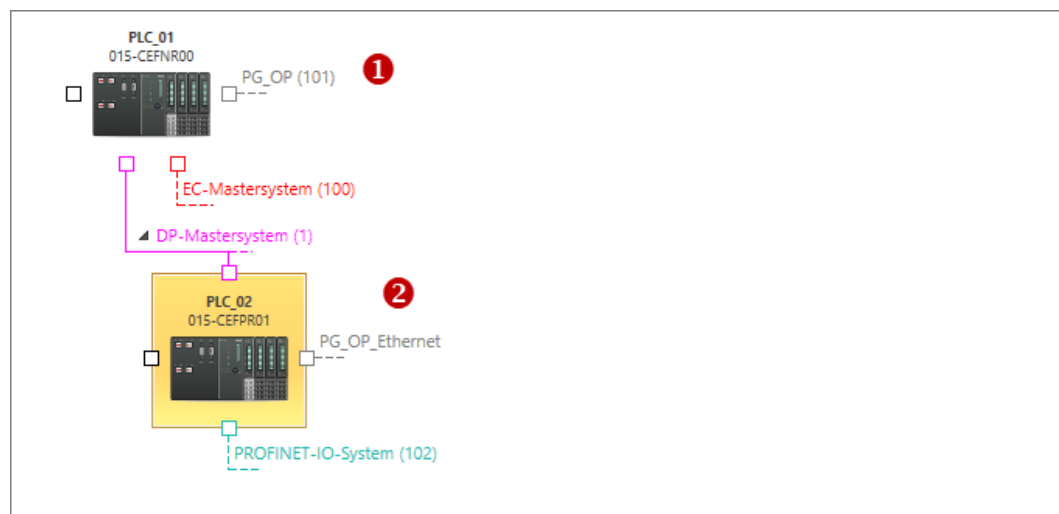


Fig. 65: Controls in the "Devices and networking" editor

- (1) Control with DP master system
- (2) Control added as slave

Manual configuration

Fig. 66: Controls in the "Devices and networking" editor

- (1) Control with DP master system
- (2) Control which is to be connected as a slave

1. ➔ Add both the control with the DP master system and the control which is to be connected as a slave to the project.

Add control (CPU) as PROFIBUS DP slave (I-Slave)

Slot	Component	Order number	I-Address	O-Address	MPI / IP address
0	CPU 015-CEFP01	015-CEFP01			
-X1	PG_OP_Ethernet		864-879	864-879	192.168.0.1
-X3	PROFIBUS Slave		2047*		
-X4	PROFINET-IO-System		2046*		192.168.0.1

Fig. 67: Device details for the control which is to be connected as a slave

2. ➤ Double-click on the line with the entry "PROFIBUS..." table for the control which is to be connected as a slave.
 - ⇒ The 'Interface properties' dialogue window will open.



*Note that the PROFIBUS slave functionality must be activated for some control types. If the "PROFIBUS..." line is not shown in the table, open the 'component properties (CPU)' and activate the PROFIBUS slave functionality under 'Feature Sets'.
 ↳ Chap. 6.23.2 'Feature Sets' page 122*

Add control (CPU) as PROFIBUS DP slave (I-Slave)

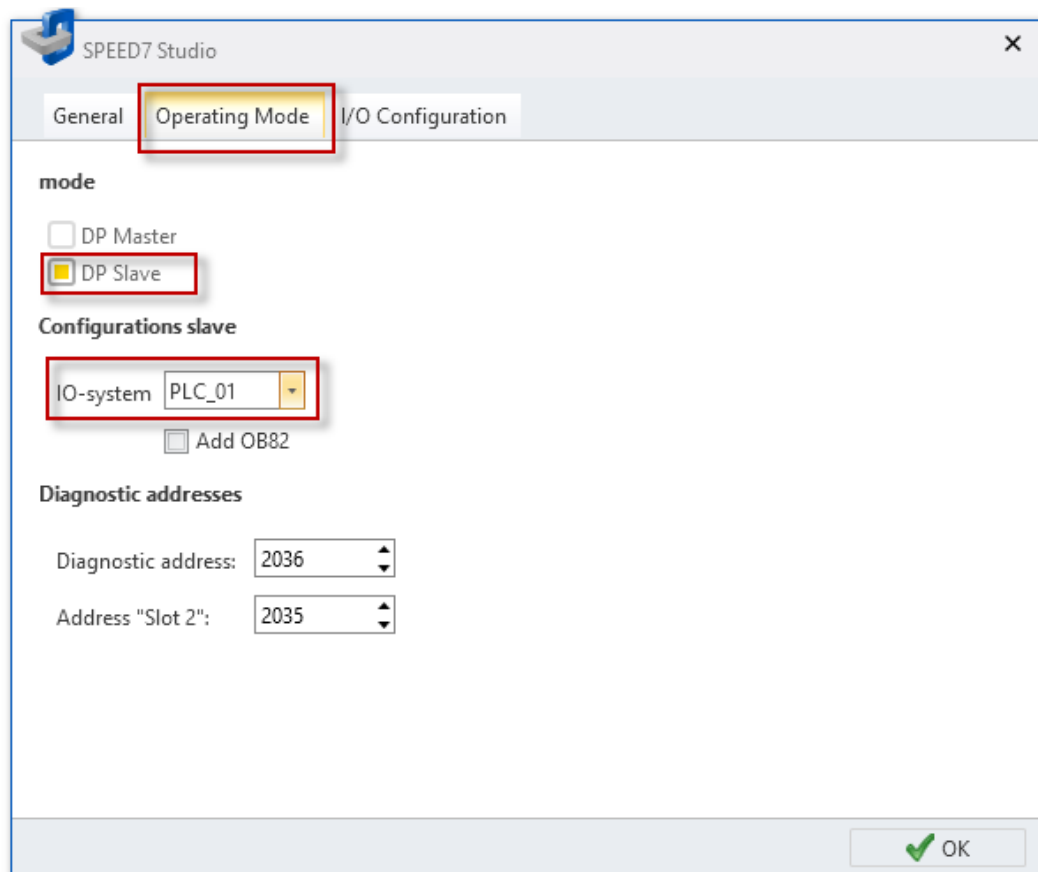


Fig. 68: "Interface properties" dialogue window, "Operating Mode" tab

3. Click on the 'Operating Mode' tab and select the control to which the device should be connected as a slave under 'IO system'. If you want to use the device as a slave in another project, select the station address (DP address) here.

The organisation block OB82 is required to operate the device as a slave. When you activate the 'Add OB82' option, the block is created.

4. Click on 'OK'.

⇒ The device is configured as a slave and connected to the DP master system.

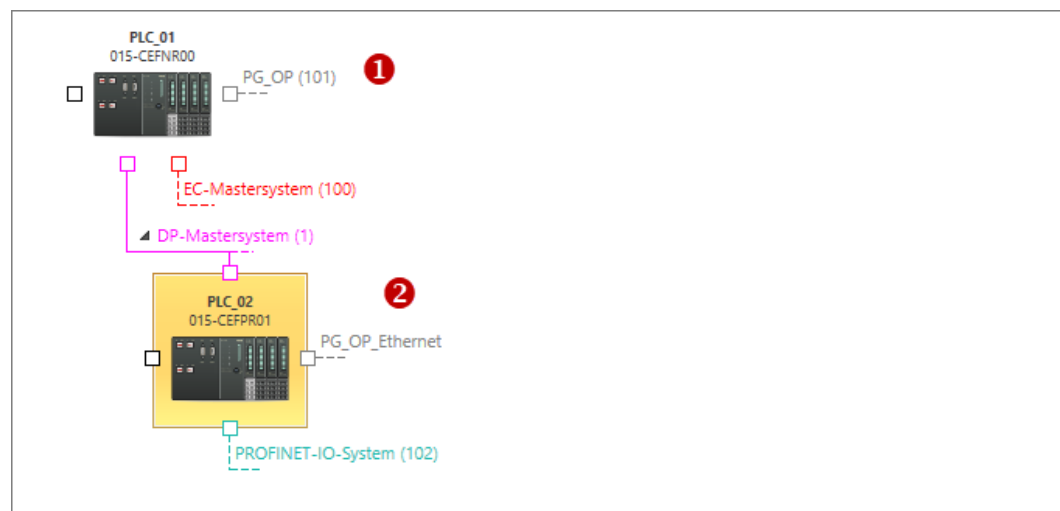


Fig. 69: Control with DP master system (1) and connected control as slave (2)

Add control (CPU) as a PROFINET IO device (I device)

Disconnecting a control from DP master system

1. ➔ Open the *'Bus system properties'* dialogue window for the connected control. To do this, double-click on the line with the entry "PROFIBUS..." in the table in the *'Devices and networking'* editor.
 - ⇒ The *'Interface properties'* dialogue window will open.
2. ➔ Click on the *'Operating Mode'* tab and select "---" under *'IO system'*.
3. ➔ Click on *'OK'*.
 - ⇒ The device is disconnected from the DP master system. The organisation block OB82 is not deleted.

6.7 Add control (CPU) as a PROFINET IO device (I device)

You can connect controls to a PROFINET IO system as intelligent IO devices (I device).

You can add the I device to a control with the PROFINET IO system in a variety of ways:

- Automatic configuration: Drag & drop I device
- Manual configuration: Configure control as an I device

Automatic configuration

- ➔ Drag the desired control from the *'Device templates'* register of the catalogue to the connecting line of the PROFINET IO system in the *'Devices and networking'* editor (drag & drop).
 - ⇒ The control is automatically configured as an I device.

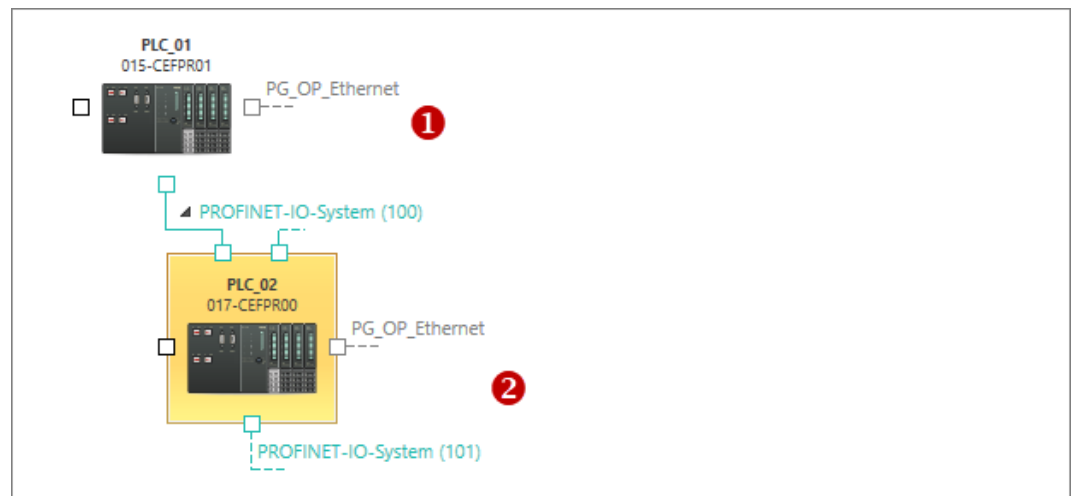


Fig. 70: Controls in the "Devices and networking" editor

- (1) Control with PROFINET IO system
- (2) Control added as an I device

Add control (CPU) as a PROFINET IO device (I device)

Manual configuration



Fig. 71: Controls in the "Devices and networking" editor

- (1) Control with PROFINET IO system
- (2) Control which is to be connected as an I device

1. ➤ Add the control which is to be connected as an I device to the project.

The screenshot shows the 'Local components' tab in the 'Devices and networking' editor. The 'Device: PLC_02' dropdown is selected. The table below shows the device details for PLC_02, with the 'PROFINET-IO-System' entry highlighted in red.

Slot	Component	Order number	I-Address	O-Address	MPI / IP address
0	CPU 017-CEFPR00	017-CEFPR00			
-X1	PG_OP_Ethernet		864-879	864-879	192.168.0.1
-X3	MPI interface		8191*		2
-X4	PROFINET-IO-System		8190*		192.168.0.1

Fig. 72: Device details for the control which is to be connected as an I device

2. ➤ Double-click on the line with the entry "PROFINET IO system" in the table for the control which is to be connected as an I device.

⇒ The 'Bus system properties' dialogue window will open.

Add control (CPU) as a PROFINET IO device (I device)

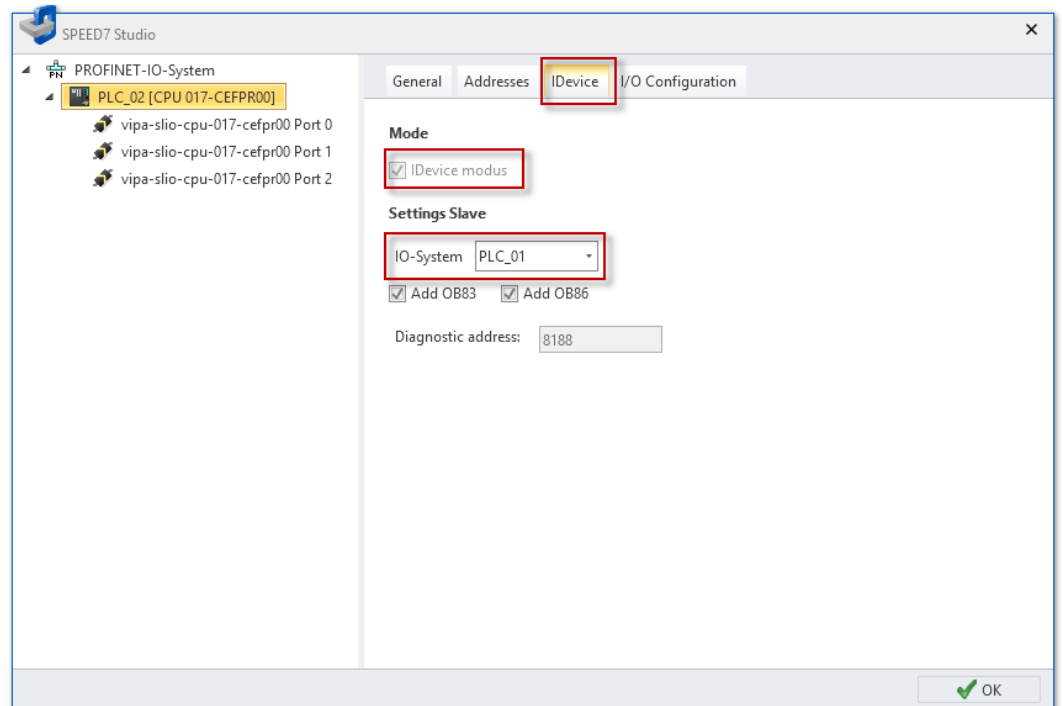


Fig. 73: Dialogue window "Bus system properties", tab "I device"

3. Click on the 'I device' tab, activate 'I device mode', and select the control to which the device should be connected as an I device under 'IO system'.

The two organisation blocks OB83 and OB86 are required to operate the device as an I device. When you activate the 'Add OB83 / OB86' option, the blocks are created.

4. Click on 'OK'.

⇒ The device is configured as an I device and connected to the PROFINET IO system.

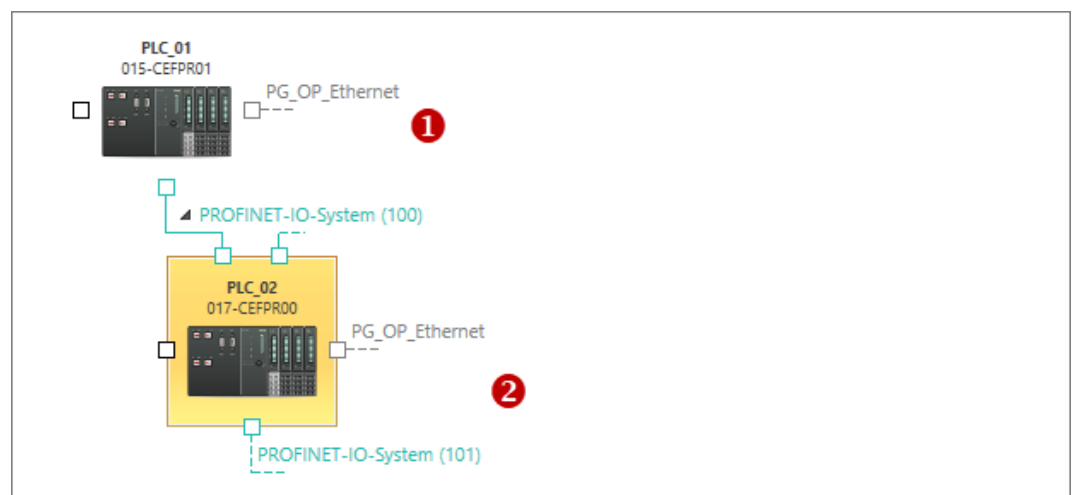


Fig. 74: Control with PROFINET IO system (1) and connected control as I device (2)

Reserving transfer areas


Where necessary, you can reserve transfer areas for I/O data interchange between the two devices. ↪ Chap. 7.3.7 'IO controller – I/O configuration' page 177

Disconnecting an I device from the PROFINET IO system

1. ➤ Open the *'Bus system properties'* dialogue window for the I device. To do this, double-click on the line with the entry "PROFINET IO system" in the table in the *'Devices and networking'* editor.
 - ⇒ The *'Bus system properties'* dialogue window will open.
2. ➤ Click on the *'I device'* tab and select "---" under *'IO system'*.
3. ➤ Click on *'OK'*.
 - ⇒ The device is disconnected from the PROFINET IO system. The two organisation blocks OB83 and OB86 are not deleted.

6.8 Removing devices

Any device which is no longer required, e.g. if you want to replace it by a new device of another type, can be removed from the project.


- Select one of the following options if you want to delete a device from the project:
 - **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the device and, from the context menu, select *'Delete device'*.
 - **"Devices and networking" editor** : Right-click with the mouse button on the device and select *'Delete device'*.
 - or -
 - Left-click with the mouse button on the device and press *[Del]*.
- ⇒ The device is removed from the project. The I/O addresses formerly assigned to the device are available.



Devices to which further devices are connected, e.g. via a bus system cannot be deleted. First, all connected devices must be deleted.

6.9 Duplicate device

You can duplicate a device, e.g. if you want to project several devices of the same type with similar configuration.

- Select one of the following options if you want to duplicate a device in the project:
 - **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the device and, from the context menu, select *'Duplicate device'*.
 - **"Devices and networking" editor** : Right-click with the mouse button on the device and select *'Duplicate device'*.
- ⇒ The device is duplicated and added to the project tree with a new device name. All configuration data and the user program is copied at the same time.

6.10 Installing device description files

In a device description file, the properties of a device type are defined. Many device types are already pre-installed in *SPEED7 Studio* and are available in the *'catalog'*. To be able to use further device types in the project, you must install the device description file of the desired device type.

A variety of device description files are used for the various communication systems:

- PROFIBUS: GSD file (General Station Description) ↗ *Chap. 6.11 'PROFIBUS – GSD' page 96*
- PROFINET: GSDML file (GSD Markup Language) ↗ *Chap. 6.12 'PROFINET – GSDML' page 98*
- EtherCAT: ESI file (EtherCAT Slave Information) ↗ *Chap. 6.13 'EtherCAT – ESI' page 101*

6.11 PROFIBUS – GSD

Here you can install the GSD files for PROFIBUS DP slaves and have the installed device types shown to you.

1. Select in the menu bar *'Extra → Install device description file (PROFIBUS – GSD)'*
 ⇒ The *'Install device description file'* dialogue window will open.
2. Click on the desired section:
 - *'New GSD file'* – Install device description files ↗ *Chap. 6.11.1 'New GSD file' page 96*
 - *'Installed GSD files'* – Show all installed device description files ↗ *Chap. 6.11.2 'Installed GSD files' page 97*

6.11.1 New GSD file

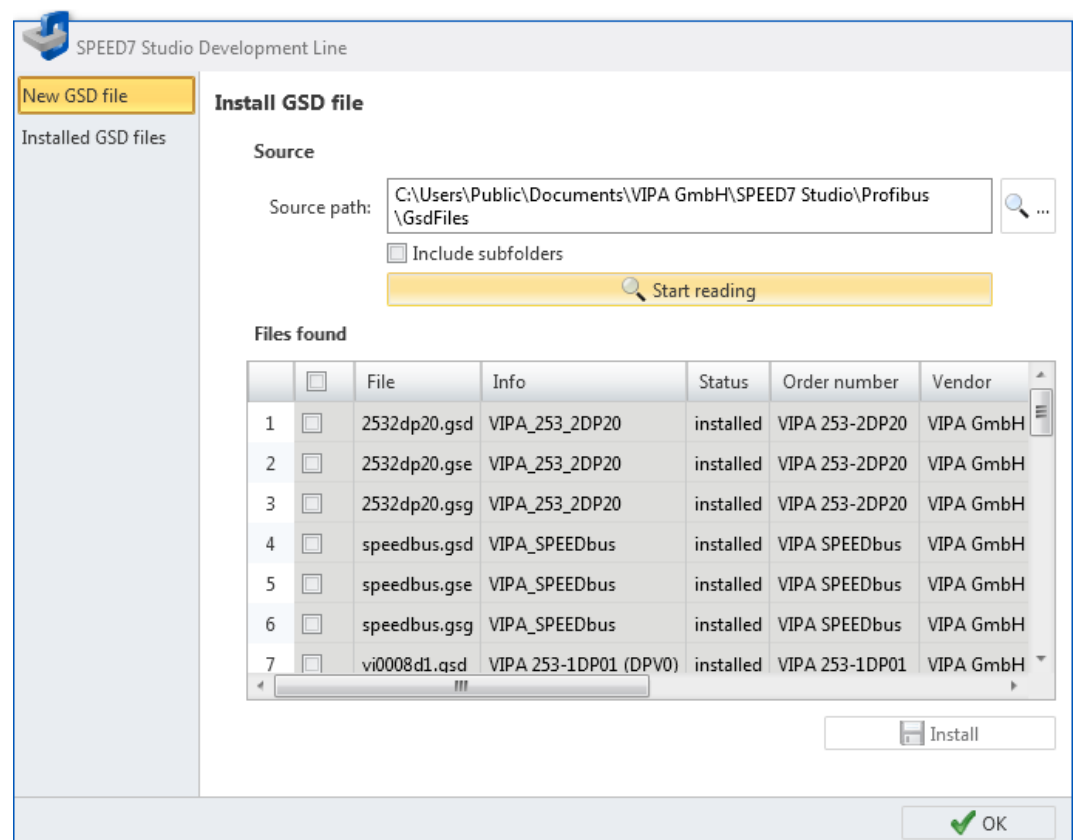


Fig. 75: Install GSD file

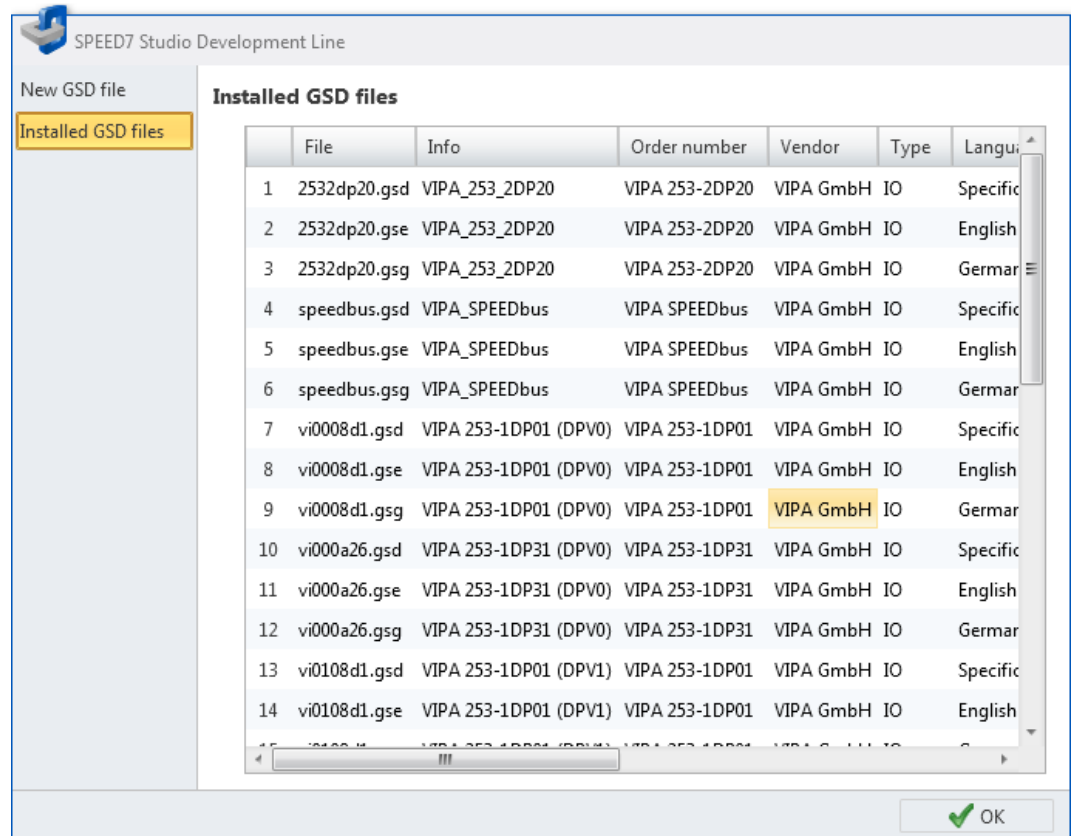








Fig. 76: Installed GSD files

6.12 PROFINET – GSDML

Here you can install the GSDML files for PROFINET partners and have the installed device types shown to you.

1.  Select in the menu bar 'Extra
 *Install device description file (PROFINET – GSDML)*
 The 'Install device description file' dialogue window will open.
2.  Click on the desired section:
 - 'New GSDML file' – Install device description files  Chap. 6.12.1 'New GSDML file' page 99
 - 'Installed GSDML files' – Show all installed device description files  Chap. 6.12.2 'Installed GSDML files' page 100

6.12.1 New GSDML file

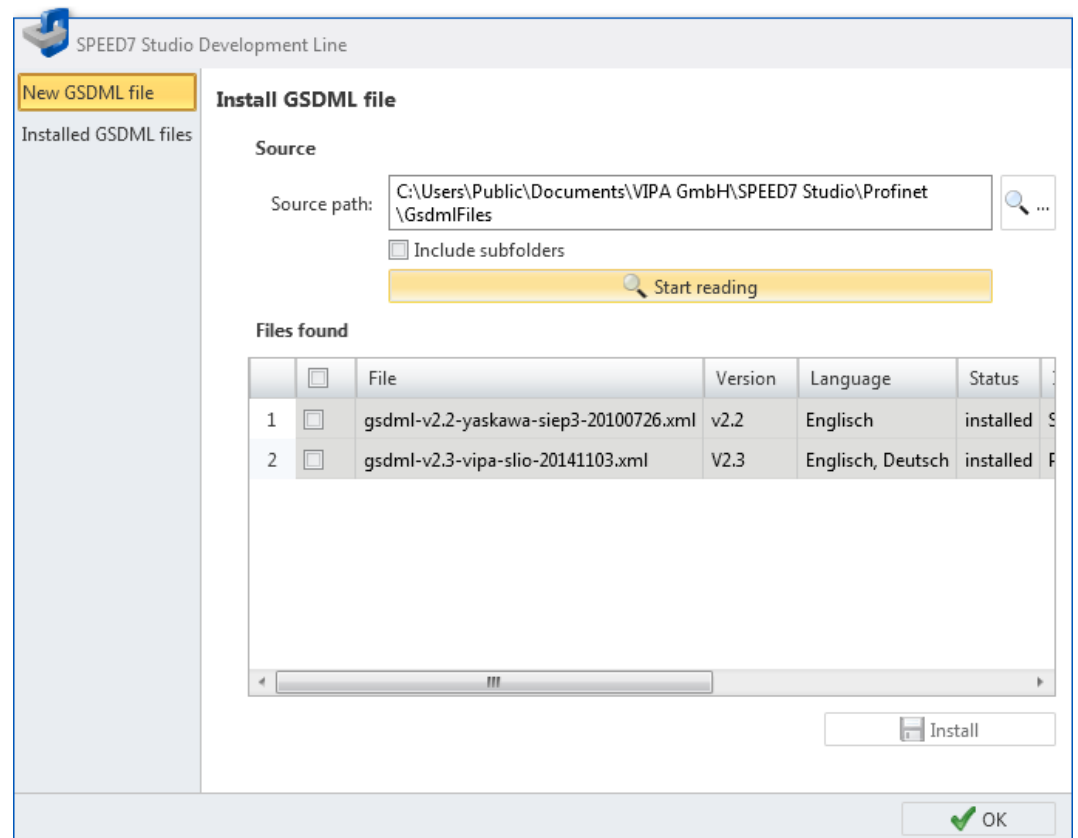


Fig. 77: Install GSDML file

Source

'Source path' – Directory containing the GSDML files to be installed.

➔ Click on the field '...' to select another directory.

'Include subfolders' – Activate this option if there are GSDML files in sub-directories of the source path.

➔ Click on 'Start reading'.

⇒ In the 'Files found' table, all GSDML files are shown that were found in the source path.

Files found

Provides a list of GSDML files found in the source path.

➔ To refresh the table, click on 'Start reading'.

Install device description file

1. ➔ In the second column of the table, highlight the GSDML files that you would like to install.

- or -

In the title row of the table, click on to select all the GSDML files.

2. Click on 'Install'.

⇒ The selected GSDML files are installed and adopted into the catalog (↩ Chap. 4.10 'Catalog' page 34). The installed device types are shown in the 'Device templates' register.

If the selected GSDML file has been installed already, a dialogue window will open. Choose whether you want to replace the GSDML file or not. Select 'Apply for all' in order to apply the process to all files.



GSDML files

GSDML files are composed as an XML document. The file extension is ".xml".

All the languages available for a device type (see 'Language' column) are contained in a GSDML file. The device description can be shown only in languages (↩ Chap. 4.4 'Select language' page 23) contained in the GSDML file.

6.12.2 Installed GSDML files

Here you can see a table with the GSDML files installed in SPEED7 Studio. The installed device types can be used in the project. They are shown in the catalog (↩ Chap. 4.10 'Catalog' page 34) in the 'Device templates' register.

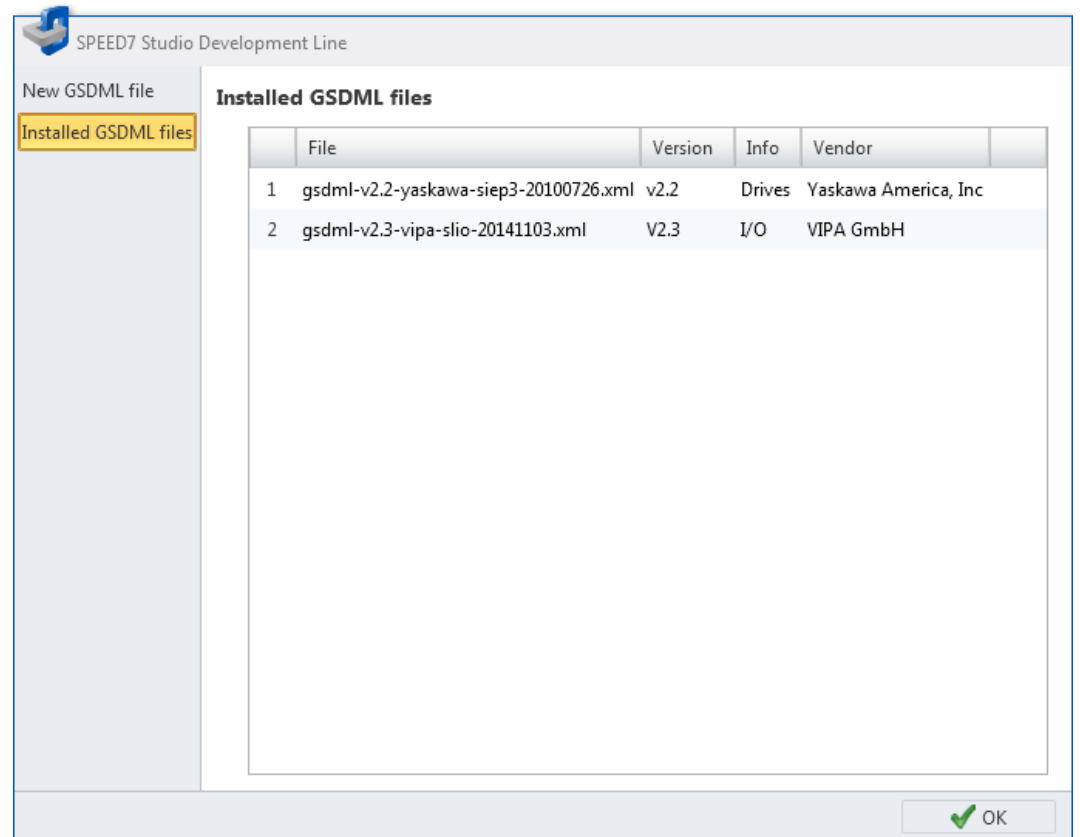






Fig. 78: Installed GSDML files

6.13 EtherCAT – ESI

Here you can install the ESI files for EtherCAT slaves and have the installed device types shown to you.

1.  Select in the menu bar *'Extra → Install device description file (EtherCAT – ESI)'*
⇒ The *'Install device description file'* dialogue window will open.
2.  Click on the desired section:
 - *'New ESI file'* – Install device description files  *Chap. 6.13.1 'New ESI file' page 101*
 - *'Installed ESI files'* – Show all installed device description files  *Chap. 6.13.2 'Installed ESI files' page 102*

6.13.1 New ESI file

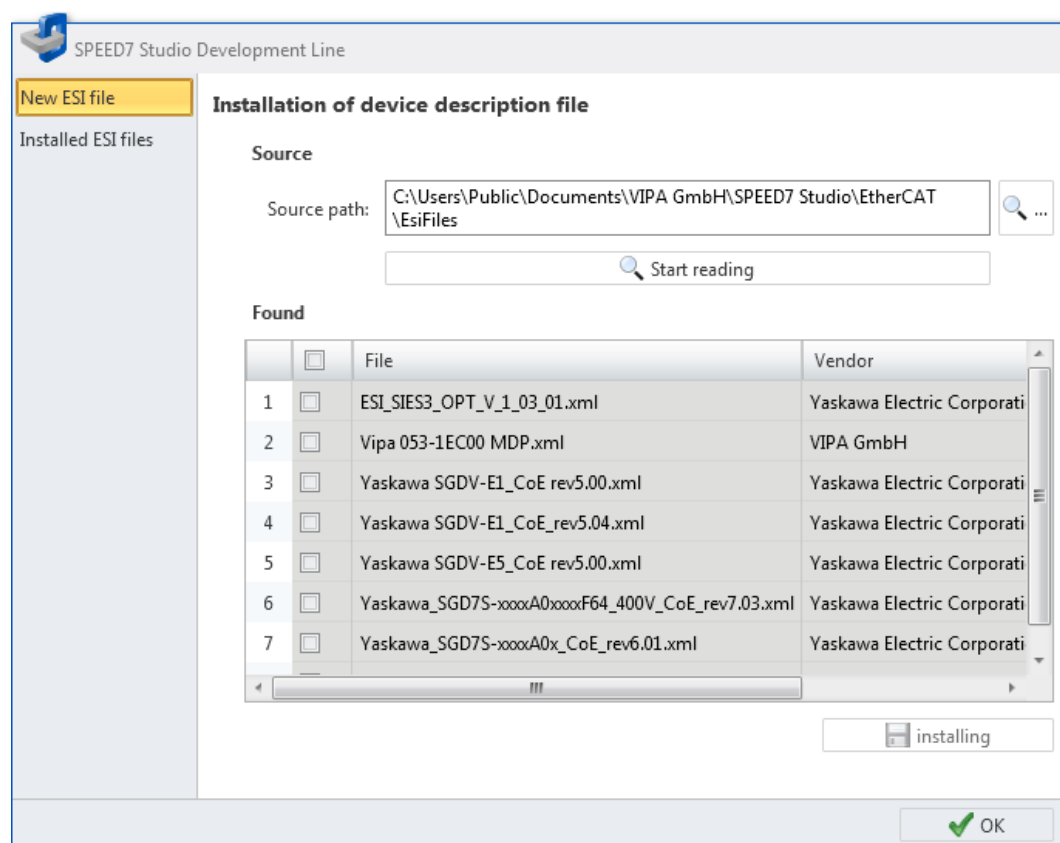




Fig. 79: Install ESI file

Source

'Source path' – Directory containing the ESI files to be installed.

-  Click on the field *'...'* to select another directory.

'Include subfolders' – Activate this option if there are ESI files in subdirectories of the source path.

-  Click on *'Start reading'*.
⇒ In the *'Files found'* table, all ESI files are shown that were found in the source path.

Files found

Provides a list of ESI files found in the source path.

➔ To refresh the table, click on *'Start reading'*.

Install device description file

1. ➔ In the second column of the table, highlight the ESI files that you would like to install.

- or -

In the title row of the table, click on to select all the ESI files.

2. ➔ Click on *'Install'*.

⇒ The selected ESI files are installed and adopted into the catalog (↗ *Chap. 4.10 'Catalog' page 34*). The installed device types are shown in the *'Device templates'* register.

If the selected ESI file has been installed already, a dialogue window will open. Choose whether you want to replace the ESI file or not. Select *'Apply for all'* in order to apply the process to all files.

**ESI files**

ESI files are composed as an XML document. The file extension is ".xml".

6.13.2 Installed ESI files

Here you can see a table with the ESI files installed in *SPEED7 Studio*. The installed device types can be used in the project. They are shown in the catalog (↗ *Chap. 4.10 'Catalog' page 34*) in the *'Device templates'* register.

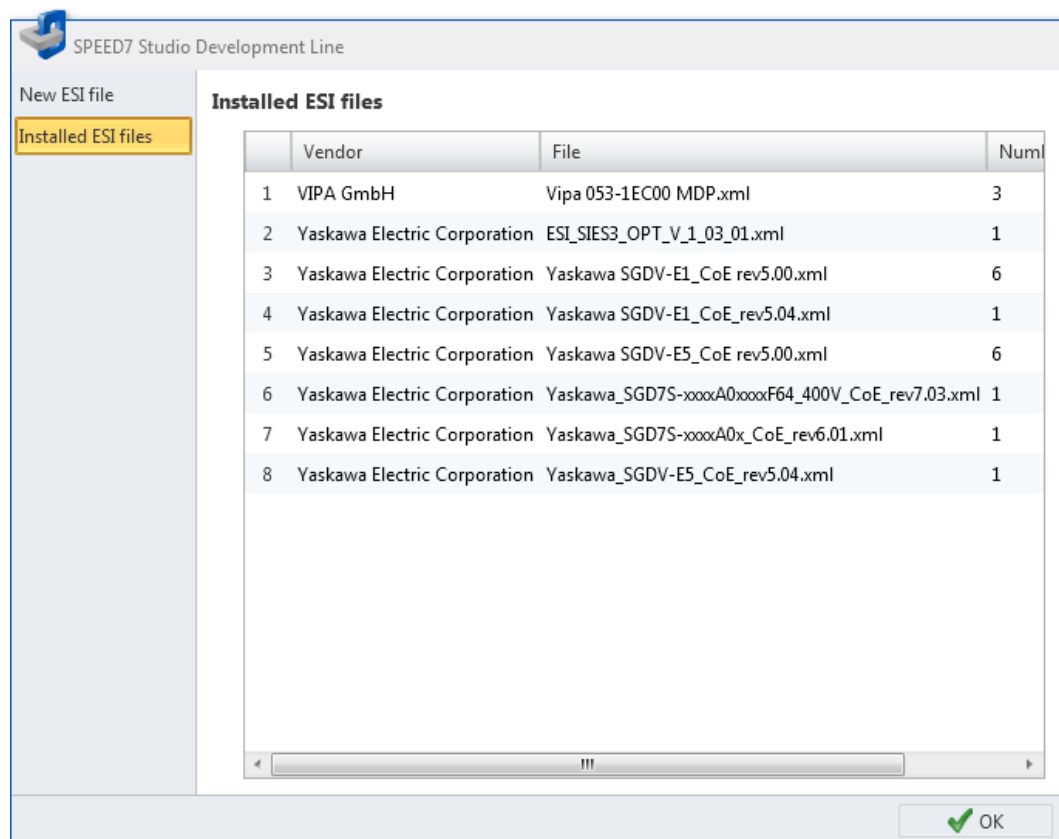



Fig. 80: Installed ESI files

6.14 "Device configuration" editor (PLC)

Images of the PLC layout and a list of device details are provided in the 'Device configuration' editor. Here you can configure the device and included components as well as add or remove components.

If a project is opened and a PLC is included, you can open the 'Device configuration'. Select one of the following options to this end:

- **Project tree:** Click on 'Device configuration' within the PLC.
- **"Devices and networking" editor **: Double-click on a PLC.

“Device configuration” editor (PLC)

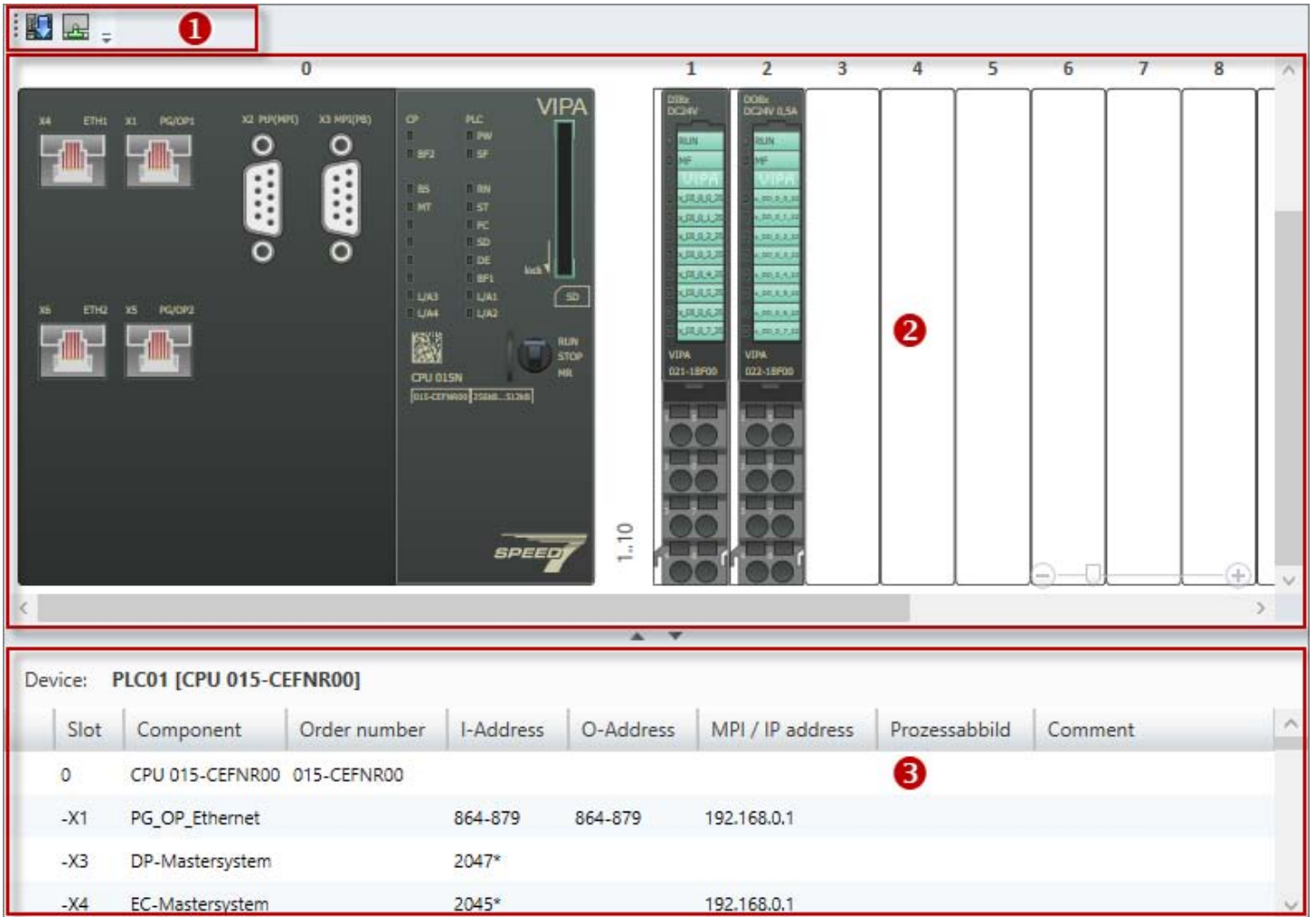


Fig. 81: Device configuration of a PLC

- (1) Toolbar
- (2) Device configuration
- (3) Device details

(1) Toolbar



Transfer hardware configuration: The current device configuration is transferred to the control. Blocks of the user program are not transferred.



Hardware configuration online view: The condition of the input and output signals is displayed on the components. [Chap. 6.14.2 'Show output signals' page 106](#)

(2) Device configuration

The device configuration shows all components which are connected with the device via the rack. Here you can add or remove components. You can also access further component functions.

Showing/hiding slots

For a clear presentation, you can show or hide several slots. The slots are displayed in groups e.g. "4..11", "12..19", etc.



Hiding slots/components



Showing slots/components



Hidden components are not displayed in the editor. They are, however, still present in the project configuration.

Adding components

- ➔ Drag the desired component from the 'Components' register of the catalog to a free slot. ↪ *Chap. 6.16 'Adding components' page 108*
- ⇒ The component is added to the device. Depending on the number of channels, a component occupies a different number of byte addresses. The necessary I/O address ranges are reserved and entered into the "system hardware configuration". ↪ *Chap. 8.11.3 'System hardware configuration' page 248*

Removing components

1. ➔ Right-click with the mouse button on the component and select 'Delete component'.
 - ⇒ A dialogue window will open, where you can select whether the component should be retained or deleted.
2. ➔ Click on 'Yes'.
 - ⇒ The component is removed from the device and the project.

Opening the properties of the component

- ➔ Double-click on a component.
 - ⇒ **CPU:** The dialogue window of the CPU properties will open. ↪ *Chap. 6.23 'Properties of the module (CPU)' page 120*
 - Other components:** The dialogue window of the Component properties will open. ↪ *Chap. 6.25 'Component properties (MICRO modules)' page 135* ↪ *Chap. 6.24 'Properties of the module (SLIO modules)' page 133*

Accessing further functions

- ➔ Right-click with the mouse button on the component and select the desired command, e.g. 'Component properties'.

(3) Device details

Provides a list of details on the device, e.g. component assignment, order numbers or I/O addresses.

'Rack'

- ➔ Here you can select the rack for which you need details.

'Slot' – Slot number within the rack

'Component' – Component name

'Order number' – Order number of the component

'I-Address' – Configured input address (byte address) of an input component

'O-Address' – Configured output address (byte address) of an output component

'MPI/IP address' – Address of a communication interface

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

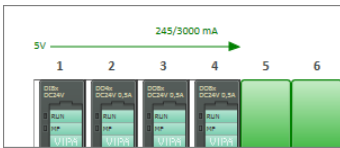
"Device configuration" editor (slave)

Adding components

- ➔ Drag the desired component from the 'Component' register of the catalog to a free line.
- ⇒ The component is added to the device. Depending on the number of channels, a component occupies a different number of byte addresses. The necessary I/O address ranges are reserved and entered into the "system hardware configuration". ↪ *Chap. 8.11.3 'System hardware configuration' page 248*

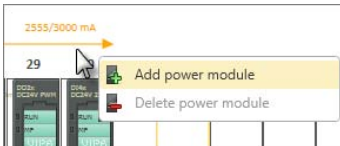
6.14.1 Display output current and add power modules (SLIO only)

Display output current



In the SLIO system (Slize I/O), the power consumption of the projected modules is calculated and displayed. Once approximately 70% of the maximum power consumption on the backplane bus has been reached, the colour of the arrow changes from green to orange. Once approximately 90% of the maximum power consumption has been reached, the colour changes to red.

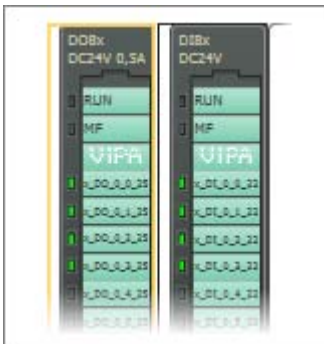
Add power modules



You can expand the voltage supply in a SLIO system by adding power modules.

- ➔ Right-click with the mouse button on the arrow at the slot position where you want to add a power module. Select 'Add power module'.
- ⇒ The added power module is shown at the slot position. The power consumption on the right beside the power module is recalculated.

6.14.2 Show output signals



If you have transferred the hardware configuration and the user program into the control, you can show the condition of the output signals (green LEDs) on the components in the "Device configuration" editor.

Create a communication connection to the control. ↪ *Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings (PLC)' page 113*

- ➔ Select one of the following options to switch the display on or off:
 - **Menu bar:** Select 'Device configuration → Hardware configuration online view'.
 - **"Device configuration" editor** : Click on the button in the toolbar of the editor.
- ⇒ The condition of the output signals (green LEDs) is displayed in the editor.

6.15 "Device configuration" editor (slave)

Images of the slave layout and a list of device details are provided in the 'Device configuration' editor. Here you can configure the device and included components as well as add or remove components.

If a project is opened and it includes a slave, you can open the 'Device configuration'. Select one of the following options to this end:

- **Project tree:** Click on 'Device configuration' within the slave.
- **"Devices and networking" editor** : Double-click on a slave.

Slot	Component	OrderNo.	I-Address	O-Address	Comment
0	IM 053DP	053-1DP00	0--1		
1	DI8xDC24V	021-1BF00	2		
2	DI8xDC24V	021-1BF00	6		
3	DO8xDC24V	022-1BF00		0	
4					

Fig. 82: Device configuration of a slave



- (1) Device configuration
 (2) Device details

(1) Device configuration

The device configuration shows all components which are connected with the device via the rack. Here you can add or remove components. You can also access further component functions.

Showing/hiding slots

For a clear presentation, you can show or hide ten slots. The slots are displayed in groups "1..9", "10..19", etc.

-  Hiding slots/components
 Showing slots/components



Hidden components are not displayed in the editor. They are, however, still present in the project configuration.

Adding components

Adding components

- ➔ Drag the desired component from the *'Components'* register of the catalog to a free slot. ↪ *Chap. 6.16 'Adding components' page 108*
- ⇒ The component is added to the device. Depending on the number of channels, a component occupies a different number of byte addresses. The necessary I/O address ranges are reserved and entered into the "system hardware configuration". ↪ *Chap. 8.11.3 'System hardware configuration' page 248*

Removing components

- ➔ Right-click with the mouse button on the component and select *'Delete component'*.
- ⇒ The component is removed from the device and the project.

Opening the properties of the component

- ➔ Double-click on a component.
- ⇒ The dialogue window of the Component properties will open. ↪ *Chap. 6.23 'Properties of the module (CPU)' page 120* ↪ *Chap. 6.25 'Component properties (MICRO modules)' page 135* ↪ *Chap. 6.24 'Properties of the module (SLIO modules)' page 133*

Accessing further functions

- ➔ Right-click with the mouse button on the component and select the desired command, e.g. *'Component properties'*.

(2) Device details

Provides a list of details on the device, e.g. component assignment, order numbers or I/O addresses.

'Slot' – Slot number within the rack

'Component' – Component name

'Order number' – Order number of the component

'I-Address' – Configured input address (byte address) of an input component or an input module

'O-Address' – Configured output address (byte address) of an output component or an output module

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

Adding components

- ➔ Drag the desired component from the *'Component'* register of the catalog to a free line.
- ⇒ The component is added to the device. Depending on the number of channels, a component occupies a different number of byte addresses. The necessary I/O address ranges are reserved and entered into the "system hardware configuration". ↪ *Chap. 8.11.3 'System hardware configuration' page 248*

6.16 Adding components

You can add components e.g. signal or interface modules to a control. The order of the components in the project must comply with the order of the actually connected components.

A control must already be available in the project. ↪ *Chap. 6.3 'Add new device (PLC)' page 81*

The *'Device configuration'* editor must be open.

↪ *Chap. 6.14 "'Device configuration' editor (PLC)' page 103*

↪ *Chap. 6.15 "'Device configuration' editor (slave)' page 106*

You can add components in a variety of ways:

- Drag & drop component
- Highlight slot and select component

Drag & drop component

You can drag the component out of the catalog and drop it either in the device configuration or in the table with the device details:

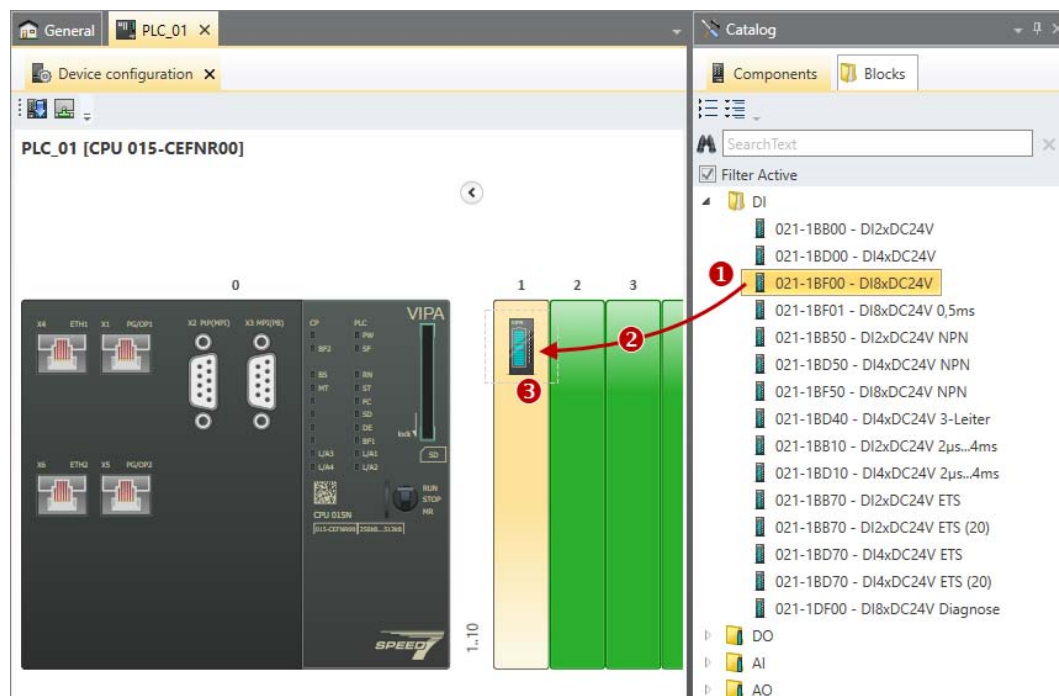


Fig. 83: Add the component (device configuration)

- (1) Select the component (hold left mouse button down)
- (2) Drag the component
- (3) Drop the component at a free slot (release mouse button)

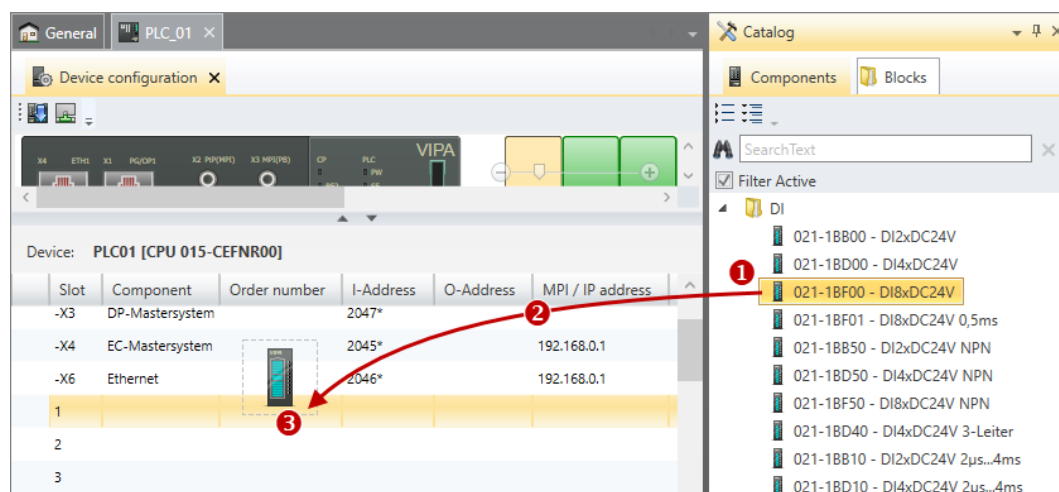


Fig. 84: Add component (table with device details)

- (1) Select the component (hold left mouse button down)
- (2) Drag the component
- (3) Drop the component at a free slot (release mouse button)

Removing components

- ➔ Drag the desired component from the 'Components' register of the catalog to a free slot.
- ⇒ The component is added to the device. Depending on the number of channels, a component occupies a different number of byte addresses. The necessary I/O address ranges are reserved and entered into the "system hardware configuration". ↪ *Chap. 8.11.3 'System hardware configuration' page 248*

Highlight slot and select component

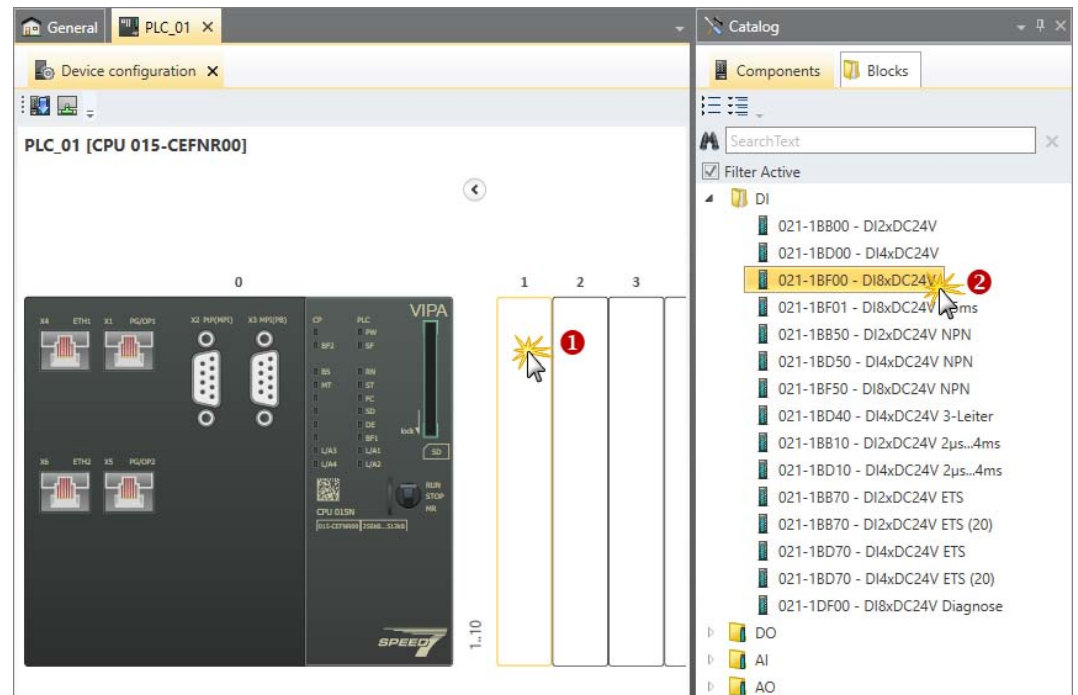
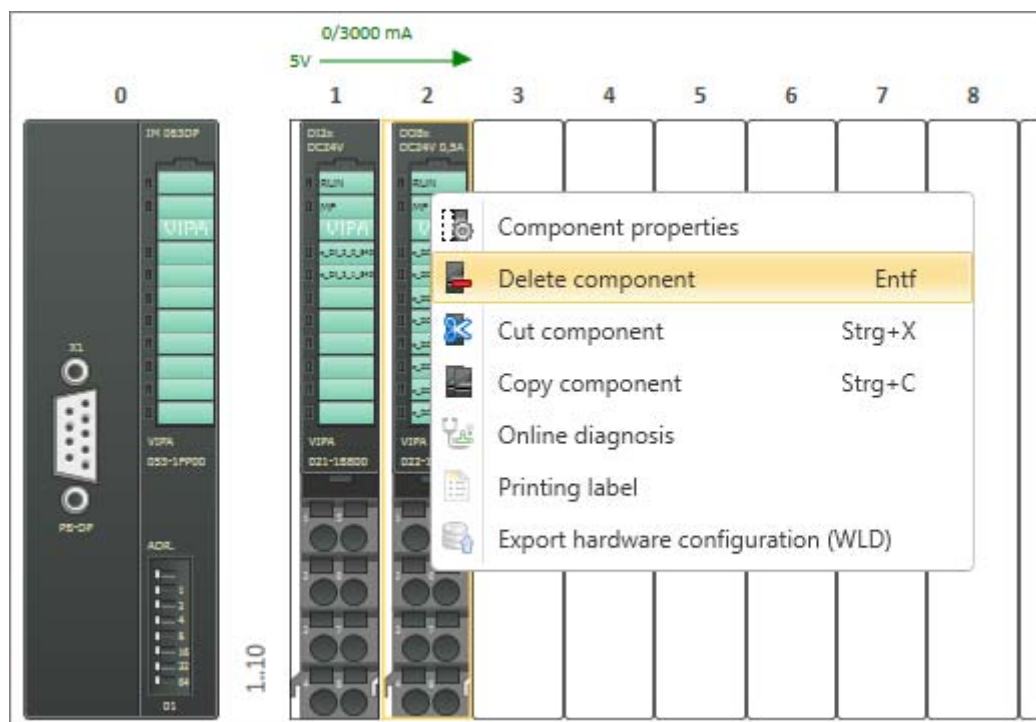


Fig. 85: Add component (highlight slot and insert component)

- (1) Highlight slot (click)
- (2) Select component (double click)
- 1.** ➔ With the left mouse button, highlight the slot into which the component is to be inserted.
 - ⇒ The slot is highlighted.
- 2.** ➔ In the 'Components' register of the catalog, double click on the desired component
 - ⇒ The component is added to the device. Depending on the number of channels, a component occupies a different number of byte addresses. The necessary I/O address ranges are reserved and entered into the "system hardware configuration". ↪ *Chap. 8.11.3 'System hardware configuration' page 248*

6.17 Removing components

Any component which is no longer required, e.g. if you want to replace it by a component of another type, can be removed from the device.



➔ In the "Device configuration" editor , right-click with the mouse button on the component and select 'Delete component'.

⇒ The component is removed from the device and the project. The I/O addresses formerly assigned to the component are available.



6.18 Printing labels

You can create a labelling strip as a PDF file for each component. On the labelling strip, the designations are shown that are indicated in the "Alias" column of the system hardware configuration ([Chap. 8.11.3 'System hardware configuration' page 248](#)).

1. ➔ Mark the desired component in the 'Device configuration' editor. If you want to save labelling strips for several components in one PDF file, mark all the desired components. To do so, keep the [Ctrl] key pressed down.
2. ➔ Right-click with the mouse button on a component and select 'Printing labels'.
 - ⇒ The 'Save as' dialogue window will open.
3. ➔ Select a directory, enter a file name and click on 'Save'.
 - ⇒ The labelling strip is saved as a PDF document.

6.19 Changing device properties

You can change the comment of PLC, HMI or slaves and perform the communication settings for PLC and HMI.

- **PLC:** [Chap. 6.14 "Device configuration" editor \(PLC\)](#)  page 103
- **HMI:** [Chap. 9.3 "Device properties" editor \(HMI device\)](#)  page 312

""Device properties" editor (PLC) > General device properties (PLC)

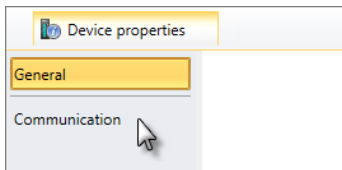
6.20 ""Device properties" editor (PLC)

General information on the control, as well as the communication settings are displayed in the 'Device properties' editor. Here you can change the device name and the comment as well as make communication settings.

If a project is open and a control is included, you can open the 'Device properties':

- **Project tree:** Click on 'Device properties' in the PLC.
- **"Devices and networking" editor**: Right-click with the mouse button on the device and select 'Device properties'.

For the device properties of a visualisation device (HMI): [Chap. 9.3 ""Device properties" editor \(HMI device\)](#) page 312



The 'Device properties' editor is divided into several sections.

6.20.1 General device properties (PLC)

To display or change the device properties of the control, you must proceed as follows:

You have accessed the 'General' section in the 'Device properties' editor of the control. [Chap. 6.20 ""Device properties" editor \(PLC\)](#) page 112

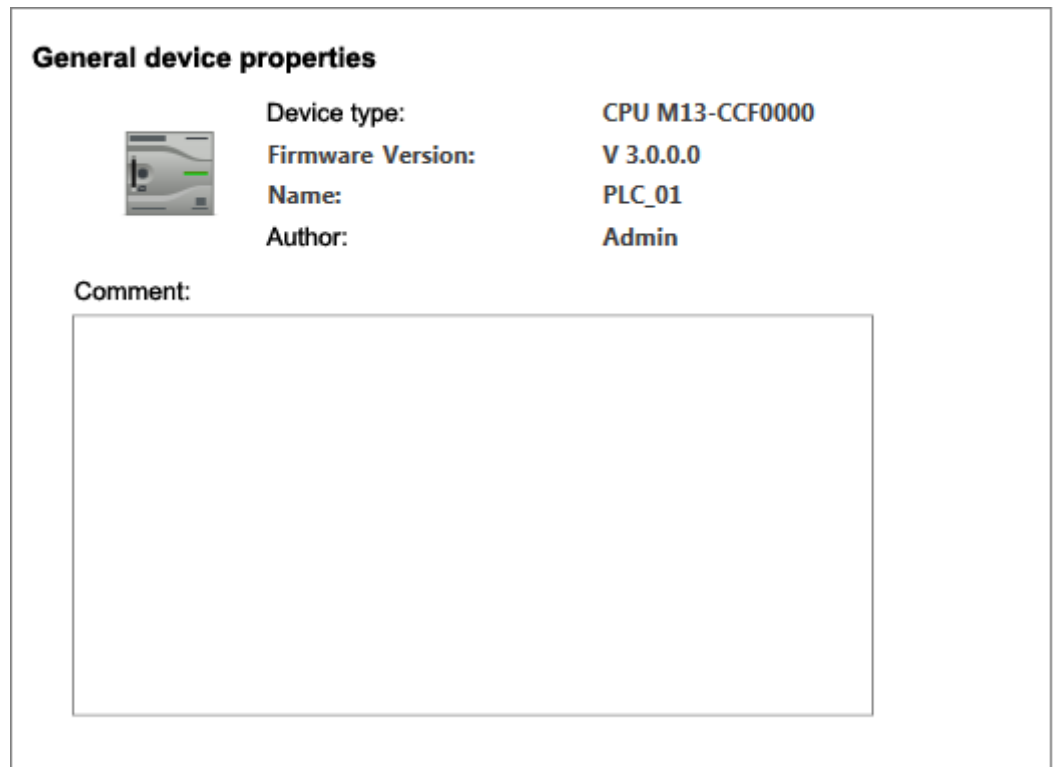


Fig. 86: Device properties of a PLC, as an example

'Device type' – Name of the CPU

'Firmware' – Firmware version of the CPU

'Name' – Device name: The name is displayed in the project tree. To change the name: [Chap. 6.1 ""Project overview" editor](#) page 76 and [Chap. 6.23.1 'General'](#) page 121

'Author' – Name of the responsible person who created the device

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

- ➔ Click on the input field and enter any comment, e.g. an annotation or explanation. With the *[Enter]* key, you can add a new line to the input field.

6.20.2 Communication settings (PLC)

The communication settings are used to configure the interface for the data exchange between programming device and control (PLC). You can directly connect the devices with each other or via a network. The data exchange takes place via a serial or Ethernet interface.

Under '*Extras* ➔ *Configurations*' you can determine which network adapters or ports should be used as a standard. ↪ *Chap. 4.6 'Select interfaces' page 24*

You have accessed the '*Communication*' section in the '*Device properties*' editor of the control. ↪ *Chap. 6.20 ""Device properties" editor (PLC) page 112*

Communication configurations

Active pc interface:

Properties of Serial interface

PC interface:

COM port Baudrate

CPU interface:

Properties of ethernet interface

PC interface:

IP address:

CPU interface:

192.168.10.100

Properties of simulation interface

PC interface:

192.168.178.22

CPU interface:

0.0.0.0

Fig. 87: Communication settings

""Device properties" editor (PLC) > Communication settings (PLC)

- If you wish to select the serial interface for the data exchange between the programming device and the control, continue with [further information page 114](#).
- If you wish to select the Ethernet interface for the data exchange between the programming device and the control, continue with [further information page 114](#).
- If you wish to test (simulate) the user program on the programming device, continue with [further information page 115](#).

Setting the serial interface

1. **'Active PC interface'**: Select **'Serial interface'**.
2. **'COM port'**: Select the desired port number of the serial interface of the programming device from the list.



If no port number is displayed, there is no serial interface installed on your programming device, or the interface is deactivated.

3. **'Baud rate'**: Select the desired transmission rate (Bit/s).
4. **'CPU interface'**: Select the desired interface of the control from the list.
5. To perform further configuration of the interface, click on **'interface configuration'**.
[Chap. 6.23.1 'General' page 121](#)
6. In order to check whether a connection between the programming device and the control can be established with the selected communication settings, click on **'Verify connection'**.
 - ⇒ You can see in the status line, whether the connection could be established successfully.
7. In order to check whether your programming device is connected with the correct control, you can retrieve information from the connected control. Click on **'Accessible partners'**.
 - ⇒ The **'Search for accessible partners'** dialogue window will open. [Chap. 6.21 'Search for accessible partners' page 116](#)

Setting the Ethernet interface

1. **'Active PC interface'**: Select **'Ethernet interface'**.
2. **'PC interface'**: Select the network adapter for the communication connection from the list.
 - ⇒ If an IP address is already configured in the network adapter, it is shown under the input field.
3. **'CPU interface'**: Select the desired interface of the control from the list.
 - ⇒ If an IP address is already configured in the control, it is shown under the input field.
4. To perform further configurations of the interface, click on **'interface configuration'**.
 - ⇒ The **'Interface properties'** dialogue window will open. [Chap. 6.22 'Interface properties \(Ethernet\)' page 118](#)
5. In order to check whether a connection between the programming device and the control can be established with the selected communication settings, click on **'Verify connection'**.
 - ⇒ You can see in the status line, whether the connection could be established successfully.

6. ➤ In order to check whether your programming device is connected with the correct control, you can retrieve information from the connected control. Click on *'Accessible partners'*.
 - ⇒ The *'Search for accessible partners'* dialogue window will open. ↪ *Chap. 6.21 'Search for accessible partners' page 116*

Set interface for the simulation

1. ➤ *'Active PC interface'*: Select *'Simulation'*.
2. ➤ *'PC interface'*: Select the network adapter for the virtual communication connection from the list. If you select "Loopback Adapter", the simulation is run on the PC without using the network adapter.
 - ⇒ If an IP address is already configured in the network adapter, it is shown under the input field. For "Loopback Adapter" the IP address is always "127.0.0.1".
3. ➤ In order to check whether a connection between the programming device and the virtual interface can be established with the selected communication setting, click on *'Verify connection'*.
 - ⇒ You can see in the status line, whether the connection could be established successfully.
4. ➤ To perform further configurations and to start the simulation, click on *'interface configuration'*.

In order to perform a simulation: ↪ *Chap. 8.17 'Simulate user program' page 269*


6.20.3 Server configuration (WebVisu)

This section is only displayed if the control has an integrated web server for the web visualisation.

If the control has an OPC UA server, further data is displayed here. ↪ *Chap. 7.7 'Configure OPC UA' page 200*

You have accessed the *'WebVisu configuration'* section in the *'Device properties'* editor of the control. ↪ *Chap. 6.20 ""Device properties" editor (PLC) page 112*

Add WebVisu

- Click on  *'Add WebVisu'*.
 - ⇒ A new *WebVisu* project is created and displayed in the project tree. Under *'General configurations'* and *'SSL configurations'*, you can configure *WebVisu* further.

General configurations

'Port number' – Access to the web visualisation:

- "8080" (standard port): Access to the web visualisation via the IP address of the CPU with indication of the port, e.g. `http://192.168.72.120:8080`
Access to the device web page via the IP address of the CPU (port 80), e.g. `http://192.168.72.120`
- "80" (HTTP port): Access to the web visualisation via the IP address of the CPU without indication of the port, e.g. `http://192.168.72.120`
Access to the device web page via the IP address of the CPU with indication of the port, e.g. `http://192.168.72.120:8080`
- "443" (SSL port): Secured access to the web visualisation via the IP address of the CPU with indication of the port, e.g. `http://192.168.72.120:8080`
Unsecured access to the device web page via the IP address of the CPU with indication of the port, e.g. `http://192.168.72.120:8080`

'Query interval (ms)' – Interval for the cyclic update of the web visualisation

Search for accessible partners

'Execution device' on which this *WebVisu* project shall be executed:

- CPU: The *WebVisu* project is executed on the CPU
- CP: The *WebVisu* project is executed on the Ethernet CP.

SSL configurations

Configurations for secured access:

'Activate encryption' – Secured access to the web visualisation

'Disable HTTP'

'Original path of the certificate used' – Loading security certificate into CPU



Please note that the secured access may have a negative impact on the CPU's performance and on the reaction time of the entire system!

Removing *WebVisu*

➔ Right-click with the mouse button on the *WebVisu* project in the project tree and select '*Delete WebVisu*'.

6.21 Search for accessible partners

This dialogue window will open if you click on '*Accessible partners*' at '*Communication*' in the '*Device properties*' editor. ↪ [Chap. 6.20.2 '*Communication settings \(PLC\)*' page 113](#)

You may also open this dialogue window if you want to transfer the hardware configuration and the user program to the control. ↪ [Chap. 8.18 '*Transfer the hardware configuration and user program to the control*' page 271](#)

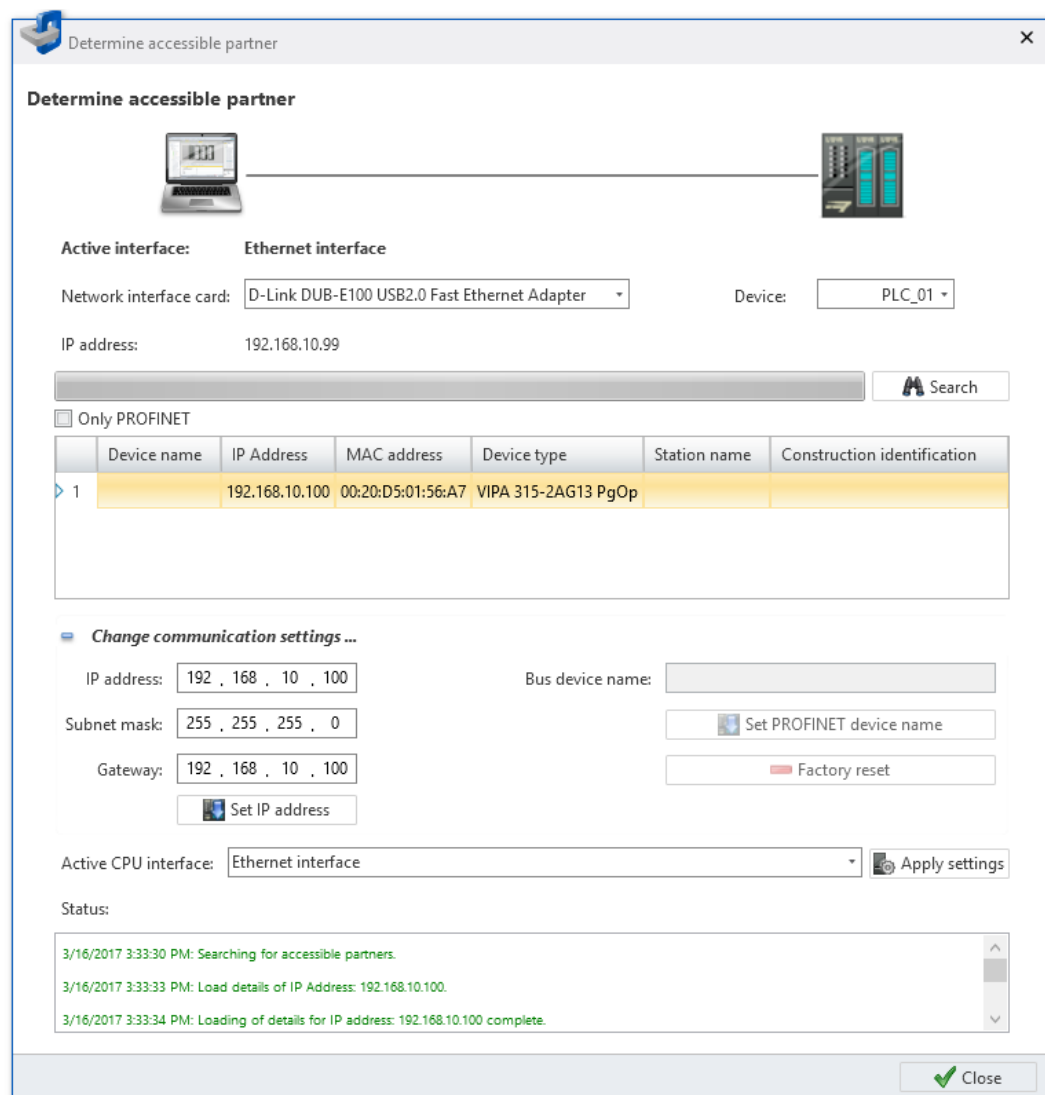


Fig. 88: Dialogue window "Search for accessible partners" (Ethernet interface)

Search for accessible partners

1. Under 'Active CPU interface', select the connection which connects the control with the programming device. Click on 'Apply settings'.
2. 'COM port' (only for serial interface): Select the desired port number of the serial interface of the programming device for the connection test.
'Network interface card' (only for Ethernet interface): Select the network adapter of the programming device for the connection test.
3. If you want to find only PROFINET devices (only possible via Ethernet interface), select the option 'Only PROFINET'.
4. 'Active CPU interface': Select the desired interface of the CPU from the list, if required.
5. Click on 'Search'.
⇒ The search for connected devices is started and displayed at 'Status'.
Any device that has been found by the Search function is displayed in a table.
6. As soon as the desired device is shown in the table, you can stop the search. Select the desired device.
7. Then, click on 'Apply settings'.



Problem with USB network adapters

If you use a USB network adapter for the first time in SPEED7 Studio, it might not be able to find the accessible partners.

- In that case, call up the Windows function "Execute" with the key combination [Windows]+[R].
Run "net stop npf".
- Call up the Windows function "Execute" again and run "net start npf".
- or -
Restart your PC.

Set IP address

You can change the IP address of a connected device.

1. Show the input area "Change communication settings".
2. Click on 'Search'.
 - ⇒ The search for connected devices is started and displayed at 'Status'.
 - Any device that has been found by the Search function is displayed in a table.
3. As soon as the desired device is shown in the table, you can stop the search. Select the desired device.
4. Enter the new IP address and if necessary the subnet mask and the gateway address.
5. Click on 'Set IP address'.
 - ⇒ The new address is loaded into the device.

Change PROFINET-Configurations

If you have selected a PROFINET connection under 'Active CPU interface', you can set the PROFINET device name or perform a factory reset of the IO controller.

6.22 Interface properties (Ethernet)

This dialogue window will open if you click on 'interface configuration' in the 'Properties of Ethernet interface' section at 'Communication' in the 'Device properties' editor.
 ↪ Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings (PLC)' page 113

General

Interface properties

General Addresses

General

Name: PG_OP_Ethernet

Subnet ID: 4000 BBCC

PDU size: 240 Bytes

IP settings

IP address: 192 , 168 , 10 , 100

Subnet mask: 255 , 255 , 255 , 0

OK

Fig. 89: Dialogue window "Interface properties – General"

'Name' – Name of the connection point

'Subnet ID' – Address for the communication with connection partners via routing functions, e.g. via teleservice

'PDU size' – Data size of a Protocol Data Unit for the 'Watch block' function:

- 240 byte: Standard
- 480 byte: Siemens
- 960 byte: VIPA

'IP address' and 'Subnet mask' – Address of the CPU interface of the control

Properties of the module (CPU)

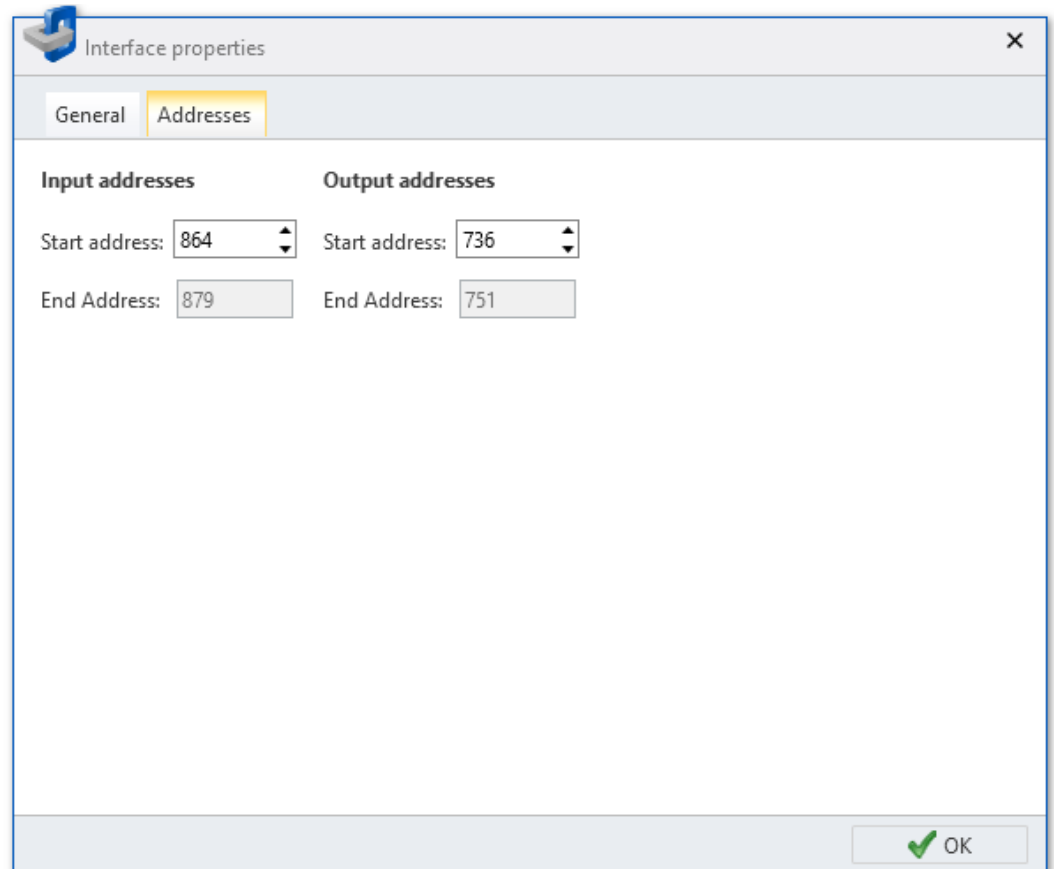
Addresses

Fig. 90: Dialogue window "Interface properties – Addresses"

'Input addresses' and 'Output addresses' – Reserved address section (byte address) for the exchange of diagnostics data between CPU and PC

6.23 Properties of the module (CPU)

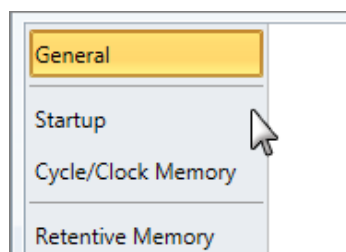
You can adjust the properties of the CPU. The following configurations can be parametrised:

- General properties, e.g. device name, MPI interface [↪ Chap. 6.23.1 'General' page 121](#)
- Feature Sets [↪ Chap. 6.23.2 'Feature Sets' page 122](#)
- Starting behaviour [↪ Chap. 6.23.3 'Start-up' page 122](#)
- Synchronous cycle interrupts [↪ Chap. 6.23.4 'Synchronous cycle interrupts' page 123](#)
- Cycle and clock memory [↪ Chap. 6.23.5 'Cycle / Clock memory' page 124](#)
- Retentive memory [↪ Chap. 6.23.6 'Retentive memory' page 125](#)
- Local data [↪ Chap. 6.23.7 'Local data' page 125](#)
- Interrupts [↪ Chap. 6.23.8 'Interrupts' page 125](#)
- Time of day interrupts [↪ Chap. 6.23.9 'Time of day interrupts' page 126](#)
- Cyclic interrupts [↪ Chap. 6.23.10 'Cyclic interrupts' page 126](#)
- Diagnosis behaviour and clock [↪ Chap. 6.23.11 'Diagnostics/Clock' page 127](#)
- Access protection [↪ Chap. 6.23.12 'Protection' page 127](#)


- Advanced Configurations ↗ *Chap. 6.23.13 'Advanced Configurations' page 128*
- Properties of the CPU components
 - PG/OP Ethernet ↗ *Chap. 6.23.14 'PG/OP Ethernet' page 129*
 - General properties ↗ *Chap. 6.23.15 'General' page 130*
 - I/O addresses ↗ *Chap. 6.23.16 'I/O addresses' page 130*
 - I/O (digital) ↗ *Chap. 6.23.17 'Inputs (digital)' page 131*
 - I/O (analogue) ↗ *Chap. 6.23.19 'Inputs (analogue)' page 132*
 - Basic parameters ↗ *Chap. 6.23.21 'Basic parameters' page 132*
 - Channel ↗ *Chap. 6.23.22 'Channel...' page 132*
 - Parameters ↗ *Chap. 6.23.23 'Parameter' page 133*



Depending on the CPU used, there are different configuration options. Selection or input fields highlighted in grey cannot be edited for this CPU type.



If a project is open and a control is included, you can open the properties of the CPU.

1. ➤ Select one of the following options:
 - **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control (PLC) and select *'Local components → CPU... → Component properties'*.
 - **"Device configuration" editor** : Double-click on the CPU.
 - ⇒ The dialogue window *'Component properties (CPU)'* will open.
2. ➤ Click on the desired parameter block, e.g. *'Startup'*.
 - ⇒ The page with the appropriate parameters will open.
3. ➤ Change the parameters, if necessary, and click on *'OK'*.
 - ⇒ The changed properties are applied in the project configuration. After the changed parameters have been transferred (↗ *Chap. 5.10 'Transfer project' page 69*) and once the CPU has been started, the changed parameters are activated in the control.

6.23.1 General



Depending on the CPU used, there are different configuration options. Selection or input fields highlighted in grey cannot be edited for this CPU type.

Here you can make general configurations for the current CPU.

'Name' – Name of the control: The name is displayed in the project tree.

'Plant designation' – Specific plant designation: Here you can uniquely identify parts of the plant on the basis of functional aspects. The construction identification has a hierarchic structure according to IEC 1346-1.

'Location designation' – Any comment

MPI-Data

Here you can configure the MPI subnet (Multi Point Interface) for the serial connection between accessible MPI partners.

'Address' – MPI address of the CPU

Properties of the module (CPU) > Start-up

Address 2 for VIPA CPUs is pre-set as a standard. Address 0 is reserved for programming devices.

'Max address' – Highest address number in the MPI subnet

'Secondary baud rate' – The transmission rate (Bit/s) of the MPI subnet must not be higher than the transmission rate of the slowest accessible MPI partner.

6.23.2 Feature Sets



Depending on the CPU and the firmware version used, there are different configuration options. Selection or input fields highlighted in grey cannot be edited for this CPU type.

Here you can activate the corresponding additional functions in *SPEED7 Studio*.

'Motion Control'

- *'inactive'* – Motion Control is deactivated
- *'Motion Control + ... Axes'* –
Cycle synchronicity with activation of OB 60 and OB 61 for the corresponding number of axes.

'PROFIBUS'

- *'inactive'* – PROFIBUS functionality is deactivated
- *'PROFIBUS-Slave functionality'* – PROFIBUS functionality is activated: The control can be used as DP slave.
- *'PROFIBUS-Master functionality'* – PROFIBUS functionality is activated: The control can be used as DP master.



Please be aware that the additional functions in SPEED7 Studio can be activated only if you possess a valid licence for these!

6.23.3 Start-up



Depending on the CPU used, there are different configuration options. Selection or input fields highlighted in grey cannot be edited for this CPU type.

Here you can make general configurations for the start-up behaviour of the current CPU.

'Startup if preset configuration does not match actual configuration'

- The expected configuration is the configuration of the components which is defined in the project and uploaded to the CPU.
- The actual configuration is the implemented configuration of the components.

If this option is deselected, the CPU remains in the operating mode STOP for the following cases:

- One or more components are not located in the configured slot.
- A component of another type is located in the configured slot.

If this option is selected, the CPU switches to the operating mode RUN even if the components are not located in the configured slots or if components of another type are located there.

'Delete PAA at hot restart' – If this option is selected, the process image of the outputs (PAA) is deleted after the warm restart of the CPU.

'Disable hot restart by operator' – The types of start-up are restricted when triggered by the operation or communication job:

If this option is selected, only restart or cold start are possible. Warm restart is not possible.

If this option is deselected, all types of start-up are possible.

Start-up after PowerON

Here you can select whether a restart, warm restart or cold start should be made after having activated the power supply (PowerON).

- Cold start: All variables and memory ranges are initialised.
- Restart (warm start): The non-retentive memory ranges are initialised, the retentive memory ranges are restored. [↪ Chap. 6.23.6 'Retentive memory' page 125](#)
- Warm restart: The user program is continued where it has been interrupted.

Monitoring time for ...

The time base of the following parameters is 100 milliseconds. Multiply the input value with the time base.

Example: Input value 650 * 100 ms = 65.000 ms of monitoring time

'Finished message from components (100 ms)' – Maximum duration of the Ready signal of all configured components after having switched on the power supply (netON).

'Transfer of parameters to components (100 ms)' – Maximum duration of the parameter transfer to the parametrisable components.

'Hot restart (100 ms)' – Maximum duration of the warm restart:

If the time between PowerOFF and PowerON or between the operating modes STOP and RUN is longer than the time entered here, there is no warm restart. The CPU remains in the operating mode STOP.

6.23.4 Synchronous cycle interrupts



Depending on the CPU and the firmware version used, there are different configuration options. Selection or input fields highlighted in grey cannot be edited for this CPU type.

You can perform the cycle synchronicity configurations here.

OB 61

Currently you cannot perform any configurations here. The data serves as information on the OB 61.

Behaviour at runtime violation

'Warn threshold' – Here, indicate a value in μs that is to serve as the threshold for the runtime violation as soon as the application cycle time is exceeded.

'Error behaviour'

- deactivated: Runtime violations are ignored.
- CPU stops: In the event of a runtime violation, the CPU goes to STOP.
- OB 80 is requested: In the event of a runtime violation, the OB 80 is requested.

'Maximum number of errors' – Indicate how often the runtime may be violated before this is reported to the system as a runtime error.

Synchronicity of local SLIO bus

'Synchronize all local modules' – If this option is activated, the address range of the local system SLIO modules is placed into the process image of the OB 61.

6.23.5 Cycle / Clock memory



Depending on the CPU used, there are different configuration options. Selection or input fields highlighted in grey cannot be edited for this CPU type.

Here you can make general configurations for the cycle/clock memory of the current CPU.

'Refresh process image cyclically' – If this option is selected, the process image of the organisation block OB 1 is cyclically updated. This expands the cycle time.

'Scan cycle monitoring time (ms)' – If the run time of the user program exceeds the scan cycle monitoring time, the CPU switches to the operating mode STOP (time base: milliseconds).

Reasons for time-out:

- Communication processes
- Accumulation of interrupt events
- Error in the CPU program

'Minimum cycle time (ms)' – Guaranteed compliance with a minimum scan cycle time: The start of a new cycle is delayed until the minimum scan cycle time has been reached (time base: milliseconds).

'Scan cycle load from Communication (%)' – Percentage of communication processes compared to the complete cycle time.

Example: If set to 50% in the configuration, the cycle time might double.

'OB 85 calling at periphery access errors' – Reaction of the CPU after periphery access errors during the update of the process image.

'Size of the process image inputs' – Size of the memory range for the input operand areas (I) in byte

'Size of the process image outputs' – Size of the memory range for the output operand areas (O) in byte

Clock memory

Clock memories periodically change their value in pre-set intervals.

'Clock memory' – Select this option if the CPU is to provide clock memories.

'Memory byte' – Number of the memory byte for the clock memory. The memory byte is used only if you select the *'Clock memory'* option.



The selected memory byte cannot be used for the intermediate storage of data.

6.23.6 Retentive memory



Depending on the CPU used, there are different configuration options. Selection or input fields highlighted in grey cannot be edited for this CPU type.

In order to keep data in case of power failure, certain data ranges can be marked as retentive. A restart (warm start) will restore the values of the retentive memory ranges from the last program cycle.

'Number of memory bytes starting with MB0' – Number of retentive memory bytes from memory byte 0

Example: Input value 16 = memory bytes 0 to 15 are retentive

'Number of timers starting with T0' – Number of retentive timers from T0: Each timer requires 2 bytes.

'Number of counters starting with C0' – Number of retentive counters from Z0

Please also note ↗ Chap. 6.23.13 'Advanced Configurations' page 128.

Areas

You can define up to 8 retentive memory ranges in the data blocks:

'DB No.' – Number of the retentive data block

'Byte address' – Starting address within the retentive data block

'Number of bytes' – Number of retentive bytes from the starting address within the data block

6.23.7 Local data



Depending on the CPU used, there are different configuration options. Selection or input fields highlighted in grey cannot be edited for this CPU type.

Local data are the temporary data of a block.

'1...29' – Number of local data bytes for the priority classes 1 to 29

'Maximum bytes' – Display of the memory range totally available for local data

'Occupied' – Display of the memory range which is currently occupied by local data (total of the local data bytes of the priority classes 1 to 29)

6.23.8 Interrupts



Depending on the CPU used, there are different configuration options. Selection or input fields highlighted in grey cannot be edited for this CPU type.

Here you can define the order for processing the individual interrupt organisation blocks. OBs with the smallest number have lowest priority. OBs with priority 0 are not processed.

The following interrupt OBs are listed:

- OB 40 - OB 47: Process interrupts
- OB 20 - OB 23: Time delay interrupts
- OB 50, OB 51, OB 55 - OB 57: Communication interrupts
- OB 81 - OB 87: Async. error interrupts

6.23.9 Time of day interrupts



Depending on the CPU used, there are different configuration options. Selection or input fields highlighted in grey cannot be edited for this CPU type.

The time of day interrupt organisation blocks OB 10 to OB 17 can interrupt the processing of OB 1 once or at a certain interval.

Depending on the CPU used, you can parametrise up to 8 time of day interrupts:

'Priority' – Order in which a time of day interrupt organisation block is processed: OBs with the smallest number have lowest priority. OBs with priority 0 are not processed.

'Active' – If this option is selected, the time of day interrupt OB will be started after the next restart of the CPU. If this option is not selected, the time of day interrupt OB will be deselected after the next restart of the CPU.

'Execution' – Execution of the interrupt once or at certain intervals (repeat period)

'Start date' and *'time'* – Time of the initial execution of the time of day interrupt

Example

With the configuration *'Execution'* Last day of month, *'Start date'* 30/9/2013 and *'Time'* 8:30 am, the time of day interrupt is initially displayed on 30/9/2013 at 8:30 am and then every month at the same time at the end of the month. Every interrupt is displayed on the last day of the month.

6.23.10 Cyclic interrupts



Depending on the CPU used, there are different configuration options. Selection or input fields highlighted in grey cannot be edited for this CPU type.

The cyclic interrupt organisation blocks OB 30 to OB 38 can interrupt the processing of OB 1 at a certain interval.

Depending on the CPU used, you can parametrise up to 9 cyclic interrupts:

'Priority' – Order in which a cyclic interrupt organisation block is processed: OBs with the smallest number have lowest priority. OBs with priority 0 are not processed.

'Execution (ms)' – Interval of the periodic execution of the cyclic interrupt OB in milliseconds. The starting time is the switching from operating mode STOP to RUN.

'Phase offset (ms)' – Time in milliseconds by which the execution time of the cyclic interrupt is to be delayed. By selecting several cyclic interrupts, you can use the phase offset to make sure that the cyclic interrupts do not start at the same time.

6.23.11 Diagnostics/Clock



Depending on the CPU used, there are different configuration options. Selection or input fields highlighted in grey cannot be edited for this CPU type.

'Extended functional scope' – This parameter does not have any function. The expanded range of functions for diagnostics is not supported.

'Report cause of STOP' – If this option is selected and if the operating mode switches from RUN to STOP, the CPU will report the reason for STOP to the programming and/or control device.

'Report to process control active' – This parameter does not have any function.

Clock

Here you can define, which clock is to be synchronised with which clock.

The following synchronisations are possible:

- Synchronisation in PLC: Application memory (internal)
- Synchronisation on MPI: Multi Point Interface (external)
- Synchronisation on MFI: Multifunctional interface (external via the second interface)

'Synchronisation type' –

- *'None'*: The clocks are not synchronised
- *'As master'*: The clock of the CPU synchronises other clocks as the master
- *'As slave'*: The clock of the CPU is synchronised by another clock

'Time interval' – Time interval of the periodic execution of the synchronization

'Correction factor (ms)' – The correction factor adjusts any clock deviation occurring within 24 Hours. You can enter positive and negative values in milliseconds.

Example

If the clock runs slow by 1 Second within 24 Hours, you can adjust this deviation with the correction factor "+1000".

6.23.12 Protection

'Protection level' – Here you can configure one of 3 protection levels to protect the CPU against unauthorised access.

- *'No protection'*: Write or read access is possible without a password
- *'Write protection'*: Read access is possible without a password; for write access, a password is required
- *'Read/write protection'*: Write or read access is only possible with a password

Password

'Password (max. 8 characters)' – Enter a password, if you want to protect the access to the CPU.

'Re-enter password' – Enter the password once more.

Use alphanumeric characters and the following special characters:

!#~|^\$%(){}[]*+.,:=?_@-



NOTICE!

Loss of the password!

The access to the CPU is blocked!

- Store the password at a safe place.

6.23.13 Advanced Configurations



Depending on the CPU and the firmware version used, there are different configuration options. Selection or input fields highlighted in grey cannot be edited for this CPU type.

'Function ... X<nr>'

If the CPU has a configurable interface (connection X<nr>, nr = any number), this interface can be configured:

- *'Disabled'* – Deactivates the RS485 interface
- *'MPI/DP'* – This configuration is to be selected for CPUs whose PROFIBUS functionality is released by means of a feature set.
- *'MPI'* – In this operating mode, the interface serves as a connection between the programming device and the CPU via MPI. The configuration and programming, for example, take place by this means. Additionally, MPI serves the purpose of communication between several CPUs or between HMIs and the CPU.
- *'PtP'* – In this operating mode, the RS485 interface works as an interface for serial point-to-point communication. Here, you can exchange data serially between two stations using protocols.
- *'PROFIBUS DP async'* – PROFIBUS DP master operation asynchronous to the CPU cycle: CPU cycle and the cycles of all VIPA PROFIBUS DP masters at the CPU run independently.
- *'PROFIBUS DP syncIn'* – The CPU is waiting for DP master input data.
- *'PROFIBUS DP syncOut'* – The DP master system is waiting for CPU output data.
- *'PROFIBUS DP syncInOut'* – CPU and DP master system are waiting for each other thus forming cycle.

'MPI address X<nr>'

If the configurable interface X<nr> of the CPU (connection X<nr>, nr = any number) is set to MPI, here you can specify an MPI address for the interface.

'MPI baud rate X<nr>'

If the configurable interface X<nr> of the CPU (connection X<nr>, nr = any number) is set to MPI, here you can specify the baud rate for the MPI communication.

'MPI HSA ...'

This parameter serves to specify the highest MPI address and thereby to limit the range of MPI addresses. Currently, this parameter is not evaluated in the CPU.

'Token Watch'

Switching on or off the monitoring of the token time (PROFIBUS bus parameter). The token time is the time it takes until the token returns at the DP master.

'Extended retentive memories'

Number of retentive memory bytes starting from memory byte 0: If you enter 0, the value indicated at the *'Retentive memory'* is applied. ↪ *Chap. 6.23.6 'Retentive memory' page 125*

If you enter a different value (unequal to 0), the values indicated at the *'Retentive memory'* are overwritten.

'Extended retentive memory timers'

Number of retentive timers starting from T0: If you enter 0, the value indicated at the *'Retentive memory'* is applied. ↪ *Chap. 6.23.6 'Retentive memory' page 125*

If you enter a different value (unequal to 0), the values indicated at the *'Retentive memory'* are overwritten.

'Extended retentive memory counters'

Number of retentive counters starting from Z0: If you enter 0, the value indicated at the *'Retentive memory'* is applied. ↪ *Chap. 6.23.6 'Retentive memory' page 125*

If you enter a different value (unequal to 0), the values indicated at the *'Retentive memory'* are overwritten.

'Priority OB ...'

Here you can set a priority for the corresponding OB. By changing the prioritisation of asynchronous error OBs, you can influence the behaviour of the CPU in the case of an error and keep it in RUN for longer, if needed.

'Diagnostic interrupt ...'

Activate or deactivate diagnostic interrupts

'Direct DX transition'

If this parameter is activated, the integrated PROFIBUS DP master, which is to be activated by means of the feature set, shows the following behaviour:

- If byte 0, bit 1 and byte 1, bit 0 both have the state 0 in the received standard diagnosis data of a DP slave, this DP slave is adopted directly into the data exchange, without a *SetPrmand CheckConfig* telegram being sent previously to the DP slave.
- When a DP slave is adopted into the data exchange, the state of the output data is preserved.
- If the CPU goes from RUN to STOP, the DP master is deactivated at least for the duration of the *response monitoring time* set in the PROFIBUS parameters. Afterwards, the DP master goes into RUN again. Here, the state of the output data of the connected DP slaves is preserved.
- If the voltage supply of the CPU fails, the state of the output data of the connected DP slaves is preserved.

'PN MultipleWrite'

In the activated state, configuration datasets are grouped into one or several Ethernet frames under PROFINET during the establishing connection. This accelerates the establishing connection, since a different Ethernet frame is not used for each configuration dataset.

'OB 28 and OB 29 priority'

Defines the order in which the interrupt organisation blocks are interrupted: OBs with the smallest number have lowest priority. OBs with priority 0 are not processed.

'OB 80 for cyclic interrupt error'

Defines for which interrupt organisation blocks the time error organisation block OB 80 is to be called.

6.23.14 PG/OP Ethernet

General

'Name' – Here you can assign a name to the Ethernet PG/OP channel.

'Subnet ID' – Here you can issue a subnet ID for your network.

Properties of the module (CPU) > I/O addresses

'PDU size' – Here you can indicate the buffer size for the Ethernet PG/OP communication.

'IP address' – Here you can indicate an IP address for the Ethernet PG/OP channel.

'Subnet mask' – Here you can indicate a subnet mask for the Ethernet PG/OP channel.

Addresses

Here you can adapt the address range occupied by the Ethernet PG/OP channel. By acknowledging the entry with [Enter,] the address is adopted and the 'end address' is automatically calculated. Should an address already be occupied, you will receive a notification. Enter a different address.

6.23.15 General

Here you will find general information about the selected component, for example the 'info' under which the component in the 'device configuration' is listed.

6.23.16 I/O addresses

In the user program, the individual channels of a CPU component can be addressed via the symbolic I/O addresses (names). The allocated input and output addresses (I/O addresses) and the transfer range in the I/O address room of the selected component are presented in a table. You can change the I/O addresses, names and comments.

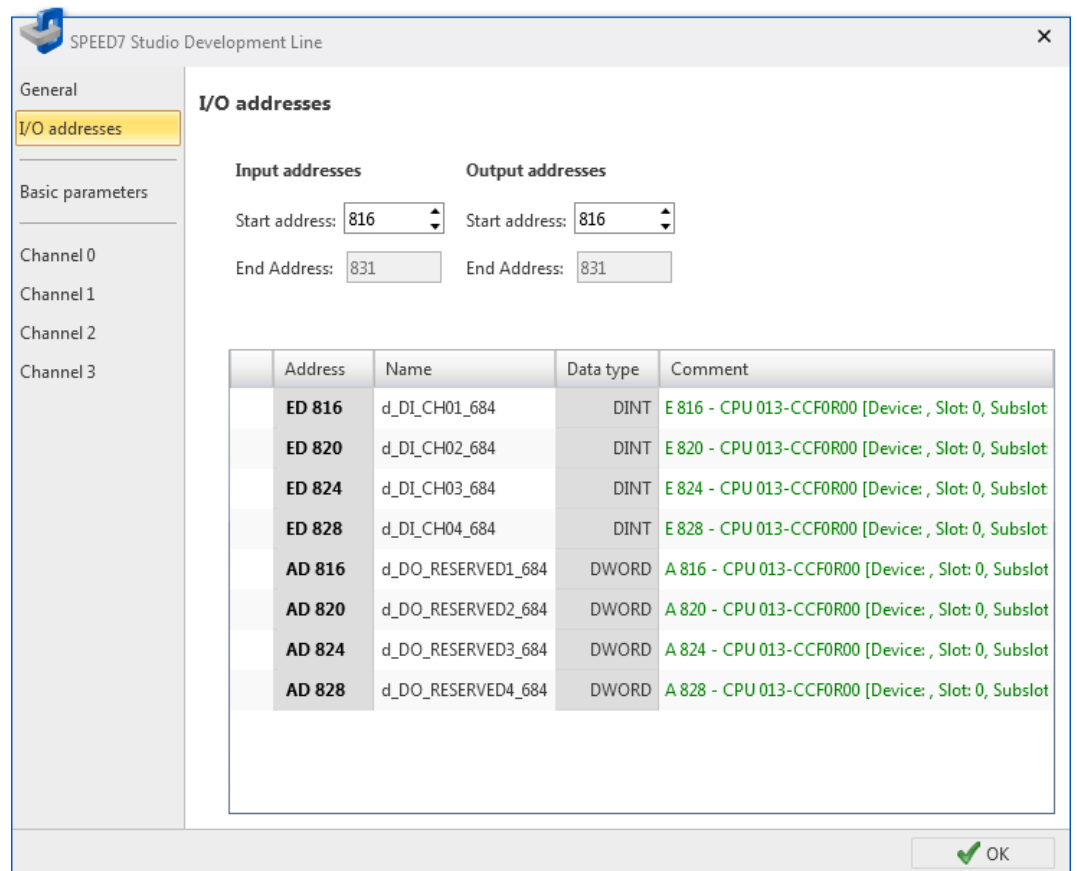


Fig. 91: I/O addresses of a CPU component

Each line corresponds to a channel of the CPU:

'Address' – Configured input or output address. To change the addresses: see *Change I/O addresses*.

'Name' – Name of the variables: Symbolic I/O address

➔ Click on the input field to change the variable name.

'Data type' – Data type of the variables, e.g. "BOOL" for bit addresses. The data type is preset according to the channels and cannot be changed.

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

➔ Click on the input field to change the comment.

Address range

Depending on the number of channels, a CPU component occupies a different number of addresses.

Changing I/O addresses

1. ➔ Enter the new input or output address (byte address) in the suitable 'Start address' field.

If this address is already occupied, a note pops up. Enter a different address.

2. ➔ Confirm your input with [Enter].

⇒ The address is changed. If the component occupies several byte addresses, the 'End Address' is automatically calculated and the complete address range is assigned to the channels.

6.23.17 Inputs (digital)

The configurations for the functioning of digital inputs of your CPU can be made here. The number and type of parameters as well as the configuration possibilities differ depending on the CPU type, e.g. diagnostics and interrupt configurations, selection of the triggering edge and configuration of the input delay for the corresponding channel. Thus, the parameters are precisely tailored to the task of the selected CPU.



You will find a more detailed description of these parameters in the relevant manual of your component.

6.23.18 Outputs (digital)

The configurations for the functioning of digital outputs of your CPU can be made here. The number and type of parameters as well as the configuration possibilities differ depending on the CPU type for the corresponding channel. Thus, the parameters are precisely tailored to the task of the selected CPU.



You will find a more detailed description of these parameters in the relevant manual of your component.

6.23.19 Inputs (analogue)

The configurations for the functioning of analogue inputs of your CPU can be made here. The number and type of parameters as well as the configuration possibilities differ depending on the component type, e.g. diagnostics and interrupt configurations, function of the measured value encoder, measuring process and measuring ranges for the corresponding channel. Thus, the parameters are precisely tailored to the task of the selected analogue component.



You will find a more detailed description of these parameters in the relevant manual of your component.

6.23.20 Outputs (analogue)

The configurations for the functioning of analogue outputs of your CPU can be made here. The number and type of parameters as well as the configuration possibilities differ depending on the component type for the corresponding channel. Thus, the parameters are precisely tailored to the task of the selected analogue component.



You will find a more detailed description of these parameters in the relevant manual of your component.

6.23.21 Basic parameters

'Select interrupt'

Here you can determine which interrupts the CPU is to trigger. The following parameters are supported:

- None: The interrupt function is deactivated.
- Process: The event configured under the corresponding channel triggers a process interrupt.
- Diagnostics + Process: A diagnostic interrupt is triggered only in connection with process interrupt lost.



You will find a more detailed description of these parameters in the relevant manual of your component.

6.23.22 Channel...

'Operating mode'

By specifying an operating mode for the corresponding channel, all the required parameters are listed with their default values.



You will find a more detailed description of these parameters in the relevant manual of your component.

6.23.23 Parameter

'Operating mode'

Here you can edit the corresponding parameters of the selected CPU component. All the parameters are listed with their default values.



You will find a more detailed description of these parameters in the relevant manual of your component.





6.24 Properties of the module (SLIO modules)

You can change the properties of a component (signal module of the Slize I/O system). Depending on the component type, you can perform the following configurations:

- Show general properties, e.g. designation and order number [↗ Chap. 6.24.1 'General' page 133](#)
- I/O addresses [↗ Chap. 6.24.2 'I/O addresses' page 134](#)
- Parameters of communication processors, analogue, interface or functional modules [↗ Chap. 6.24.3 'Parameter' page 135](#)



Depending on the component type, there are different configuration options. Selection or input fields highlighted in grey cannot be edited for this component.

1.  Select one of the following options if you want to change the component properties:
 - **Project tree:** Within the PLC under '*Local components*', double click on the desired component.
 - **"Device configuration" editor** : Double-click on the desired component.
 - ⇒ The dialogue window '*Component properties*' will open.
2.  Click on the desired section, e.g. '*I/O addresses*'.
 - ⇒ The page with the appropriate configurations will open.
3.  Change the configurations, if necessary, and click on '*OK*'.
 - ⇒ The changed properties are applied in the project configuration. After the changed configurations have been transferred ([↗ Chap. 5.10 'Transfer project' page 69](#)) and once the CPU has been started, the changed configurations are activated in the control.

6.24.1 General

General information on the selected component are displayed here.

'Info' – The info is shown in the project tree and in the device configuration. It contains, e.g., the number of channels, the voltage and/or current range.

'Order number' – Order number of the component.

6.24.2 I/O addresses

In the user program, the individual channels of a component can be addressed via the symbolic I/O addresses (names). The allocated input and output addresses (I/O addresses) and the transfer range in the I/O address room of the selected component are presented in a table. You can change the I/O addresses, names and comments.

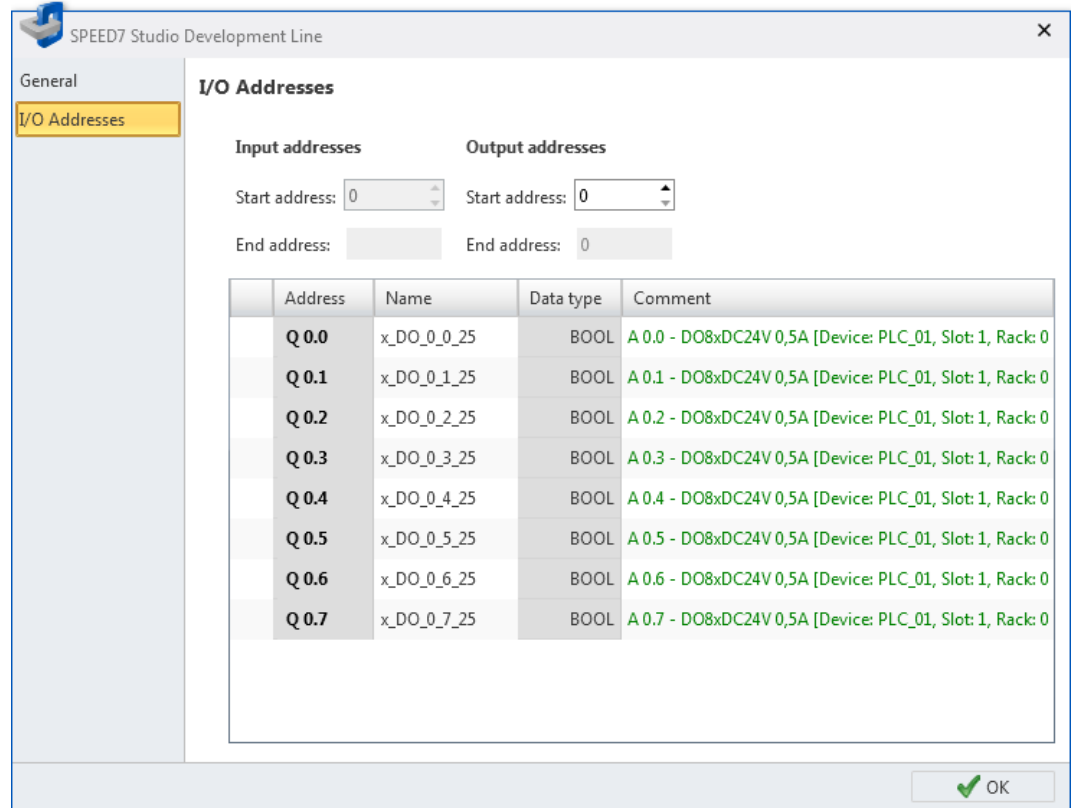


Fig. 92: I/O addresses of a SLIO module

Each line corresponds to a channel of the component:

'Address' – Configured input or output address. To change the addresses: see *Change I/O addresses*.

'Name' – Name of the variables: Symbolic I/O address

➔ Click on the input field to change the variable name.

'Data type' – Data type of the variables, e.g. "BOOL" for bit addresses. The data type is preset according to the channels and cannot be changed.

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

➔ Click on the input field to change the comment.



Address range

Depending on the number of channels, a component occupies a different number of addresses.

Examples:

- The digital output component "DO 8xDC24V" occupies one output byte.
- The digital input component "DI 4xDC24V" occupies the first four **bits** of an input byte. The remaining bits of this input byte cannot be used.
- The analogue input component "AI 4x12Bit" occupies four consecutive input words (corresponding to eight input bytes).

Changing I/O addresses

1.  Enter the new input or output address (byte address) in the suitable 'Start address' field.
If this address is already occupied, a note pops up. Enter a different address.
2.  Confirm your input with [Enter].
 - ⇒ The address is changed. If the component occupies several byte addresses, the 'End Address' is automatically calculated and the complete address range is assigned to the channels.



To edit I/O addresses for all projected components of the control:
 ↪ Chap. 8.12 'Address overview ' page 254

6.24.3 Parameter

Here you can configure parameters of communication processors, analogue, interface or functional modules. The number and type of parameters as well as the configuration possibilities differ depending on the component type, e.g. diagnostics and interrupt configurations, parameters for analogue modules, bus parameters for interface modules. Thus, the parameters are precisely tailored to the task of the selected component.






6.25 Component properties (MICRO modules) 

You can change the properties of a component (signal module of the MICRO control system). Depending on the component type, you can perform the following configurations:

- Show general properties, e.g. designation and order number
- I/O addresses



Depending on the component type, there are different configuration options. Selection or input fields highlighted in grey cannot be edited for this component.

1.  Select one of the following options if you want to change the component properties:
 - **Project tree:** Within the PLC under 'Local components', double click on the desired component.
 - **"Device configuration" editor **: Double-click on the desired component.
 ⇒ The dialogue window 'Component properties' will open.
2.  Click on the desired section, e.g. 'I/O addresses'.
 ⇒ The page with the appropriate configurations will open.
3.  Change the configurations, if necessary, and click on 'OK'.
 ⇒ The changed properties are applied in the project configuration. After the changed configurations have been transferred (↪ Chap. 5.10 'Transfer project ' page 69) and once the CPU has been started, the changed configurations are activated in the control.

6.25.1 General

General information on the selected component are displayed here.

'Info' – The info is shown in the project tree and in the device configuration. It contains, e.g., the number of channels, the voltage and/or current range.

'Order number' – Order number of the component

6.25.2 I/O addresses

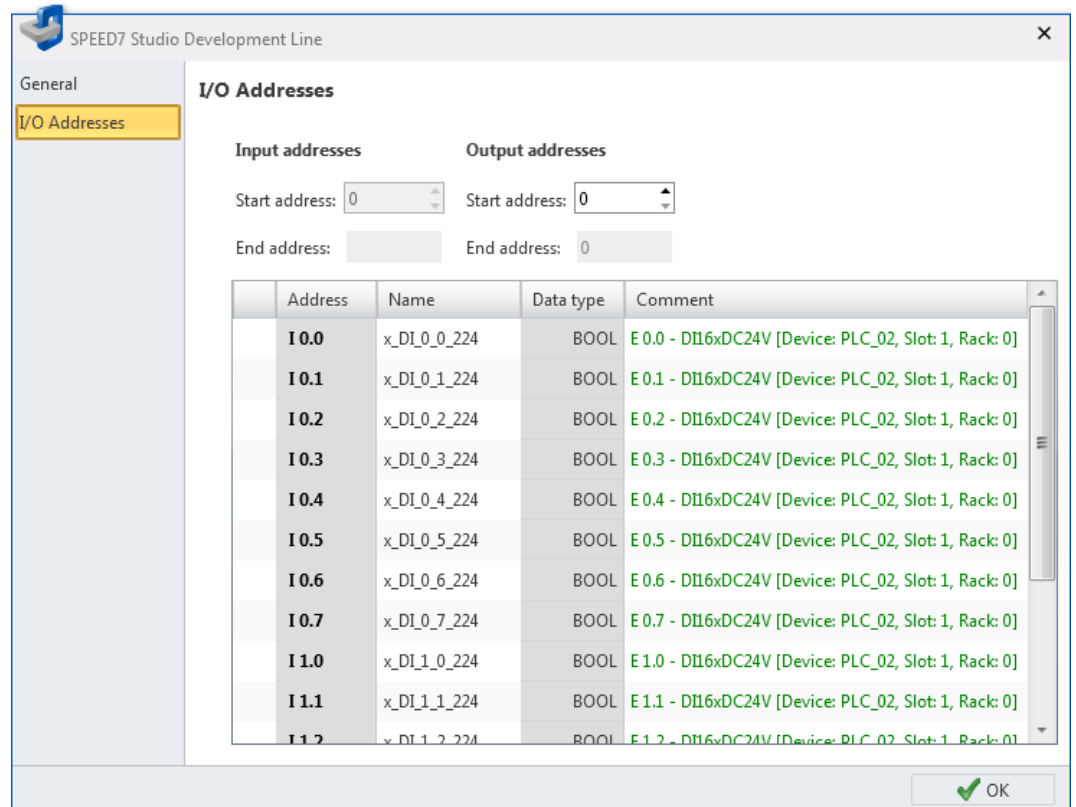


Fig. 93: I/O addresses of a MICRO module

Each line corresponds to a channel of the component:

'Address' – Configured input or output address. To change the addresses: see *Change I/O addresses*.

'Name' – Name of the variables: Symbolic I/O address

➔ Click on the input field to change the variable name.

'Data type' – Data type of the variables, e.g. "BOOL" for bit addresses. The data type is preset according to the channels and cannot be changed.

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

➔ Click on the input field to change the comment.

Address range

Depending on the number of channels, a component occupies a different number of addresses.

Examples:

- The digital output component "DO 16xDC24V" occupies two consecutive output bytes, e.g. Byte A4 and A5.
- The digital input component "DI 16xDC24V" occupies two consecutive input bytes.
- The analogue input component "AI 4x16Bit" occupies four consecutive input words (corresponding to 8 input bytes).

Changing I/O addresses

1. ➤ Enter the new input or output address (byte address) in the suitable 'Start address' field.
If this address is already occupied, a note pops up. Enter a different address.
2. ➤ Confirm your input with [Enter].
 - ⇒ The address is changed. If the component occupies several byte addresses, the 'End Address' is automatically calculated and the complete address range is assigned to the channels.



To edit I/O addresses for all projected components of the control:
 ↗ Chap. 8.12 'Address overview' page 254

6.25.3 Parameter

Here you can configure parameters of the MICRO system modules. The number and type of parameters as well as the configuration possibilities differ depending on the component type, e.g. diagnostics and interrupt configurations, parameters for analogue modules, bus parameters for interface modules. Thus, the parameters are precisely tailored to the task of the selected component.



You will find a more detailed description of these parameters in the relevant manual of your component.

6.26 Export all (WLD)


You can archive the hardware configuration along with the user program as a WLD file.

1. ➤ Select one of the following options:
 - **Menu bar:** Select 'Device → Export all (WLD)'.
 - **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control (PLC) and select 'Export all (WLD)'.
2. ➤ If you have made changes in the project which have not yet been compiled (↗ Chap. 8.16 'Compile user program' page 267), a dialogue window will open. You can choose whether to cancel the procedure or to archive in the last compiled state. All uncompiled changes in the project will not be saved.
 - ⇒ The 'Save as' dialogue window will open.

3. ➤ Select a directory, enter a file name and click on 'Save'.
 - ⇒ The hardware configuration and the user program are archived.

6.27 Export user program (WLD)

You can archive the user program as a WLD file.

1. ➤ Select one of the following options:
 - **Menu bar:** Select 'Device ➔ Export user program (WLD)'.
 - **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control (PLC) and select 'Export user program (WLD)'.
2. ➤ If you have made changes in the project which have not yet been compiled ( Chap. 8.16 'Compile user program' page 267), a dialogue window will open. You can choose whether to cancel the procedure or to archive in the last compiled state. All uncompiled changes in the project will not be saved.
 - ⇒ The 'Save as' dialogue window will open.
3. ➤ Select a directory, enter a file name and click on 'Save'.
 - ⇒ The user program is archived.

6.28 Export hardware configuration (WLD)

You can archive the hardware configuration as a WLD file.

1. ➤ Select one of the following options:
 - **Menu bar:** Select 'Device ➔ Export hardware configuration (WLD)'.
 - **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control (PLC) and select 'Export hardware configuration (WLD)'.
 - ⇒ The 'Save as' dialogue window will open.
2. ➤ Select a directory, enter a file name and click on 'Save'.
 - ⇒ The hardware configuration is archived.








6.29 Copy RAM to ROM

With this function, you can store the project from the working memory (RAM) of the control on a MMC (Multimedia Card).


1. ➤ Switch the control into the operating mode STOP.
2. ➤ Select one of the following options:
 - **Menu bar:** Select 'Device ➔ Copy RAM to ROM'.
 - **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control (PLC) and select 'Copy RAM to ROM'.
 - ⇒ A dialogue window will display whether the project has been saved successfully on the MMC.

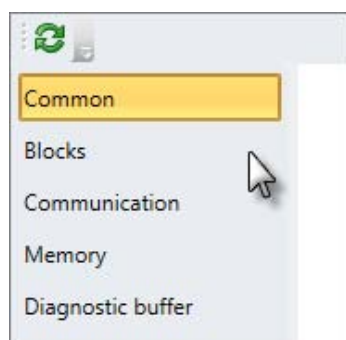
6.30 "Component state" editor


Here you are provided with the following information on the connected control (PLC):



- General information, e.g. device name, serial number, order number, version  *Chap. 6.30.1 'General' page 139*
- Information on blocks and operands used  *Chap. 6.30.2 'Blocks' page 140*
- Communication information  *Chap. 6.30.3 'Communication' page 141*
- Memory information  *Chap. 6.30.4 'Memory' page 143*
- Diagnostic buffer  *Chap. 6.30.5 'Diagnostic buffer' page 144*
- Cycle times  *Chap. 6.30.6 'Cycle times' page 146*
- Block, interruption and local data stack (B-Stack, U-Stack, L-Stack)  *Chap. 6.30.7 'B-Stack/U-Stack/L-Stack' page 146*

If a project is open and a control is included, you can open the 'Component state' editor.

Create a communication connection to the control.  *Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings (PLC)' page 113*



1.  Select one of the following options:

- **Menu bar:** Select 'Device → Component state'.
- **Keyboard:** Press [Ctrl]+[D].
- **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control (PLC) and select 'Component state'.
- **Editor "Devices and networking" **: Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control (PLC) and select 'Component state'.
- **CPU control centre:** Click on .

⇒ Information is read from the connected control and shown in the 'Component state' editor.

2.  Click on the desired section, e.g. 'Blocks'.

⇒ The page with the desired information will open.



Refresh information




Refresh: The information is read again from the connected control and shown.

6.30.1 General

Here you are provided with general information on the connected control.

 To read the information again from the connected control, click on .

'Name of station'

'Device name' –  *Chap. 6.23.1 'General' page 121*

'Plant designation' –  *Chap. 6.23.1 'General' page 121*

'Location designation' –  *Chap. 6.23.1 'General' page 121*

'Serial number of PLC'

'Serial number of the MMC or SD card'

'Order number'

'Version of module' – Output status of the hardware

'Name' – Extended order designation, e.g. Version information

“Component state” editor > Blocks

‘Firmware’ – Firmware version of the control (CPU)

‘Active interface’ – communication connection with the control ↪ Chap. 6.20.2 *‘Communication settings (PLC)’* page 113

‘Address’ – IP address (Ethernet connection) or MPI-address (serial connection) of the control

‘Network’ – IP address of the network interface card of the programming device



The following information is also shown in the CPU control centre ↪ Chap. 4.17 *‘CPU control centre’* page 49:

Device name, order number, firmware, active interface, address.

6.30.2 Blocks

Here you are provided with information on the blocks of the connected control.

Blocks:				Address areas:			
Max. number of OBs:	23	Max. length	64 kByte	Process image inputs:	256 Byte	From:	E0.0 To: E255.7
Max. number of FBs:	2.048	Max. length	64 kByte	Process image outputs:	256 Byte	From:	A0.0 To: A255.7
Max. number of FCs:	2.048	Max. length	64 kByte	Bit Memory:	8.192 Byte	From:	M0.0 To: M8191.7
Max. number of DBs:	4.096	Max. length	64 kByte	Timers:	512	From:	T0 To: T511
Max. number of SDBs:	4.096	Max. length	64 kByte	Counter:	512	From:	Z0 To: Z511
				Local data:	11.264 Byte		

Block list:									
OBs:	FCs:	FBs:	DBs:	SDBs:	SFBs:	SFCs:	Supported OBs:		
1	1	1	100	0	0	0	1		
	100	100	101	1	1	1	10		
	101	101	102	2	2	2	20		
	102		103	3	3	3	21		
	103		104	4	4	4	28		
			105	7	5	5	29		
			106	22	7	6	32		

Fig. 94: Component state, blocks

➔ To read the information again from the connected control, click on

Blocks

Here, the number of different blocks is shown that can be used for the user program. In addition, the maximum size of a block is shown in kByte.


Operand areas (= Address areas)	Here, the size and ranges of the inputs, outputs, memories, timers, counters and local data are shown that can be used for the user program.
Block list	Here, the number of the OB, FC, FB and DB blocks are shown that are loaded in the control. In addition, the numbers of the SDB, SFB and SFC system blocks contained in the firmware as well as pre-defined OBs are shown.

6.30.3 Communication

Here you are provided with data on the communication information of the connected control.

Communication information of connected component:	
Number of reserved PG communications:	1
Number of occupied PG communications:	1
Number of reserved OP communications:	1
Number of occupied OP communications:	0
Number of unreserved communications:	30
Number of occupied, unreserved communications:	0
Number of configured communications:	0
Number of occupied, configured communications:	0
Max. communication load:	20 %
Max. number of communications:	32
Number of reserved S7 communications:	0

Fig. 95: Component state, communication

➔ To read the information again from the connected control, click on .

For each communication connection, connection resources are required on the devices involved. The connection resources are the maximum possible connections of a device. The number of connections differs depending on the component. If all connection resources of a communication partner are used (occupied), no further connection can be established.

- **reserved:** For connections between certain communication partners, connection resources can be reserved that cannot be occupied by other connections. You can reserve connection resources with Siemens SIMATIC NetPro.
- **configured:** Number of connections configured in the project, e.g. connections between this CPU and another CPU
- **occupied:** Number of actually created connections

Example of reserved connections

If, for example, you use a type 315-2AG13 CPU, you can use a maximum of 32 connections. As standard, one connection each is reserved for communication with a programming device (PD) and an HMI device (OP). Thus, the remaining connection resources (number of unreserved connections) decrease by two connections. The following information is shown:

Number of reserved PD connections	1
Number of reserved OP connections	1
Number of unreserved connections	30
Maximum number of possible connections	32

Example of used connections

In addition to the reserved connections, you can also create (use) further connections to a communication partner if there are still connection resources available. Example:

Number of reserved PD connections	1
Number of PD connections used	1
Number of reserved OP connections	1
Number of OP connections used	4
Number of unreserved connections	30
Number of occupied, unreserved connections	3
Maximum number of possible connections	32

Example of configured connections

You can configure connections to a communication partner, e.g. a connection to another CPU. Example:

Number of configured connections	1
Number of occupied, configured connections	1

‘Number of reserved/occupied PD connections’ – Connection resources that are reserved or actually created for connections between the control and programming devices

‘Number of reserved/occupied OP connections’ – Connection resources that are reserved or actually created for connections between the control and HMI devices

‘Number of unreserved connections’ – Free connection resources

‘Number of occupied, unreserved connections’ – Actually created connections that are not reserved

‘Number of configured connections’ – Other connections configured in the project

‘Number of occupied, configured connections’ – Other actually created connections configured in the project

‘Max. communication load’ – Percentage of communication processes compared to the complete cycle time. You can configure this proportion using the parameter “Scan cycle load from Communication”. ↪ *Chap. 6.23.5 ‘Cycle / Clock memory’ page 124*

‘Max. number of possible connections’ – Maximum number of connections (dependent on the device type)

‘Number of reserved basic S7 connections’ – Reserved connection resources for non-projected connections, e.g. for data exchange using communication functions in the user program

6.30.4 Memory

Here you are provided with data on the memory of the connected control.

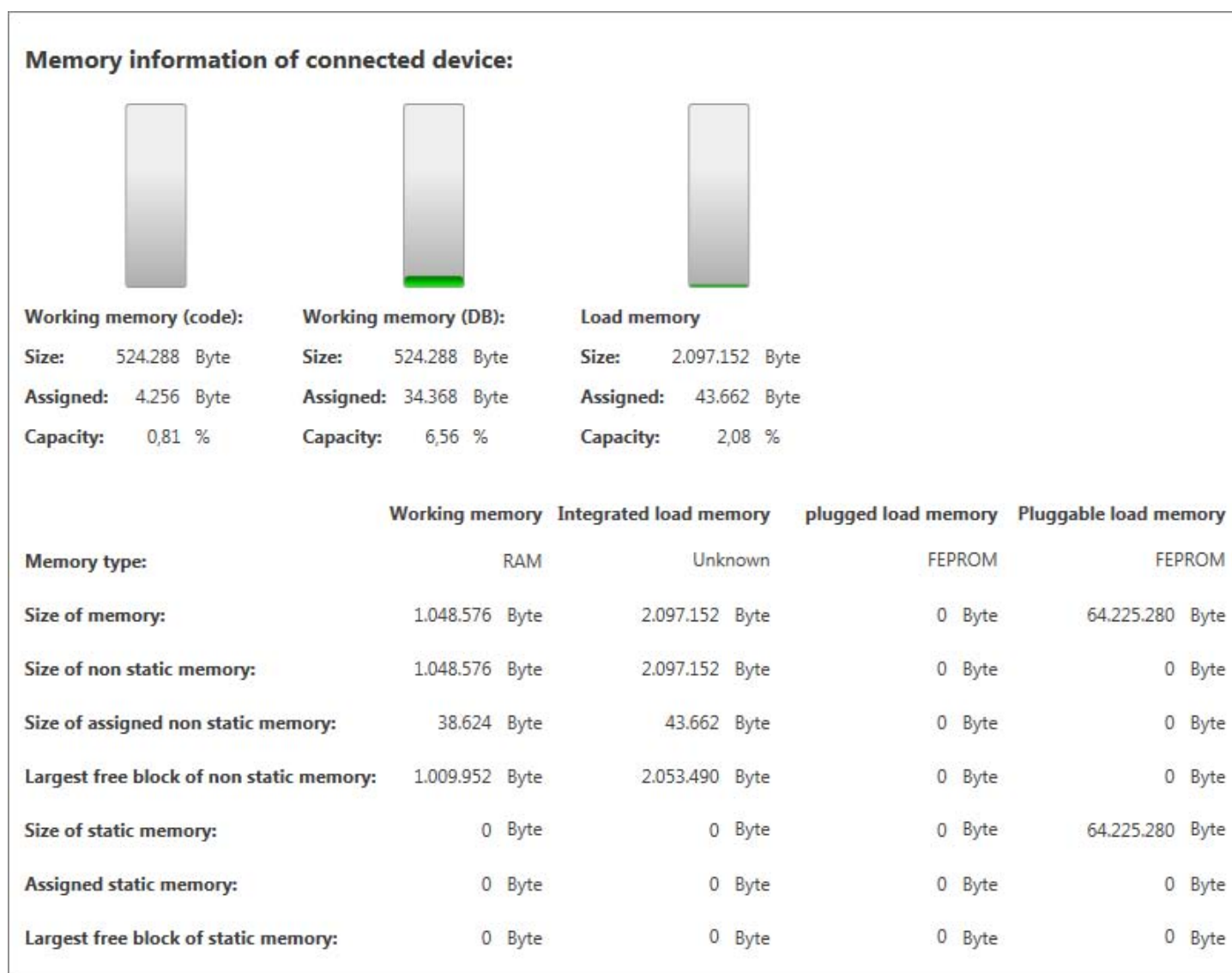


Fig. 96: Component state, memory

➡ To read the information again from the connected control, click on

“Component state” editor > Diagnostic buffer

Working and load memory

- **Load memory:** The compiled user program and system data (e.g. configuration information, connection information, component parameters) are saved in the load memory.
- **Working memory:** The compiled user program is copied into the working memory. The code and the user program data are processed there.

Three bar charts show the percentage of memory occupancy:

- User program in the working memory
- Data blocks in the working memory
- Load memory

The available memory space, the occupied memory space and the percentage of occupancy of the individual memories are shown under the bar charts.

Detailed memory information

The table shows the distribution for the following memory types:

- **Working memory** – Code and user program data
- **Integrated load memory** – Permanently available load memory in the CPU
- **Plugged load memory** – External memory card connected to the CPU slot
- **Pluggable load memory** – Memory space for external memory cards

The table lines contain the following information:

‘Size of memory’ – Maximum total available memory space

‘Size of non static memory’ – Maximum memory space available in the non-retentive memory

‘Assigned non static memory’ – Actually occupied memory space in the non-retentive memory

‘Largest free block in the non static memory’ – Largest cohesive block available in the non static memory. If this block is smaller than the maximum memory space minus the occupied memory space, then the memory is fragmented.

‘Size of static memory’ – Maximum memory space available in the retentive memory

‘Assigned static memory’ – Actually occupied memory space in the retentive memory

‘Largest free block in the static memory’ – Largest cohesive block available in the static memory. If this block is smaller than the maximum memory space minus the occupied memory space, then the memory is fragmented.

6.30.5 Diagnostic buffer

The content of the diagnostic buffer of the connected control is shown here. The diagnostics messages are saved and shown in the order of their occurrence. The number of diagnostics messages that can be shown differs depending on the component, e.g. 100 messages with the CPU of type 315-2AG13. Other diagnostics messages can be present in the component that are not shown here.

No	time stamp	description	Event-ID	OB	PK	DatId	ZInfo 1	ZInfo 2	ZInfo 3
1	2/3/2016 5:46:13 PM.024	Dezentrale Peripherie: Ende der Synchr	0x5371	0x02	0x17	0x5000	0x0000	0x0002	0xB530
2	2/3/2016 5:46:04 PM.000	NETZ-EIN gepuffert	0x4300	0xF3	0xFF	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000
3	1/20/2016 8:15:24 PM.856	STOP durch Netzausfall	0x494E	0x3F	0xFF	0x00C0	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000
4	1/20/2016 6:16:32 PM.024	Dezentrale Peripherie: Ende der Synchr	0x5371	0x02	0x17	0x5000	0x0000	0x0002	0xB530
5	1/20/2016 6:16:23 PM.000	NETZ-EIN gepuffert	0x4300	0xF3	0xFF	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000
6	1/19/2016 10:44:54 AM.948	STOP durch Netzausfall	0x494E	0x3F	0xFF	0x00C0	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000
7	1/18/2016 4:05:46 PM.024	Dezentrale Peripherie: Ende der Synchr	0x5371	0x02	0x17	0x5000	0x0000	0x0002	0xB530
8	1/18/2016 4:05:37 PM.000	NETZ-EIN gepuffert	0x4300	0xF3	0xFF	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000
9	1/11/2016 7:25:27 PM.542	STOP durch Netzausfall	0x494E	0x3F	0xFF	0x00C0	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000
10	1/11/2016 6:13:48 PM.024	Dezentrale Peripherie: Ende der Synchr	0x5371	0x02	0x17	0x5000	0x0000	0x0002	0xB530

Details: Export ...

Fig. 97: Component state, diagnostic buffer

➔ To read the information again from the connected control, click on .

Details

Detailed information is available with some diagnostics messages.

➔ Click on a diagnostics message to show further information under 'Details'.

Changing the sort sequence

The diagnostics messages are sorted in the order of their occurrence (column 'No.'). The newest message is first. You can also sort the diagnostics messages shown in a different order.

No	time stamp	description
1	4/15/2014 8:11:55 AM.264	Mode transitio
2	4/15/2014 8:11:55 AM.247	Automatic res

➔ In the title line of the table, click on the term according to which you would like to sort the diagnostics messages, e.g. 'Description'.

⇒ The table entries are sorted in alphabetical or numerical order:

▲ In ascending order

▼ In descending order

Export diagnostics messages

You can export the diagnostics messages into an XPS file (XML paper specification format).

1. ➔ Click on 'Export'.

⇒ A dialogue window will open allowing you to save the XPS file.

2. ➔ Select a directory and enter a file name.

3. ➔ Click on 'Export'.

⇒ The export process is started. All diagnostics messages are saved in the XPS file. You can then open and print the file, e.g. with the XPS Viewer.


“Component state” editor > B-Stack/U-Stack/L-Stack

6.30.6 Cycle times

Here you are provided with the cyclic data of the connected control.

Cycle data of connected device:	
Max. configured cycle time :	150
Shortest cycle time:	0
Current cycle time:	0
Longest cycle time:	0

Fig. 98: Component state, cycle times

➔ To read the information again from the connected control, click on .

‘Max. parametrised cycle time’ – Maximum duration of a program processing cycle (time base: milliseconds). You can configure the cycle time using the parameter “Scan cycle monitoring time”. ↪ *Chap. 6.23.5 ‘Cycle / Clock memory’ page 124*

‘Shortest cycle time’ – Shortest measured program processing cycle since the last transition from STOP to RUN (time base: milliseconds)

‘Current cycle time’ – Duration of the most recently run program processing cycle (time base: milliseconds)

‘Longest cycle time’ – Longest measured program processing cycle since the last transition from STOP to RUN (time base: milliseconds)



The cyclic data measured is also shown in the CPU control centre.
↪ *Chap. 4.17 ‘CPU control centre ’ page 49*

6.30.7 B-Stack/U-Stack/L-Stack

Here you are provided with information on the following memory ranges of the connected control:

- Block stack (B-Stack)
- Interruption stack (U-Stack)
- Local data stack (L-Stack)

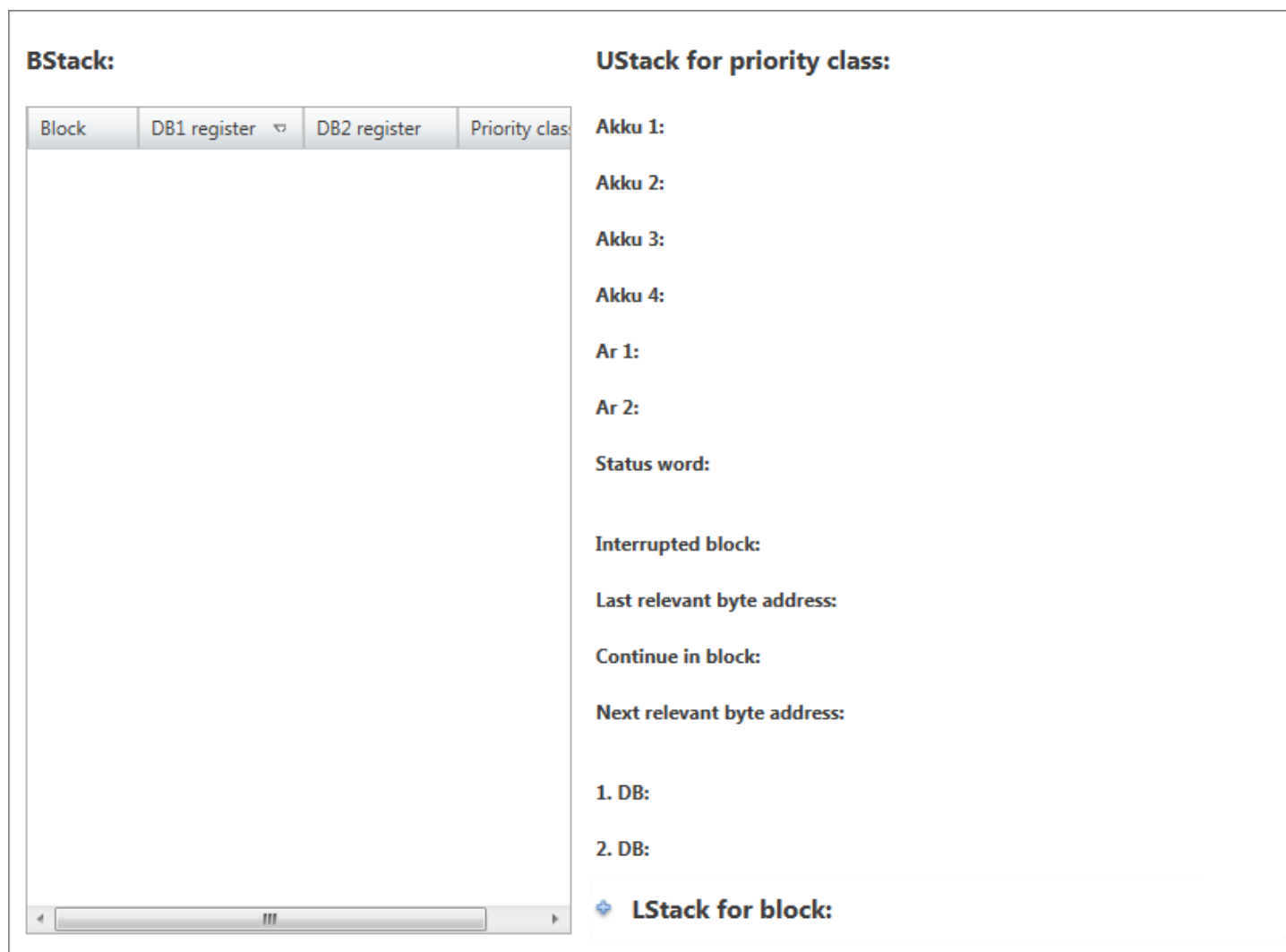


Fig. 99: Component state, B-Stack/U-Stack/L-Stack

Information is saved in the stacks if the CPU either reaches a breakpoint or changes to operating mode STOP due to a stop command or an error in the user program.

➔ To read the information again from the connected control, click on .

Block stack (B-Stack)

If the following events occur, the operating system saves the CPU data in the block stack:

- The processing of a block is interrupted by the calling of another block.
- The processing of a block is interrupted by a higher priority class, e.g. interrupt OB or error treatment.

The block stack shows all the blocks the processing of which was not completed at the time when the CPU was put into operating mode STOP. The block that was called last in the calling hierarchy is shown first.

The following block data are shown:

'Block' – Block that was interrupted

'DB1 register' – Data block from the DB1 register that was open at the time of the interruption

'DB2 register' – Data block from the DB2 register that was open at the time of the interruption

'Priority class' – priority class that was interrupted

Set time

Interruption stack (U-Stack)

If the program processing is interrupted by an organisation block with higher priority, the operating system saves the following data in the interruption stack (U-Stack):

- Current contents of the accumulators and address registers
- Number and size of the open data blocks

➔ In the block stack, select the organisation block for which you would like to show the interruption stack data.

⇒ The interruption stack of the selected organisation block is shown.

'Accu 1..4' – Contents of the accumulators

'AR 1..2' – Contents of the address register

'Status word' – Contents of the first bits (0..8) of the status word: /FC, RLO, STA, OR, OS, OV, CC0, CC1 and BR

'Interrupted block' – Block that was interrupted

'Last relative byte address' – Point in the program code at which the program was interrupted

'Continue in block' – Block in which the interrupted program is continued

'Next relative byte address' – Point in the program code at which the program is continued

'DB1 register' – Data block from the DB1 register that was open at the time of the interruption

'DB2 register' – Data block from the DB2 register that was open at the time of the interruption

Local data stack (L-Stack)

The local data stack contains the local data values of the blocks that were open at the time when the CPU was put into operating mode STOP.

Local data are the temporary data of a block. ↗ *Chap. 6.23.7 'Local data' page 125*
 Alongside the temporary and interface variables in the user program as well as intermediate results in ladder diagrams, further local data are required for each organisation block. The size of the local data stacks differs depending on the component.

➔ In the block stack, select the block for which you would like to show the local data stack.

⇒ The local data stack of the selected block is shown.

6.31 Set time 🕒

Here you can set the clock of the connected control.

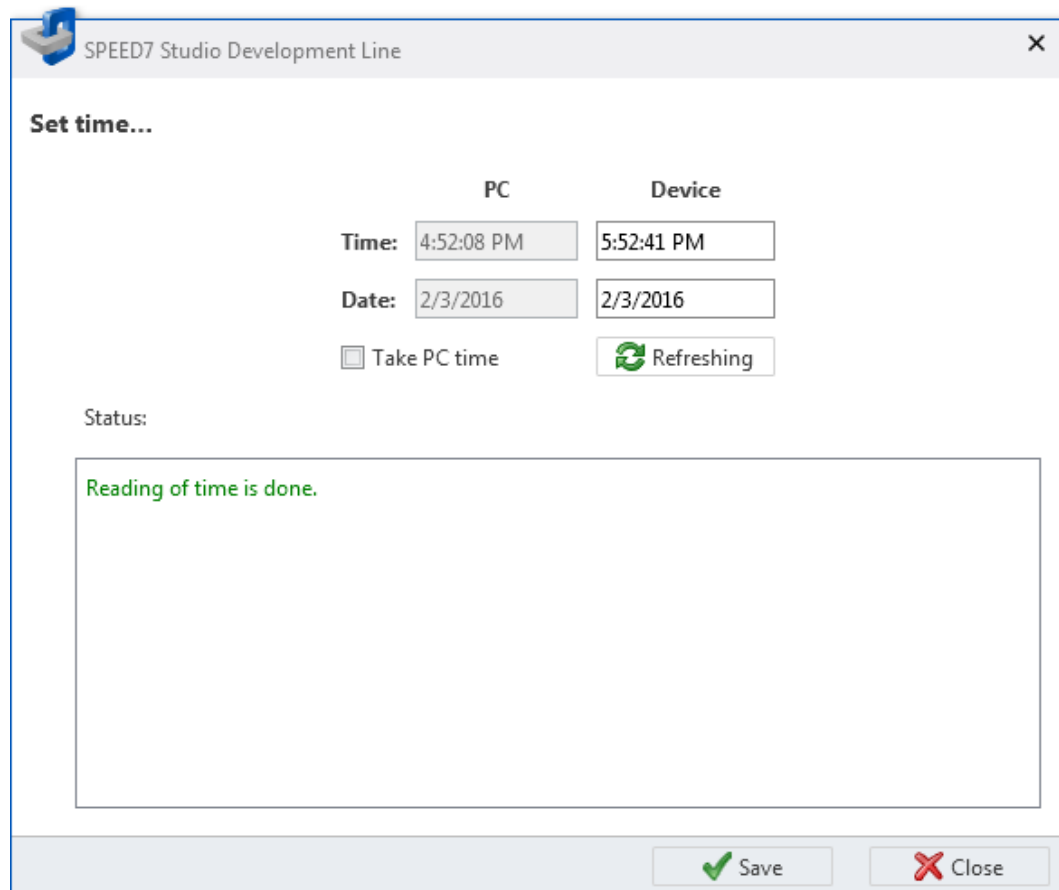



Fig. 100: Set time

If a project is open and a control is included, you can set the clock of the control.

Create a communication connection to the control. ↗ *Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings (PLC)' page 113*

1. ➤ Select one of the following options:

- **Menu bar:** Select *'Device → Set time'*.
- **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control (PLC) and select *'Set time'*.
- **Editor "Devices and networking ":** Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control (PLC) and select *'Set time'*.

⇒ The *'Set time'* dialogue window will open.

The time and date of the programming device (PC) and the connected control (device) are shown in the dialogue window. Click on *'Refreshing'* to read the time and date from the control again and to show them.

2. ➤ Select *'Take PC time'* to adopt the time and date of the programming device into the control.

- or -

Enter a time and a date into the input fields under *'Device'*.

3. ➤ Click on *'Apply'*.

⇒ The desired time and the desired date are adopted into the control. The processing steps are shown in the *'Status'* field.

6.32 Memory reset

With memory reset, you can reset the connected control to the “initial state”:

- The working memory is completely deleted.
- The data on the memory card of the load memory are preserved.



To ensure that there are no more undesired blocks in the CPU, you must carry out a memory reset of the control before loading the user program.

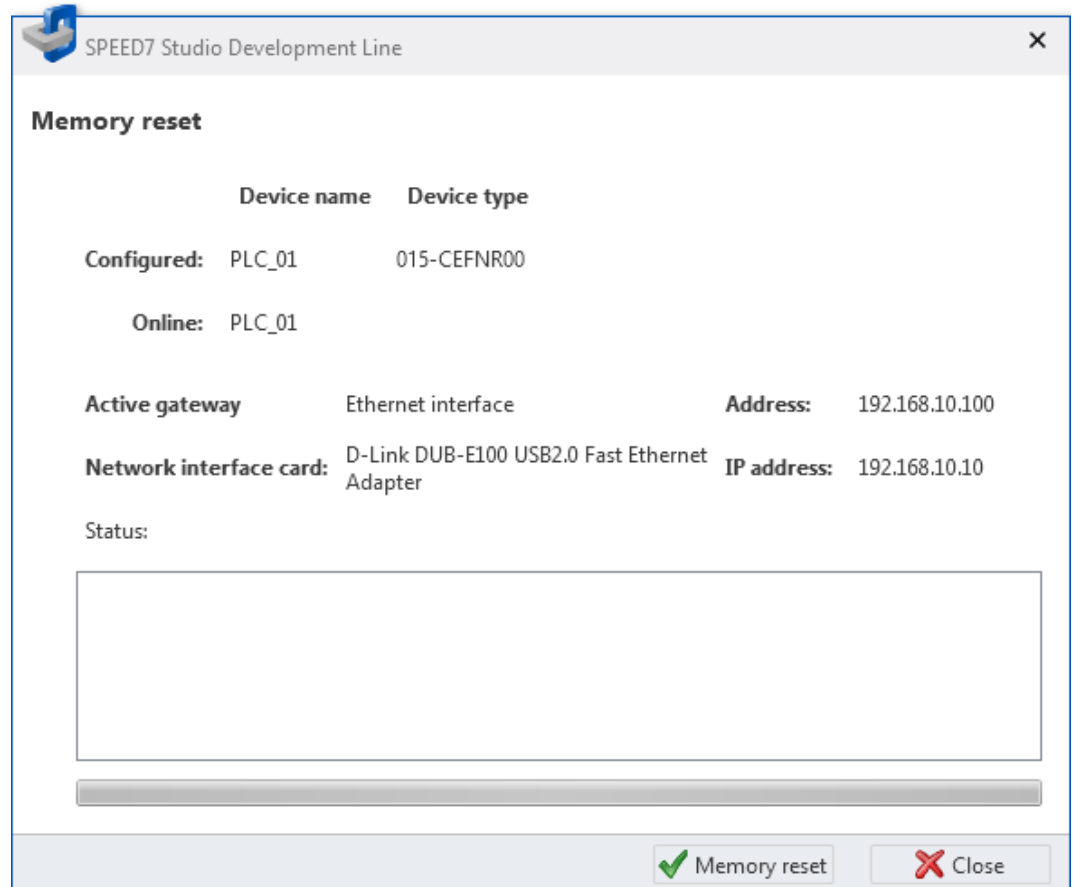




Fig. 101: Memory reset

If a project is open and a control is included, you can carry out a memory reset of the CPU.

Create a communication connection to the control. ↪ *Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings (PLC)' page 113*

1. ➤ Select one of the following options:

- **Menu bar:** Select *'Device → Memory reset'*.
- **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control (PLC) and select *'Memory reset'*.
- **Editor "Devices and networking" **: Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control (PLC) and select *'Memory reset'*.
- **CPU control centre:** Click on .

⇒ The *'Memory reset'* dialogue window will open.

Information on the control selected in the project and the connected control as well as on the communication connection between the programming device and the control are shown in the dialogue window.

2. ➤ Click on *'Memory reset'*.

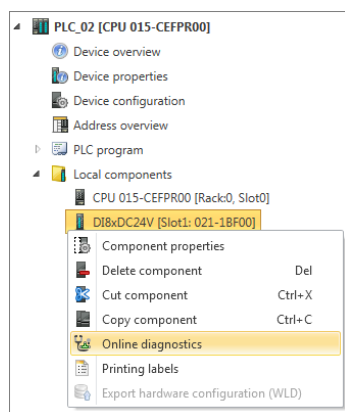
⇒ If the control is not in operating mode STOP, a dialogue window will open in which you can switch the control into operating mode STOP. After having carried out a memory reset, a dialogue window will open in which you can switch the control into operating mode RUN again.

The memory reset processing steps are shown in the *'Status'* field.


6.33 Online diagnostics (SLIO module)

In the online diagnostics, information about SLIO module is displayed, e.g. position of the module, I/O address, status of the component and diagnostic interrupts.

Create a communication connection to the control ↪ *Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings (PLC)' page 113*




➤ Select one of the following options:

- **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the desired SLIO module and select *'Online diagnostics'*.
- **"Device configuration" editor **: Right-click with the mouse button on the desired SLIO module and select *'Online diagnostics'*.

⇒ The diagnostics window will open.

6.33.1 General

General diagnostic information on the selected module are displayed here.

To read the information again from the connected control, click on .

'Short description' – Module name

'Order number' – Order number of the module

'Device name' – Name of the control

'Rack' – Number of the rack if there are several racks


'Slot' – Slot number within the control or the rack

'Address' – Configured start address (byte address) of the module

'Status' – Diagnostic information about the module, e.g. "Module present"

6.33.2 Diagnostic interrupt

Detailed diagnostic information on the selected module are displayed here.

To read the information again from the connected control, click on .

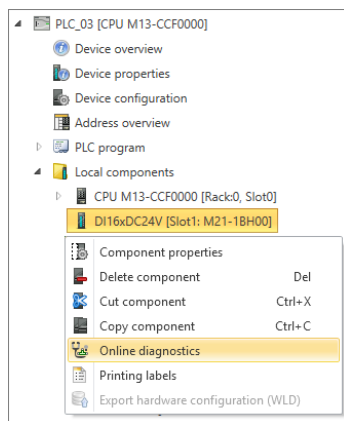
'Standard diagnostics' – Vendor-related diagnostic texts, e.g. "Module on wrong slot"

'Channel specific diagnostics' – Channel-related diagnostic texts with channel number and error code, e.g. "Line break"


6.34 Online diagnostics (MICRO module)

In the online diagnostics, information about a module of the MICRO system is displayed, e.g. position of the module, I/O address, status of the component and diagnostic interrupts.

Create a communication connection to the control [Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings \(PLC\)' page 113](#)




➔ Select one of the following options:

- **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the desired module and select 'Online diagnostics'.
- **"Device configuration" editor** : Right-click with the mouse button on the desired module and select 'Online diagnostics'.

⇒ The diagnostics window will open.

6.34.1 General

General diagnostic information on the selected module are displayed here.

To read the information again from the connected control, click on .

'Short description' – Module name

'Order number' – Order number of the module

'Device name' – Name of the control

'Rack' – Number of the rack if there are several racks


'Slot' – Slot number within the control or the rack

'Address' – Configured start address (byte address) of the module

'Status' – Diagnostic information about the module, e.g. "Module present"

6.34.2 Diagnostic interrupt

Detailed diagnostic information on the selected module are displayed here.

To read the information again from the connected control, click on .

'Standard diagnostics' – Vendor-related diagnostic texts, e.g. "Module on wrong slot"

'Channel specific diagnostics' – Channel-related diagnostic texts with channel number and error code, e.g. "Line break"

7 Connect devices

7.1 Bus system properties (PROFIBUS DP)

Here you can configure the PROFIBUS DP master and the connected slaves.

1. In the project tree within a control, click on *'Bus system properties'*, under *'Decentralised periphery'*, *'DP master system'*.

⇒ The *'Bus system properties'* dialogue window will open.

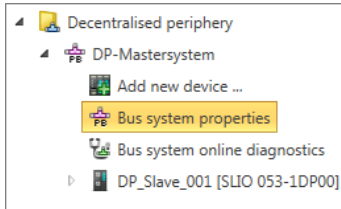


Fig. 102: Bus system properties

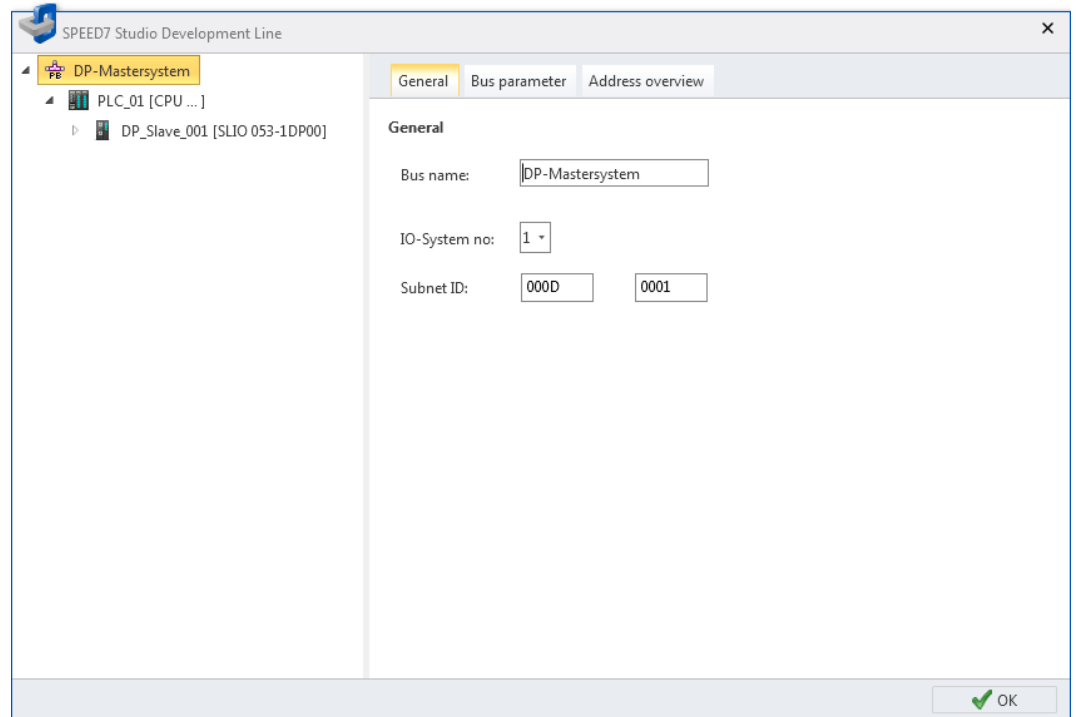











Fig. 103: Dialogue window "Bus system properties"

2. Select an object from the list on the left, and then a tab, in order to make configurations for this object:

-  *DP master system – General configurations*
-  *DP master system – Bus parameter*
-  *DP master system – Address overview*
-  *DP master – General configurations*
-  *DP master – Addresses*
-  *DP slave – General configurations*
-  *DP slave – Station parameters*
-  *Component – General configurations*
-  *Component – I/O addresses*

7.1.1 DP master system – General configurations

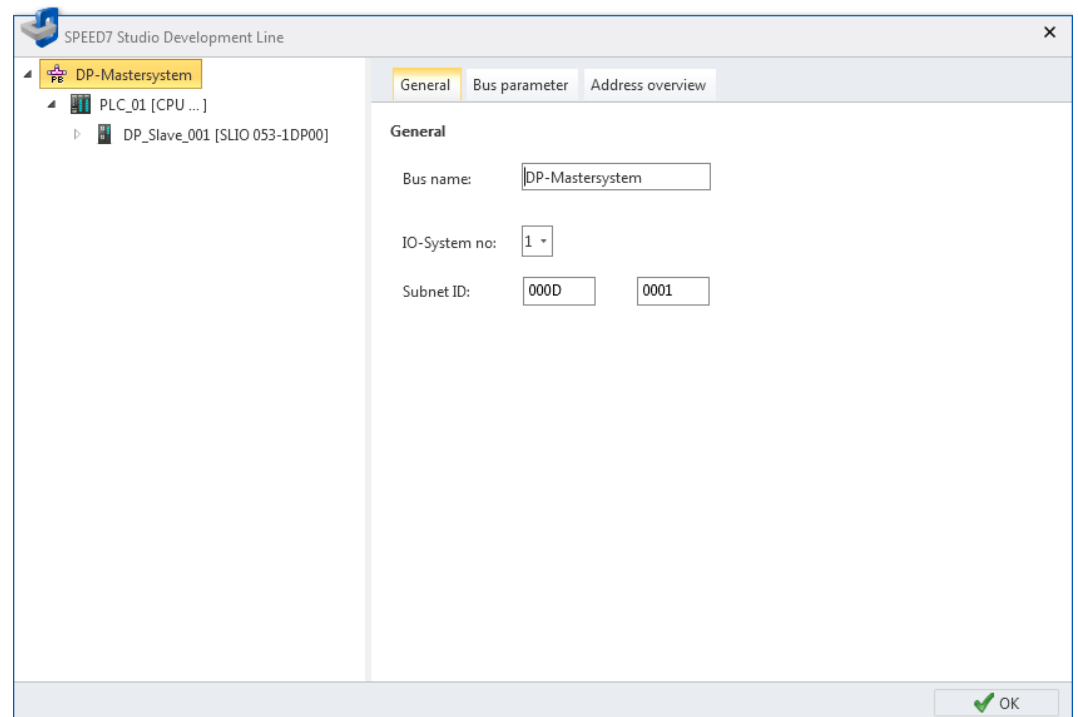


Fig. 104: DP master system: General configurations

'Bus name' – Name for the DP master system

'IO-system-no' – Number between 1 and 9, for the differentiation of several DP master systems within one project

'Subnet ID' – Address for the communication with connection partners via routing functions, e.g. via teleservice.

7.1.2 DP master system – Bus parameter

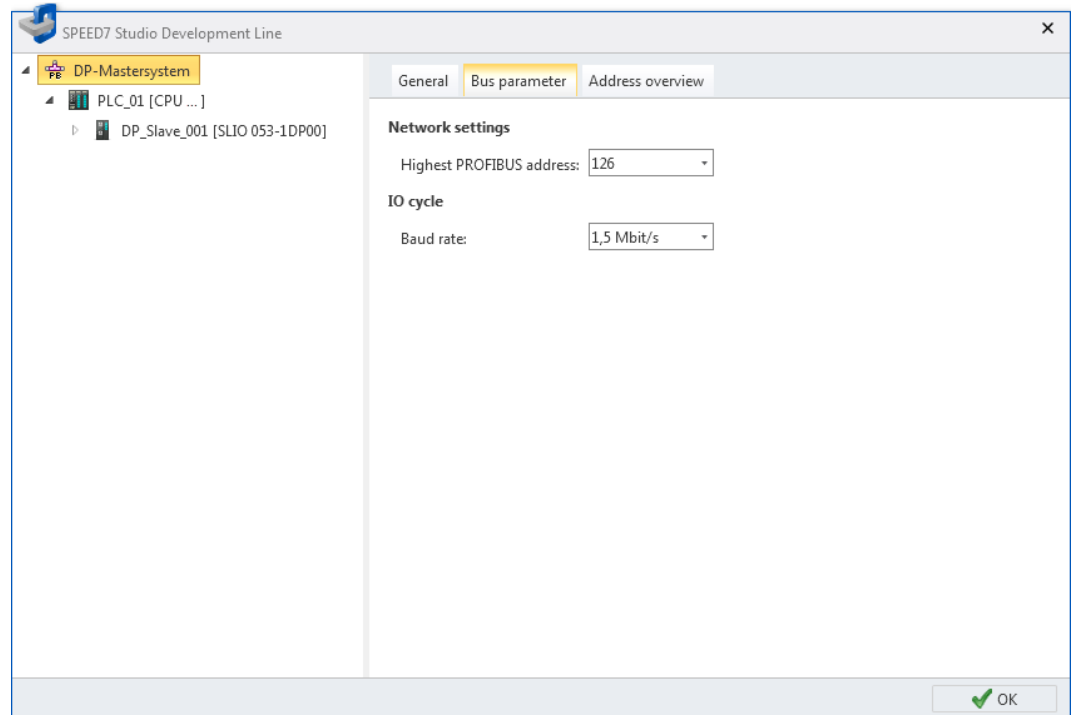


Fig. 105: DP master system: bus parameter

'Highest PROFIBUS address' – Highest station address (HSA) of an accessible partner in the PROFIBUS DP network

'Baud rate' – Baud rate of the data in the PROFIBUS DP network

7.1.3 DP master system – Address overview

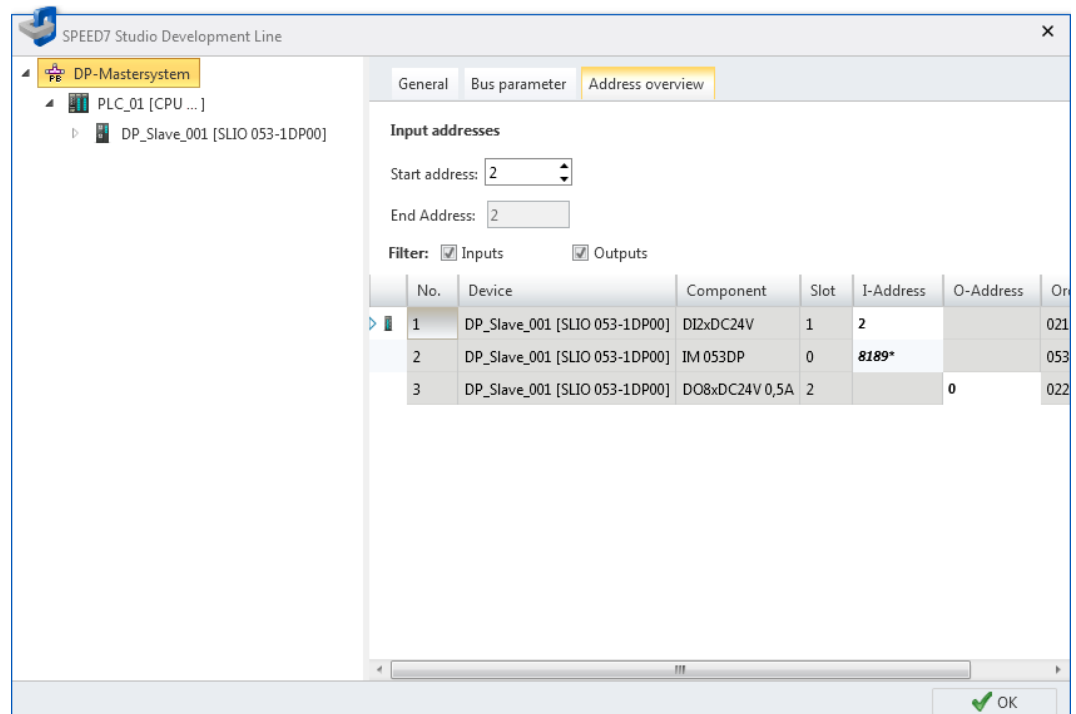


Fig. 106: DP master system: Address overview

Each table line corresponds to a cohesive address range of a component:

'No.' – Consecutive number

'Device' – Device name and device type of the slave

'Component' – Component (module) within the slave

'Slot' – Slot number within the rack




'I-Address' – Configured input address (byte address) of an input component. To change the addresses, see below.

'O-Address' – Configured output address (byte address) of an output component. To change the addresses, see below.

'Order number' – Order number of the component

Editing address ranges

You can change the address areas:

1.  Select 'Inputs' and/or 'Outputs'.
 - ⇒ The table lists all projected input or output modules.
2.  Highlight the desired module in the table.
 - ⇒ In the fields 'Start address' and 'End Address', the current address attribution (byte address) of the module is displayed.
Example of input addresses: Start address = 8, end address = 9 – The module occupies the two input bytes E8 and E9.
3.  Select the new input or output address in the field 'Start address'.
 - If this address is already occupied, a note pops up. Enter a different address.
 - ⇒ The address is changed in the selected module.



To edit I/O addresses for all projected components of the control:
🔗 [Chap. 8.12 'Address overview' page 254](#)

7.1.4 DP master – General configurations

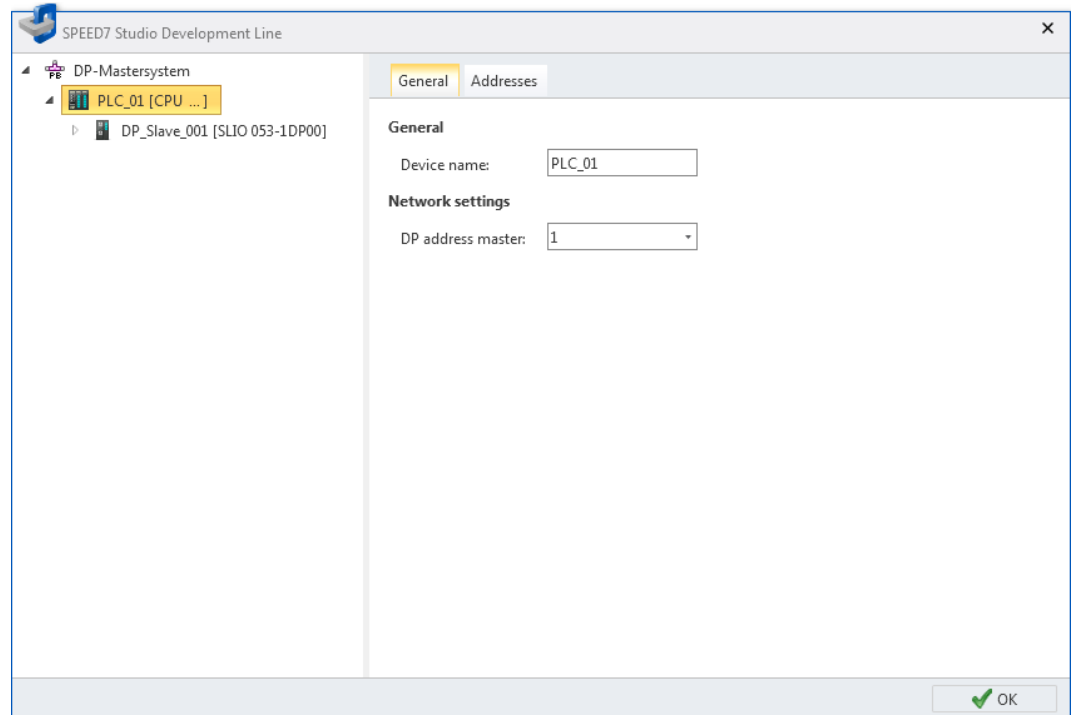


Fig. 107: Control: General configurations

'Device name' – Device name of the control

'DP address master' – Station address of the integrated PROFIBUS DP master

7.1.5 DP master – Addresses

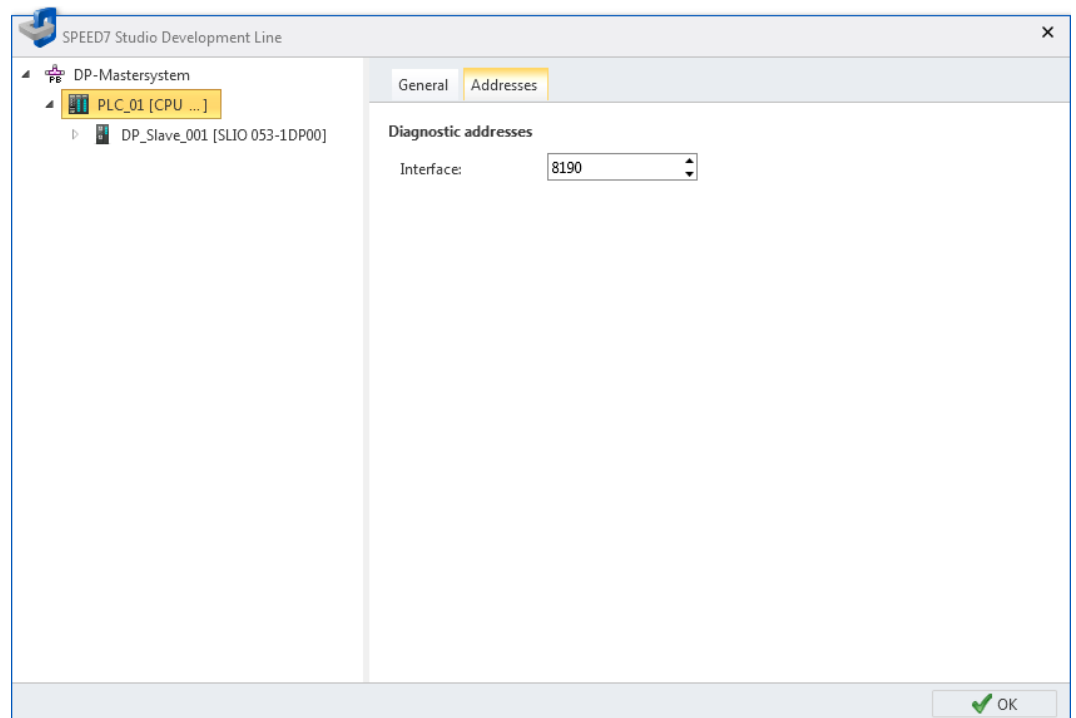


Fig. 108: Control: Addresses

'Interface' – Input address (byte address) for the exchange of diagnostics data between CPU and DP master system

7.1.6 DP slave – General configurations

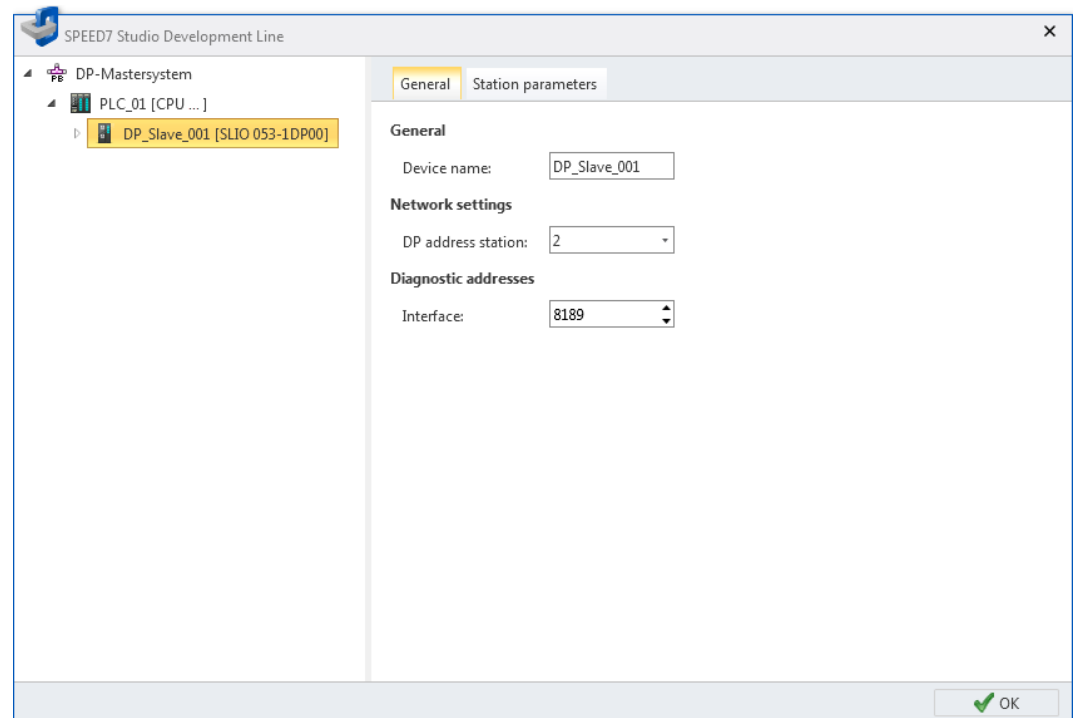


Fig. 109: Slave: General configurations

'Device name' – Device name of the slave

'DP address station' – Station address of the slave

'Interface' – Input address (byte address) for the exchange of diagnostics data between CPU and slave

Bus system properties (PROFIBUS DP) > DP slave – Station parameters

7.1.7 DP slave – Station parameters

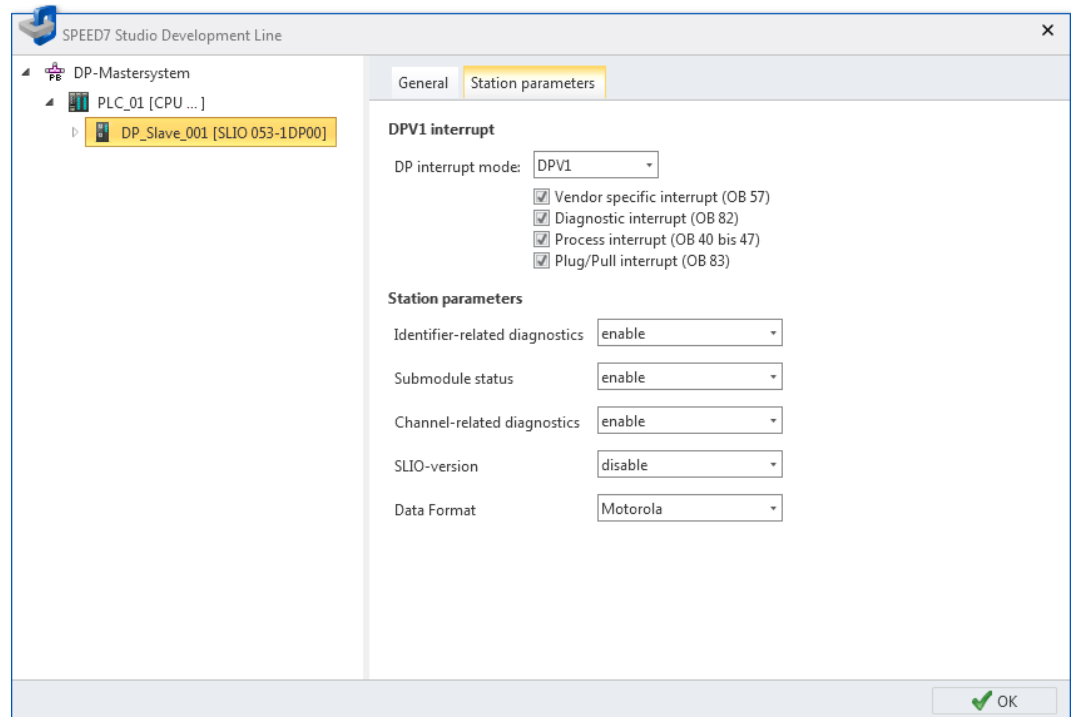


Fig. 110: Slave: Station parameters

'DP interrupt mode' – Mode of the interrupt version

DPV1 mode: In case of an interrupt, the slave will trigger the interrupt OB's activated here .

DPV0 mode: The slave will not trigger any interrupt.

'Station parameters' – Manufacturer specific parameters from the GSD file

7.1.8 Component – General configurations

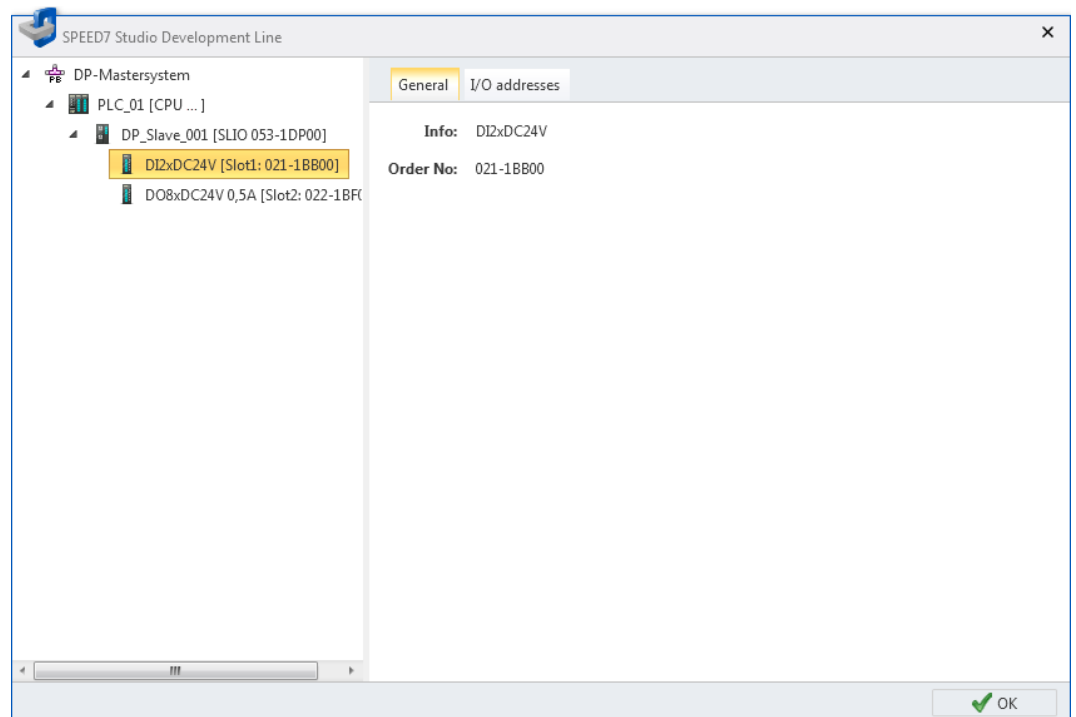


Fig. 111: Component: General configurations

'Info' – Component name

'Order number' – Order number of the component

7.1.9 Component – I/O addresses

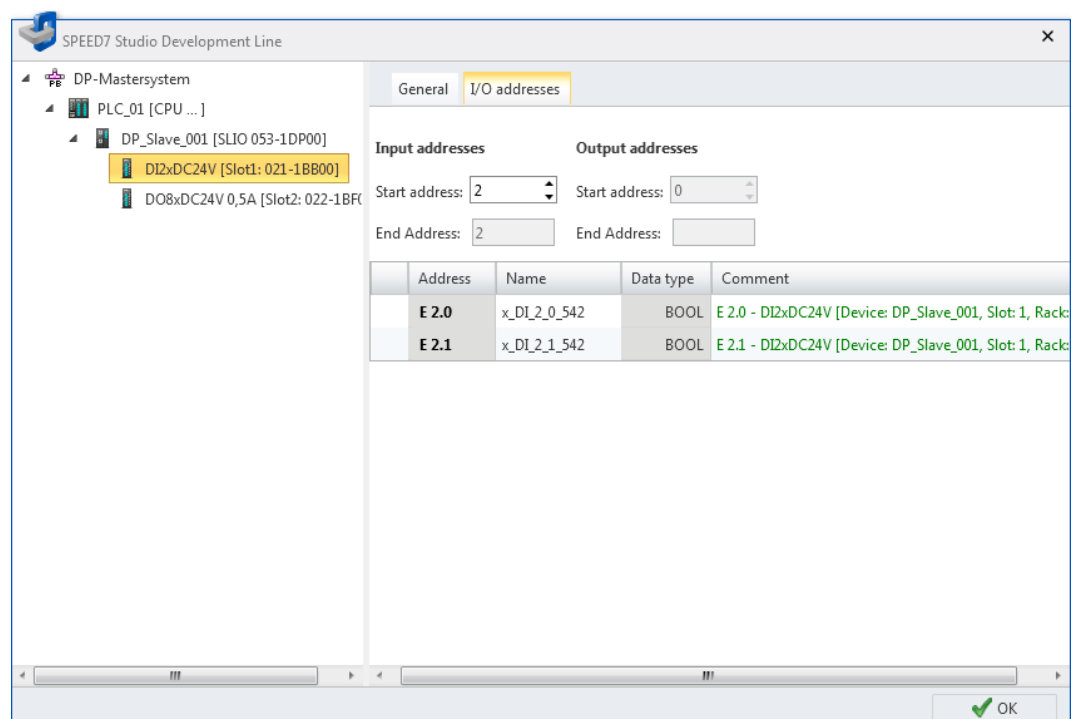


Fig. 112: Component: I/O addresses

Online diagnostics of the bus system (PROFIBUS DP)

Each table line corresponds to a channel of the component:

'Address' – Configured input or output address. To change the addresses, see below

'Name' – Name of the variables: Symbolic I/O address

'Data type' – Data type of the variables, e.g. "BOOL" for bit addresses. The data type is preset according to the channels and cannot be changed.

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

Editing address ranges

You can change the address areas:

➔ Select the new input or output address in the field 'Start address'.

If this address is already occupied, a note pops up. Enter a different address.

⇒ In the fields 'Start address' and 'End Address', the current address attribution (byte address of the component) is displayed.

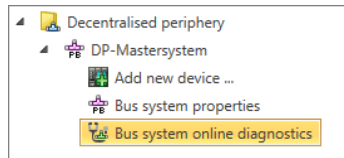
Example of input addresses: Start address = 8, end address = 9 – The component occupies the two input bytes E8 and E9.



To edit I/O addresses for all projected components of the control:
 ↪ Chap. 8.12 'Address overview' page 254

7.2 Online diagnostics of the bus system (PROFIBUS DP) 

You can monitor the PROFIBUS DP system using the online diagnostics. You receive diagnostic information on devices and components.



1. ➔ In the project tree within a control, click on 'Online diagnostics of the bus system', under 'Decentralised periphery', 'DP master system'.

⇒ The 'Online diagnostics of the bus system' dialogue window will open.

Fig. 113: Online diagnostics of the bus system

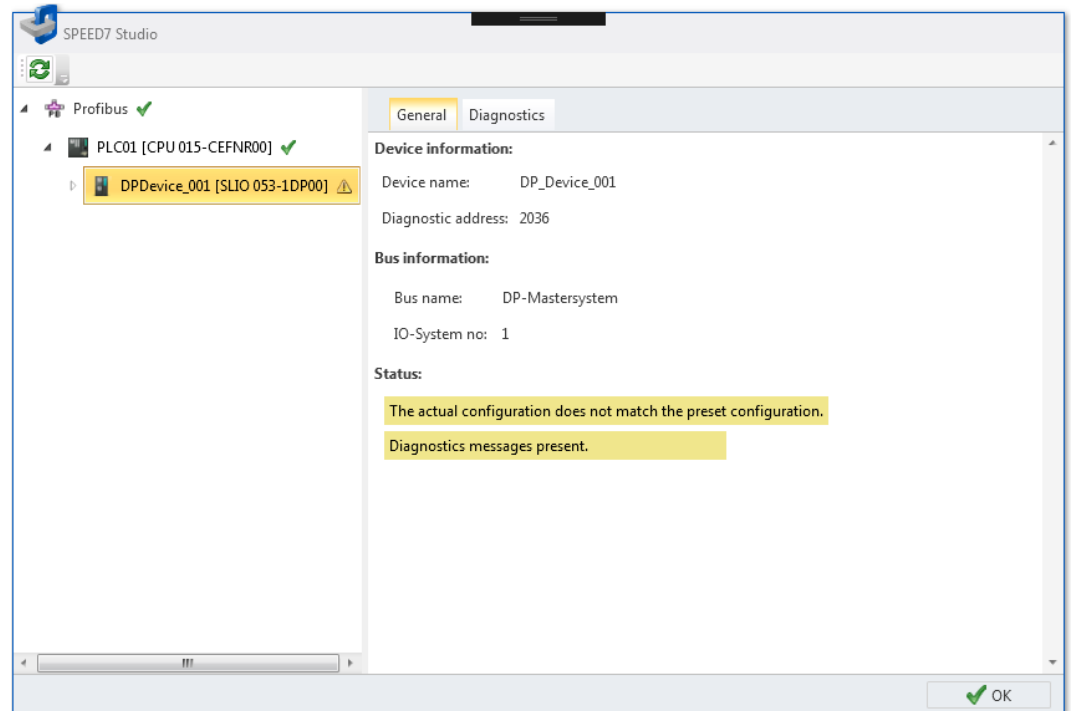


Fig. 114: "Online diagnostics of the bus system" dialogue window

2. ➔ Select an object from the list on the left, and then a tab, in order to show the diagnostic information for this object.
 - 🔗 PROFIBUS DP – General
 - 🔗 Controller – General
 - 🔗 Device – General
 - 🔗 Device – Diagnostics
 - 🔗 Module – General
 - 🔗 Module – Diagnostics

7.2.1 PROFIBUS DP – General

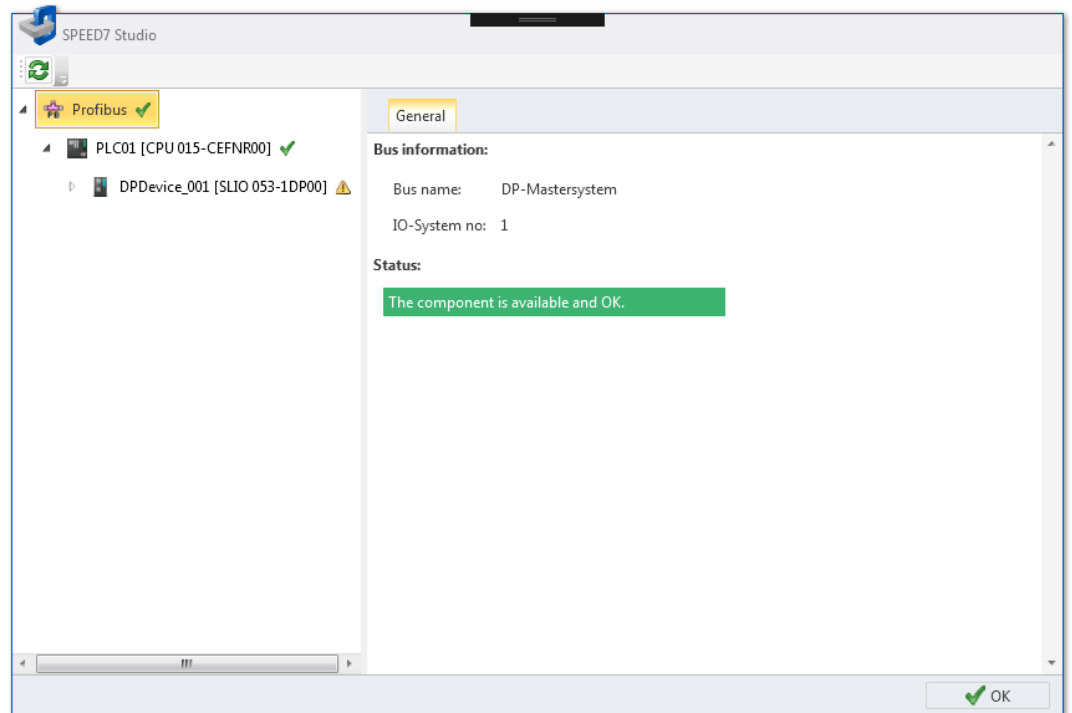


Fig. 115: Online diagnostics PROFIBUS DP: General

Bus information

'Bus name' – Name for the PROFIBUS DP system

'IO-system no' – Number for the differentiation of several PROFIBUS DP systems within one project

Status

Status information of the PROFIBUS DP system:

7.2.2 Controller – General

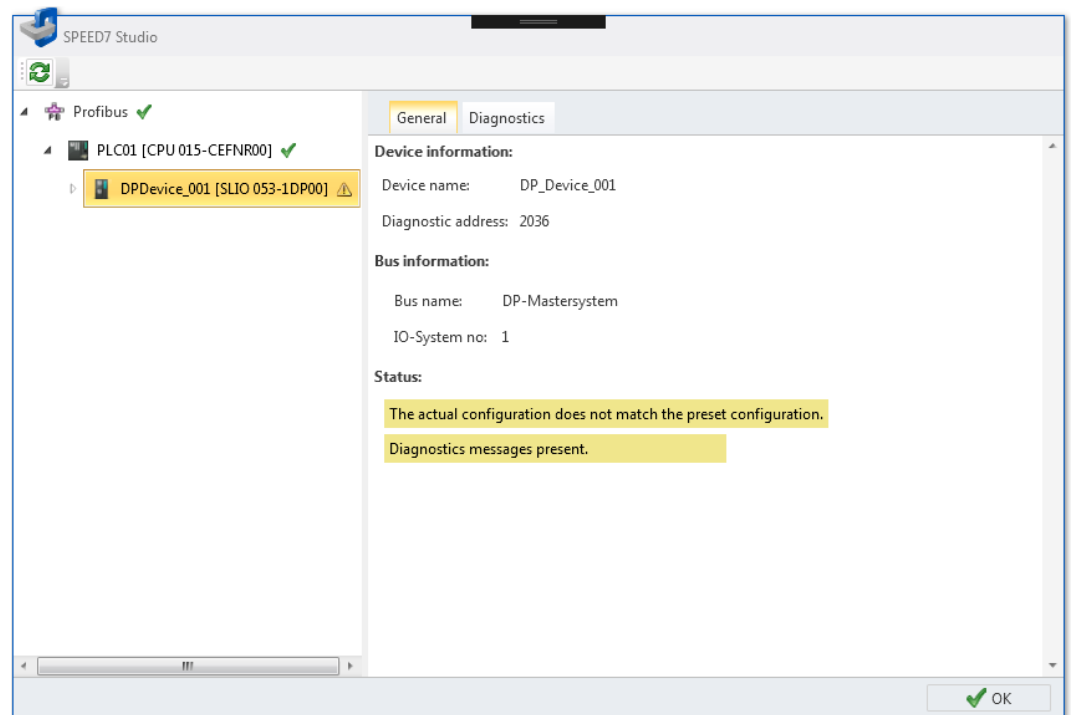


Fig. 116: Online diagnostics controller: General

Device information

'Device name' – Device name of the control (controller)

'System recognition' – Identification of the automation system

'Diagnostic address' – Input address (byte address) for the exchange of diagnostic data between CPU and PROFIBUS DP system

Bus information

'Bus name' – Name for the PROFIBUS DP system

'IO-system no' – Number for the differentiation of several PROFIBUS DB systems within one project

Status

Status information of the controller.

7.2.3 Device – General

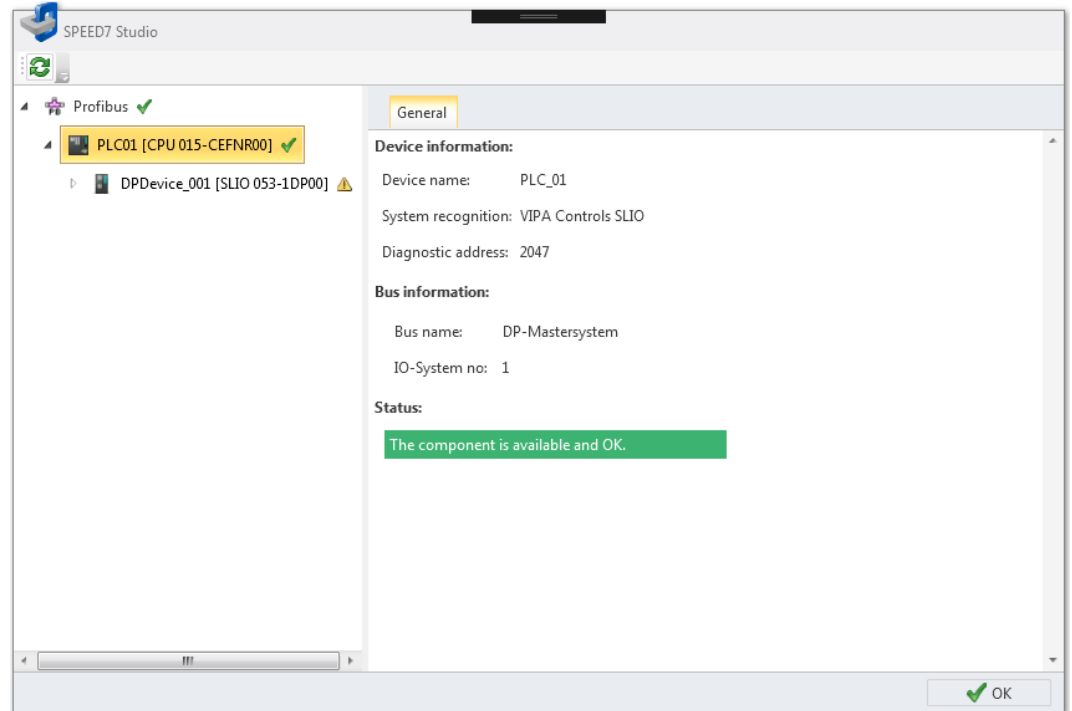


Fig. 117: Online diagnostics device: General

Device information

'Device name' – Device name of the device (DP slave)

'Diagnostic address' – Input address (byte address) for the exchange of diagnostic data between controller and DP slave

'Hardware version' – Output version of the hardware of the device

'Firmware version' – Output version of the firmware of the device

Bus information

'Bus name' – Name for the PROFIBUS DP system

'IO-system no' – Number for the differentiation of several PROFIBUS DP systems within one project

Status

Status information of the device.

7.2.4 Device – Diagnostics

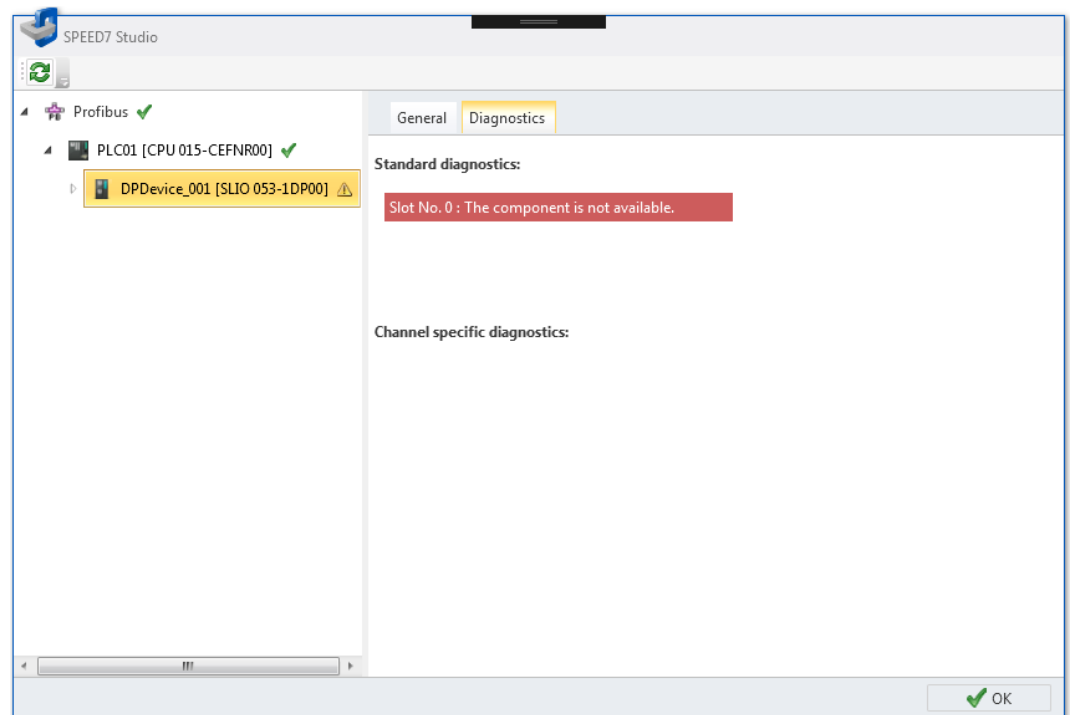


Fig. 118: Online diagnostics device: Diagnostics

Standard diagnostics

Vendor-related diagnostic texts of the DP slave:

Examples of standard diagnostics

"Slot No. 3: Correct module"

"Slot No. 1: Module on wrong slot"

Channel-specific diagnostics

Channel-related diagnostic texts for all modules of the DP slave; each channel is described by the slot of the component and the channel number:

Examples of channel-specific diagnostics

"Slot No. 3 Subslot No. 1 Channel No. 0: Line break"

"Slot No. 5 Subslot No. 1 Channel No. 3: short circuit"

7.2.5 Module – General

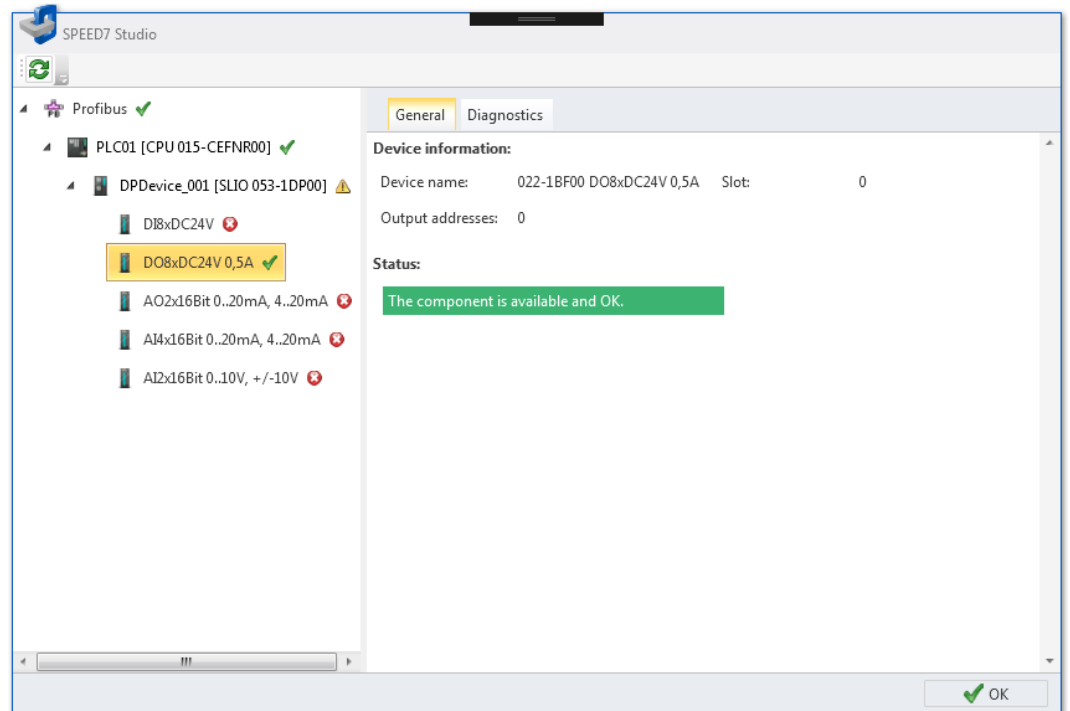


Fig. 119: Online diagnostics module: General

Device information

'Device name' – Name of the module

'Input addresses' – Area of the input addresses (byte) assigned to the module

'Output addresses' – Area of the output addresses (byte) assigned to the module

'Slot' – Slot of the module

'Hardware version' – Output version of the hardware of the module

Status

Status information of the module.

7.2.6 Module – Diagnostics

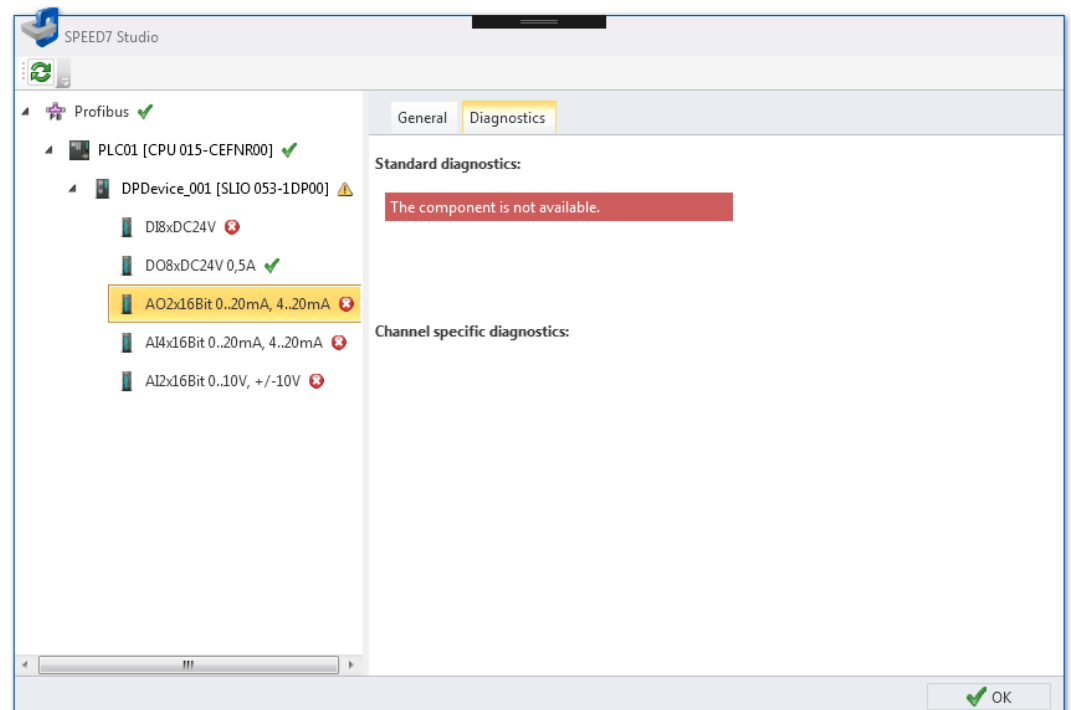


Fig. 120: Online diagnostics module: Diagnostics

Standard diagnostics

Vendor-related diagnostic texts of the module:

Examples of standard diagnostics

"Correct module"

"Module on wrong slot"

Channel-specific diagnostics

Channel-related diagnostic texts of the module:

Examples of channel-specific diagnostics

"Channel No. 0: Line break"

"Channel No. 3: short circuit"

7.3 Bus system properties (PROFINET-IO system)

Here you can make general configurations for the PROFINET-IO system.

Bus system properties (PROFINET-IO system)

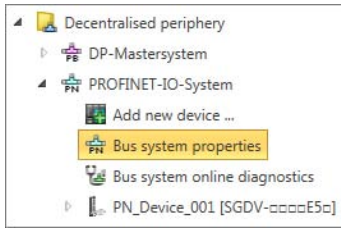


Fig. 121: Bus system properties

1. In the project tree within a control, click on *'Bus system properties'*, under *'Decentralised periphery'*, *'PROFINET-IO system'*.
⇒ The *'Bus system properties'* dialogue window will open.

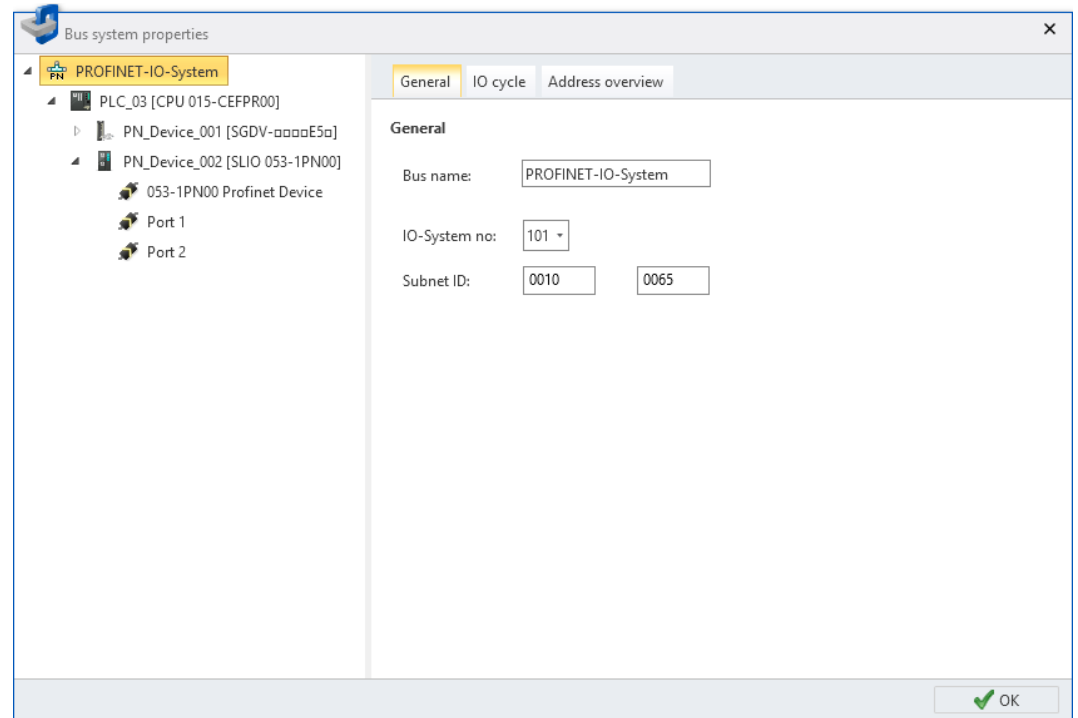


Fig. 122: Dialogue window "Bus system properties"

2. Select an object from the list on the left, and then a tab, in order to be able to make configurations for this object:
 - PROFINET-IO system – General configurations
 - PROFINET-IO system – IO cycle
 - PROFINET-IO system – Address overview
 - IO controller – General configurations
 - IO controller – addresses
 - IO controller – I device
 - IO controller – I/O configuration
 - IO device – General configurations
 - IO device – IO cycle
 - IO device – Parameter
 - IO module – General configurations

7.3.1 PROFINET-IO system – General configurations

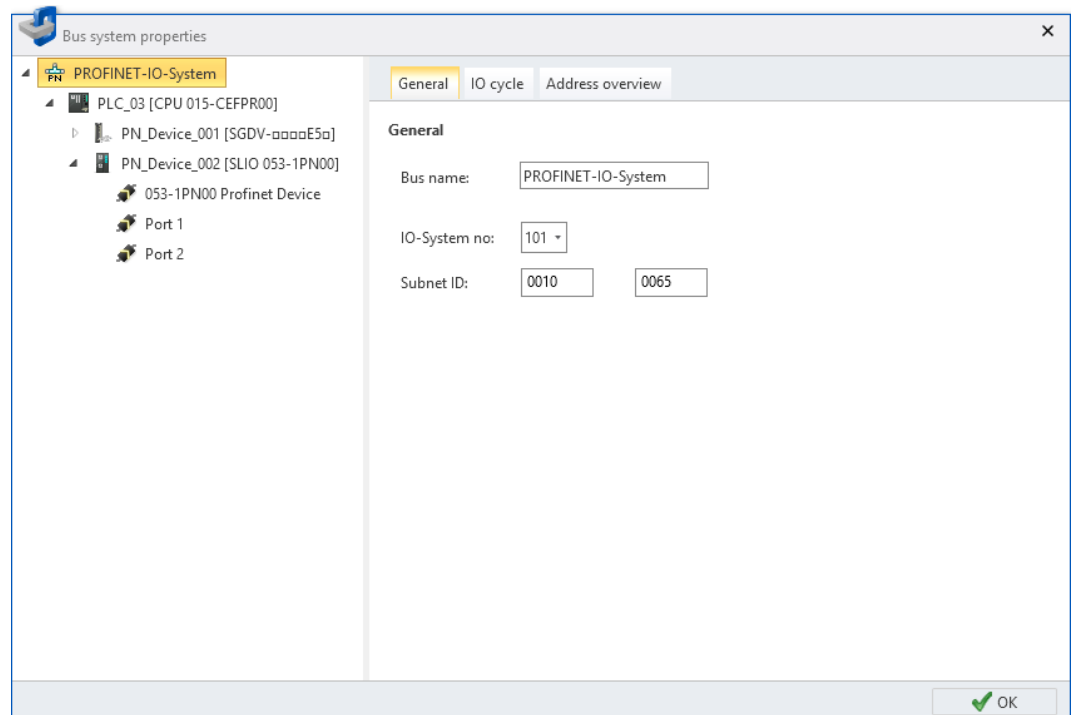


Fig. 123: PROFINET-IO system: General configurations

'Bus name' – Name for the PROFINET-IO system

'IO-system no' – Number for the differentiation of several PROFINET-IO systems within one project

'Subnet ID' – Address for the communication with connection partners via routing functions, e.g. via teleservice.

Bus system properties (PROFINET-IO system) > PROFINET-IO system – IO cycle

7.3.2 PROFINET-IO system – IO cycle

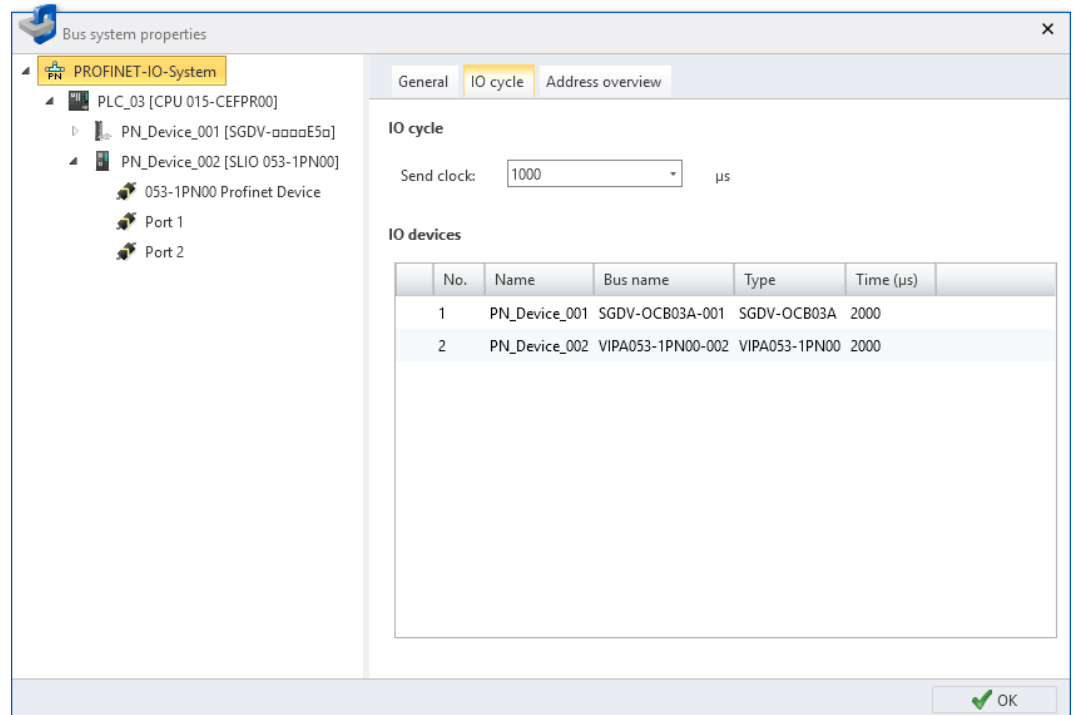


Fig. 124: PROFINET-IO system: IO cycle

'Send clock' – Smallest possible transmission interval for the data exchange of the RT or IRT communication

Each table line corresponds to a PROFINET accessible partner:

'No.' – Consecutive number

'Name' – PROFINET accessible partner

'Bus name' – PROFINET device name (IO device)

'Type' – Device type

'Time (µs)' – Calculated refresh interval ↪ *Chap. 7.3.9 'IO device – IO cycle' page 180*

7.3.3 PROFINET-IO system – Address overview

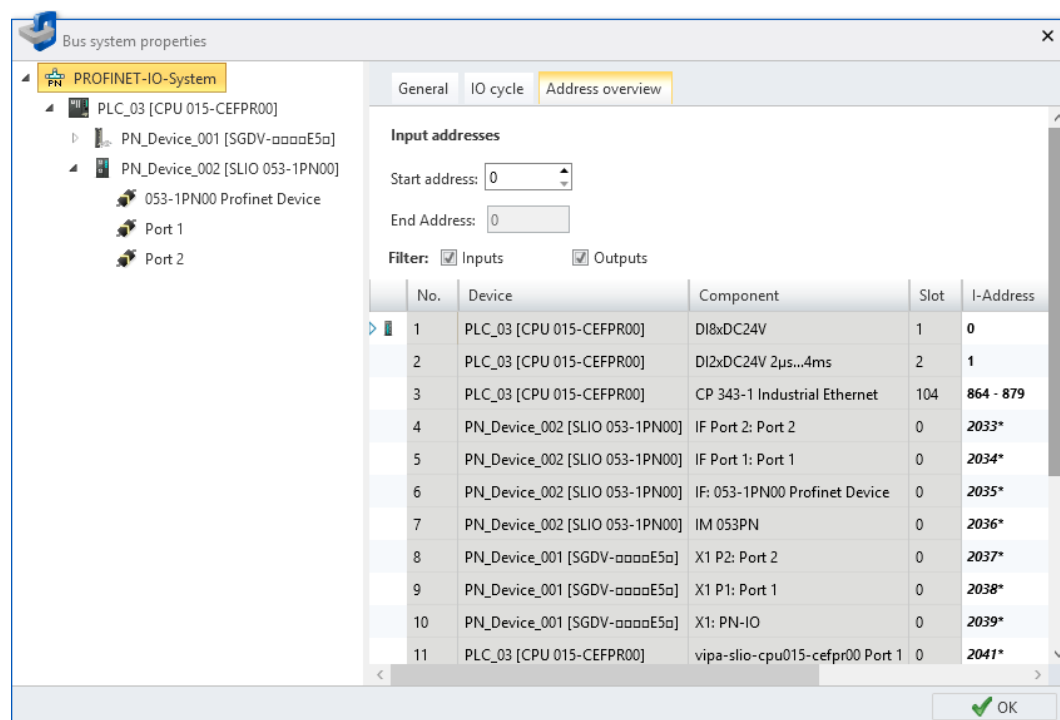


Fig. 125: PROFINET-IO system: Address overview

Each table line corresponds to a cohesive address range of an accessible partner:

'No.' – Consecutive number

'Device' – Device name and device type

'Component' – Component (module) within the accessible partner

'Slot' – Slot number within the rack

'I-Address' – Configured input address (byte address) of an input component. To change the addresses, see below.

'O-Address' – Configured output address (byte address) of an output component. To change the addresses, see below.

'Order number' – Order number of the accessible partner or component

Editing address ranges

You can change the address areas:

1. Select 'Inputs' and/or 'Outputs'.
 - ⇒ The table lists all projected input or output modules.
2. Highlight the desired module in the table.
 - ⇒ In the fields 'Start address' and 'End Address', the current address attribution (byte address) of the module is displayed.

Example of input addresses: Start address = 8, end address = 9 – The module occupies the two input bytes E8 and E9.
3. Select the new input or output address in the field 'Start address'.
 - ⇒ If this address is already occupied, a note pops up. Enter a different address.
 - ⇒ The address is changed in the selected module.

Bus system properties (PROFINET-IO system) > IO controller – General configurations



To edit I/O addresses for all projected components of the control:
 ↪ Chap. 8.12 'Address overview' page 254

7.3.4 IO controller – General configurations

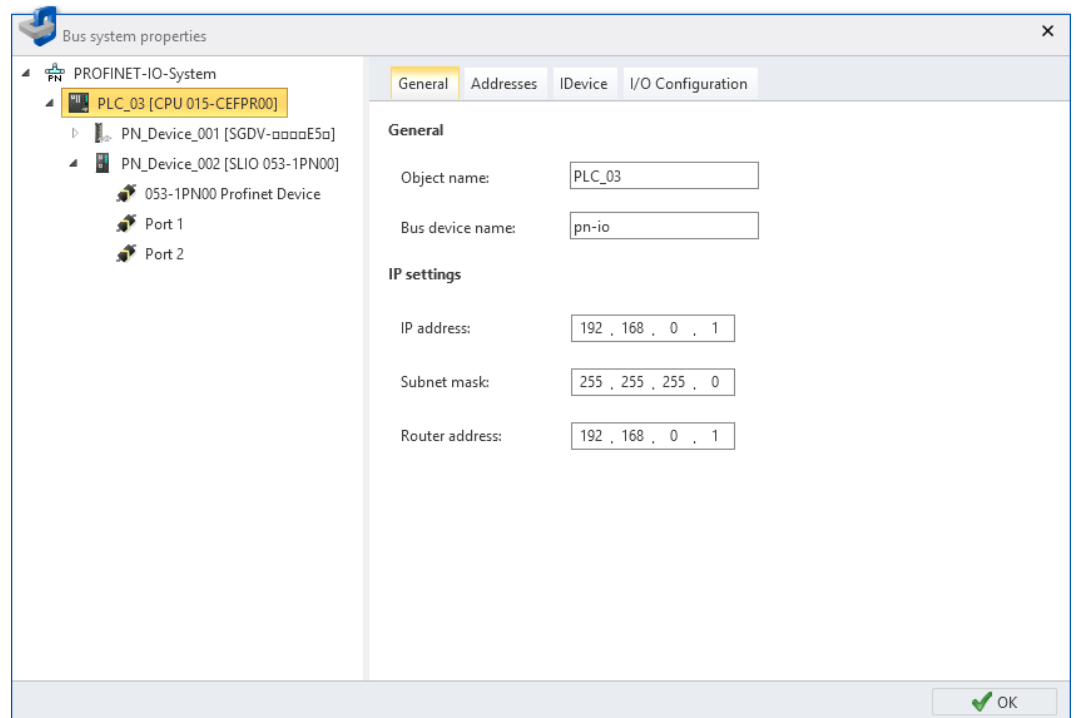


Fig. 126: IO controller: General configurations

'Device name' – Device name of the control (IO controller)

'Bus device name' – PROFINET device name (IO controller)

'IP address' and 'Subnet mask' – Address of the control in the PROFINET-IO network

'Router address' – IP address of the router if the communication should be realised beyond the PROFINET-IO network (routing)



In the dialogue window "Search for accessible partners", you can set the PROFINET device name and perform a factory reset of the IO controller.
 ↪ Chap. 6.21 'Search for accessible partners' page 116

7.3.5 IO controller – addresses

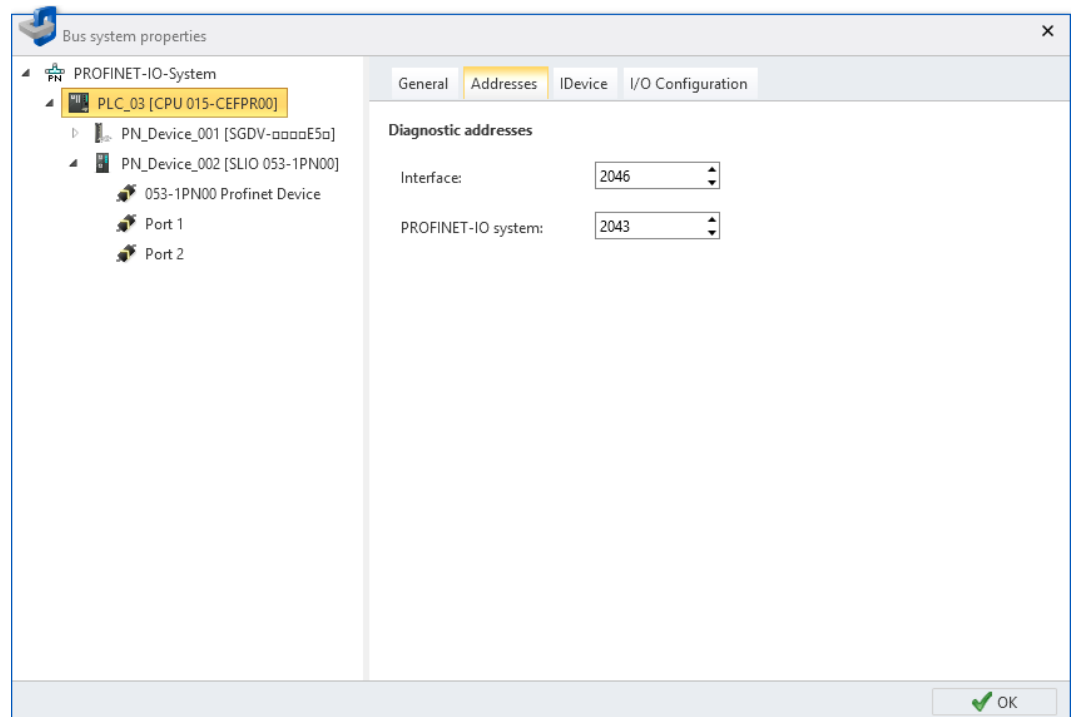


Fig. 127: IO controller: Addresses

'Interface' – Input addresses (byte address) for the exchange of diagnostic data between CPU and PROFINET-IO system

'PROFINET IO system' – diagnostic address for fault message from the IO controller, e.g. in the event of a PROFINET IO system malfunction

Bus system properties (PROFINET-IO system) > IO controller – I device

7.3.6 IO controller – I device

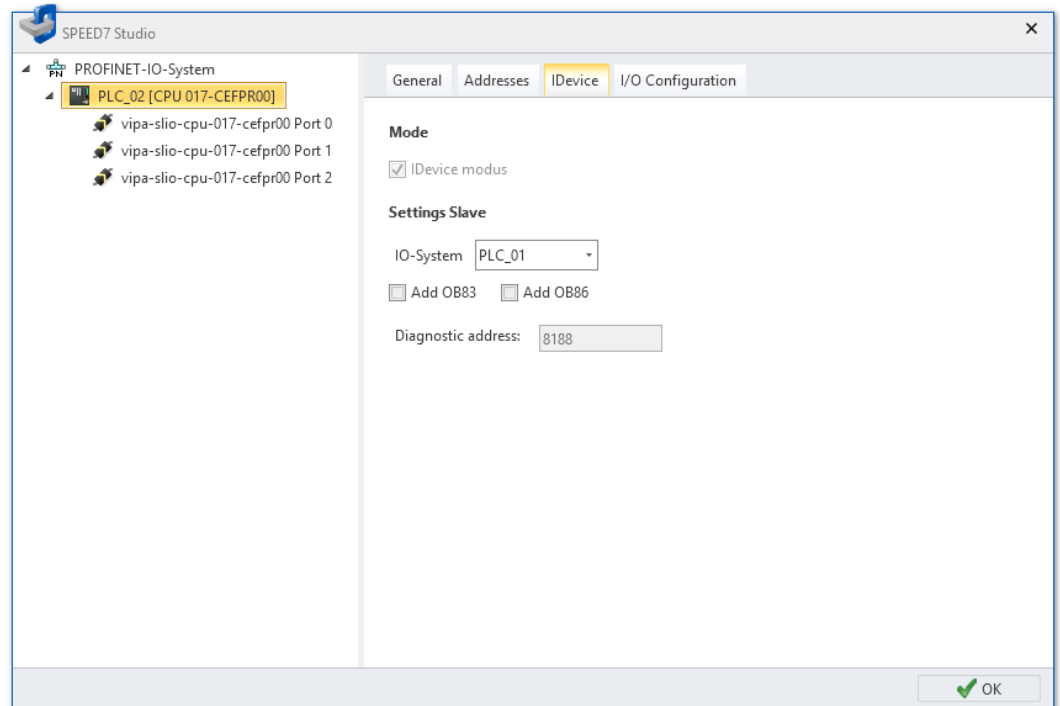


Fig. 128: IO controller: I device

'I device mode' – Activate device as an intelligent IO device (I device) ↗ Chap. 6.7 *'Add control (CPU) as a PROFINET IO device (I device)'* page 92

'IO system' – Higher-level control to which the IO controller is connected as an I device:

- "PLC_xx": Control to which the device is connected as an I device
- "---": Disconnecting an I device from the PROFINET IO system

'Add OB83/OB86 add' – Add organisation blocks which are required for operating the IO controller as an I device

'Diagnostic address' – Input address (byte address) for exchanging diagnostic data between the higher-level control and the I-device

7.3.7 IO controller – I/O configuration

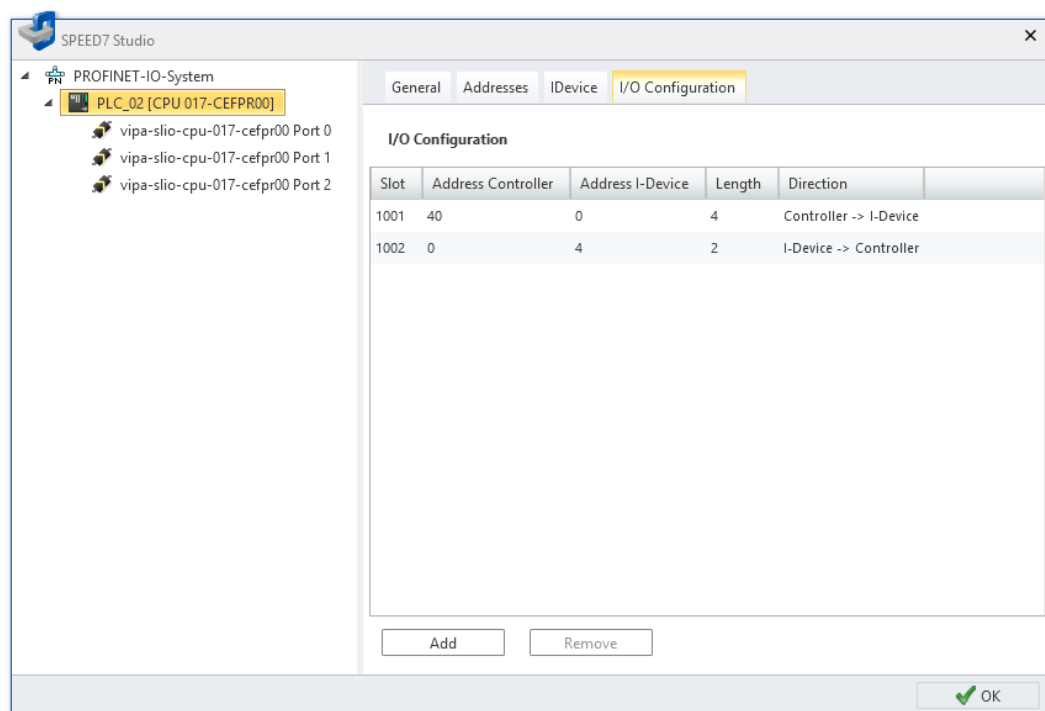


Fig. 129: IO controller: I/O configuration

In the I/O configuration, you can reserve address ranges as transfer ranges when you connect the device to the PROFINET IO system as an I device, see [Chap. 7.3.6 'IO controller – I device' page 176](#).

Each line of the table corresponds to a reserved transfer range for I/O data exchange between the master (higher-level control) and the slave (I device)

'Slot' – Slot number within the higher-level control rack

'Address controller' – Start address (byte address) of the transfer range in the higher-level control

'I device address' – Start address (byte address) of the transfer range in the I device

'Length' – Length of the transfer range from the start address in bytes

'Direction' – Data direction:

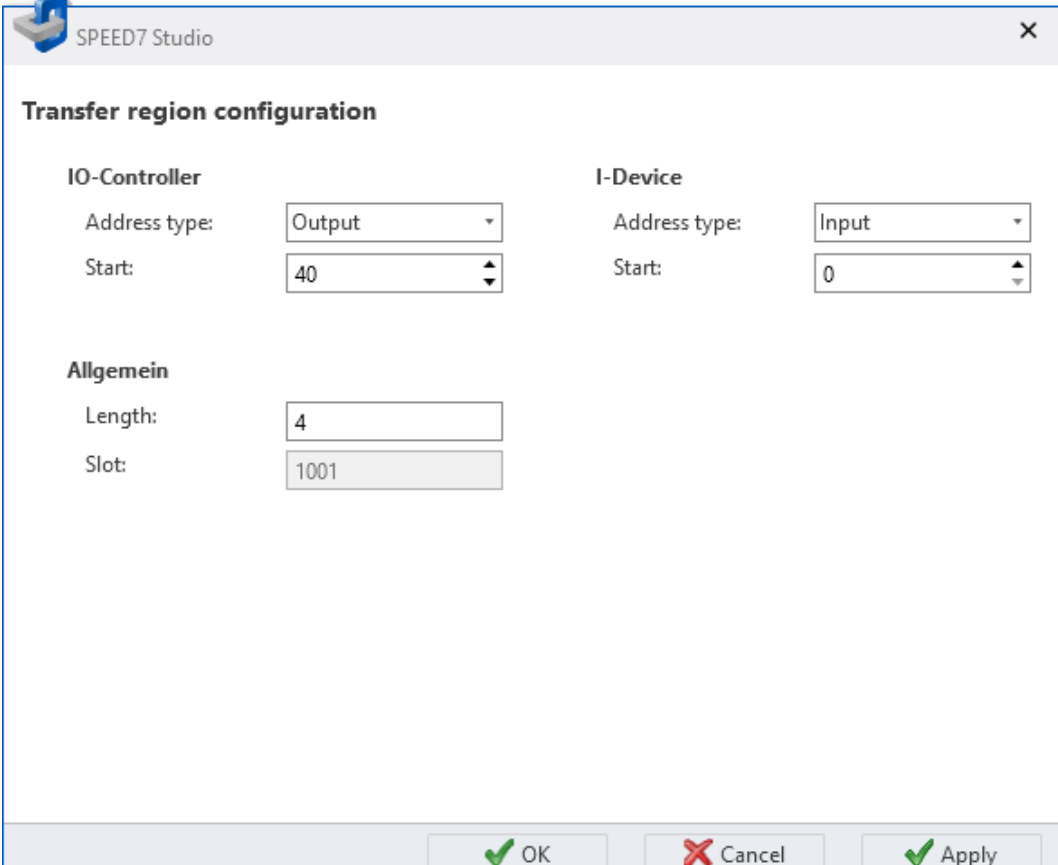
- 'Controller -> I device': Output data from the higher-level control = input data for the I device
- 'I device -> controller': Output data from the I device = input data for the higher-level control

Adding address ranges

You can add I/O address ranges:

1. Click on 'Add'.

⇒ The dialogue window for configuration of the transfer range will open.



Transfer region configuration

IO-Controller

Address type: Output

Start: 40

I-Device

Address type: Input

Start: 0

Allgemein

Length: 4

Slot: 1001

OK Cancel Apply

2. Select the address type 'Output' for the IO controller if you want to configure the transfer range for the data direction 'controller -> I device'.
- or -
Select the address type 'Input' for the IO controller if you want to configure the transfer range for the data direction 'I device -> controller'.
⇒ The opposite address type is automatically configured in the I device.
3. Enter the start address for the transfer range in the 'Start' input field in the address space for the higher-level control (IO controller).
4. Enter the start address for the transfer range in the 'Start' input field in the address space for the I device.
5. Enter the length of the transfer range which should be reserved in both devices in the 'Length' input field.
If an address range is already reserved, a notification will appear. Enter another address range.
6. Click on 'OK' to finalise the input.
- or -
Click on 'Accept' if you want to reserve additional address ranges. Then click on 'OK'.
⇒ All transfer ranges added are applied in the table.

Deleting address ranges

1. Mark the desired lines of the table and click on 'Remove'.
⇒ The lines of the table are deleted and the reservation of the transfer range is cancelled.

7.3.8 IO device – General configurations

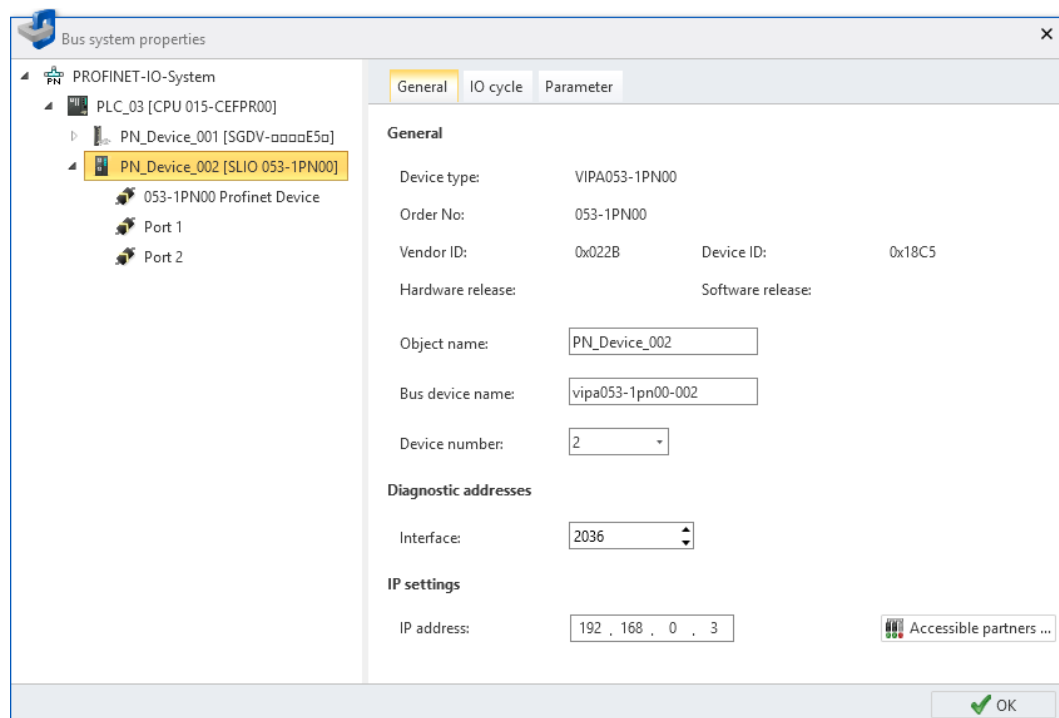


Fig. 130: IO device: General configurations

The dialogue window includes information about the IO device, such as device type, order number, etc.

'Device name' – Device name of the accessible partner (IO device)

'Bus device name' – PROFINET device name (IO device)

'Device number' – Configured device number

'Interface' – Input address (byte address) for the exchange of diagnostics data between IO controller and IO device

'IP Address' – Address of the accessible partner in the PROFINET-IO network

7.3.9 IO device – IO cycle

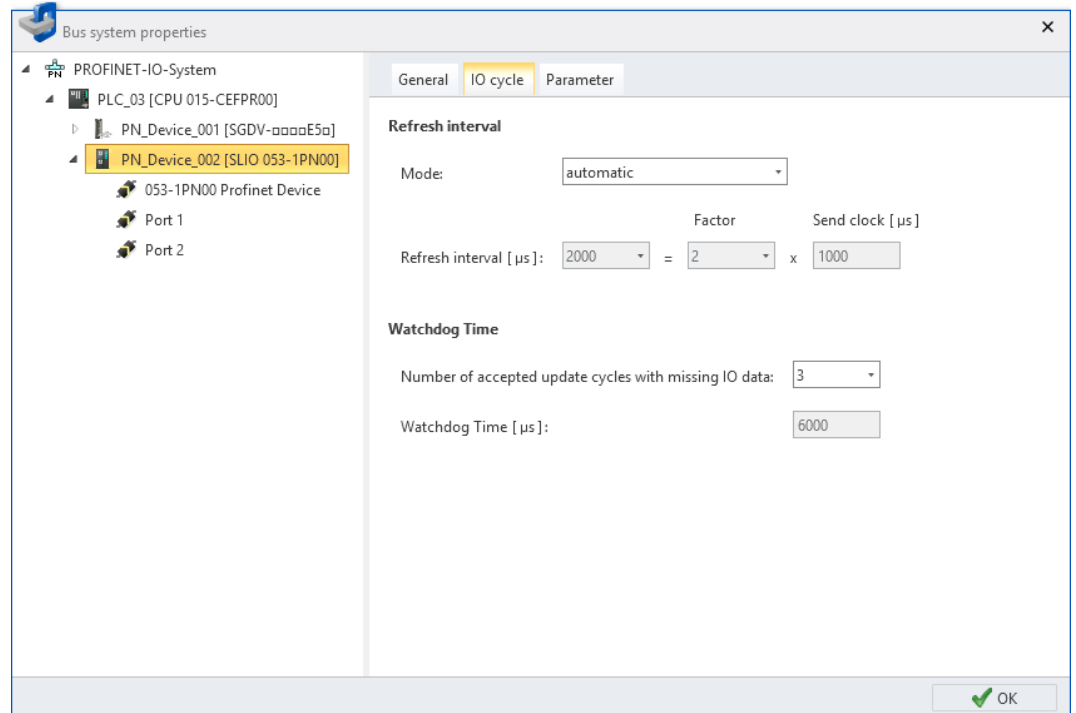


Fig. 131: IO device: IO cycle

Refresh interval

The PROFINET device with the highest parametrised refresh interval determines the transmission cycle in which all PROFINET devices will receive and/or send data at least once.

The smaller the refresh interval, the more bandwidth will be occupied by the cyclic real time communication.

The bigger the refresh interval, the longer the reaction time.

'Mode:'

- *'Automatic'* – The refresh interval is optimised so that no warnings or errors can occur.
- *'Fixed refresh interval'* – With this configuration, you can change the refresh interval of the IO device. If you change the refresh intervals, errors might occur in the consistency check.
- *'Fixed factor'* – With this configuration, you can determine how often the IO device should be refreshed. This configuration changes the response monitoring time.
 ↪ *'Response monitoring time' page 180.*

Example: Factor = 2, send clock = 1000 µs – The IO device is refreshed after each second send clock, i.e. every 2000 µs.

'Refresh interval (µs)' – Refresh interval of the IO device

'Factor' – Number of send clocks, after which the IO device should be refreshed

'Send clock (µs)' – Smallest possible transmission interval for the data exchange of the RT or IRT communication

Response monitoring time

'Number of accepted refresh cycles with missing IO data' – Number of faulty telegrams until disconnection

If no valid IO data is received after this number of refresh cycles, the connection between IO device and IO controller is interrupted. The input and output data are monitored separately. If input data is still received but output data are not transmitted anymore, the connection will be interrupted after the number of accepted refresh cycles.

'Response monitoring time' μ s – Time until fault detection, determined from refresh interval and number of accepted refresh cycles with missing IO data.

7.3.10 IO device – Parameter

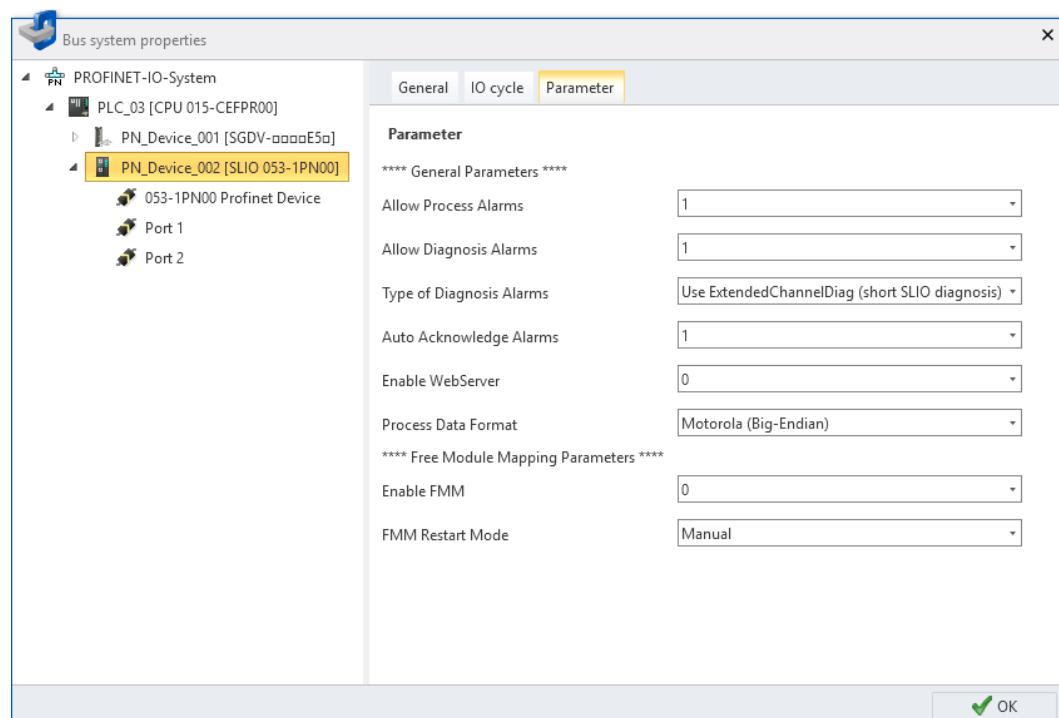


Fig. 132: IO device: Parameter

'Parameter' – Manufacturer specific parameters from the GSDML file

Online diagnostics of the bus system (PROFINET-IO system)

7.3.11 IO module – General configurations

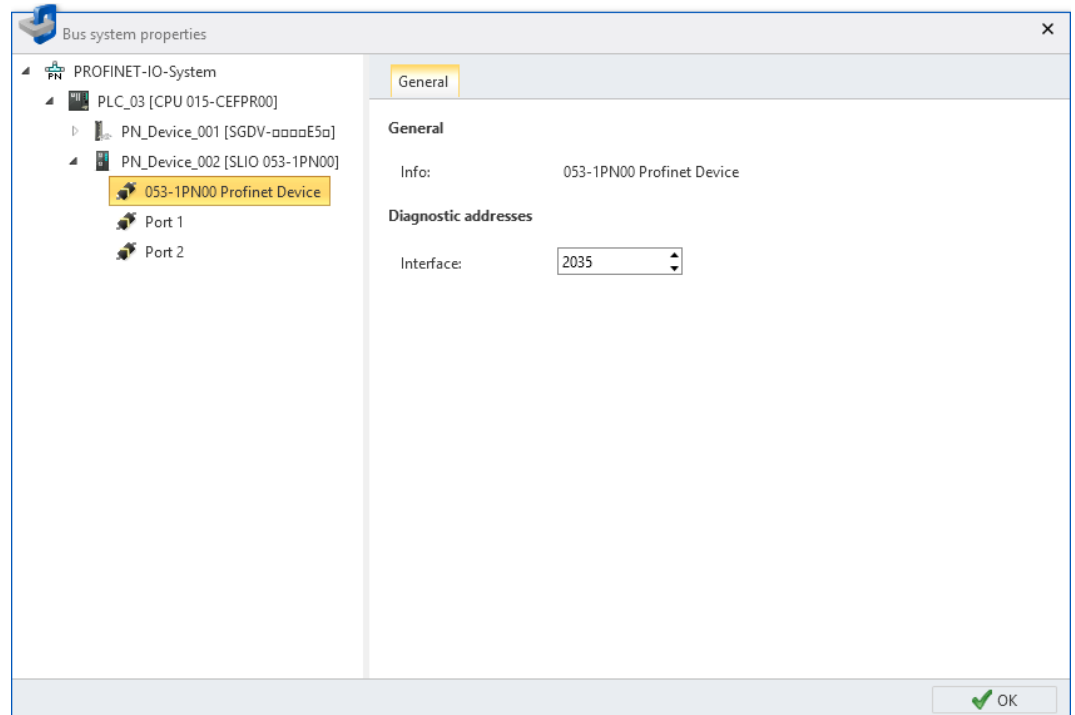


Fig. 133: IO module: General configurations

'Info' – Module or channel designation

'Interface' – Input address (byte address) for the exchange of diagnostics data between CPU and master system

7.4 Online diagnostics of the bus system (PROFINET-IO system)

You can monitor the PROFINET-IO system using the online diagnostics. You receive diagnostic information on devices, components and network ports.

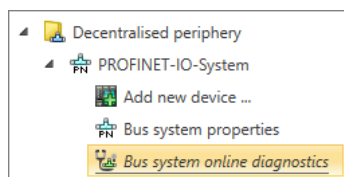


Fig. 134: Online diagnostics of the bus system

1. In the project tree within a control, click on 'Online diagnostics of the bus system', under 'Decentralised periphery', 'PROFINET-IO system'.

⇒ The 'Online diagnostics of the bus system' dialogue window will open.

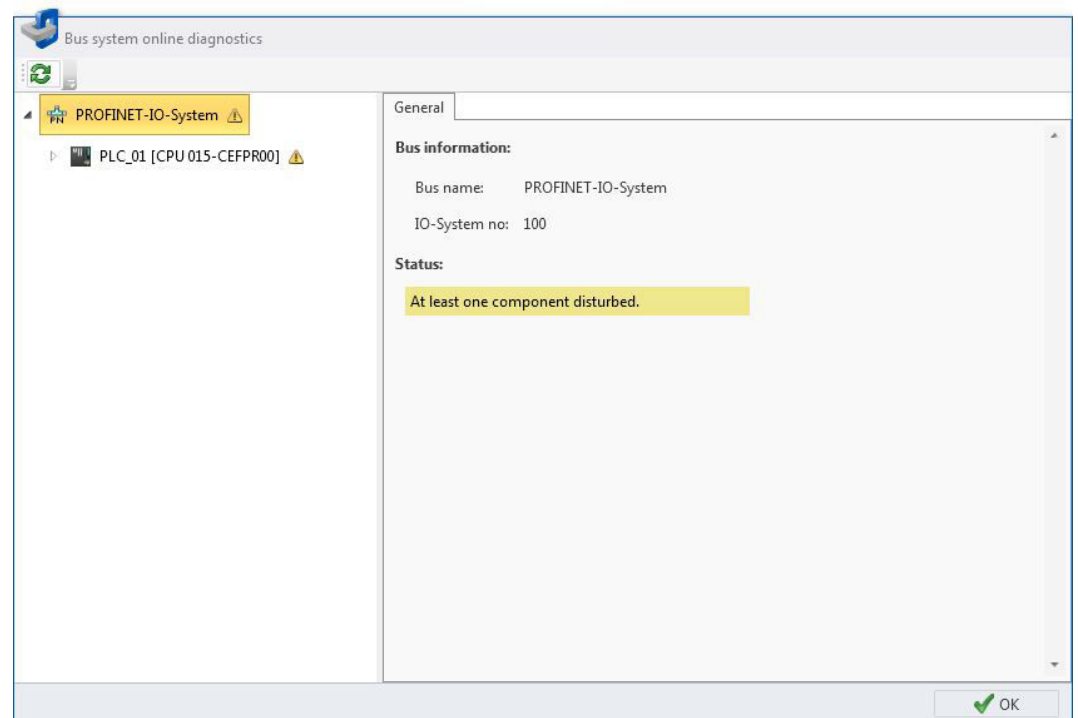














Fig. 135: "Online diagnostics of the bus system" dialogue window

2.  Select an object from the list on the left, and then a tab, in order to show the diagnostic information for this object.
 -  *PROFINET-IO system – General*
 -  *IO controller – General*
 -  *IO controller – Interface*
 -  *IO device – General*
 -  *IO device – Diagnostics*
 -  *IO device – Interface*
 -  *IO device – Network connection*
 -  *Port – General*
 -  *Port – Network connection*
 -  *IO module – General*
 -  *IO module – Diagnostics*

7.4.1 PROFINET-IO system – General

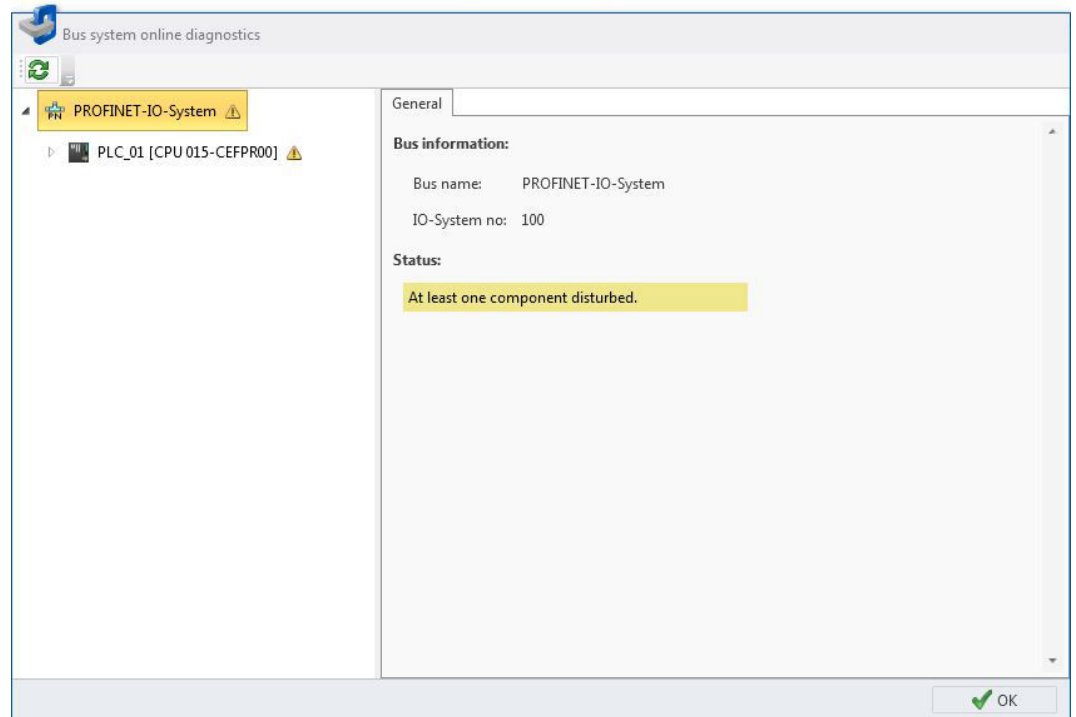


Fig. 136: Online diagnostics PROFINET-IO system: General

Bus information

'Bus name' – Name for the PROFINET-IO system

'IO-system no' – Number for the differentiation of several PROFINET-IO systems within one project

status

Status information of the PROFINET-IO system:

Examples of status information

"At least one component disturbed."

"Diagnostics messages present."

"Maintenance requirements"

7.4.2 IO controller – General

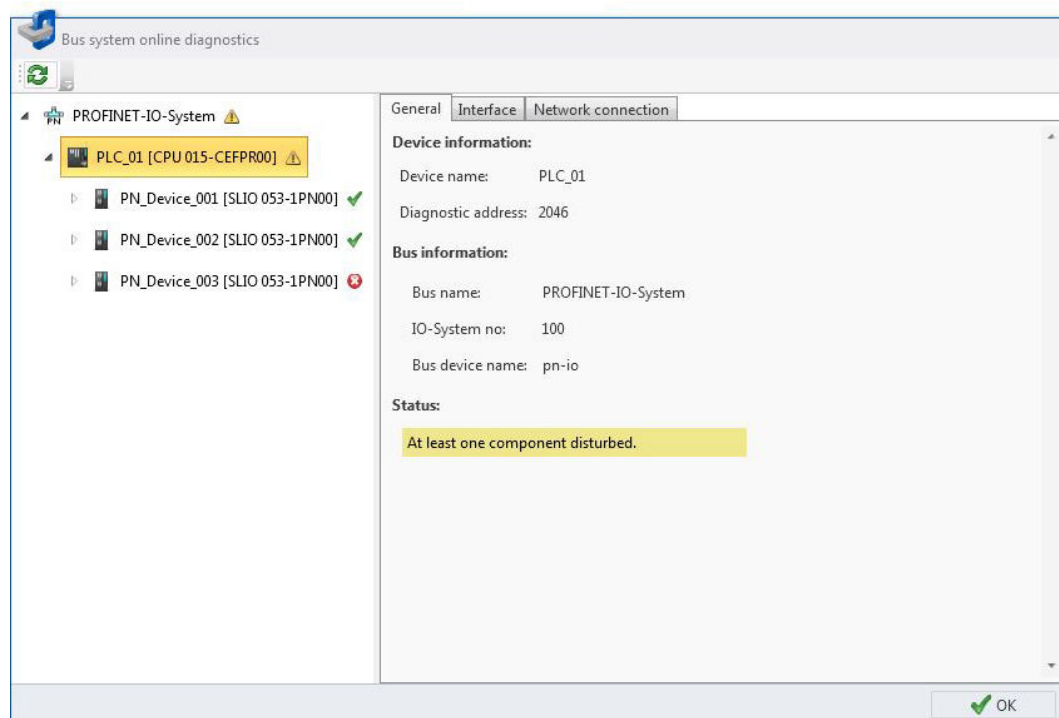


Fig. 137: Online diagnostics IO controller: General

Device information

'Device name' – Device name of the control (IO controller)

'System recognition' – Identification of the automation system

'Diagnostic address' – Input address (byte address) for the exchange of diagnostic data between CPU and PROFINET-IO system

'Slot' – PROFINET port (port number) on IO controller

Bus information

'Bus name' – Name for the PROFINET-IO system

'IO-system no' – Number for the differentiation of several PROFINET-IO systems within one project

'Bus device name' – PROFINET device name (IO controller)

status

Status information of the IO controller:

Examples of status information

"At least one component disturbed."

"Diagnostics messages present."

"Maintenance requirements"

7.4.3 IO controller – Interface

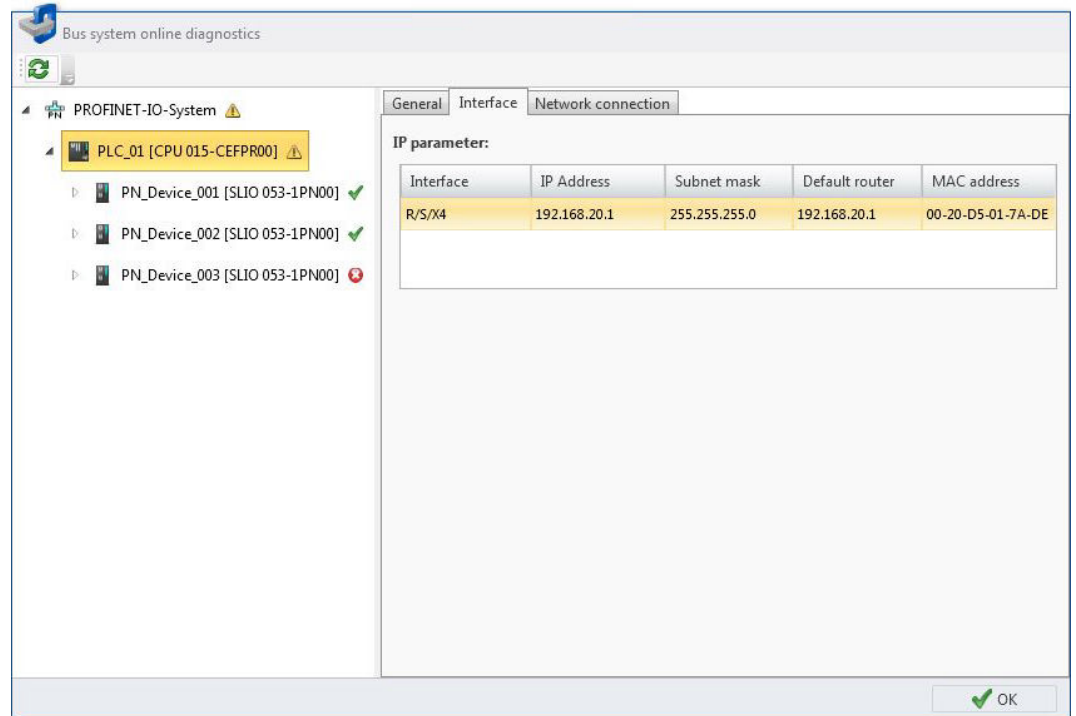


Fig. 138: Online diagnostics IO controller: Interface

IP parameter

The table lists all interfaces of the IO controller. Each table line corresponds to an interface.

'Interface' – Rack number / Slot number / Port (port number)

'IP address' and *'Subnet mask'* – Address of the accessible partner in the PROFINET-IO network

'Default router' – IP address of the router if the communication is realised beyond the PROFINET IO network (routing).

'MAC address' – Hardware address of the network adapter, for clear identification of the device

7.4.4 IO controller – Network connection

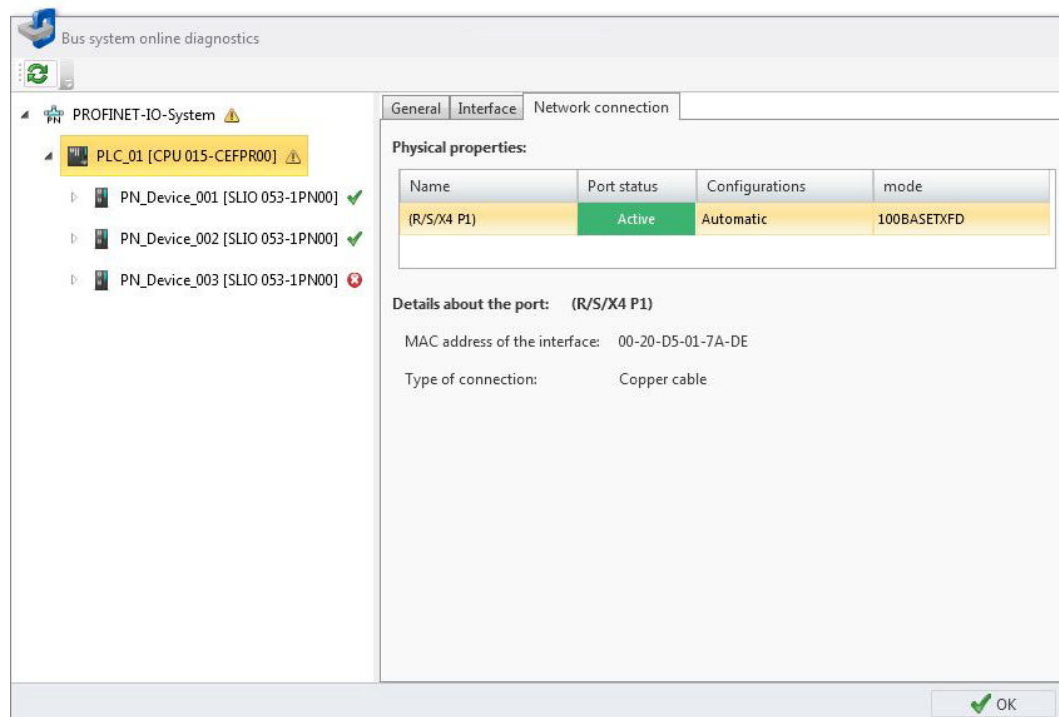


Fig. 139: Online diagnostics IO controller: Network connection

Physical properties

The table lists all Ethernet ports of the IO controller. Each table line corresponds to an interface.

'Name' – Rack number / Slot number / Port and port number

'Port status'

- "Active": A device has been connected to the interface and the connection was established.
- "Inactive": No device has been connected to the interface.

'Configurations'

- "Automatic" if the port status is "Active"
- "---" if the port status is "Inactive"

'Mode' – Configuration of the network adapter: Transfer rate and transfer procedures

Details about the port

➤ Click on an active port in the table.

⇒ The details on the selected port are shown below the table

'MAC address of the interface' – Hardware address of the network adapter

'Type of connection' – Transfer medium, e.g. copper cable

'Neighbouring ports' – If connected devices can be determined, they will be listed in the following way:

- Device name.Port name, e.g. vipa053-1pn00-002.port001
- MAC address of the network adapter of the connected device
- Line length in meters (m) and signal run time in nanoseconds (ns)

7.4.5 IO device – General

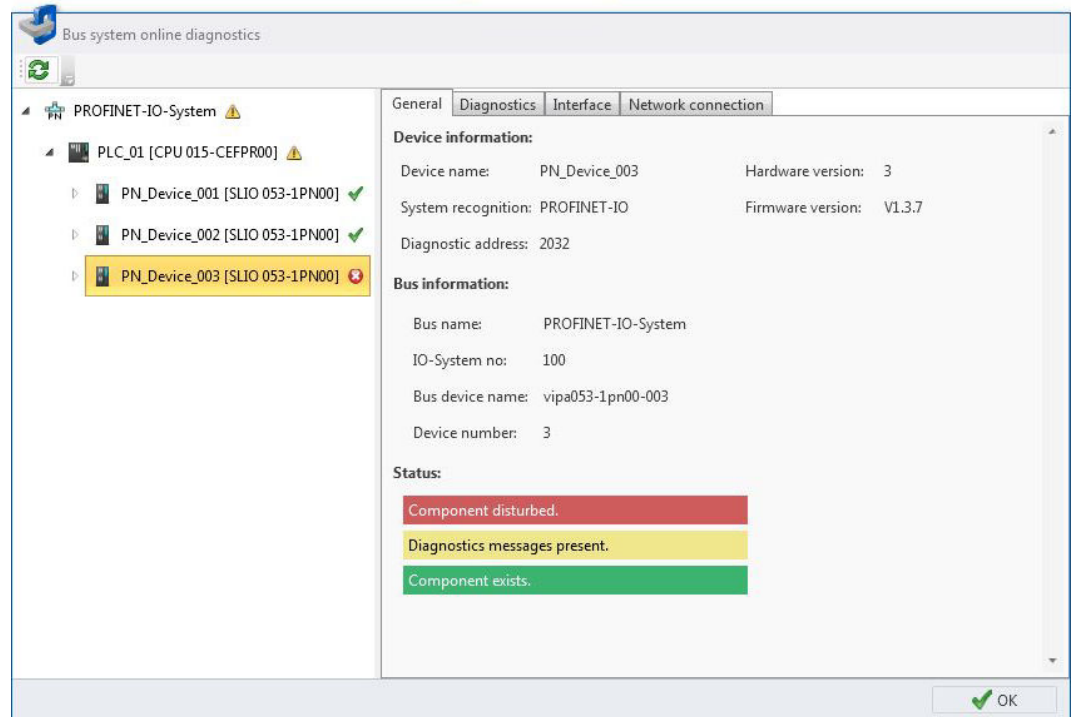


Fig. 140: Online diagnostics IO device: General

Device information

'Device name' – Device name of the device (IO device)

'System recognition' – Identification of the automation system

'Diagnostic address' – Input address (byte address) for the exchange of diagnostic data between IO controller and IO device

'Hardware version' – Output version of the hardware of the device

'Firmware version' – Output version of the firmware of the device

Bus information

'Bus name' – Name for the PROFINET-IO system

'IO-system no' – Number for the differentiation of several PROFINET-IO systems within one project

'Bus device name' – PROFINET device name (IO device)

'Device number' – Configured device number

status

Status information of the IO controller:

Examples of status information

"Component exists"

"Component projected but not available"

"Component disturbed"

"Diagnostics messages present."

"Maintenance requirements"

7.4.6 IO device – Diagnostics

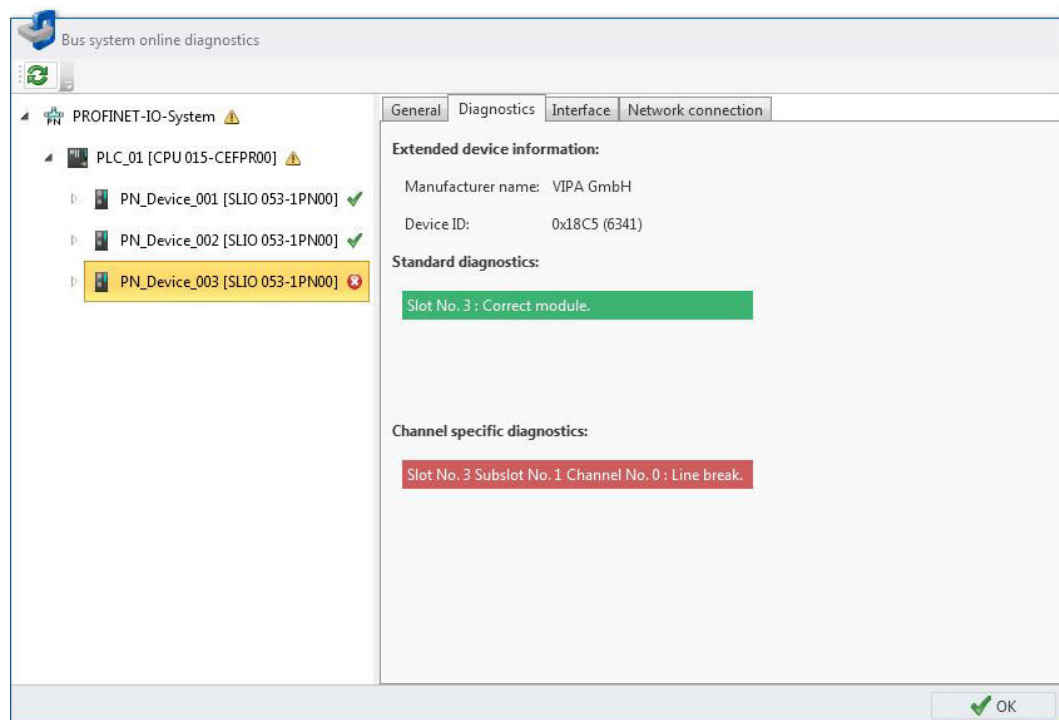


Fig. 141: Online diagnostics IO device: Diagnostics

Extended device information

'Manufacturer name' – Name of the device manufacturer or Vendor ID (hexadecimal)

'Device ID' – Device ID (hexadecimal and in brackets: decimal)

Standard diagnostics

Manufacturer-related diagnostic texts of the IO device:

Examples of standard diagnostics

"Slot No. 3: Correct module"

"Slot No. 1: Module on wrong slot"

Channel-specific diagnostics

Channel-related diagnostic texts for all modules of the IO device; each channel is described by the slot of the component and the channel number:

Examples of channel-specific diagnostics

"Slot No. 3 Subslot No. 1 Channel No. 0: Line break"

"Slot No. 5 Subslot No. 1 Channel No. 3: short circuit"

7.4.7 IO device – Interface

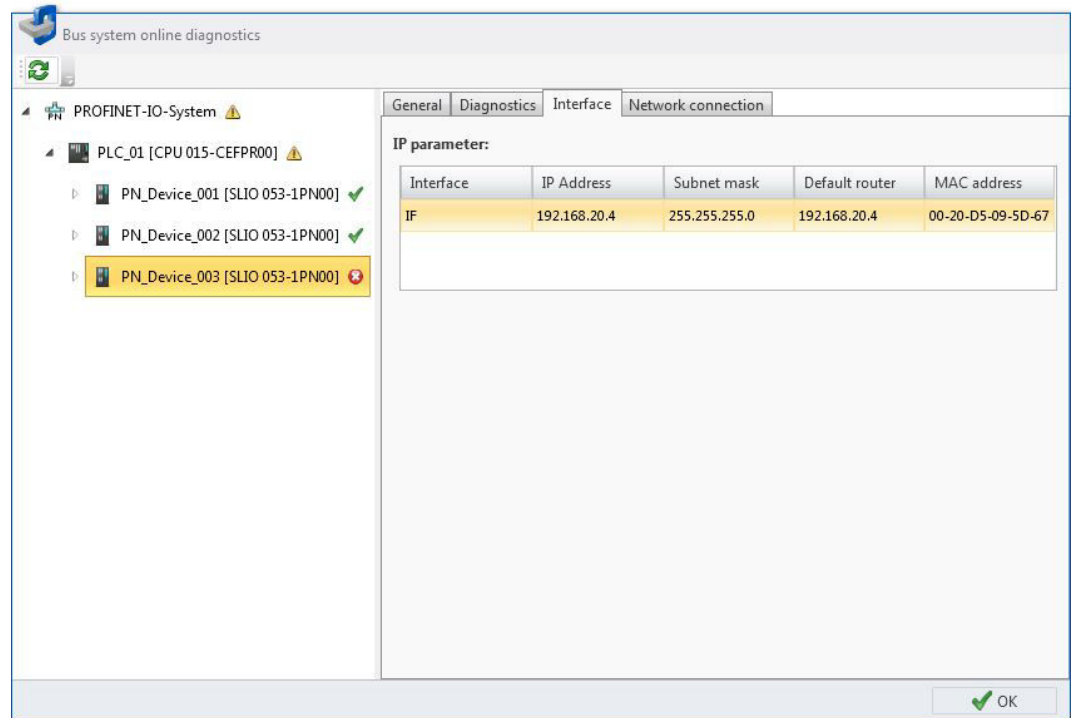


Fig. 142: Online diagnostics IO device: Interface

IP parameter

The table lists all interfaces of the IO device. Each table line corresponds to an interface.

'Interface' – Rack number / Slot number / Port (port number)

'IP address' and 'Subnet mask' – Address of the accessible partner in the PROFINET-IO network

'Default router' – IP address of the router if the communication is realised beyond the PROFINET-IO network (routing)

'MAC address' – Hardware address of the network adapter, for clear identification of the device

7.4.8 IO device – Network connection

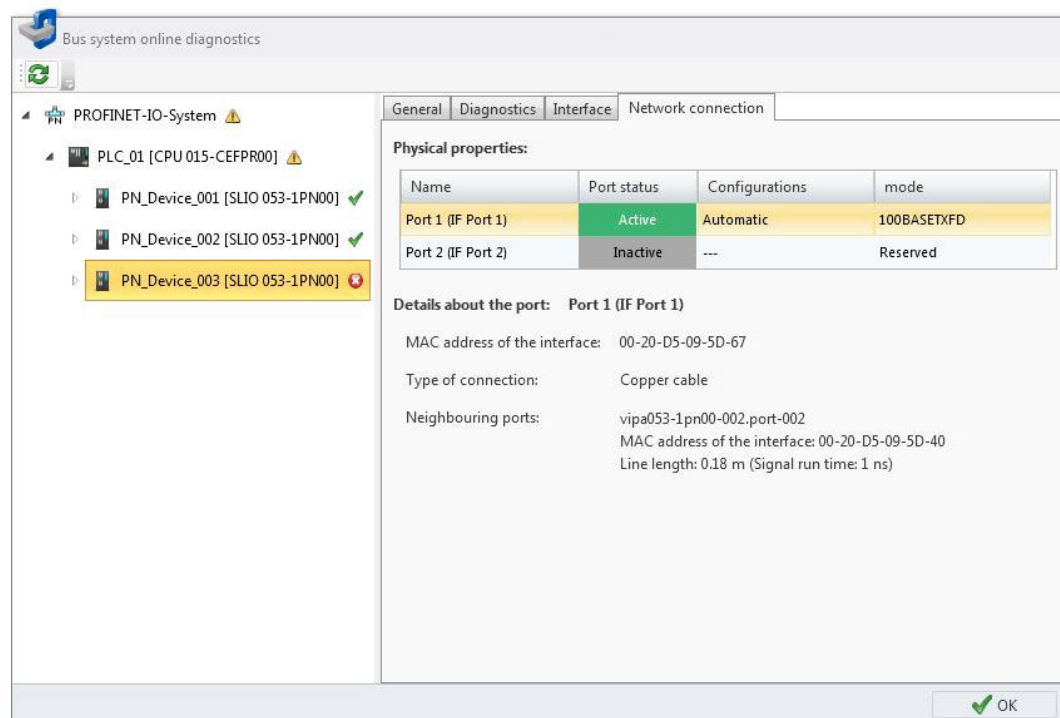


Fig. 143: Online diagnostics IO device: Network connection

Physical properties

The table lists all Ethernet ports of the IO device. Each table line corresponds to an interface.

'Name' – Name of the port and port number

'Port status'

- "Active": A device has been connected to the interface and the connection was established.
- "Inactive": No device has been connected to the interface.

'Configurations'

- "Automatic" if the port status is "Active"
- "---" if the port status is "Inactive"

'Mode' – Configurations of the network adapter: Transfer rate and transfer procedures

Details about the port

➔ Click on an active port in the table.

⇒ Details on the selected port are shown below the table.

'MAC address of the interface' – Hardware address of the network adapter

'Type of connection' – Transfer medium, e.g. copper cable

'Neighbouring ports' – If connected devices can be determined, they will be listed in the following way:

- Device name.Port name, e.g. vipa053-1pn00-002.port001
- MAC address of the network adapter of the connected device
- Line length in meters (m) and signal run time in nanoseconds (ns)

Online diagnostics of the bus system (PROFINET-IO system) > Port – General

7.4.9 Port – General

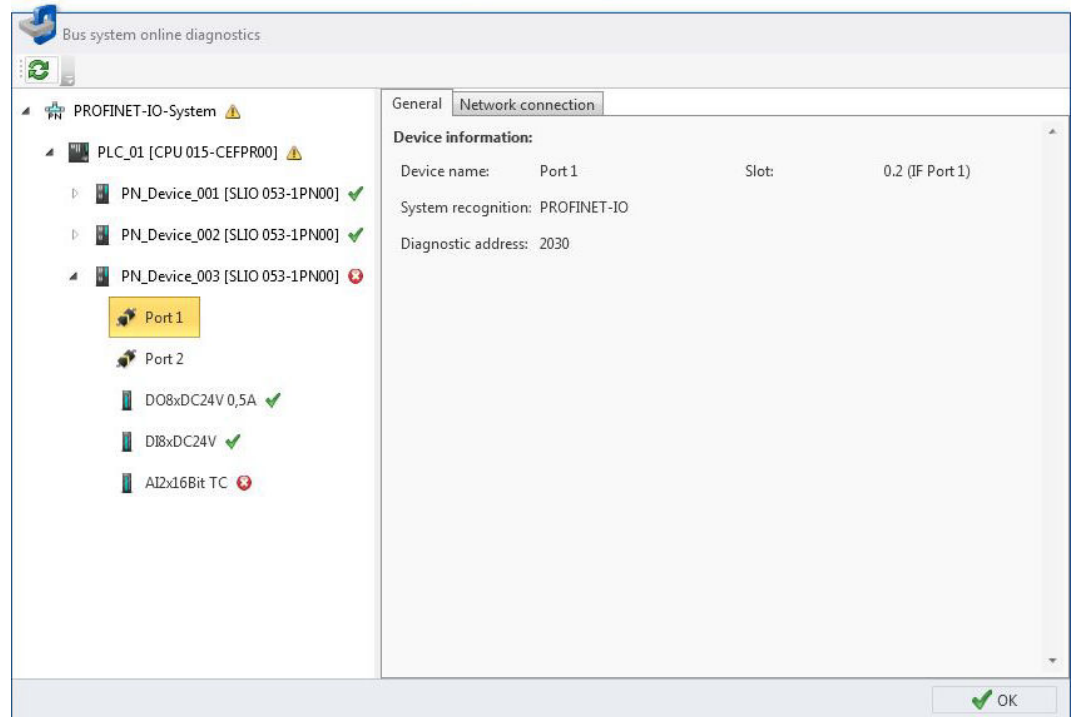


Fig. 144: Online diagnostics port: General

Device information

'Device name' – Name of the port

'System recognition' – Identification of the automation system

'Diagnostic address' – Input address (byte address) for the exchange of diagnostic data between CPU and the port

'Slot' – PROFINET port (port number) on the device

7.4.10 Port – Network connection

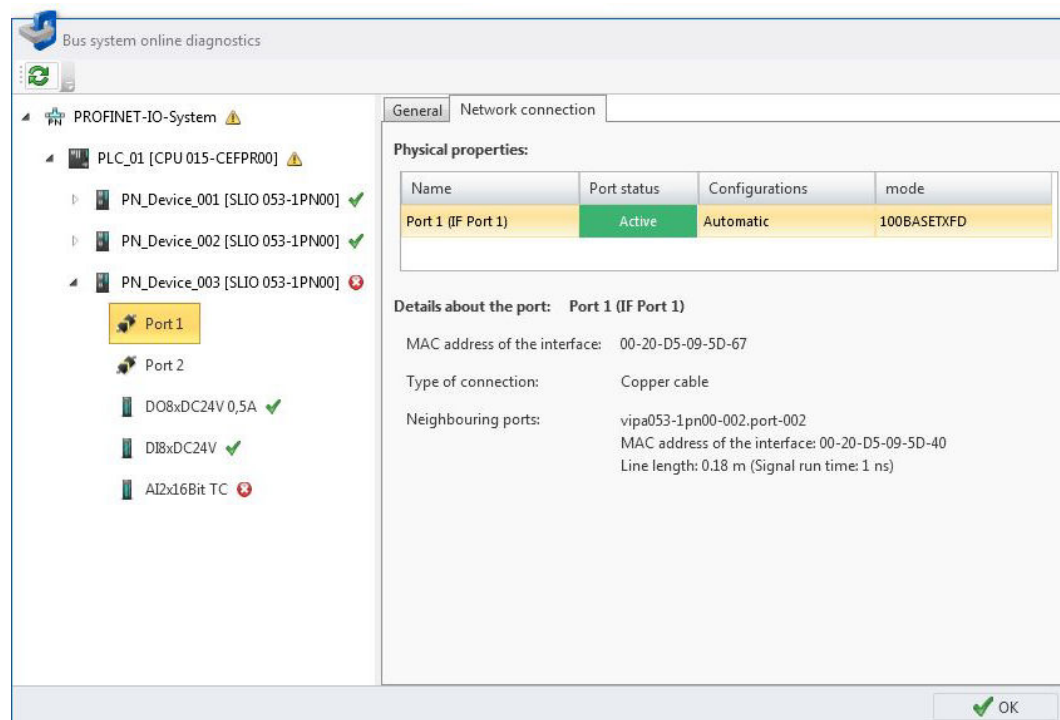


Fig. 145: Online diagnostics port: Network connection

Physical properties

The table contains the following information on the port:

'Name' – Name of the port and port number

'Port status'

- "Active": A device has been connected to the interface and the connection was established.
- "Inactive": No device has been connected to the interface.

'Configurations'

- "Automatic" if the port status is "Active"
- "---" if the port status is "Inactive"

'Mode' – Configurations of the network adapter: Transfer rate and transfer procedures

Details about the port

The details on the selected port are shown below the table:

'MAC address of the interface' – Hardware address of the network adapter

'Type of connection' – Transfer medium, e.g. copper cable

'Neighbouring ports' – If connected devices can be determined, they will be listed in the following way:

- Device name.Port name, e.g. vipa053-1pn00-002.port001
- MAC address of the network adapter of the connected device
- Line length in meters (m) and signal run time in nanoseconds (ns)

7.4.11 IO module – General

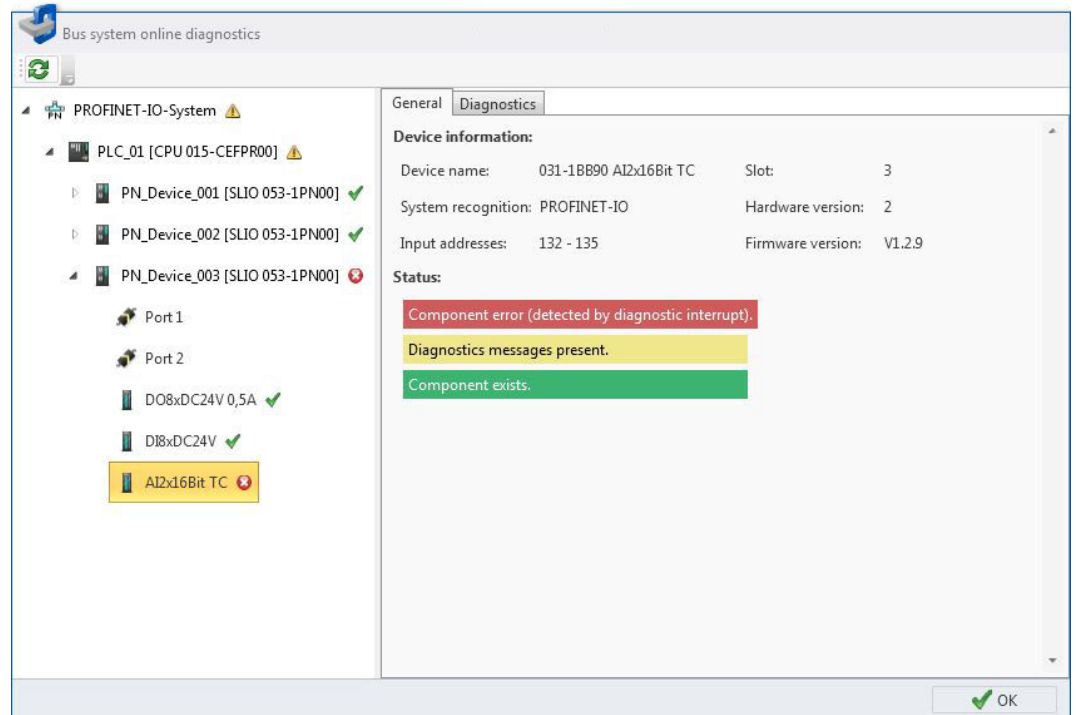


Fig. 146: Online diagnostics IO module: General

Device information

'Device name' – Name of the module

'System recognition' – Identification of the automation system

'Input addresses' – Area of the input addresses (byte) assigned to the module

'Output addresses' – Area of the output addresses (byte) assigned to the module

'Slot' – Slot of the module

'Hardware version' – Output version of the hardware of the module

'Firmware version' – Output version of the firmware of the module

status

Status information of the module:

Examples of status information

"Component exists"

"Component projected but not available"

"Component disturbed"

"Diagnostics messages present."

7.4.12 IO module – Diagnostics

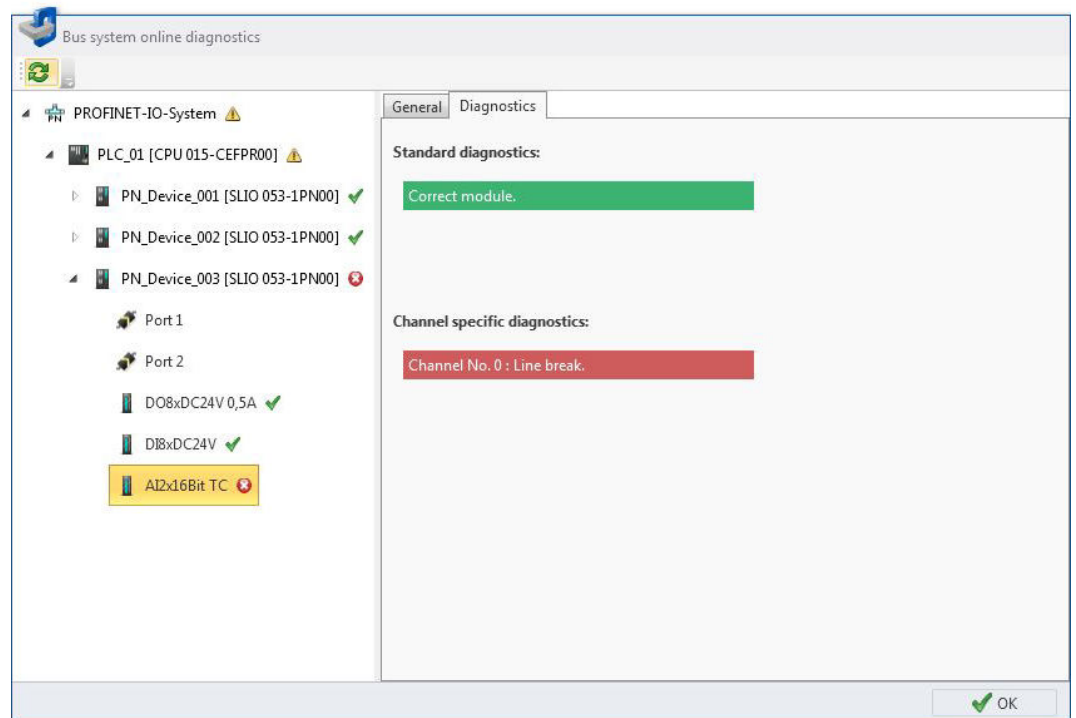


Fig. 147: Online diagnostics IO module: Diagnostics

Standard diagnostics

Manufacturer-related diagnostic texts of the module:

Examples of standard diagnostics

""Correct module"

"Module on wrong slot"

Channel-specific diagnostics

Channel-related diagnostic texts of the module:

Examples of channel-specific diagnostics

"Channel No. 0: Line break"

"Channel No. 3: short circuit"

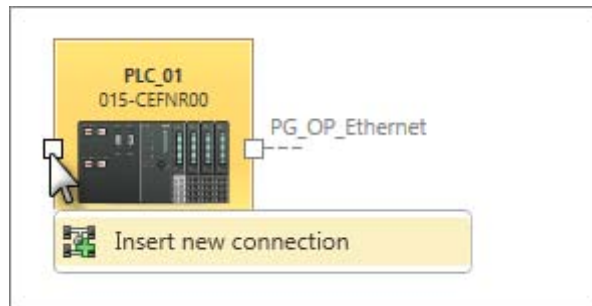
7.5 Bus system properties (EtherCAT)

Here, you can make configurations on the EtherCAT master and the connected slaves.
 ↳ *Chap. 11 'Deployment SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager' page 377*

7.6 Configure Ethernet connections

7.6.1 Insert new connection

In the *'Devices and networking'* editor you can add Ethernet connections in order to connect devices. The devices that are to be connected must already be present in the project.



1. ➤ Right-click with the mouse button on the left connection point of the device from which the connection comes and select *'Insert new connection'*.
⇒ The *'Insert new connection'* dialogue window will open.

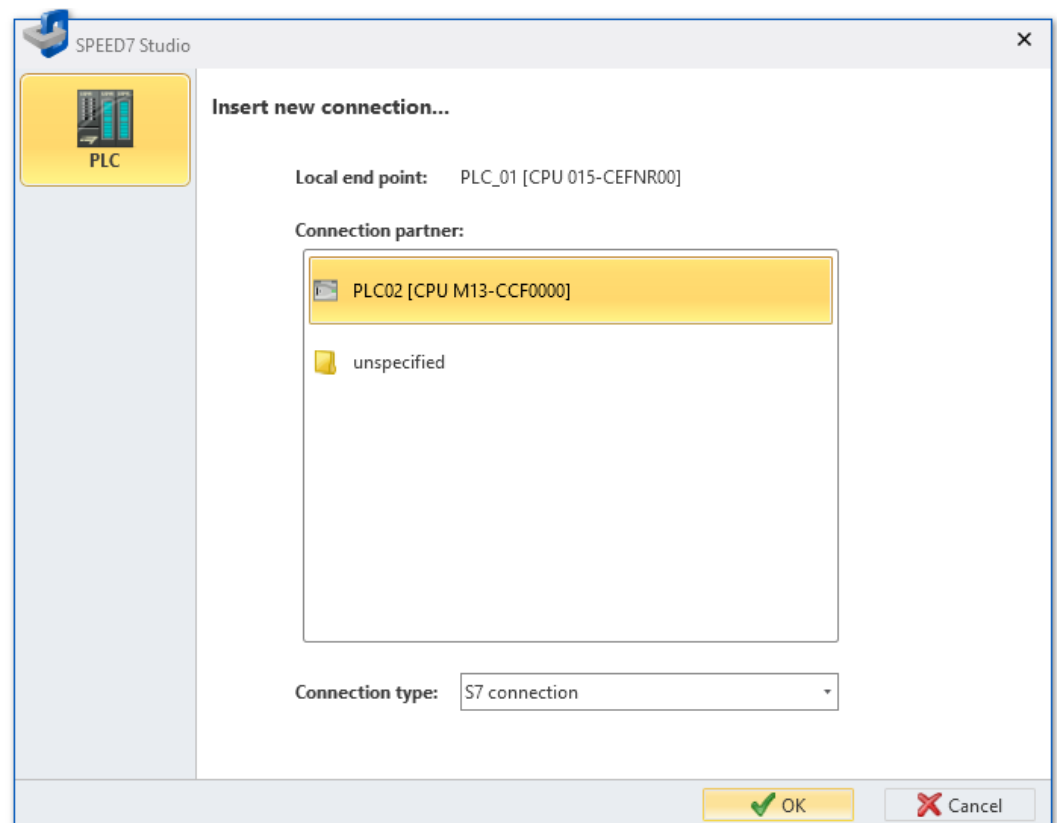


Fig. 148: Insert new connection

2. ➤ Select the desired *'connection type'*, e.g. S7 connection.
3. ➤ Under *'Connection partners'*, select the device you want to connect.
4. ➤ Click on *'OK'*.
⇒ The new connection is added and the *'Connection settings'* dialogue window will open. In this dialogue window you can configure the connection. ↪ *Chap. 7.6.2 'Connection settings – General' page 197*

For details on displaying connections in the *'Devices and networking'* editor: [Chap. 6.2.2 'Connections' page 80](#)

7.6.2 Connection settings – General

Here you can configure the connection between devices.

Local:		Partner:	
End point:	PLC_03 [CPU ...]	End point:	PLC_02 [CPU ...]
Name:	PLC_03-1	Name:	PLC_02-1
Interface:	-X4: PROFINET-IO-System	Interface:	-X8: EC-Mastersystem
Address:	192 . 168 . 0 . 1	Address:	192 . 168 . 0 . 2

Fig. 149: Connection settings "General"

'End point' – Device name

'Name' – Name of the connection point

'Interface' – Device interface

'Address' – IP address of the device at the device interface

7.6.3 Connection settings – Local ID

Here you can configure the "Local ID" for the connection between devices. The local ID is required for some communication function blocks. The value of the local ID must match the value of the calling interface in the communication function block.

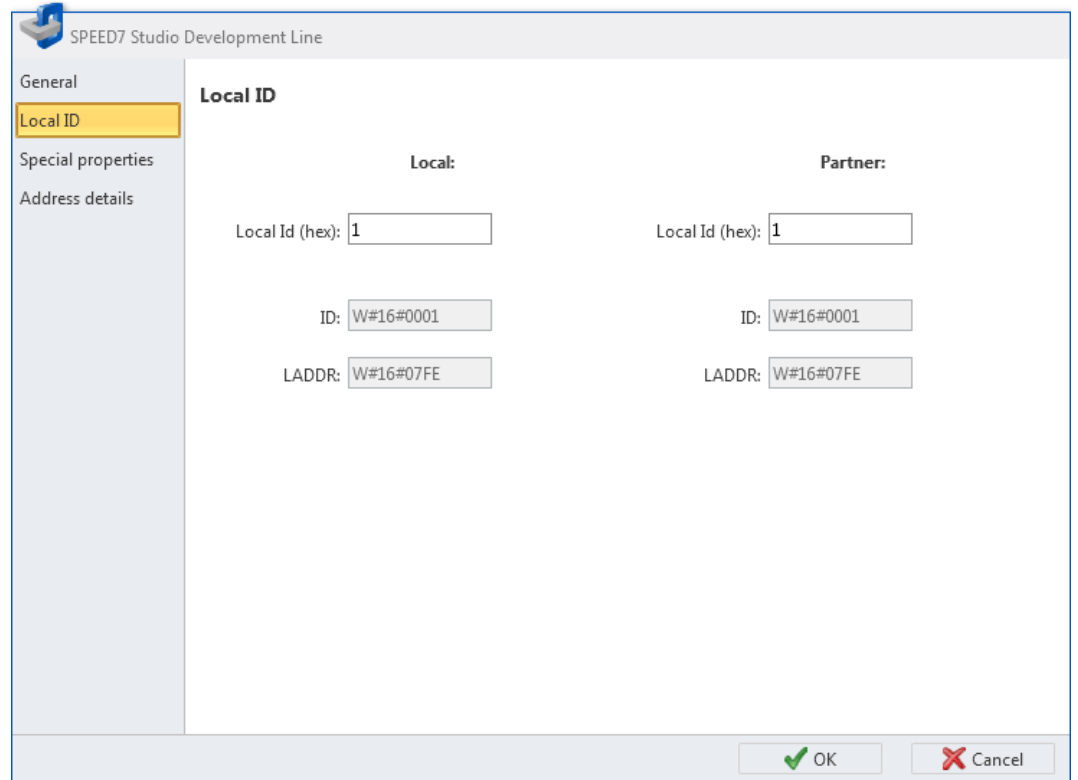


Fig. 150: Connection settings "Local ID"

7.6.4 Connection settings – Special properties

You can choose here, which connection partner should be used for establishing the active connection.

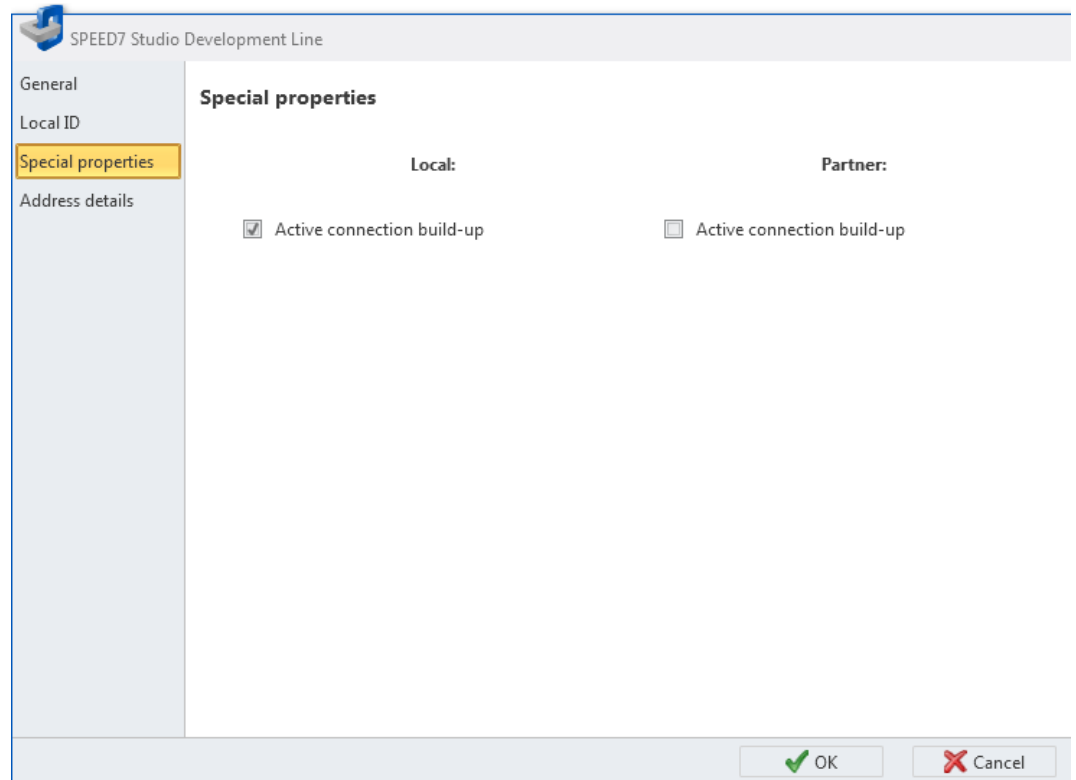


Fig. 151: Connection settings "Special properties"

7.6.5 Connection settings – Address details

"Address details" include information about the communication interface and the connection resources.

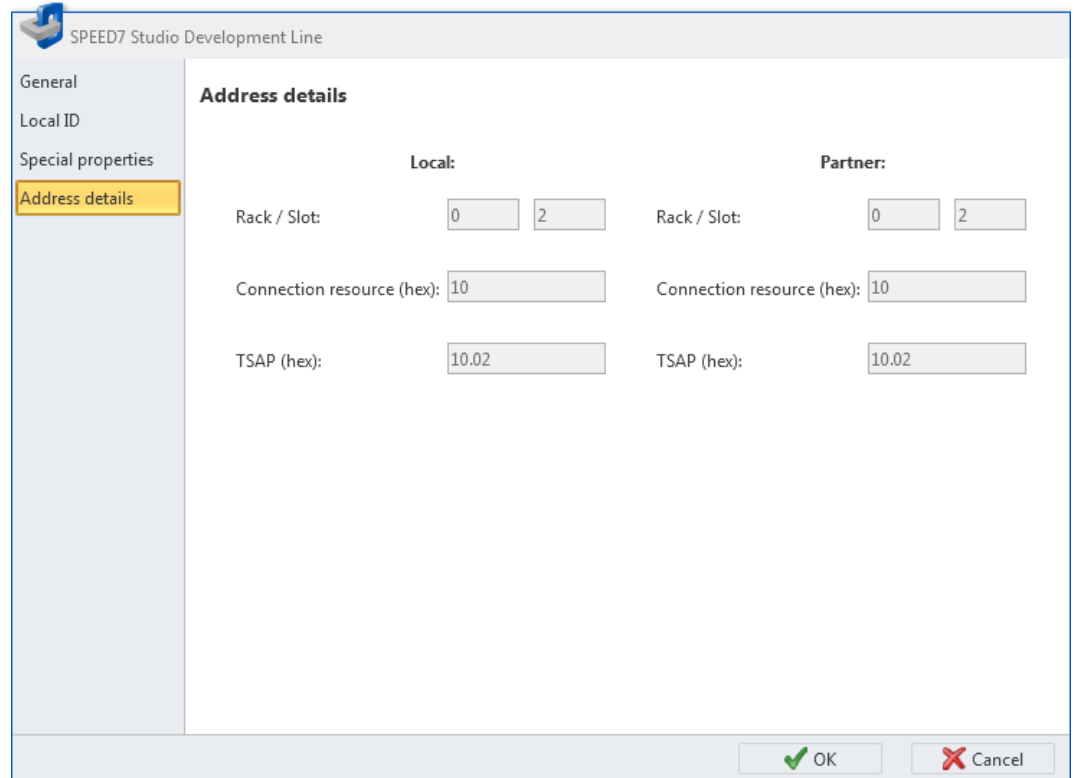


Fig. 152: Connection settings "Address details"

'Rack/Slot' – Position of the rack and the slot in the communication interface. The values can only be changed for unspecified connection partners.

'Connection resource' – Address of the connection resource

'TSAP (hex)' – TSAP (Transport Service Access Point)

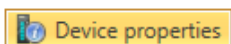
7.7 Configure OPC UA

7.7.1 Overview

- With the OPC UA configuration you can set up and configure the integrated OPC UA server of a target station (CPU respectively CP).
- If you create or change OPC UA configuration, you must translate this configuration as well as all blocks of the user program ↪ *Chap. 8.16 'Compile user program' page 267* and transfer them into the control. ↪ *Chap. 8.18 'Transfer the hardware configuration and user program to the control' page 271*

7.7.2 Server configuration


Here you can create the *OPC UA* configurations.




1. ➤ Click in the project tree at '*Device properties*'.
⇒ The editor of the '*Device properties*' opens.
2. ➤ Select the area '*Server configuration*'.

You can create a maximum of two *OPC UA* configurations: One configuration for the CPU and one configuration for the CP (if exists).

Create configuration

1. ➤ Click at on  'Add Server'.
⇒ A new *OPC UA* configuration is created and listed in the project tree.
2. ➤ Click in the selection field 'Active server CP' or 'Active server CPU' and choose which configuration is to be assigned. With the selection 'None' the configuration remains saved in the project. However, it is not transferred to the device.

To swap the two configurations for CP and CPU, click on the button .

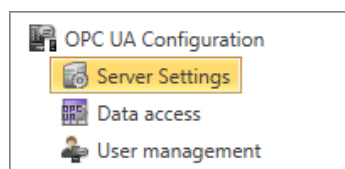
You can create a maximum of two *OPC UA* configurations.

Remove server

- Right-click on the *OPC UA* configuration (PLC) in the project tree and select 'Remove *OPC UA* server'.

7.7.3 Server settings - Connection

Here you can perform the connection settings of the *OPC UA* server.



1. ➤ Under *Project tree* at '*OPC UA configuration*' click on '*Server settings*'.
⇒ The '*Server settings editor*' editor opens.
2. ➤ Select the area '*Connection*'.

General

You can set for the *OPC UA* server how a user of an *OPC UA* client must prove their identity for access to the server. Select at least one of the following login methods. You can also combine the two login methods with each other.

- '*Activate anonymous login*'
 - The *OPC UA* server does not check the authorisation of the *OPC UA* client.
- '*Activate user/password login*'
 - The *OPC UA* server checks using the user name and password whether the access of the *OPC UA* client is authorised. To do this, the server evaluates the role assigned to the user. ↪ *Chap. 7.7.7 'Role management' page 205*
- '*Allow obsolete security guideline*'
 - Allows the selection of the two obsolete security guidelines '*Basic128Rsa15*' and '*Basic256*' (not recommended)
- '*Application name*'
 - Clear identification of the application in the OPC name space.

Network

- '*End point port*'
 - TCP port for binary data exchange (standard: 4840).

Security



Activate only security guidelines that are compatible with the protection concept for your machine or system. Deactivate all other security guidelines.

Configure OPC UA > Server settings - Certificate

- *'None'*
 - Insecure data traffic between server and client.
- *'Basic128Rsa15'*
 - Secured data traffic, hash algorithm RSA-15, 128-bit encoding (allow option with *'Allow obsolete security guideline'* see above).
- *'Basic256'*
 - Secured data traffic, 256-bit encoding (allow option with *'Allow obsolete security guideline'* see above).
- *'Basic256Sha256'*
 - Secured data traffic, hash algorithm SHA-256, 256-bit encoding (recommended).

Encoding:

- *'Sign'*
 - Endpoint secures the integrity of the data through signing.
- *'SignAndEncrypt'*
 - Endpoint secures the integrity and confidentiality of the data through signing and encoding.
- *'Both'*
 - The *OPC UA* server offers both encryption methods *'Sign'* and *'SignAndEncrypt'*. The *OPC UA* client can use one of the two encoding methods.

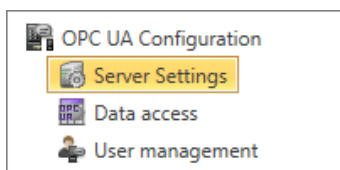
Security Check Overrides



Here you can allow various exceptions in the security check, in order to increase the error tolerance.

7.7.4 Server settings - Certificate

A secure connection between the *OPC UA* client and the server can only be established if the server classifies and accepts the client's digital certificate as trusted. Currently, the server accepts every valid client certificate. The server accepts self-signed certificates. In addition, the client also checks the server's certificate.





Here you can create, show, import or export an ITU-T standardized X.509 certificate for the *OPC UA* server. The certificate shown here is transferred into the *OPC UA* server.




1.  Under *Project tree* at *'OPC UA configuration'* click on *'Server settings'*.
⇒ The *'Server settings'* editor opens.
2.  Select the area *'Certificate'*.

The current X.509 certificate is shown in the work space. If you create or import a new certificate, the previously shown certificate is replaced.


Toolbar

-  **Create new certificate:** Opens the dialog window *'Create new certificate'*
-  **Display certificate:** Shows information on the current certificate
-  **Export certificate:** Opens the dialog window *'Save certificate'*
-  **Import certificate:** Opens the dialog window *'Open certificate'*

Create new certificate


1. Click on  to create a new certificate.
 - ⇒ The dialog window *'Create new certificate'* opens.
2. Enter the data for the certificate and click on *'OK'*.
 - ⇒ The previously shown certificate is replaced by the new certificate.

Display certificate

- Click on  to show information about the current certificate.
 - ⇒ The dialog window *'Certificate'* opens.


Export certificate

You can export the current certificate e.g. to use it on different computers.

1. Click on .
 - ⇒ The dialog window *'Save certificate'* opens.
2. Select a directory and enter a file name.
3. Click on *'Save'*.
 - ⇒ The current certificate is saved in the export file (pfx file format).

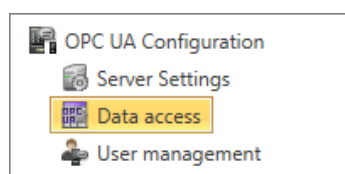
Import certificate

You can import a certificate, e.g. to use it for the current *OPC UA* configuration.

1. Click on .
 - ⇒ The dialog window *'Open certificate'* opens.
2. Select the desired certificate (pfx file format).
3. Click on *'Open'*.
 - ⇒ The previously shown certificate is replaced by the imported certificate.

7.7.5 Data access 

Here you can select the variables belonging to the CPU or CP (if exists) that can be accessed via *OPC UA*.




- Under *Project tree* at *'OPC UA configuration'* click on *'Data access'*.
 - ⇒ The editor for *'Data access'* opens.

Toolbar

Refresh variables: Apply changed filter settings to the result table.

Filter settings

Here you can select the operands and address ranges that will be shown in the results table.

1. Activate *'All operand areas'* or individual operand ranges to be shown in the result table.
2. To limit the addresses of an operand range, enter the start and end byte addresses in the two adjacent fields, e.g. 0 to 1000.
3. Click on  or activate *'Apply filter changes immediately'*.
 - ⇒ The result table is updated with the filter settings.

Result

In the results table, select the variables that are to be used in the *OPC UA* configuration. *OPC UA* clients may access these variables.

➔ Activate 'OPC UA' of the desired variables.

Group operands

For a better overview, you can sort the table entries by groups.

	Operandtype	Source	Name	Address	Data type	OPC UA <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
1	Input	Standard Projektkonfiguration	Var_E0.0	I 0.0	BOOL	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

(1) Select column (hold left mouse button down)

(2) Drag the column

(3) Drop column in the field (release mouse button)

1. ➔ Drag the desired column header into the field above the table.

⇒ The contents of the column will be grouped. The number of lines is shown for each group.

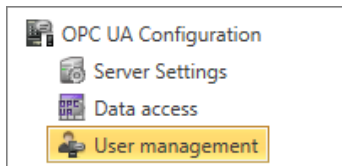
2. ➔ Click on ▶ to open the group. Click on ▼ to close the group.

You can repeat steps 1 to 2 in order to structure the group into further sub-groups.

In order to cancel a grouping, click on the close icon next to the group name.

7.7.6 User management

The user management allows you to create a user list. For each user, you can define a password and a role.








1. ➔ Under *Project tree* at '*OPC UA configuration*' click on '*User management*'.

⇒ The editor for '*User management*' opens.

2. ➔ Select the area '*User management*'.

Toolbar

-  **Add new user:** Input mode for new user
-  **Remove user:** Deletes the selected user
-  **Edit current user:** Input mode for selected user
-  **Save input:** Save input Save user settings
-  **Cancel input:** Cancel user settings without saving


Adding a user

1. ➔ Click on .



2. ➔ Enter the desired user name in the input field '*Name*'.

3. ➔ Enter the password in the input field '*Password*' and repeat the input under '*Re-enter password*'.


4. ➔ Select a role for the user. With this role, the access rights to the *OPC UA* server are established.

5. Click on .
 - ⇒ The user will be entered in the user list.



Edit user

1. In the user list, select the user whose data you want to change.
2. Click on .
3. Enter the desired changes and click on .

Removing a user

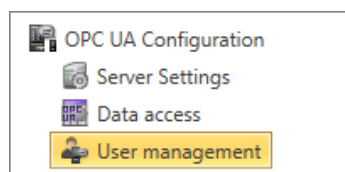
1. In the user list, select the user you want to delete.
2. Click on .
 - ⇒ A dialog box opens where you can choose whether the user should be deleted or not.

7.7.7 Role management 

Here you establish the roles and access rights that you can assign to the users. When you activate the authentication via User/password login  *Chap. 7.7.3 'Server settings - Connection * page 201, the access rights to the *OPC UA* server are issued using the logged-in user and the assigned role.

Example:

Role: Operator
 Username: "I myself"
 Server settings: User/password login activated
 The user "Me Self" receives write permission and reading rights to the *OPC UA* server when he has successfully logged in with the password.



1. Under Project tree at '*OPC UA configuration*' click on '*User management*'.
 - ⇒ The editor for '*User management*' opens.
2. Select the area '*Role management*'.

Configure roles






The following two roles are currently available for selection; further roles can not be added at the moment.

- Operator: Write permission and reading rights
- Observer: Reading rights only

8 Creating, transferring and testing the user program

8.1 Program blocks

Different types of program blocks can be edited, configured, synchronised with the control and monitored in the block editor. The blocks include the user program (PLC program). The blocks are divided into code blocks (OB, FB and FC) and data blocks (DB and UDT).

-  **Organisation blocks (OB)** form the interface between the operating system of the control and the user program. Cyclic events as well as time-controlled or interrupt-controlled events are processed in the organisation blocks. The OB1 block contains the main program. A template of OB1 with the block name "Main" is already available in the project.
-  **Function blocks (FB)** are block types which are primarily used for programming. Function blocks can be parametrised on the basis of input and output variables. They may contain static or temporary local variables. All variables of a function block (except for the temporary variables) are persistently stored in the data blocks. Thus, function blocks have kind of a memory.
-  **Functions (FC)** are used to process input variables in order to produce a result. They are used for recurring tasks e.g. mathematical functions. They can be parametrised on the basis of input and output variables. Functions may contain temporary local variables. The variables of a function are not persistently stored. Thus, functions do not have a memory.
-  **Data blocks (DB)** contain data for the user program but no program instructions.
-  **Structure blocks (UDT, User Defined Data Type)** contain data structures for the user program but no program instructions.

8.2 Device overview (PLC)

The blocks of the user program and the system blocks are displayed in a table in the device overview. Here you can select blocks and compile them or transfer them to the control.

Select one of the following options in order to open the device overview:


- **Menu bar:** Select '*Device* → *Device overview*'.
- **Project tree:** Click on '*Device overview*' in the control (PLC).
- **"Start page"**  : Click on '*Project overview*'.



Fig. 153: Device overview (PLC)

- (1) Toolbar
- (2) Block list

Select blocks

You can select blocks and compile them or transfer them to the control.

1. Highlight the desired blocks in the first column of the device list.
2. Click on a button in the toolbar (1).
 - ⇒ The selected blocks are compiled or transferred to the control.

(1) Toolbar



Send selected blocks: The blocks selected in the block list (2) are transferred to the control.



Compile selected blocks: The blocks selected in the block list (2) are compiled.
 ↪ Chap. 8.16 'Compile user program' page 267

(2) Block list

Provides a list of blocks used in the project.

'Block' – Block type and number

'Version' – Version and revision number of the block, e.g. ↪ '(3) Block information' page 218

'Name' – Block name

'Author' – Name of the responsible person, e.g. ↪ '(3) Block information' page 218

'Size' – Block size in the load memory in Byte

'Modified interface' – Date and time of the last change in the declaration section of the block

'Modified code' – Date and time of the last change in the declaration section of the block

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

Opening a block in the block editor

- ➔ Double-click on the desired block.
 - ⇒ The selected block is opened in the block editor.

Add new block (OB, FB, FC)

8.3 Add new block (OB, FB, FC)

If you want to create a new block, a project must be opened and a control must be contained in the project.

1. In the project tree within a control, click on 'Add new block' in the 'PLC program' at 'Program blocks'.

⇒ The dialogue window 'Add new block' will open.

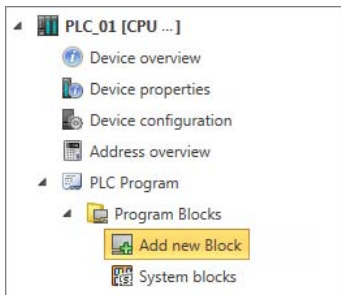


Fig. 154: Adding new block via the "project tree"

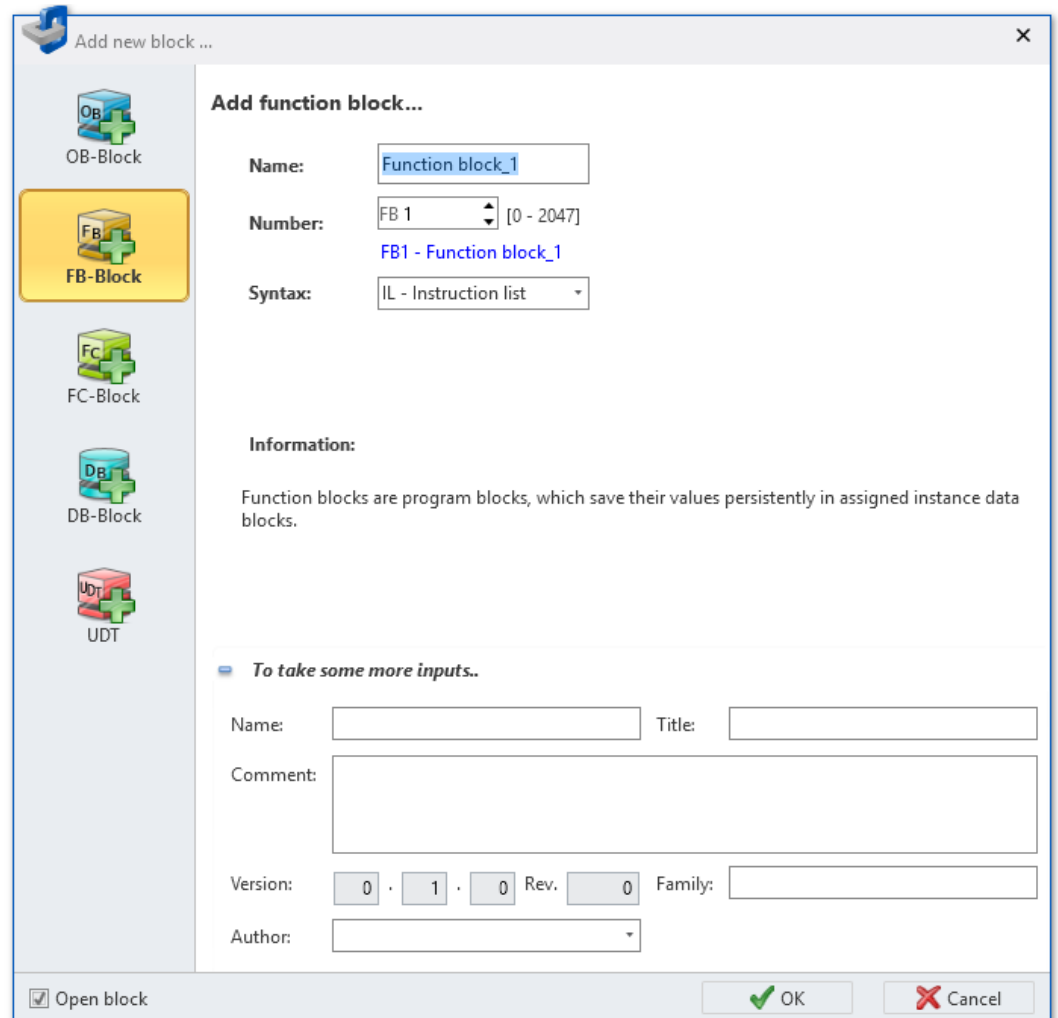


Fig. 155: Dialogue window "Add new block" for FB as an example

2. Select the block type OB, FB or FC.

3. 'Name': Enter a different block name, if required. You can access the block in the user program with this name.

4. 'Number': Select a free block number. Blocks that are already present cannot be selected.

OB: You can select predefined organisation blocks from a list: Click on 'Show selection' and select the desired OB from the list.

5. 'Syntax': Select the desired PLC programming language.

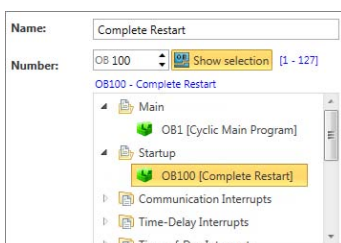


Fig. 156: Select OB

i The programming language can be changed later in the block editor between IL, FBD and LD. Please note that syntax conversion from one programming language to another is not always possible due to the different choice of commands.

6. ➤ Click on 'To take some more inputs..' if you want to enter further block details. The following details can be entered: Title, comment, version / revision numbers, control family and author. You can make or change these entries later in the block editor.
7. ➤ Click on 'OK'.



If you select the option 'Open block' and click on 'OK', block editor will open.

⇒ The block is added and displayed in the project tree.

8.4 Editing program blocks

Different types of program blocks can be edited in the block editor. The block editor is divided into two entry sections: "Declaration section" and "Instruction section".

Declaration section

In the declaration section, you can define all variables used in the block. You can edit the input and output parameters of the block interface, the local variables, the return value of functions and the I/O addresses in the organisation blocks.



Prior to start programming in the instruction section, you should declare all variables in the declaration section.

Information on the declaration section:

- [↗ Chap. 8.5.1 'Declaration section' page 211](#)
- [↗ Chap. 8.5.2 'Edit and use variables' page 212](#)
- [↗ Chap. 8.5.3 'Move, copy, paste and delete variables' page 215](#)

Instruction section

In the instruction section of the block editor you can enter the PLC instructions which are to be executed by the control. Furthermore, you can configure the block as well as each block network in the instruction section.

Information on the instruction section:

- [↗ Chap. 8.5.4 'Instruction section' page 216](#)
- [↗ Chap. 8.5.5 'Create / edit symbol' page 220](#)

8.5 Block editor for program blocks (OB, FB, FC)


Different types of program blocks can be edited, transferred to the control, synchronised with the control and monitored in the block editor. The blocks include the user program (PLC program). [↗ Chap. 8.1 'Program blocks' page 206](#)

You can create new blocks or open existing blocks.

If you want to add a new block, please note [↗ Chap. 8.3 'Add new block \(OB, FB, FC\)' page 208](#).

Block editor for program blocks (OB, FB, FC)

Select one of the following options in order to open an existing block (OB, FB, FC) in the block editor:

- **Project tree:** Double click on the desired block (block name) under 'PLC program', 'Program blocks' within a control.
- **"Device overview" editor** : Double-click on the desired block.

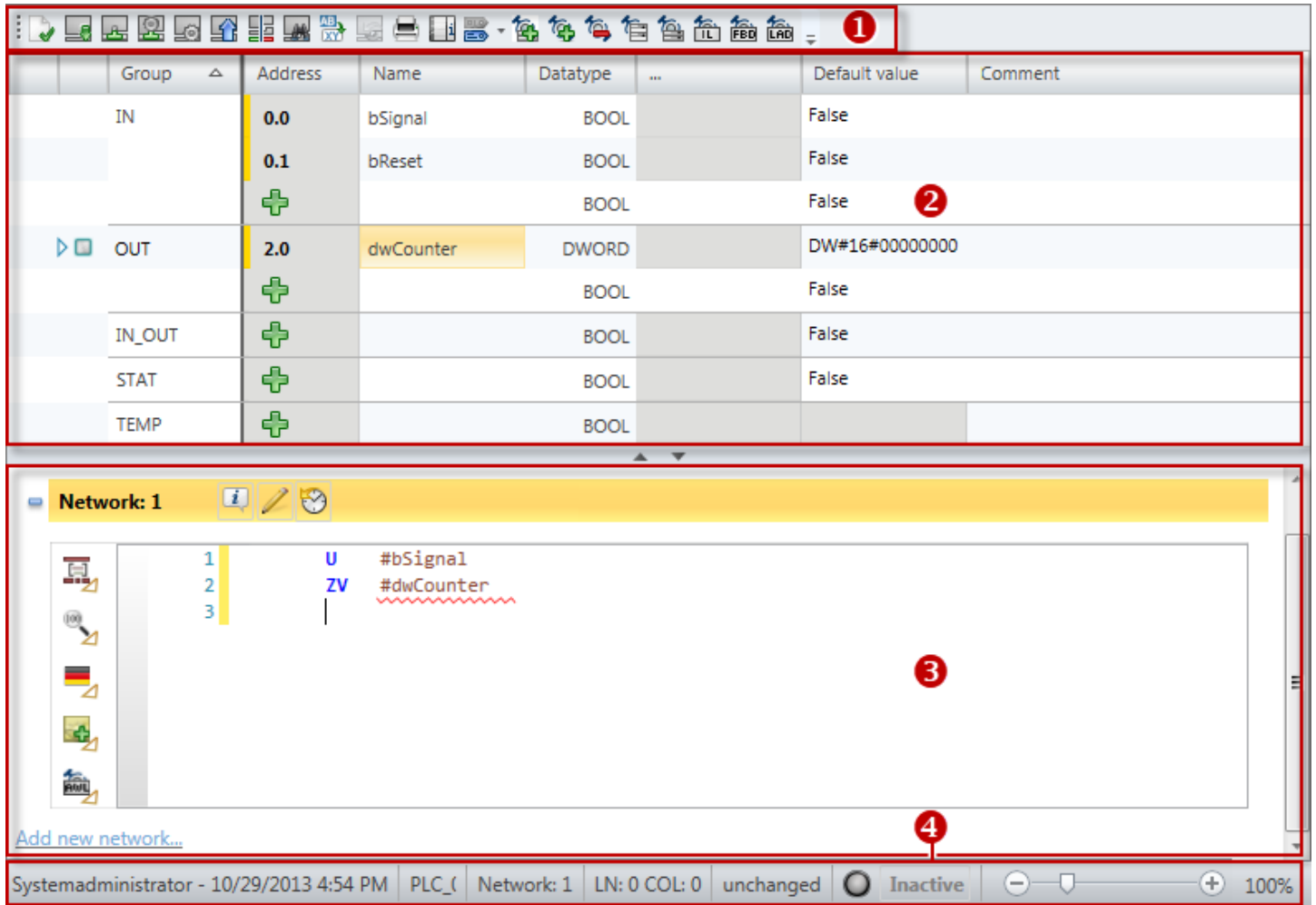


Fig. 157: Block editor of a function block (FB) as an example

- (1) Toolbar
- (2) Declaration section
- (3) Instruction section
- (4) Information bar

(1) Toolbar

Important commands you need for editing the block are provided in the toolbar.

 '(1) Toolbar' page 217

(2) Declaration section

In the declaration section, you can define all variables used in the block. You can edit the input and output parameters of the block interface, the local variables, the return value of functions and the I/O addresses in the organisation blocks.

 Chap. 8.5.1 'Declaration section' page 211

(3) Instruction section

In the instruction section of the block editor you can enter the PLC instructions which are to be executed by the control. Furthermore, you can configure the block as well as each block network in the instruction section.

🔗 Chap. 8.5.4 'Instruction section' page 216

(4) Information bar

The information bar provides information on the block:

- User name and date of the last stored change
- Name of the control, of the CPU and of the block
- Network number of the current position of the cursor
- Line (LN) and column (COL) of the current position of the cursor
- Status of the block since the last saving (changed/unchanged)
- Connection status to the control (inactive/active/error): If you move the mouse cursor to this field, details on the connection status are displayed.

8.5.1 Declaration section

In the declaration section, you can define all variables used in the block. You can edit the input and output parameters of the block interface, the local variables, the return value of functions and the I/O addresses in the organisation blocks.

	Group ▲	Address	Name	Datatype	...	Default value	Comment
	IN	0.0	bSignal	BOOL		False	
		0.1	bReset	BOOL		False	
		+		BOOL		False	
▶	OUT	2.0	dwCounter	DWORD		DW#16#00000000	
		+		BOOL		False	
	IN_OUT	+		BOOL		False	
	STAT	+		BOOL		False	
	TEMP	+		BOOL			

Fig. 158: Declaration section for a function block as an example

You can define the variables of the block interface (formal parameters) as well as the data for the intermediate results (local variables) of the block in the table.

'1st Column' – Area to select the vectors of the data type ARRAY

'2nd Column' – Area to select all other data

'Area' – Defines the type of variables

'Address' – Internal automatically created address for data filing in the instance data block

'Name' – Name of the variables

'Data type' – Data type of the variables

'...' – Further configurations for the selected data type e.g. dimensions and field boundaries of the ARRAY data type

'Default value' – Initial value of the variables

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

The declaration section of the organisation block differs from the declaration section of the function block and functions. Here it is not possible to enter the 'Area' variable type and the 'Default value' initial value. Therefore, there are no corresponding columns.

8.5.2 Edit and use variables

Rules for declaration

Only use admissible identifiers for the variable name:

- An identifier is a sequence of letters, numbers and underline characters "_". Space characters are not admitted in the identifier.
- Identifiers may consist of a maximum of 24 characters.
- There is no distinction between upper and lower case letters e.g. the identifier "Magazine_full" is identical with "MAGAZINE_FULL" and "magazine_full".

Adding/declaring variables

Group	Address	Name	Datatype	...	Default value
IN	0.0	bSwitch	BOOL		False
IN	2.0	awValues	ARRAY_OF_TYPE	[0..12] OF WORD	W#16#0000

Fig. 159: Adding/declaring variables

The variables can be declared line by line. Each line in the declaration section can contain a variable.



New variables can be declared at free positions. The **+** symbol in the 'Address' column indicates that the position is free and that a variable can be declared in this line.

After having declared a variable, a new free line is automatically added.

1. **OB:** Click on the free input field in the 'Name' column.
FB and FC: Select the desired variable type in the 'Area' column. Click on the free input field in the 'Name' column. Example: If you want to add input parameters, you must click on the free input field of the 'Name' column in the "IN" 'Area'.
2. Enter a name for the variable e.g. awValues.
3. Click on the adjacent field in the 'Data type' column and select the desired data type e.g. "ARRAY_OF_TYPE" for data fields.

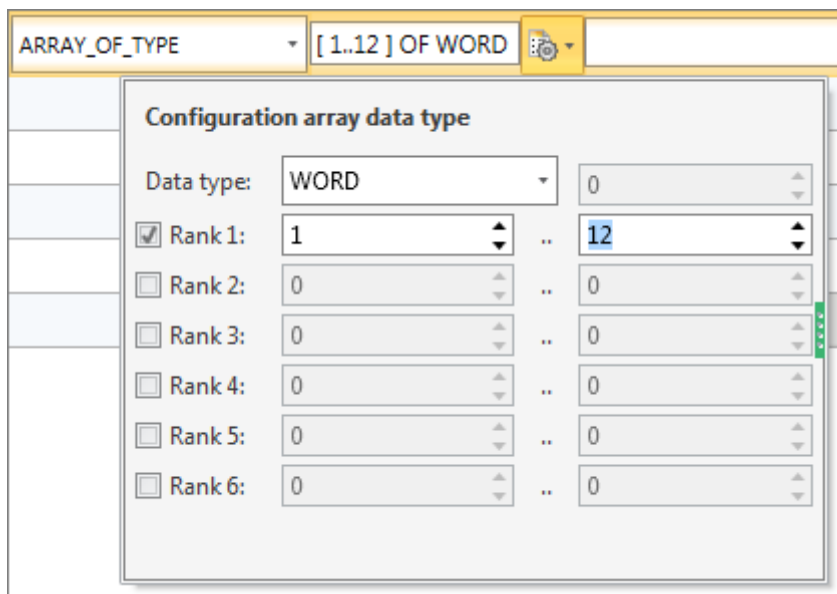
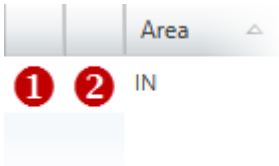


Fig. 160: Enter dimensions and field boundaries

4. Any further configurations which are possible for the selected data type, z. B. dimensions and field boundaries of the data type are displayed in the '...' field. Click on the field to enter the configurations. Click on to make configurations using a dialogue window.

5. ➤ If you want to assign an initial value to the variables, click on the *'Default value'* field and select a default value or enter a value.
6. ➤ If you want to enter a comment on the variables, click on the *'Comment'* field and enter the comment.

Add pre-set variable



You can insert a new variable with the same properties above or below the current line in the table.

1. ➤ Click into the second column of a variable cell.
2. ➤ Right-click with the mouse button on it and select *'Add variable before'* or *'Add variable after'*.
 - ⇒ A new line is inserted in the table. An address will be assigned, and the variable name of the current table line will be adopted and numbered consecutively.

Fig. 161: (1) First and (2) second column

Changing variable properties

You can change various properties of an already declared variable.

Group	Address	Name	Data ty
IN	0.0	bSwitch	BOOL
Name	Description		
IN	Interface group - IN		
OUT	Interface group - OUT		
IN_OUT	Interface group - IN_OUT		
TEMP	Interface group - TEMP		
RETURN	Interface group - RETURN		

Fig. 162: Changing the group via the Selection list

- Click on the input field which you want to edit. Changes can be entered directly. For some fields, changes can be made via a selection list.



Fields highlighted in grey cannot be changed.

Block editor for program blocks (OB, FB, FC) > Edit and use variables

Selecting the variable type (column 'Area') The variable type is indicated in the declaration section of the program block in the 'Area' column:

Group	Variable type	Description	internal ¹	external ¹	OB ²	FB ²	FC ²
IN	Input parameter	The parameter is read in the block and can only be specified in the calling block.	R	W		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
OUT	Output parameter	The parameter can be specified in the block and is only readable in the calling block.	RW	R		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
IN_OUT	In-out parameter	The parameter can be read and specified in the block and in the calling block.	RW	RW		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
RETURN	Return value	The function value (return value) can be specified in the block and is only readable in the calling block.	W	R			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
STAT	Static local data	Variable for saving retentive intermediate results. Data are maintained for several cycles until they are redefined.	RW	—		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
TEMP	Temporary local data	Variable for the saving of temporary intermediate results. Data are maintained for one cycle only.	RW	—	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

1) Access rights: internal = in the current block, external = in the calling block, R = reading, W = writing, RW = reading and writing

2) Availability in the block type

Assigning data types The properties and data volume of a variable is defined by the data type. For example, for binary operations, other data types are required than for floating point arithmetic.

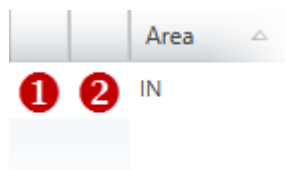
Adding a block reference by "Drag & drop"

- ➔ Drag the desired block from the catalog or the project tree to the desired position, e.g. within the area ""STAT".
- ⇒ The block is inserted as reference. The block name is adopted and numbered consecutively. If the block is not yet present in the project, the block is added to the project and shown in the project tree.

Accessing variables in the user program In the declaration section, variables are declared with a variable name e.g. Input_01. You can access these variables in the instruction section via the variable name with the prefixed number sign "#", e.g. #Input_01.

8.5.3 Move, copy, paste and delete variables

Copy individual variable



1. Right-click with the mouse button on the second column of the variable line and select 'Copy to clipboard'.
2. Right-click with the mouse button on the position where you want to insert the variable line and select 'Paste from clipboard'.
 - ⇒ The variable line is inserted.

Fig. 163: (1) First and (2) second column



This way, you can copy variables within one block but also from one block to another.

Move individual variable with "Drag & drop"

1. In the second column, highlight the variable line which you want to move.
2. Press and hold the mouse button while dragging the line to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable line is inserted.

Copy individual variable with "Drag & drop"

1. In the second column, highlight the variable line which you want to copy.
2. Press and hold the mouse button and the key [Ctrl] while dragging the line to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable line is copied and inserted. The new variable has the same properties as the initial variable. The variable name is adopted and numbered consecutively.

Move several variables with "Drag & drop"

1. Press and hold the key [Ctrl] while highlighting all desired variable lines in the second column.
 - or -
 - In order to highlight a row of variable lines, press and hold the key [shift] and click on the second column of the first and the last line.
2. Press and hold the mouse button while dragging the lines to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable lines are inserted.

Copy several variables with "Drag & drop"

1. Press and hold the key [Ctrl] while highlighting all desired variable lines in the second column.
 - or -
 - In order to highlight a row of variable lines, press and hold the key [shift] and click on the second column of the first and the last line.
2. Press and hold the mouse button and the key [Ctrl] while dragging the lines to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable lines are copied and inserted. The new variables have the same properties as the initial variables. The variable names are adopted and numbered consecutively.

Deleting variables

1. In the second column, highlight the variable line which you want to delete.

i Individual vectors of the data type ARRAY can only be highlighted in the first column.

2. Press [Del].

- or -

Right-click with the mouse button on the line and select 'Delete selected variable'.

A dialogue window will open, where you can select whether you want to delete the variable.

⇒ The variable is deleted or removed from the declaration.

8.5.4 Instruction section

In the instruction section of the block editor you can enter the PLC instructions which are to be executed by the control. Furthermore, you can configure the block as well as each block network.

You can enter the instructions in the programming language (syntax) which you must select when you add a new block (OB, FB, FC). ↪ Chap. 8.3 'Add new block (OB, FB, FC)' page 208

You can also select different programming languages for each network. ↪ '(7) Network configurations' page 220

Programming languages:

- Instruction list (IL)
- Function block diagram (FBD)
- Ladder diagram (LD)

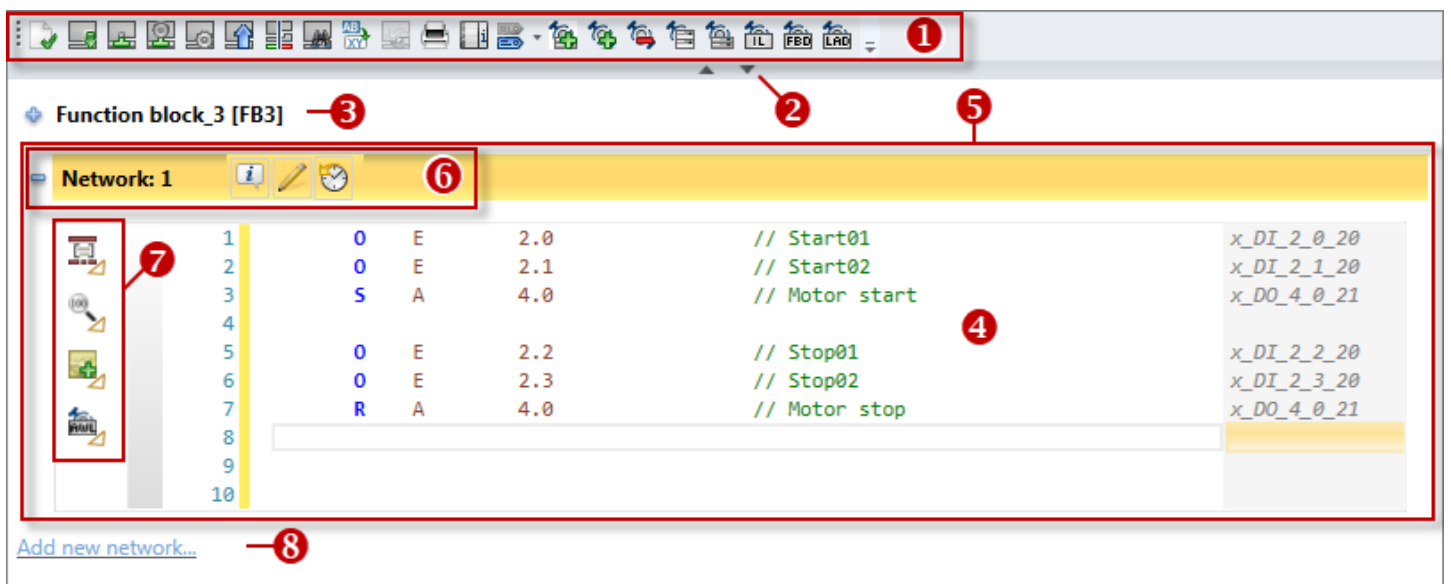




Fig. 164: Instruction section for the IL programming language as an example

- (1) Toolbar
- (2) Declaration section (not shown)
- (3) Block information
- (4) Input area for instructions and elements
- (5) Network
- (6) Network information
- (7) Network configurations
- (8) Add new network




















Showing/hiding input areas

You can show or hide the input areas:

-  Shows/opens the input area
-  Hides/closes the input area

(1) Toolbar

Important commands you need for editing the block are provided in the toolbar.

-  **Compile block [Ctrl]+[B]:** The block is compiled [↪ Chap. 8.16 'Compile user program' page 267](#)
-  **Load block into device [Ctrl]+[L]:** The block is transferred to the control. To this end, a communication connection with the control is established. A dialogue window will open, where you can select the interface connection and make further configurations.
-  **Block watch On/Off [Ctrl]+[F7]:** Watching the variables of the block in the control. To this end, a communication connection with the control is established. The variable values are cyclically read from the control and displayed. [↪ Chap. 8.21 'Watch block' page 280](#)
-  **Watch block via the calling environment ON/OFF:** If the block is called multiple times in the program, one calling can be watched here.
-  **Set program status display:** Pre-configurations and selection of the variables for watching the blocks. A dialogue window will open, where you can make the desired configuration. [↪ Chap. 8.21.1 'Set program status display' page 281](#)
-  **Load block from device:** The block is transferred from the control to the project. To this end, a communication connection with the control is established.
-  **Compare blocks:** The block is compared to the block which is present in the control. To this end, a communication connection with the control is established. [↪ Chap. 8.20 'Compare blocks' page 277](#)
-  **Search in code:** Search for text or certain character patterns in the user program
-  **Replace in code:** Search for text or certain character patterns in the user program and replace
-  **Block instance synchronisation:** --- in preparation --- This function is not available in this version.
-  **Print:** Prints the program block and any program instructions and elements contained therein
-  **Show/hide additional information:** Shows/hides information about operands. You can define whether the additional information for newly added blocks should be shown or hidden under 'Extras → Settings'.
-  **Absolute/symbolic programming:** Show operands as symbolic or absolute in the block editor (temporary setting until the project is reopened). You can define "Absolute" or "Symbolic" display for all blocks in the project under 'Extras → Settings'. [↪ 'Additional information in IL editor' page 26](#)
-  **Add several networks:** You can add several networks at a certain position.
-  **Add new network:** A network is added at the block end.
-  **Delete network:** The current network and any program instructions and elements contained herein are deleted.
-  **Expand all Networks:** All networks are opened to show all program instructions and elements.
-  **Collapse all Networks:** All networks are closed to hide all program instructions and elements.
- 



Select programming language: You can switch between the programming languages IL, LD and FBD here. You can also select the programming language for individual networks. ↪ '(7) Network configurations' page 220



Please note that syntax conversion from one programming language to another is not always possible due to the different choice of commands.

(2) Declaration section

In the declaration section (not shown in Fig. 164), you can define all variables used in the block. ↪ Chap. 8.5.1 'Declaration section' page 211

(3) Block information

Here you are provided with further information, and you can enter a title and comment on the block. The following buttons are displayed if you hover with the mouse over a field with the 'Block information'.



Comment field: Here you can show or hide the comment field.



Advanced Configurations: Here, you can show or hide further configurations, such as author and version.



Block information: Here, you can show or hide information about the block.



History: Here, you can show or hide the display of the block versions.

(4) Input area

In the input area, you can give instructions in the IL programming language. Moreover, you can insert elements in the graphic programming languages FBD and LD.

- ↪ Chap. 8.6.1 'Instruction list (IL) ' page 222
- ↪ Chap. 8.6.2 'Function block diagram (FBD) ' page 225
- ↪ Chap. 8.6.3 'Ladder diagram (LD) ' page 230

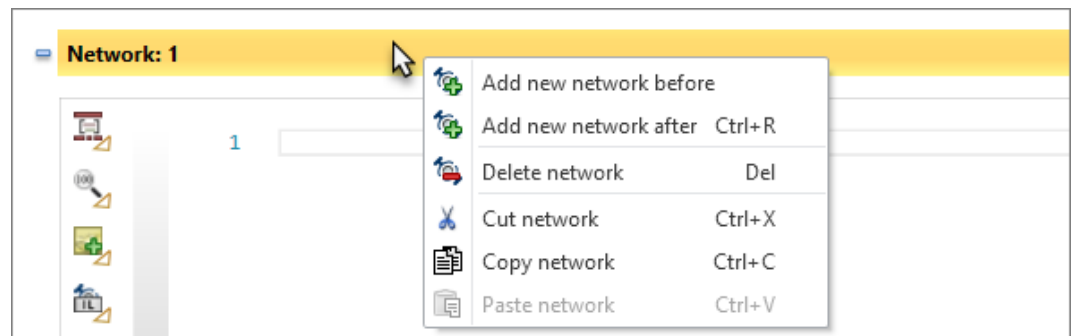
(5) Network

In order to improve the clear structure of the user program, you can divide the program in several networks. Networks are consecutively numbered, see (6).



Context menu for network functions

Most of the commands you need for working with networks are provided in the toolbar (1). Further commands can be accessed via the context menus using the right mouse button.


➔ For this, right-click on the network information (6).



Adding a network

- ➔ Select one of the following options if you want to add one or more networks:
 - **Adding a network at the block end:** Click on 'Add new network' below the last network (8).
 - or -
 - Click on  in the toolbar (1).
 - or -
 - Select in the menu bar 'Block → Networks → Add new network'.
 - **Adding a network before or after a network:** Right-click with the mouse button on the network information (6) in the network and select 'Add network before' or 'Add network after'.
 - **Add several networks:** Select in the menu bar 'Block → Networks → Add several networks'.
 - or -
 - Click on  in the toolbar (1).
- ⇒ A dialogue window in which you can define the number of networks and the insertion position opens.

Deleting networks

- ➔ Right-click with the mouse button on the network information (6) in the network and select 'Delete network'.
 - or -
 - Click on  in the toolbar (1).
 - or -
 - Select in the menu bar 'Block → Networks → Delete network'.
- ⇒ The network and any program instructions and elements contained herein are deleted.

Copying and pasting networks

1. ➔ Highlight the network which you want to copy. Right-click with the mouse button on the network header (6) and select 'Copy network'.
 - ⇒ The network and any program instructions and elements contained herein are copied to the clipboard.
2. ➔ Highlight the network behind which the copied network is to be pasted. Right-click with the mouse button on the network header (6) and select 'Paste network'.
 - ⇒ The network and any program instructions contained herein are pasted.

Cut and paste network

1. ➔ Highlight the network which you want to cut. Right-click on the network header (6) and select 'Cut network'.
 - ⇒ The network and any program instructions and elements contained therein are deleted and copied to the clipboard.
2. ➔ Highlight the network behind which the cut network is to be pasted. Right-click with the mouse button on the network header (6) and select 'Paste network'.
 - ⇒ The previously cut network and any program instructions contained therein are pasted.

(6) Network information

Here you are provided with further information, and you can enter a title and comment regarding the network. The following buttons are displayed if you hover with the mouse over a field with the 'Network information'.



Title: Here, you can show or hide further configurations, such as author and version.



Comment field: Here you can show or hide the comment field.



History: Here, you can show or hide the display of the network versions.

(7) Network configurations

You can make various configurations which will have impacts on the current network:



Make format settings: Here you can format or comment on the instruction lines of the program block (IL only).



Make zoom settings: Here you can change the font size and/or the display size of the elements in the network.



Add note: Here you can add notes and status information on the network (IL only).



Select programming language: Here you can switch between the programming languages IL, LD and FBD for the network.



Please note that syntax conversion from one programming language to another is not always possible due to the different choice of commands.

8.5.5 Create / edit symbol

Access manual symbol editing

In the block editor, you can assign a symbolic address to an operand or edit an existing symbolic address.

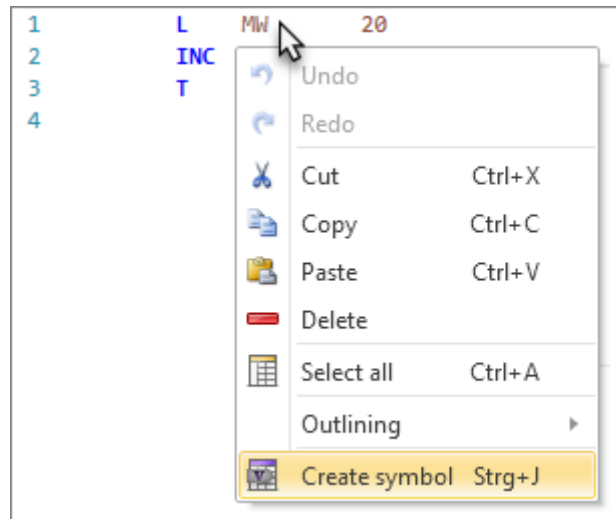


Fig. 165: Create symbol (Example: Absolute address in the IL editor)

- ➔ Set the cursor on the absolute address or the symbolic address and press [Ctrl]+[J].
- or -

Right-click with the mouse button on the absolute address or the symbolic address and select 'Create / edit symbol'.

⇒ The "Create/edit symbol" dialogue window will open, see 'Configuring a symbol' page 221.

Access automatic symbol editing

If you activate 'dialogue support', under 'Extras → Settings' in the 'Programming' tab, the "Create/edit symbol" dialogue window opens upon entry of a new symbolic address, see ↗ 'Configuring a symbol' page 221.

Configuring a symbol

Configuration of the symbol...

Input symbol properties

Name: bSymbol

Operand: A 16.0

Data type: BOOL

Group: Allgemein

Area of validity: Global

Assignment to variables table: Standard Projektkonfiguration

Use in Visu:

Comment:

Overview of configured symbols

Group	Operand	Variable	Data type	Variable table	Area of validity
General	A 0.0	x_A0.0	BOOL		Global
Ungruppiert	A 0.5	sQ0.5	BOOL		Global
General	A 2.0	x_A2.0	BOOL		Global
General	A 7.7	x_A7.7	BOOL		Global
General	A 8.0	x_A8.0	BOOL		Global
Allgemein	A 16.0	bSymbol	BOOL		Global




OK Cancel

Fig. 166: Create / edit symbol

1. In the input field 'Name', enter the desired variable name (symbolic address). If the name has already been used for another variable, an error message is displayed.
2. If required, change the 'Operand' and the 'Data type'.
3. If you want to assign the variable to a group, enter a new group name into the input field 'Group' or select an existing group.
4. Under 'Area of validity', select the validity of the variable:
 - To use the variable only within one block, select the desired block.
 - to use the variable in the entire user program, select "Global".
5. Under 'Variable table allocation', select the variable table in which the symbol configuration should be saved.
6. To be able to use the variable in HMI images, activate the option 'Use in Visu'. You can then copy (synchronise) this variable into the variable table of the HMI project. ↗ Chap. 9.4 "Standard variables table" editor page 315
7. Enter a 'Comment', if required.
8. Click on 'OK'.
 - ⇒ The new or edited variable is added to the selected variable table and set on the position of the operand in the block editor.

8.6 Programming languages

You can select the programming language (syntax) in which you want to edit the PLC instructions already when adding a new program block. ↪ *Chap. 8.3 'Add new block (OB, FB, FC)' page 208*

-  **Instruction list (IL):** Textual, machine-oriented programming language
The execution instructions for the PLC are made line by line. A complete instruction sequence may extend over several instruction lines.
-  **Function block diagram (FBD):** Graphic programming language for signal processing
Differing functional elements may be connected with each other in order to control the signal flow.
-  **Ladder diagram (LD):** Graphic programming language similar to a circuit diagram
The connection of contacts and coils describe the current flow between two contact rails.

In the instruction section of the block editor you can enter the PLC instructions which are to be executed by the control.

8.6.1 Instruction list (IL)

Instruction list (IL) is a textual and machine-orientated programming language. The execution instructions for the PLC are made line by line. A complete instruction sequence may extend over several instruction lines.

For the description of the commands, see Documentation "IL Operation".

Entering IL instructions

You can enter IL instructions in the entry section of the block editor.

- ➔ Enter the instructions in a blank line and confirm your entry with *[Enter]*.
- ⇒ The text is automatically aligned, and a blank line is inserted.

Automatic alignment

The individual parts of the instruction lines (label, operator, operand, comment) can be separated by spaces. After having confirmed your entry with *[Enter]*, the individual parts are automatically aligned based on a grid.

In the first line of the following example you see the unformatted entry. The second line shows the automatic alignment:



Symbolic and absolute addressing

You can select whether the operands should be shown as symbolic or absolute: In addition, you can activate dialogue support for symbol input and define the prefix for automatically generated symbols, see ↪ *Chap. 4.7 'Symbolic and absolute addressing' page 24.*

If you select the "Symbolic" type of addressing, symbolic addresses are shown. If you enter an absolute address, *SPEED7 Studio* replaces this address with the available symbol. If no symbol is available, *SPEED7 Studio* automatically generates a symbol. If you activate dialogue support, a dialogue window in which the operands, data type and other properties can be defined for the new symbol opens.

If you select the "Absolute" type of addressing, absolute addresses are shown. If a symbolic address is entered, *SPEED7 Studio* replaces this address with the absolute address.

You can continue to edit symbolic addresses. ↪ *Chap. 8.5.5 'Create / edit symbol' page 220*



Automatic completion of symbolic addresses

If you enter a symbolic address without quotation marks, the quotation marks are added automatically.

Automatic completion

When you enter instructions, a selection list with input suggestions and other information will be shown as a tool tip. With each additional letter you enter, the suggestions are narrowed down.

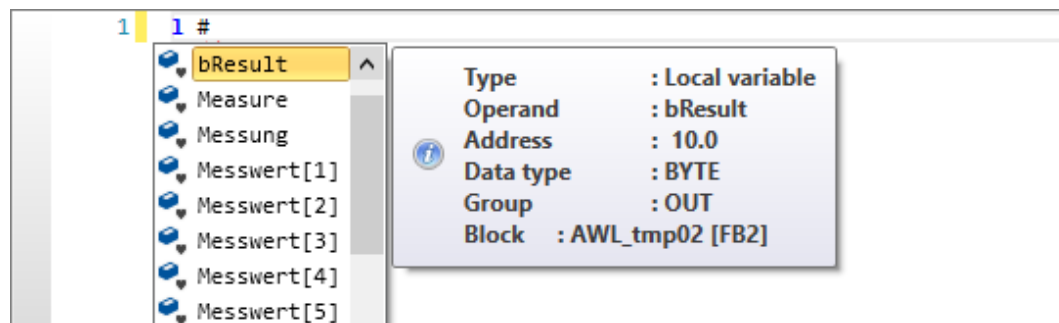


Fig. 167: Input suggestions for local variables (input: #)

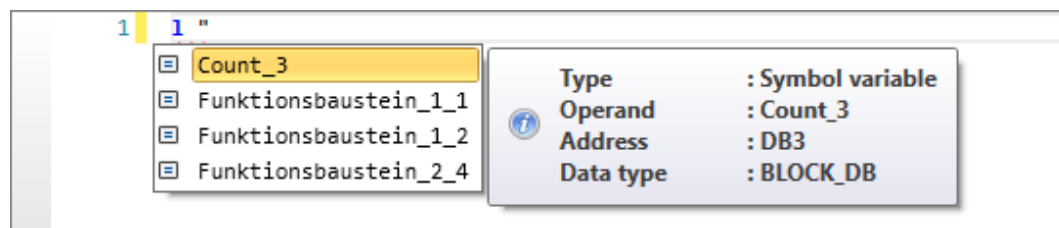
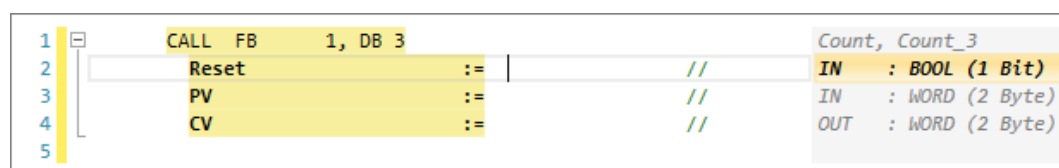


Fig. 168: Input suggestions for symbol names (input: ")

Parameter input for block calls

If you enter an instruction for a block call, all calling parameters are added automatically. After :=, you can enter the assignments of the parameters; after //, you can enter a comment:



Opening a block from an instruction line

You can open a block directly from the CALL instruction line in order to then edit it. Select one of the following options to this end:

- Double-click on the block name.
- Right-click with the mouse button on the block name and select 'Open block'.
- **Keyboard:** Set the cursor on the block name or the symbolic address and press [Ctrl] + [Alt] + [O].

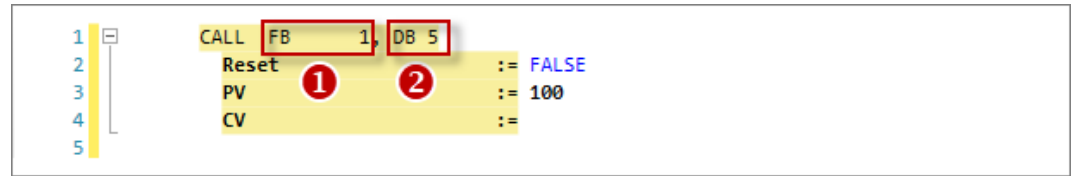


Fig. 169: Example of opening blocks from an instruction line

- (1) Double-click opens FB1
- (2) Double-click opens DB5

Comment and uncomment

You can place comment signs at the start of the line to exclude instruction lines from editing temporarily:

1. Place the cursor on the lines or mark the lines you would like to comment out.
2. Press [Ctrl]+[Shift]+[C] or right-click on the area and select 'Format settings → Comment'.
 - ⇒ The instruction lines are changed into comment lines.

To change comment lines back into instruction lines, proceed as follows:

1. Place the cursor on the comment lines or mark the comment lines for which you would like to remove the comment signs.
2. Press [Ctrl]+[Shift]+[U] or right-click on the area and select 'Format settings → Uncomment'.
 - ⇒ The comment signs are removed.

Syntax highlighting

In order to be able to distinguish different language elements better from each other, they are displayed in different colours and font styles in the block editor.

Language element/meaning	Examples
Unknown, z. B. faulty input	unknown
Operators	A ON L JC
Operands	I2.0 Q8.0 MW4
Numeral literals	16#FF00 2#10110110 -3.5 2E7
Time literals	D#2015-04-09

Language element/meaning	Examples
Character string literals	'ABC'
Boolean constant	TRUE FALSE
Mathematic function	SQRT
Mathematic operators	+I
Block call and calling parameter	CALL FB 1, DB 3 Reset := PV := CV :=
Invalid or incomplete block call	CALL unknown
Blocks	DB 1
Indirect address	T [LW 8]
Symbolic address	"bSymbol"
Pointer (data type ANY)	P# DB1.DBX5.0 BYTE 10
Jump address	JC L001
Jump destination	L001:
Code block (region)	#region Area1
Comments	// Comment



Program syntax error

Any warning in the instruction line is underlined with a green wavy line. Any error in the instruction line is underlined with a red wavy line. If you move the mouse cursor to this line, the details on the warning or the error are displayed.

Only blocks which do not contain any program syntax errors can be transferred to the control.

Watch block

If you activate the function 'Watch block', you can watch the variables of the current block in the block editor (monitoring). [Chap. 8.21 'Watch block' page 280](#)

8.6.2 Function block diagram (FBD)

Function block diagram (FBD) is a graphic programming language for signal processing. With function block diagram, different functional elements may be connected with each other in order to control the signal flow.

For the description of the commands, see Documentation "FBD Operation".

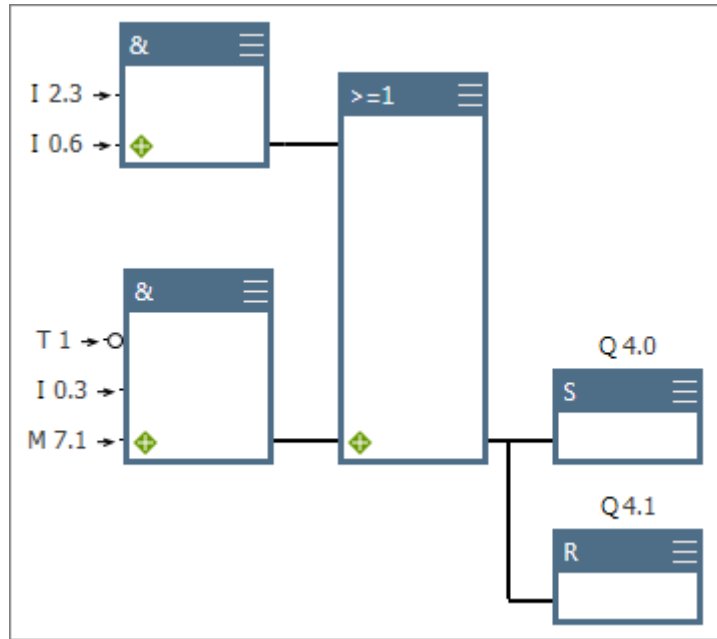














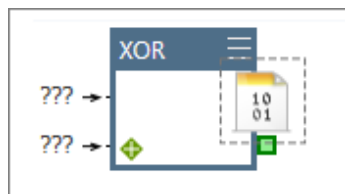
Fig. 170: Example for function block diagram

Element colours

In order to be able to distinguish different elements better from each other, they are displayed in different colours in the block editor:

Colour	FBD element
	Bit logic
	Comparator
	Converter
	Counter
	integer function
	floating point
	Move
	Program control
	Shift/Rotate
	Timers
	Word logic
	Status bits

Adding FBD elements from the catalog



Enter input and output variables

You can add FBD elements in the input area of the block editor.

1. Click on the input area.
2. In the catalog under 'FBD elements', open an element group, e.g. 'Bit Logic'.
3. Drag the desired element from the catalog to the desired position in the input area.

Note that you can add the FBD elements only to the input or output of an element or to a branch. The permitted adding position is marked in green.

⇒ The FBD element is added.

- Click on '???' and enter the input and/or output variable.



Automatic completion

During entry, a selection list with input suggestions and other information will be shown as a tool tip. With each additional letter you enter, the suggestions are narrowed down.

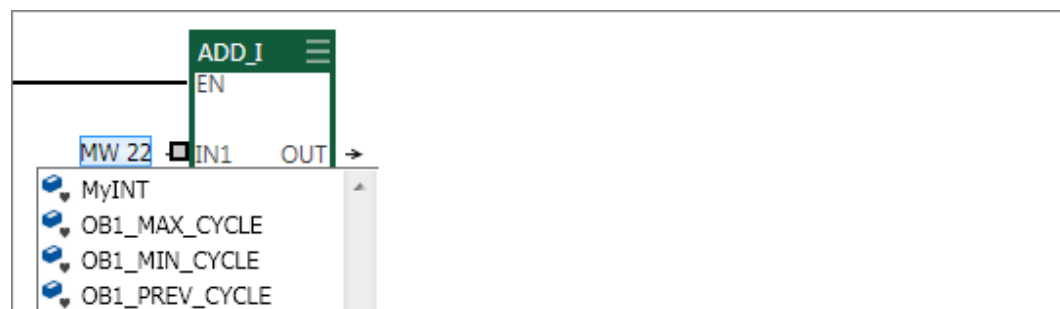


Fig. 171: Example for input suggestions for the data type INT



Automatic completion of symbolic addresses

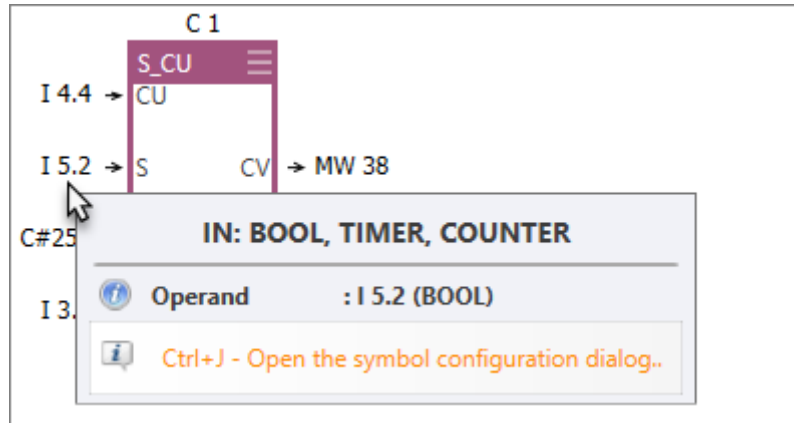
If you enter a symbolic address without quotation marks, the quotation marks are added automatically.



In order to jump from one parameter to the next, use the key [TAB]. With the key combination [Shift]+[TAB], you can jump back to the previous parameter.

Tool tips for the operands

If you hover the mouse pointer over an operand, a tool tip is displayed.



Symbolic and absolute addressing

You can select whether the operands should be shown as symbolic or absolute: In addition, you can activate dialogue support for symbol input and define the prefix for automatically generated symbols, see [Chap. 4.7 'Symbolic and absolute addressing' page 24](#).

If you select the "Symbolic" type of addressing, symbolic addresses are shown. If you enter an absolute address, *SPEED7 Studio* replaces this address with the available symbol. If no symbol is available, *SPEED7 Studio* automatically generates a symbol. If you activate dialogue support, a dialogue window in which the operands, data type and other properties can be defined for the new symbol opens.

If you select the "Absolute" type of addressing, absolute addresses are shown. If a symbolic address is entered, *SPEED7 Studio* replaces this address with the absolute address.

You can continue to edit symbolic addresses. [Chap. 8.5.5 'Create / edit symbol' page 220](#)

Automatic completion

When you enter operands or values, a selection list with input suggestions and other information will be shown as a tool tip. With each additional letter you enter, the suggestions are narrowed down.

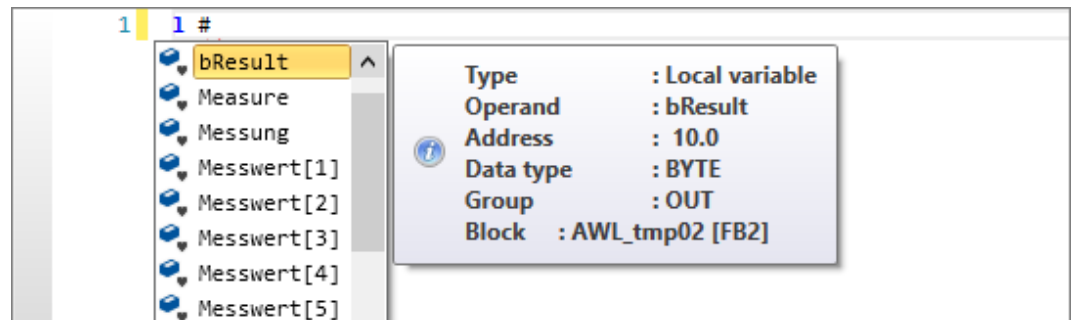


Fig. 172: Input suggestions for local variables (input: #)

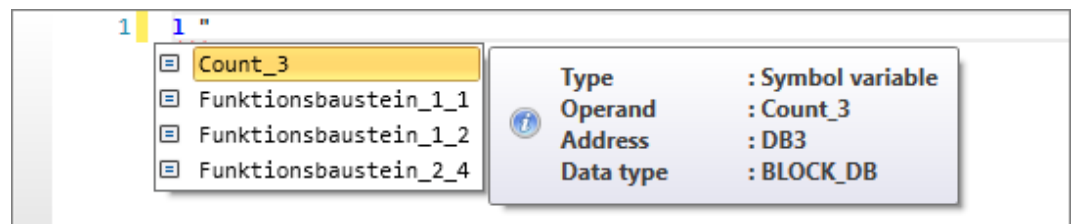
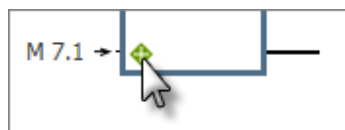


Fig. 173: Input suggestions for symbol names (input: ")

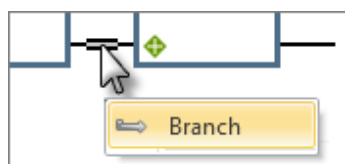
Add input

In some FBD elements (e.g. bit logics), you can add more inputs.

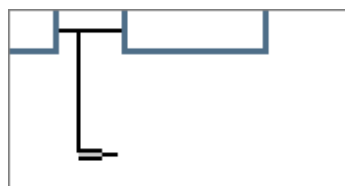
- ➔ In the FBD element, click on the '+' symbol at the bottom left.
- or -
- ➔ Drag the input element from the catalog to the desired position in the input area.
- ⇒ A further input is added.

Remove input

1. ➔ Click on the line of the input you want to remove.
 - ⇒ The input is marked in grey.
2. ➔ Press *[Del]*.
 - ⇒ The input is removed.

Add branch

1. ➔ Click on the middle of a connecting line.
 - ⇒ The connecting line is marked with two lines.
2. ➔ Right-click with the mouse button on the marking and select 'Branch'.
 - ⇒ A branch is added to the connection.

Remove branch

1. ➔ Click on the end of a branch. No FBD element may be added to this branch.
 - ⇒ The branch is marked with two lines.
2. ➔ Press *[Del]*.
 - ⇒ The branch is removed.

Opening a block from the element

You can open a block directly from the CALL element in order to then edit it. Select one of the following options to this end:

- Double-click on the block name.
- Right-click with the mouse button on the block name and select 'Open block'.
- **Keyboard:** Mark the CALL element and press *[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[O]*.

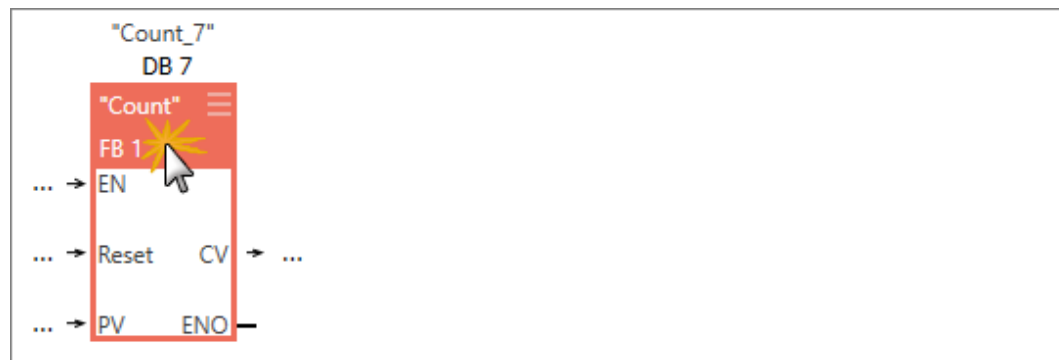
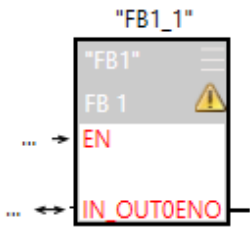


Fig. 174: Example of opening blocks by double clicking

Error messages



If there is an error message, e.g. in the case of a conflict in the block call, a warning symbol is displayed in the FBD element.

1. To obtain further information about this error, hover the mouse pointer over the warning symbol.
 - ⇒ The cause of error is displayed as a tool tip.
2. To remove the error, click on the block and press **[CTRL]+[Alt]+[P]**.

To remove the errors of all blocks in the network, click on a free area in the network (no element may be selected) and press **[CTRL]+[Alt]+[P]**.

i *Not all errors can be automatically removed. You may have to edit the block call manually in order to remove the error.*

Undo changes and restore them

With the key combination **[CTRL]+[Z]**, you can undo the last change.

With the key combination **[CTRL]+[Y]**, you can restore the last change which you have undone.

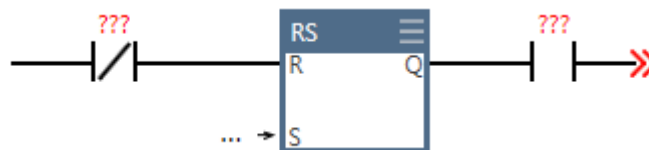
Watch block

If you activate the function 'Watch block', you can watch the variables of the current block in the block editor (monitoring). [↪ Chap. 8.21 'Watch block' page 280](#)

8.6.3 Ladder diagram (LD)

Ladder diagram (LD) is a graphic programming language for signal processing. With ladder diagram, different functional elements may be connected with each other in order to control the signal flow. The presentation can be compared to a circuit diagram. The connection of contacts and coils describe the current flow between two contact rails.

Ladder diagram is designed for controls where simple elements such as make and break contacts and outputs are used. More complex elements, such as time elements or counters are displayed like in the programming language function block diagram (FBD), see figure.



Char	Meaning
–	Left of the element: input parameter (incoming value)
>>	Right of the element: Output parameter (outgoing value), signal flow has not been completed
	Signal flow has been completed
???	Specification of the parameter is mandatory
...	Specification of the parameter is optional

**Automatic completion**

During entry, a selection list with input suggestions and other information will be shown as a tool tip. With each additional letter you enter, the suggestions are narrowed down.

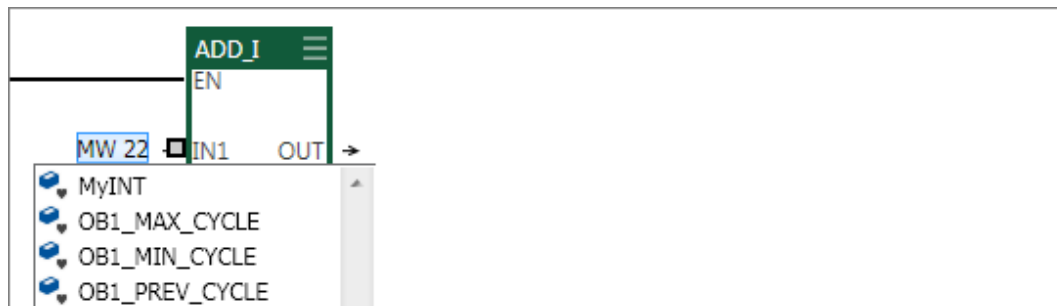


Fig. 175: Example for input suggestions for the data type INT

**Automatic completion of symbolic addresses**

If you enter a symbolic address without quotation marks, the quotation marks are added automatically.

Symbolic and absolute addressing

You can select whether the operands should be shown as symbolic or absolute: In addition, you can activate dialogue support for symbol input and define the prefix for automatically generated symbols, see [Chap. 4.7 'Symbolic and absolute addressing' page 24](#).

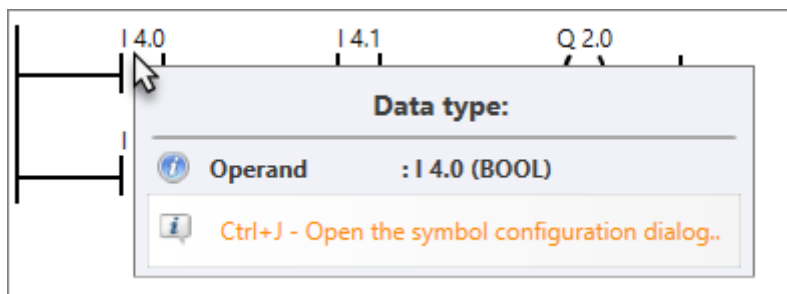
If you select the "Symbolic" type of addressing, symbolic addresses are shown. If you enter an absolute address, *SPEED7 Studio* replaces this address with the available symbol. If no symbol is available, *SPEED7 Studio* automatically generates a symbol. If you activate dialogue support, a dialogue window in which the operands, data type and other properties can be defined for the new symbol opens.

If you select the "Absolute" type of addressing, absolute addresses are shown. If a symbolic address is entered, *SPEED7 Studio* replaces this address with the absolute address.

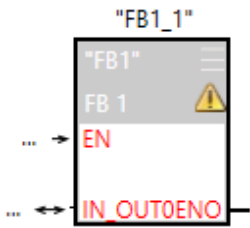
You can continue to edit symbolic addresses. [Chap. 8.5.5 'Create / edit symbol' page 220](#)

Tool tips for the operands

If you hover the mouse pointer over an operand, a tool tip is displayed.




Error messages



If there is an error message, e.g. in the case of a conflict in the block call, a warning symbol is displayed in the LD element.

1. To obtain further information about this error, hover the mouse pointer over the warning symbol.
 - ⇒ The cause of error is displayed as a tool tip.
2. To remove the error, click on the block and press **[CTRL]+[Alt]+[P]**.

To remove the errors of all blocks in the network, click on a free area in the network (no element may be selected) and press **[CTRL]+[Alt]+[P]**.

 *Not all errors can be automatically removed. You may have to edit the block call manually in order to remove the error.*

Undo changes and restore them

With the key combination **[CTRL]+[Z]**, you can undo the last change.

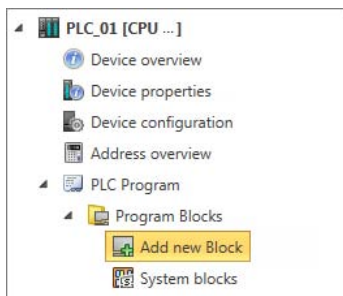
With the key combination **[CTRL]+[Y]**, you can restore the last change which you have undone.

Watch block

If you activate the function 'Watch block', you can watch the variables of the current block in the block editor (monitoring). [↪ Chap. 8.21 'Watch block' page 280](#)

8.7 Adding new data blocks (DB)

If you want to create a new block, a project must be opened and a control must be contained in the project.



1. In the project tree within a control, click on 'Add new block' in the 'PLC program' at 'Program blocks'.
 - ⇒ The dialogue window 'Add new block' will open.

Fig. 176: Adding new block via the "project tree"

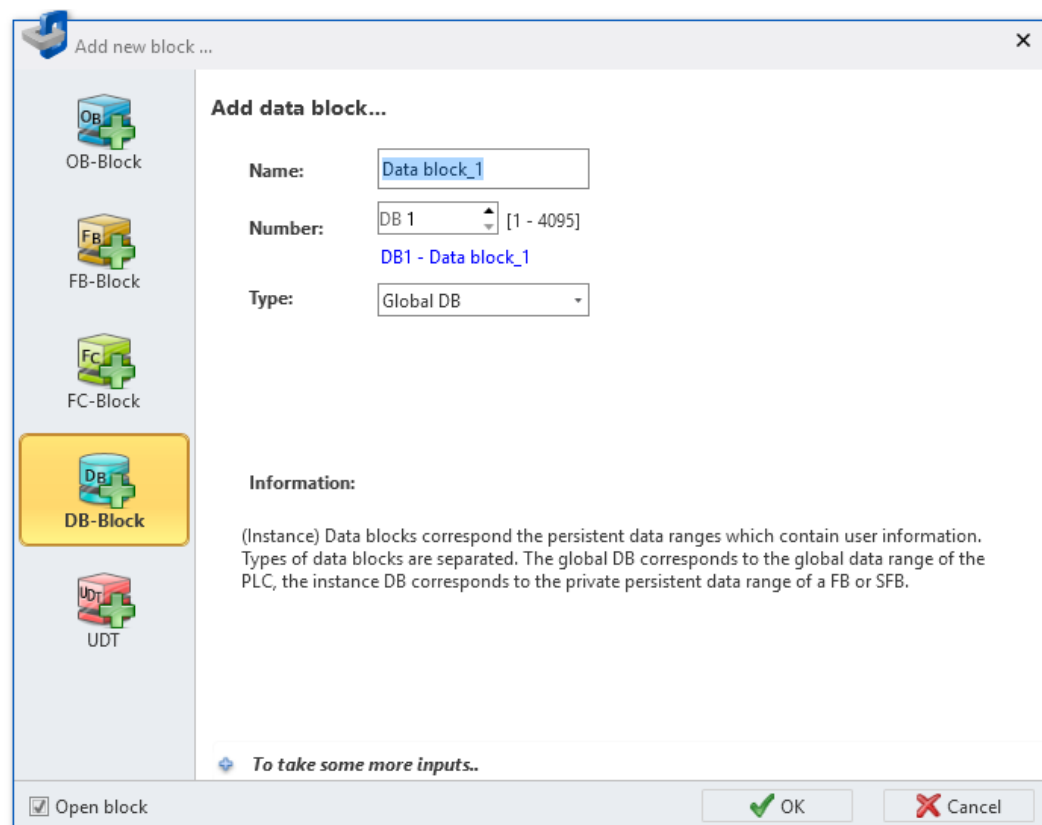


Fig. 177: Dialogue window "Add new block", data block

2. ➤ Select the block type 'DB-Block'.
3. ➤ 'Name': Enter a different block name, if required. You can reference the block in the user program with this name.
4. ➤ 'Number': Select a free block number. Blocks that are already present cannot be selected.
5. ➤ 'Type': Select between two types of data blocks:
 - **Global DB:** For the access to the global data range of the control. All program blocks (OB, FB, FC) have access to the data.
 - **Instance DB [FB]:** The data block contains the persistent data ranges of a certain function block (FB or SFB). Only this function block has access to the data.
 ↪ Chap. 8.1 'Program blocks' page 206
6. ➤ Click on 'To take some more inputs..' if you want to enter further block details. The following details can be entered: Title, comment, version and revision number, control family, author and syntax language. You can make or change these entries later in the block editor.
7. ➤ Click on " .



If you select the option 'Open block' and click on 'OK', block editor will open.

⇒ The data block is added and displayed in the project tree.


8.8 Block editor for data blocks (DB)

Different types of data blocks (DB) can be edited, transferred to the control, synchronised with the control and monitored in the this editor. Data blocks contain data for the user program (PLC program), but no program instructions. [↪ Chap. 8.1 'Program blocks' page 206](#)

You can create new blocks or open existing blocks.

If you want to add a data block, please note [↪ Chap. 8.7 'Adding new data blocks \(DB\)' page 232](#).

Select one of the following options in order to open an existing data block in the block editor:

- **Project tree:** Double-click on the desired data block (block name) in the control at 'PLC program', 'Program block'.
- **"Device overview" editor **: Double-click on the desired data block.

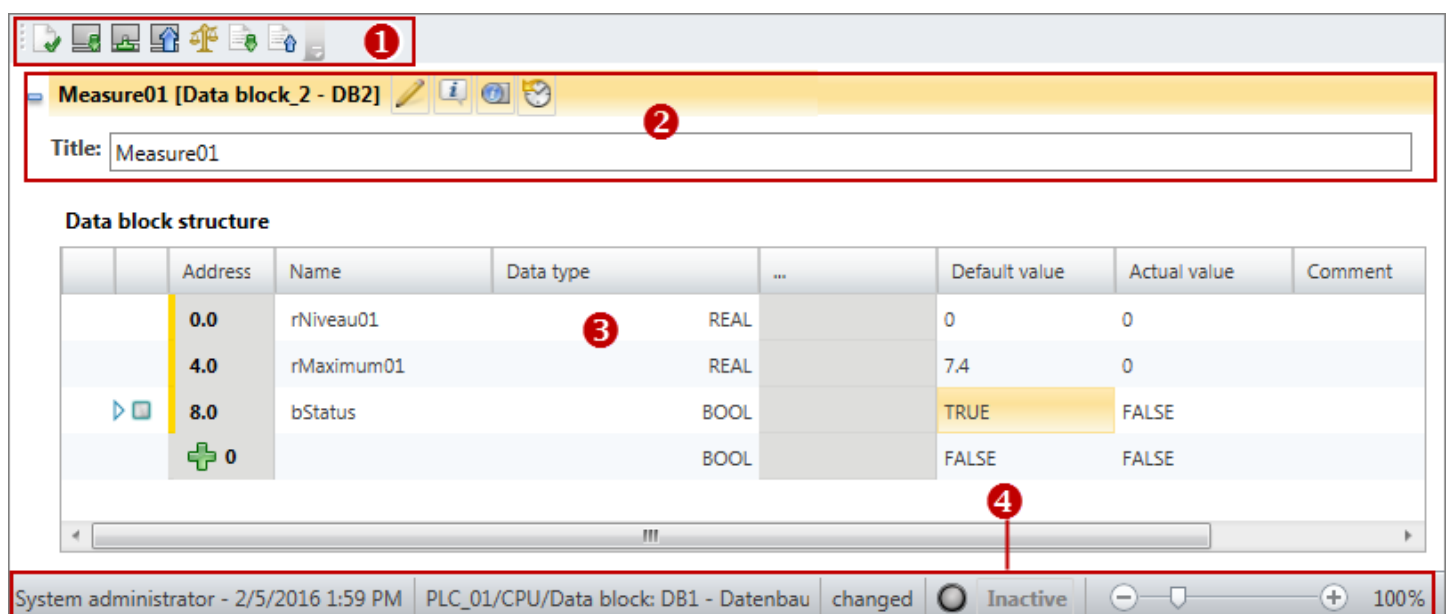




Fig. 178: Block editor for data blocks




- (1) Toolbar
- (2) Block information and title
- (3) Declaration section
- (4) Information bar


Showing/hiding input areas


You can show or hide the input areas:


-  Shows/opens the input area
-  Hides/closes the input area


(1) Toolbar

-  **Compile block [Ctrl]+[B]:** The data block is compiled.
-  **Load block into device [Ctrl]+[L]:** The data block is transferred to the control. To this end, a communication connection with the control is established. A dialogue window will open, where you can select the interface connection and make further configurations.
-  **Load block from device:** The data block is transferred from the control to the project. To this end, a communication connection with the control is established.

 **Compare blocks:** The data block is compared to the data block which is present in the control. To this end, a communication connection with the control is established. ↪ *Chap. 8.20 'Compare blocks' page 277*

 **Use actual values as initial values:** All current values are transferred from the control into the *'Initial value'* column in the project. To this end, a communication connection with the control is established.


 **Initial values to take over actual values:** The values entered in the *'Default value'* column are transferred into the control and are adopted there as actual values. To this end, a communication connection with the control is established.


 **Block watch On/Off:** Watching the variables of the data block in the control. To this end, a communication connection with the control is established. The variable values are cyclically read from the control and displayed.


(2) Block information

Here you are provided with further information, and you can enter a title and comment on the data block. The following buttons are displayed if you hover with the mouse over a field with the *'Block information'*.

 **Comment field:** Here you can show or hide the comment field.

 **Advanced Configurations:** Here, you can show or hide further configurations, such as author and version.

 **Block information:** Here, you can show or hide information about the block.

 **History:** Here, you can show or hide the display of the block versions.

(3) Declaration section

The variables of the data block are defined in the declaration section.

'1st Column' – Area to select the vectors of the data type ARRAY

'2nd Column' – Area to select all other data

'Address' – Internal automatically created address for data filing in the data block

'Name' – Name of the variables

'Data type' – Data type of the variables

'...' – Further configurations for the selected data type e.g. dimensions and field boundaries of the ARRAY data type

'Default value' – Initial value of the variables

'Actual value' – Actual value of the variables read from the control if "Watch block" is switched on

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

(4) Information bar

The information bar provides information on the data block:

- User name and date of the last stored change
- Name of the control, of the CPU and of the data block
- Status of the block since the last saving (changed/unchanged)
- Connection status to the control (inactive/active/error): If you move the mouse cursor to this field, details on the connection status are displayed.

8.8.1 Edit and use variables

Rules for declaration

Only use admissible identifiers for the variable name:

- An identifier is a sequence of letters, numbers and underline characters "_". Space characters are not admitted in the identifier.
- Identifiers may consist of a maximum of 24 characters.
- There is no distinction between upper and lower case letters e.g. the identifier "Magazine_full" is identical with "MAGAZINE_FULL" and "magazine_full".

Adding/declaring variables

Address	Name	Datatype	...	Default value
0.0	wStatus	WORD		W#16#0000
2.0	awValues	ARRAY_OF_TYPE	[0..12] OF WORD	W#16#0000

Fig. 179: Adding/declaring variables

The variables can be declared line by line. Each line in the declaration section can contain a variable.



New variables can be declared at free positions. The **+** symbol in the 'Address' column indicates that the position is free and that a variable can be declared in this line.

After having declared a variable, a new free line is automatically added.

1. Click on the free input field in the 'Name' column.
2. Enter a name for the variable e.g. awValues.
3. Click on the adjacent field in the 'Data type' column and select the desired data type e.g. "ARRAY_OF_TYPE" for data fields.

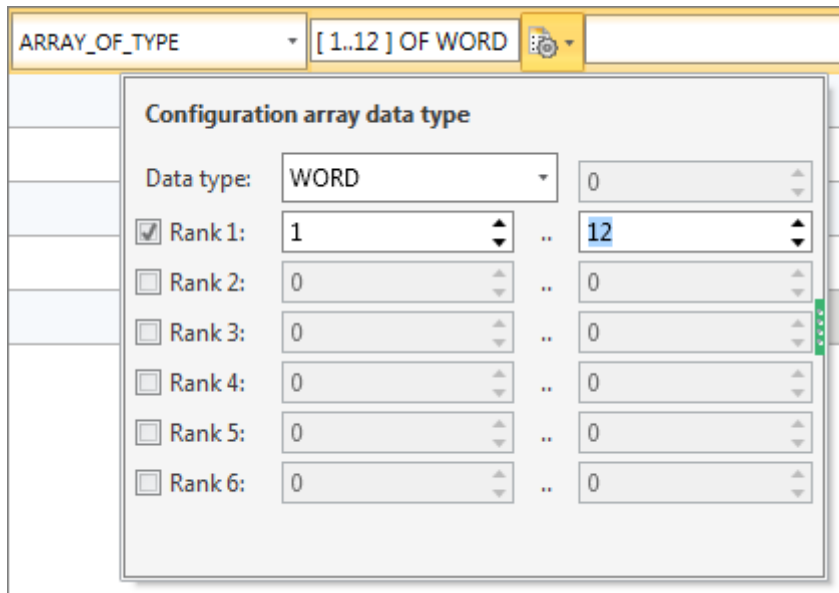
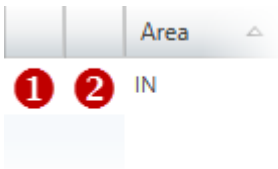


Fig. 180: Enter dimensions and field boundaries

4. Any further configurations which are possible for the selected data type, z. B. dimensions and field boundaries of the data type are displayed in the '...' field. Click on the field to enter the configurations. Click on to make configurations using a dialogue window.
5. If you want to assign an initial value to the variables, click on the 'Default value' field and select a default value or enter a value.

6. ➤ If you want to enter a comment on the variables, click on the 'Comment' field and enter the comment.

Add pre-set variable



You can insert a new variable with the same properties above or below the current line in the table.

1. ➤ Click into the second column of a variable cell.
2. ➤ Right-click with the mouse button on it and select 'Add variable before' or 'Add variable after'.
 - ⇒ A new line is inserted in the table. An address will be assigned, and the variable name of the current table line will be adopted and numbered consecutively.

Fig. 181: (1) First and (2) second column

Changing variables

You can change various properties of an already declared variable.

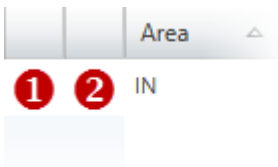
- Click on the input field which you want to edit. Changes can be entered directly. For some fields, changes can be made via a selection list.



Fields highlighted in grey cannot be changed.

8.8.2 Move, copy, paste and delete variables

Copy individual variable



1. ➤ Right-click with the mouse button on the second column of the variable line and select 'Copy to clipboard'.
2. ➤ Right-click with the mouse button on the position where you want to insert the variable line and select 'Paste from clipboard'.
 - ⇒ The variable line is inserted.

Fig. 182: (1) First and (2) second column



This way, you can copy variables within one block but also from one block to another.

Move individual variable with "Drag & drop"

1. ➤ In the second column, highlight the variable line which you want to move.
2. ➤ Press and hold the mouse button while dragging the line to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable line is inserted.

Copy individual variable with "Drag & drop"

1. ➤ In the second column, highlight the variable line which you want to copy.
2. ➤ Press and hold the mouse button and the key [Ctrl] while dragging the line to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable line is copied and inserted. The new variable has the same properties as the initial variable. The address and the variable name are adopted and numbered consecutively.

Adding a new structure block (UDT)

Move several variables with "Drag & drop"


1. ➤ Press and hold the key [Ctrl] while highlighting all desired variable lines in the second column.
- or -
In order to highlight a row of variable lines, press and hold the key [shift] and click on the second column of the first and the last line.
2. ➤ Press and hold the mouse button while dragging the lines to the desired position.
⇒ The variable lines are inserted.

Copy several variables with "Drag & drop"

1. ➤ Press and hold the key [Ctrl] while highlighting all desired variable lines in the second column.
- or -
In order to highlight a row of variable lines, press and hold the key [shift] and click on the second column of the first and the last line.
2. ➤ Press and hold the mouse button and the key [Ctrl] while dragging the lines to the desired position.
⇒ The variable lines are copied and inserted. The new variables have the same properties as the initial variables. The addresses and the variable names are adopted and numbered consecutively.

Deleting variables

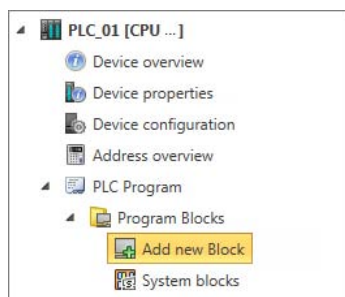
1. ➤ In the second column, highlight the variable line which you want to delete.

 Individual vectors of the data type ARRAY can only be highlighted in the first column.

2. ➤ Press [Del].
- or -
Right-click with the mouse button on the line and select 'Delete selected variable'. A dialogue window will open, where you can select whether you want to delete the variable.
⇒ The variable is deleted or removed from the declaration.

8.9 Adding a new structure block (UDT)

If you want to create a new block, a project must be opened and a control must be contained in the project.



1. ➤ In the project tree within a control, click on 'Add new block' in the 'PLC program' at 'Program blocks'.
⇒ The dialogue window 'Add new block' will open.

Fig. 183: Adding new block via the "project tree"

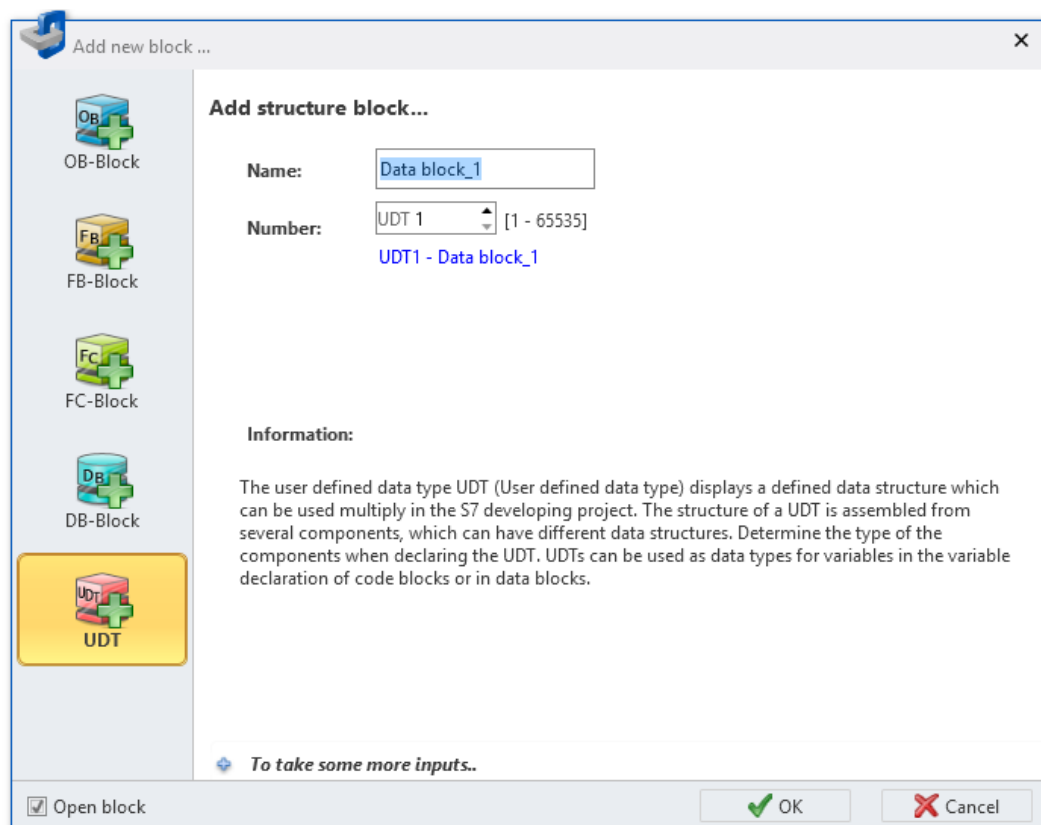


Fig. 184: Dialogue window "Add new block", structure block

2. ➤ Select the block type 'UDT'.
3. ➤ 'Name': Enter a different block name, if required. You can reference the data structure in the user program with this name.
4. ➤ 'Number': Select a free block number. Blocks that are already present cannot be selected.
5. ➤ Click on 'To take some more inputs..' if you want to enter further block details. The following details can be entered: Title, comment, version and revision number, control family, author and syntax language. You can make or change these entries later in the block editor.
6. ➤ Click on 'OK'.



If you select the option 'Open block' and click on 'OK', block editor will open.

⇒ The structure block is added and displayed in the project tree.

8.10 Block editor for structure blocks (UDT)


Different types of structure blocks (UDT, user-defined data type) can be edited, transferred to the control, synchronised with the control and monitored in the this editor. Structure blocks contain data structures for the user program (PLC program), but no program instructions. ↪ *Chap. 8.1 'Program blocks' page 206*

You can create new blocks or open existing blocks.

Block editor for structure blocks (UDT)

If you want to add a structure block, please note [Chap. 8.9 'Adding a new structure block \(UDT\)' page 238](#).

Select one of the following options in order to open an existing structure block in the block editor:

- **Project tree:** Double-click on the desired structure block (block name) in the control at 'PLC program', 'Program blocks'.
- **"Device overview" editor** : Double-click on the desired structure block.

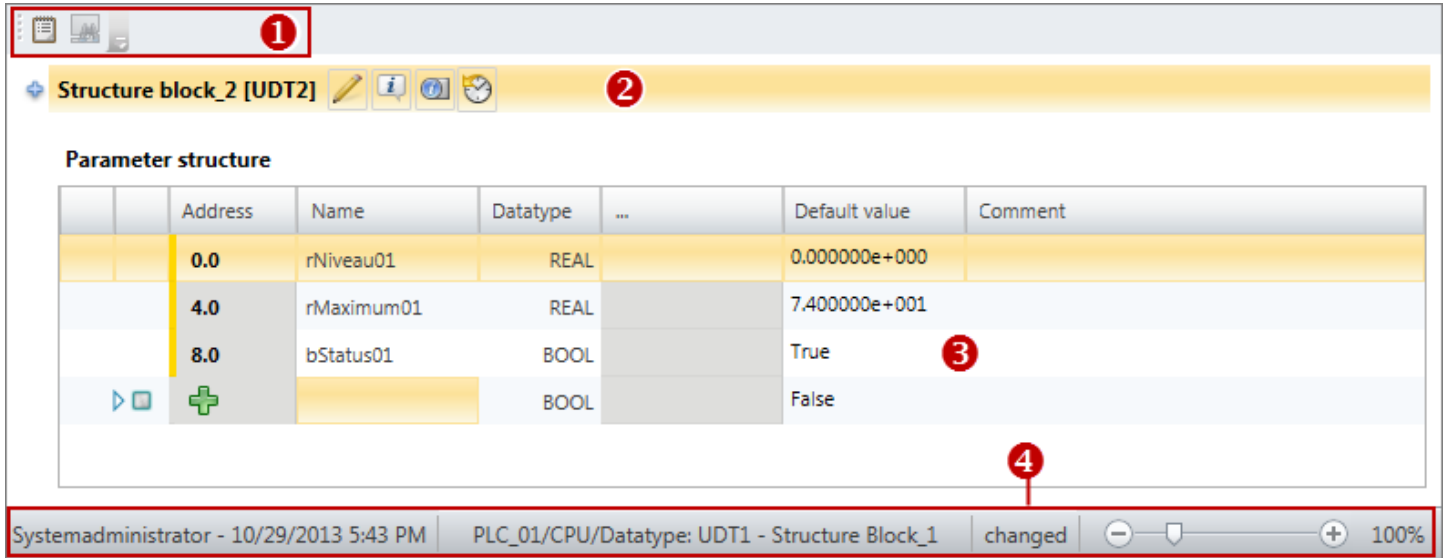




Fig. 185: Block editor for structure blocks


- (1) Toolbar
- (2) Block information
- (3) Declaration section
- (4) Information bar

Showing/hiding input areas

You can show or hide the input areas:





-  Shows/opens the input area
-  Hides/closes the input area

(1) Toolbar

-  **Re-register block:** Make UDT block known at the compiler interface

(2) Block information

Here you are provided with further information, and you can enter a title and comment on the structure block. The following buttons are displayed if you hover with the mouse over a field with the 'Block information'.

-  **Comment field:** Here you can show or hide the comment field.
-  **Advanced Configurations:** Here, you can show or hide further configurations, such as author and version.
-  **Block information:** Here, you can show or hide information about the block.
-  **History:** Here, you can show or hide the display of the block versions.

(3) Declaration section

The variables of the structure block are defined in the declaration section.

'1st Column' – Area to select the vectors of the data type ARRAY

'2nd Column' – Area to select all other data

'Address' – Internal automatically created address for data filing in the structure block

'Name' – Name of the variables

'Data type' – Data type of the variables

'...' – Further configurations for the selected data type e.g. dimensions and field boundaries of the ARRAY data type

'Default value' – Initial value of the variables

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

(4) Information bar

The information bar provides information on the structure block:

- User name and date of the last stored change
- Name of the control, of the CPU and of the structure block
- Status of the block since the last saving (changed/unchanged)

8.10.1 Edit and use variables

Rules for declaration

Only use admissible identifiers for the variable name:

- An identifier is a sequence of letters, numbers and underline characters "_". Space characters are not admitted in the identifier.
- Identifiers may consist of a maximum of 24 characters.
- There is no distinction between upper and lower case letters e.g. the identifier "Magazine_full" is identical with "MAGAZINE_FULL" and "magazine_full".

Adding/declaring variables



	Address	Name	Datatype	...	Default value
	0.0	wStatus	WORD		W#16#0000
	2.0	awValues	ARRAY_OF_TYPE	[0..12] OF WORD	W#16#0000




Fig. 186: Adding/declaring variables

The variables can be declared line by line. Each line in the declaration section can contain a variable.



New variables can be declared at free positions. The  symbol in the 'Address' column indicates that the position is free and that a variable can be declared in this line.

After having declared a variable, a new free line is automatically added.

1.  Click on the free input field in the 'Name' column.
2.  Enter a name for the variable e.g. awValues.
3.  Click on the adjacent field in the 'Data type' column and select the desired data type e.g. "ARRAY_OF_TYPE" for data fields.

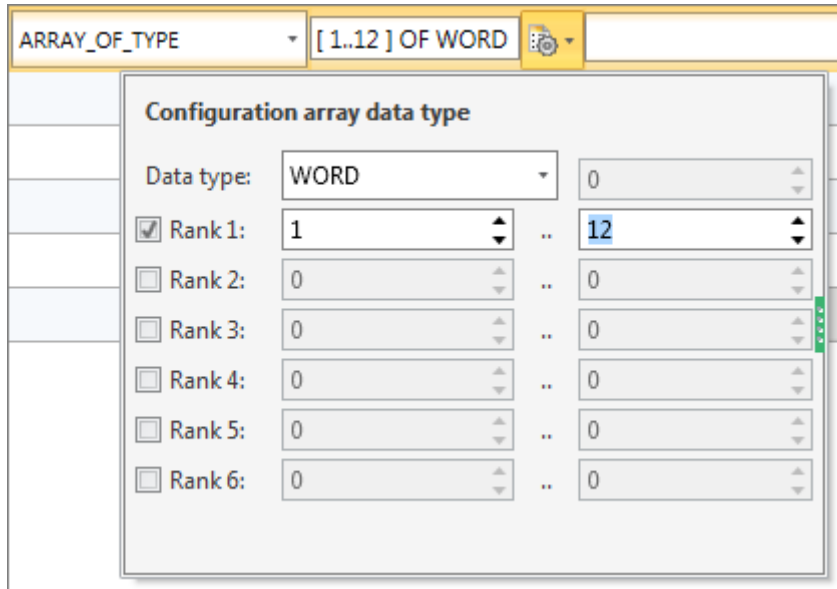



Fig. 187: Enter dimensions and field boundaries

4. ➤ Any further configurations which are possible for the selected data type, z. B. dimensions and field boundaries of the data type are displayed in the '...' field. Click on the field to enter the configurations. Click on  to make configurations using a dialogue window.
5. ➤ If you want to assign an initial value to the variables, click on the 'Default value' field and select a default value or enter a value.
6. ➤ If you want to enter a comment on the variables, click on the 'Comment' field and enter the comment.

Add pre-set variable

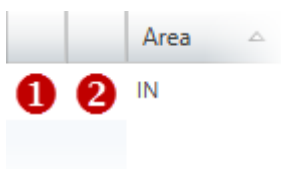


Fig. 188: (1) First and (2) second column


You can insert a new variable with the same properties above or below the current line in the table.

1. ➤ Click into the second column of a variable cell.
2. ➤ Right-click with the mouse button on it and select 'Add variable before' or 'Add variable after'.
 - ⇒ A new line is inserted in the table. An address will be assigned, and the variable name of the current table line will be adopted and numbered consecutively.

Changing variables

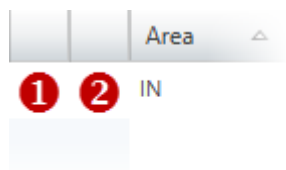
You can change various properties of an already declared variable.

- Click on the input field which you want to edit. Changes can be entered directly. For some fields, changes can be made via a selection list.


Fields highlighted in grey cannot be changed.

8.10.2 Move, copy, paste and delete variables

Copy individual variable



1. Right-click with the mouse button on the second column of the variable line and select 'Copy to clipboard'.
2. Right-click with the mouse button on the position where you want to insert the variable line and select 'Paste from clipboard'.
 - ⇒ The variable line is inserted.

Fig. 189: (1) First and (2) second column



This way, you can copy variables within one block but also from one block to another.

Move variable with "Drag & drop"

1. In the second column, highlight the variable line which you want to move.
2. Press and hold the mouse button while dragging the line to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable line is inserted.

Copy variable with "Drag & drop"

1. In the second column, highlight the variable line which you want to copy.
2. Press and hold the mouse button and the key [Ctrl] while dragging the line to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable line is copied and inserted. The new variable has the same properties as the initial variable. The address and the variable name are adopted and numbered consecutively.

Move several variables with "Drag & drop"


1. Press and hold the key [Ctrl] while highlighting all desired variable lines in the second column.
 - or -
 - In order to highlight a row of variable lines, press and hold the key [shift] and click on the second column of the first and the last line.
2. Press and hold the mouse button while dragging the lines to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable lines are inserted.

Copy several variables with "Drag & drop"

1. Press and hold the key [Ctrl] while highlighting all desired variable lines in the second column.
 - or -
 - In order to highlight a row of variable lines, press and hold the key [shift] and click on the second column of the first and the last line.
2. Press and hold the mouse button and the key [Ctrl] while dragging the lines to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable lines are copied and inserted. The new variables have the same properties as the initial variables. The address and the variable names are adopted and numbered consecutively.

Deleting variables




1. In the second column, highlight the variable line which you want to delete.

 Individual vectors of the data type ARRAY can only be highlighted in the first column.

2. Press [Del].
- or -
Right-click with the mouse button on the line and select 'Delete selected variable'.
A dialogue window will open, where you can select whether you want to delete the variable.
⇒ The variable is deleted or removed from the declaration.

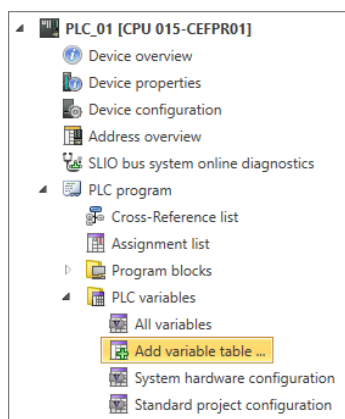
8.11 PLC variables 

In the variable tables, you can declare, group and manage the variables and symbols pertinent to a control (CPU). For each control created in the project, the following variable tables are automatically created:

- The 'All variables' variable table contains all variables which are used in the project. All variable tables including 'System hardware configuration' and 'Standard project configuration' are collected in this table. ↪ Chap. 8.11.2 'All variables ' page 245
- The addresses for all components of the control system are listed in the 'System hardware configuration'. The variable names for inputs and outputs are automatically generated. ↪ Chap. 8.11.4 'Variable tables and "Standard project configuration" ' page 251
- All variables excluding the hardware configuration are declared in the 'Standard project configuration'. Additional variable tables can be added as required. ↪ Chap. 8.11.3 'System hardware configuration ' page 248

8.11.1 Adding and editing a new variable table 

Adding a new variable table



1. In the project tree within a control, click on 'PLC program' on 'PLC variables' → 'Add variable table'.
⇒ The dialogue window 'Add variable table' will open.
2. 'Name': Enter a different name, if required.
3. 'Comment': Enter a comment, if required, e.g. remark or explanation
4. Click on 'OK'.



 If you select the 'Open edit window' option and click on 'OK', the variable table will open. ↪ Chap. 8.11.4 'Variable tables and "Standard project configuration" ' page 251

Fig. 190: Add variable table

⇒ The variable table is added and displayed in the project tree.

Editing variable table

→ Double click on the desired variable table under 'PLC program', 'PLC variables' in the project tree within a control.

⇒ The variable table will open. [Chap. 8.11.4 'Variable tables and "Standard project configuration"'](#), page 251

8.11.2 All variables

The 'All variables' variable table contains all variables which are used in the project. All variable tables including 'System hardware configuration' and 'Standard project configuration' are collected in this table. For each control (CPU) created in the project, a variable table with the name 'All variables' is automatically created. In this variable table, you can declare, group and manage all of the variables pertinent to a control.

**Edit variables directly in the block editor**

You can also create and edit individual variables directly in the block editor. All changes are adopted in the "Standard project configuration" variable table. [Chap. 8.5.5 'Create / edit symbol' page 220](#)

→ To open the variable table, double click on 'All variables' under 'PLC program', 'PLC variables' in the project tree within a control.

Group	Operand	Name	Data type	Variable table	Area of validity	Visu	Comment
			BOOL		Global	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Symbols.ASC - Program symbols	MD 56	sMD56	DWORD	Standard project configuration	Global	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Symbols.ASC - Program symbols	MD 60	sMD60	DWORD	Standard project configuration	Global	<input type="checkbox"/>	
DO8xDC24V 0,5A [Device: PLC_01, Slot: 3]	Q 2.1	x_A2.1	BOOL	Standard project configuration	Global	<input type="checkbox"/>	
DO8xDC24V 0,5A [Device: PLC_01, Slot: 3]	Q 0.0	x_DO_0_0_23	BOOL	System hardware configuration	Global	<input type="checkbox"/>	A 0.0 - DO8xDC24V
DO8xDC24V 0,5A [Device: PLC_01, Slot: 3]	Q 0.1	x_DO_0_1_23	BOOL	System hardware configuration	Global	<input type="checkbox"/>	A 0.1 - DO8xDC24V
DO8xDC24V 0,5A [Device: PLC_01, Slot: 3]	Q 0.2	x_DO_0_2_23	BOOL	System hardware configuration	Global	<input type="checkbox"/>	A 0.2 - DO8xDC24V

Fig. 191: All variables

- (1) Toolbar
- (2) Information on the variable table
- (3) Add and group variables
- (4) Editing variable table

Showing/hiding input areas

You can show or hide the input areas:

- Shows/opens the input area
- Hides/closes the input area
- Hide slave objects
- Show slave objects

(1) Toolbar



List group / ungroup: Presentation of the variable table grouped or ungrouped [further information page 254](#)



Print: Prints the variable table

(2) Information on the variable table

You can enter a comment on the variable table here.

(3) Add and group variable

	Group	Operand [▲]	Name	Data type	Variable table	Area of validity
+	General	MW 44		WORD	Standard project configuration	Global

Fig. 192: Add variable (section)

You can make new entries in the first line of the table. You can recognise these lines by the **+** symbol.

1. You can sort variables by groups. In order to allocate the variable to a group, click on the 'Group' column in the first line of the table and enter a new group name into the input field or select an existing group. If you do not select a group, then the "General" group will be used by default.
2. Click on the input field of the 'Operand' column and enter the operand, e.g. MW 44.
3. Click on the adjacent field in the 'Name' column and enter a variable name (symbolic address). If you do not enter a variable name, *SPEED7 Studio* automatically generates a symbolic address. [Chap. 4.7 'Symbolic and absolute addressing' page 24](#)
4. Click on the adjacent field in the 'Data type' column and select the desired data type. Here, the permitted data types suitable for the operand are shown, e.g. "WORD" for the operand MW.
5. Click on the adjacent field in the 'Variable table' column and select the variable table in which the variable should be saved.
6. Click on the 'Area of validity' column in the adjacent field and select the validity:
 - To use the variable only within one block, select the desired block.
 - to use the variable in the entire user program, select "Global".
7. If you want to use the variable in HMI images, activate 'Visu'.
8. Only in the case of controls with an integrated OPC UA server: If you would like to use the variable in the OPC UA configuration, activate 'OPC UA'.
9. Enter a 'Comment', if required.
10. Confirm your input with **[Enter]**.
 - ⇒ The new variable is inserted into the variable table. In addition, the variable is entered in the "All variables" variable table.

(4) Variable table

'1st Column' – Selection area

'Group' – Sort and display table entries by group



'Operand' – Address of the variables

'Name' – Name of the variables (symbolic address)

'Data type' – Data type of the variables

'Variable table' – Variable table in which the variable is saved

'Area of validity' – Use variable in a block or in the entire user program

'Visu' – Use variable in HMI images ↪ *Chap. 9.4 "Standard variables table" editor*  page 315. You can then copy (synchronise) the variable into the variable table for the HMI project. ↪ *Chap. 9.4 "Standard variables table" editor*  page 315

'OPC UA' (only in the case of controls with an integrated OPC UA server) – Use variable in the OPC UA configuration ↪ *Chap. 7.7 'Configure OPC UA' page 200*

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

'Type' – Operand area of the variables (not editable), e.g. input, output, memory

Changing the variable/group

You can change existing variables or groups in the table.

- ➔ Click on the input field which you want to edit. Changes can be entered directly. For some fields, changes can be made via a selection list.



Fields highlighted in grey cannot be changed.

Change variable name used

When you change a variables name (symbolic address) which is already in use, this is automatically changed in all program blocks.

Moving a variable to another variable table

You can move variables from one variable table to another.

- ➔ Click in the 'Variable table' input field and select the desired variable table.
 - ⇒ The variable is removed from the previously specified variable table and inserted and saved in the newly selected variable table.

Delete variable/group

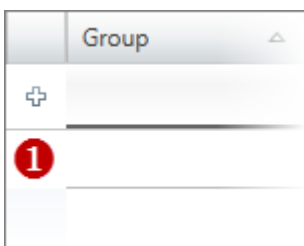


Fig. 193: (1) First column

1. ➔ In the first column, highlight the variable or group which you want to delete.
2. ➔ Press *[Del]*.

A dialogue window will open, where you can select whether you want to delete the variable or group.

If symbols which are to be deleted are used in the program code, another dialogue window is displayed. Use *[Yes]* to choose to delete all variables. The program code thus becomes invalid. Use *[No]* to choose to delete only those variables which are not used in the program code.

- ⇒ The variable or group and all the variables contained therein are deleted and removed from the declaration.

Move variable with "Drag & drop"

1. ➔ In the first column, highlight the variable line which you want to move.
2. ➔ Press and hold the mouse button while dragging the line to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable line is inserted.

Copy variable with "Drag & drop"

1. ➔ In the first column, highlight the variable line which you want to copy.
2. ➔ Press and hold the mouse button and the key *[Ctrl]* while dragging the line to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable line is copied and inserted. The new variable has the same properties as the initial variable. The operand is adopted and numbered consecutively.


Move several variables with "Drag & drop"

1. ➔ Press and hold the key *[Ctrl]* while highlighting all desired variable lines in the first column.
- or -
In order to highlight a row of variable lines, press and hold the key *[shift]* and click on the second column of the first and the last line.
2. ➔ Press and hold the mouse button while dragging the lines to the desired position.
⇒ The variable lines are inserted.

Copy several variables with "Drag & drop"


1. ➔ Press and hold the key *[Ctrl]* while highlighting all desired variable lines in the first column.
- or -
In order to highlight a row of variable lines, press and hold the key *[shift]* and click on the second column of the first and the last line.
2. ➔ Press and hold the mouse button and the key *[Ctrl]* while dragging the lines to the desired position.
⇒ The variable lines are copied and inserted. The new variables have the same properties as the initial variables. the operands are adopted and numbered consecutively.

Overlapping addresses

Overlapping addresses (consistency errors) occur when multiple symbol names are assigned to an operand. Overlaps are indicated in the 'Name' column with the  symbol. Overlaps can also occur through multiple variable tables, e.g. with a symbol name at `E0.0` in the system hardware configuration and another symbol name also at `E0.0` in the standard project configuration.

Changing the presentation of the variable table

You can display the variable table grouped or ungrouped:

- ➔ Click on  in the toolbar (1) to change the presentation.

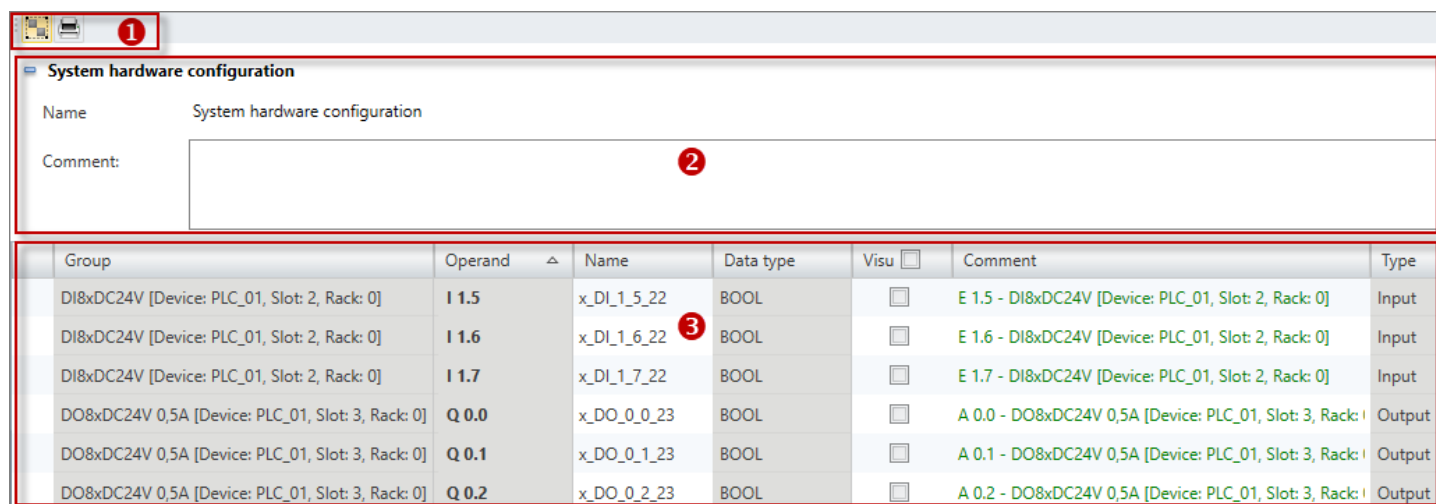
In the grouped presentation, you can show or hide entire groups:

- ▶ Hide slave group
- ▼ Show slave group

8.11.3 System hardware configuration 

The addresses for all components of the control system are listed in the 'System hardware configuration'. For each control (CPU) created in the project, the system hardware configuration is automatically created. You can define the names and use of the operands in this table.

- ➔ To open the system hardware configuration, double click on 'System hardware configuration' under 'PLC program', 'PLC variables' in the project tree within a control.







Group	Operand	Name	Data type	Visu	Comment	Type
DI8xDC24V [Device: PLC_01, Slot: 2, Rack: 0]	I 1.5	x_DI_1_5_22	BOOL	<input type="checkbox"/>	E 1.5 - DI8xDC24V [Device: PLC_01, Slot: 2, Rack: 0]	Input
DI8xDC24V [Device: PLC_01, Slot: 2, Rack: 0]	I 1.6	x_DI_1_6_22	BOOL	<input type="checkbox"/>	E 1.6 - DI8xDC24V [Device: PLC_01, Slot: 2, Rack: 0]	Input
DI8xDC24V [Device: PLC_01, Slot: 2, Rack: 0]	I 1.7	x_DI_1_7_22	BOOL	<input type="checkbox"/>	E 1.7 - DI8xDC24V [Device: PLC_01, Slot: 2, Rack: 0]	Input
DO8xDC24V 0,5A [Device: PLC_01, Slot: 3, Rack: 0]	Q 0.0	x_DO_0_0_23	BOOL	<input type="checkbox"/>	A 0.0 - DO8xDC24V 0,5A [Device: PLC_01, Slot: 3, Rack: 0]	Output
DO8xDC24V 0,5A [Device: PLC_01, Slot: 3, Rack: 0]	Q 0.1	x_DO_0_1_23	BOOL	<input type="checkbox"/>	A 0.1 - DO8xDC24V 0,5A [Device: PLC_01, Slot: 3, Rack: 0]	Output
DO8xDC24V 0,5A [Device: PLC_01, Slot: 3, Rack: 0]	Q 0.2	x_DO_0_2_23	BOOL	<input type="checkbox"/>	A 0.2 - DO8xDC24V 0,5A [Device: PLC_01, Slot: 3, Rack: 0]	Output

Fig. 194: System hardware configuration

- (1) Toolbar
- (2) Information regarding the system hardware configuration
- (3) Edit the system hardware configuration

Showing/hiding input areas

You can show or hide the input areas:

-  Shows/opens the input area
-  Hides/closes the input area
-  Hide slave objects
-  Show slave objects

(1) Toolbar



List group / ungroup: Presentation of the system hardware configuration grouped or ungrouped [further information page 254](#)



Print: Prints the system hardware configuration

(2) Information regarding the system hardware configuration

You can enter a comment on the system hardware configuration here.

(3) System hardware configuration

'1st Column' – Selection area

'Group' – Component name (not editable)

'Operand' – Address of the variables (not editable). For changing the I/O addresses of components, see [Chap. 8.12 'Address overview' page 254](#).

'Name' – Name of the variables (symbolic address)

'Data type' – Data type of the variables (not editable)

'Visu' – Use variable in HMI images [Chap. 9.4 "Standard variables table" editor page 315](#). You can then copy (synchronise) the variable into the variable table for the HMI project. [Chap. 9.4 "Standard variables table" editor page 315](#)

'OPC UA' (only in the case of controls with an integrated OPC UA server) – Use variable in the OPC UA configuration [Chap. 7.7 'Configure OPC UA' page 200](#)

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

'Type' – Operand area of the variables, e.g. Input, output (not editable)

Adding components

When you add new components to the project, the necessary I/O address ranges are automatically assigned. The variables (symbolic addresses) for all inputs and outputs are automatically generated.

If an automatically assigned I/O address has already been entered in the variable table, this address is allocated to the system hardware configuration.

Example

The four consecutive input addresses E0.0 to E0.4 are automatically assigned for a newly added input component "DI4xDC24V".

If, for example, the input address E0.0 has already been entered in the "Standard project configuration" variable table, this entry is allocated to the system hardware configuration after the component is added. The symbol name is not changed. For all input addresses which are not yet assigned, the symbol name is automatically generated:

Before adding the component			After adding the component		
Operand	Name	Variable table	Operand	Name	Variable table
E0.0	MyVar	Standard project configuration	E0.0	MyVar	System hardware configuration
-	-	-	E0.1	x_DI_0_1_25	System hardware configuration
-	-	-	E0.2	x_DI_0_2_25	System hardware configuration
-	-	-	E0.3	x_DI_0_3_25	System hardware configuration

Removing components

If you remove components from the project, the corresponding variables are retained. The variables are moved into the "Standard project configuration" variable table and can continue to be used for programming.

Example


The "DI4xDC24V" input component is removed from the project. The input addresses E0.0 to E0.4 previously entered in the system hardware configuration are allocated to the "Standard project configuration" variable table.

Before deleting the component			After deleting the component		
Operand	Name	Variable table	Operand	Name	Variable table
E0.0	MyVar	System hardware configuration	E0.0	MyVar	Standard project configuration
E0.1	x_DI_0_1_25	System hardware configuration	E0.1	x_DI_0_1_25	Standard project configuration
E0.2	x_DI_0_2_25	System hardware configuration	E0.2	x_DI_0_2_25	Standard project configuration
E0.3	x_DI_0_3_25	System hardware configuration	E0.3	x_DI_0_3_25	Standard project configuration

Changing I/O addresses

You can change the I/O addresses of components in the "address overview". Please note that changes can result in overlaps and consistency errors can thus occur, see [Chap. 8.12 'Address overview'](#), page 254

Overlapping addresses

Overlapping addresses (consistency errors) occur when multiple symbol names are assigned to an operand. Overlaps are indicated in the 'Name' column with the  symbol. Overlaps can also occur through multiple variable tables, e.g. with a symbol name at `E0.0` in the system hardware configuration and another symbol name also at `E0.0` in the standard project configuration.

8.11.4 Variable tables and "Standard project configuration"

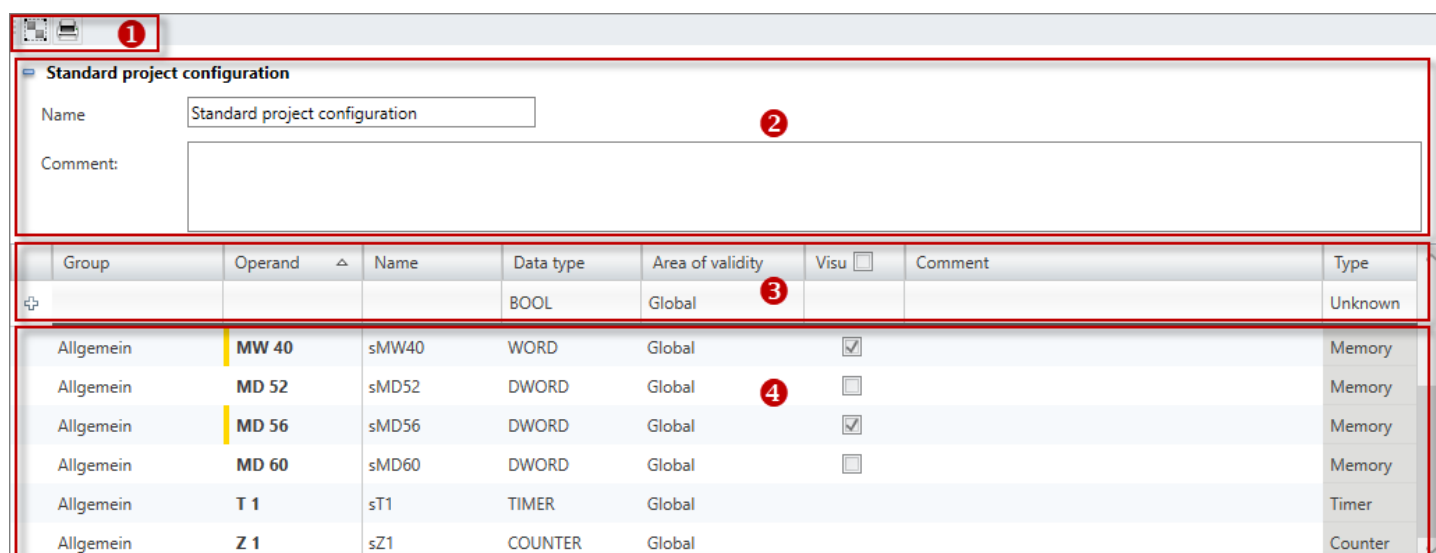
In a variable table, you can declare, group and manage the variables pertinent to a control (CPU). For each control created in the project, a variable table with the name 'Standard project configuration' is automatically created. You can declare all variables excluding the hardware configuration in this variable table. Additional variable tables can be added as required, see [further information page 244](#).

**Edit variables directly in the block editor**

You can also create and edit individual variables directly in the block editor. All changes are adopted in the "Standard project configuration" variable table. [Chap. 8.5.5 'Create / edit symbol'](#) page 220

All changes in variable tables are adopted in the "All variables" variable table.

➔ To open an existing variable table, double click on the desired variable table under 'PLC program', 'PLC variables' in the project tree within a control.







Group	Operand	Name	Data type	Area of validity	Visu	Comment	Type
			BOOL	Global	<input type="checkbox"/>		Unknown
Allgemein	MW 40	sMW40	WORD	Global	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		Memory
Allgemein	MD 52	sMD52	DWORD	Global	<input type="checkbox"/>		Memory
Allgemein	MD 56	sMD56	DWORD	Global	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		Memory
Allgemein	MD 60	sMD60	DWORD	Global	<input type="checkbox"/>		Memory
Allgemein	T 1	sT1	TIMER	Global	<input type="checkbox"/>		Timer
Allgemein	Z 1	sZ1	COUNTER	Global	<input type="checkbox"/>		Counter

Fig. 195: "Standard project configuration" variable table

- (1) Toolbar
- (2) Information on the variable table
- (3) Add and group variables
- (4) Editing variable table


Showing/hiding input areas

You can show or hide the input areas:

-  Shows/opens the input area
-  Hides/closes the input area
-  Hide slave objects
-  Show slave objects

(1) Toolbar



List group / ungroup: Presentation of the variable table grouped or ungrouped  *further information page 254*



Print: Prints the variable table

(2) Information on the variable table

Here you can change the name of the variable table and enter a comment.

(3) Add and group variable

















	Group	Operand 	Name	Data type	Area of validity
	Plant 1 	MW 44		WORD 	Global 

Fig. 196: Add variable (section)

You can make new entries in the first line of the table. You can recognise these lines by the  symbol.

1.  You can sort variables by groups. In order to allocate the variable to a group, click on the 'Group' column in the first line of the table and enter a new group name into the input field or select an existing group. If you do not select a group, then the "General" group will be used by default.
2.  Click on the input field of the 'Operand' column and enter the operand, e.g. MW 44.
3.  Click on the adjacent field in the 'Name' column and enter a variable name (symbolic address). If you do not enter a variable name, *SPEED7 Studio* automatically generates a symbolic address.  *Chap. 4.7 'Symbolic and absolute addressing' page 24*
4.  Click on the adjacent field in the 'Data type' column and select the desired data type. Here, the permitted data types suitable for the operand are shown, e.g. "WORD" for the operand MW.
5.  Click on the 'Area of validity' column in the adjacent field and select the validity:
 - To use the variable only within one block, select the desired block.
 - to use the variable in the entire user program, select "Global".
6.  If you want to use the variable in HMI images, activate 'Visu'.
7.  Only in the case of controls with an integrated OPC UA server: If you would like to use the variable in the OPC UA configuration, activate 'OPC UA'.
8.  Enter a 'Comment', if required.
9.  Confirm your input with [Enter].
 - ⇒ The new variable is inserted into the variable table.

(4) Variable table

- '1st Column' – Selection area
- 'Group' – Sort and display table entries by group
- 'Operand' – Address of the variables
- 'Name' – Name of the variables (symbolic address)

'Data type' – Data type of the variables

'Area of validity' – Use variable in a block or in the entire user program

'Visu' – Use variable in HMI images ↪ *Chap. 9.4 "Standard variables table" editor* page 315. You can then copy (synchronise) the variable into the variable table for the HMI project. ↪ *Chap. 9.4 "Standard variables table" editor* page 315

'OPC UA' (only in the case of controls with an integrated OPC UA server) – Use variable in the OPC UA configuration ↪ *Chap. 7.7 'Configure OPC UA' page 200*

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

'Type' – Operand area of the variables (not editable), e.g. input, output, memory

Changing the variable/group

You can change existing variables or groups in the table.

➔ Click on the input field which you want to edit. Changes can be entered directly. For some fields, changes can be made via a selection list.



Fields highlighted in grey cannot be changed.

Change variable name used

When you change a variables name (symbolic address) which is already in use, this is automatically changed in all program blocks.

Delete variable/group

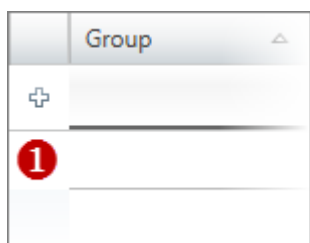


Fig. 197: (1) First column

1. ➔ In the first column, highlight the variable or group which you want to delete.

2. ➔ Press [Del].

A dialogue window will open, where you can select whether you want to delete the variable or group.

If symbols which are to be deleted are used in the program code, another dialogue window is displayed. Use [Yes] to choose to delete all variables. The program code thus becomes invalid. Use [No] to choose to delete only those variables which are not used in the program code.

⇒ The variable or group and all the variables contained therein are deleted and removed from the declaration.

Move variable with "Drag & drop"

1. ➔ In the first column, highlight the variable line which you want to move.

2. ➔ Press and hold the mouse button while dragging the line to the desired position.

⇒ The variable line is inserted.



You can also move variables from one variable table to another.

Copy variable with "Drag & drop"

1. ➤ In the first column, highlight the variable line which you want to copy.
2. ➤ Press and hold the mouse button and the key *[Ctrl]* while dragging the line to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable line is copied and inserted. The new variable has the same properties as the initial variable. The operand is adopted and numbered consecutively.


Move several variables with "Drag & drop"

1. ➤ Press and hold the key *[Ctrl]* while highlighting all desired variable lines in the first column.
 - or -
 - In order to highlight a row of variable lines, press and hold the key *[shift]* and click on the second column of the first and the last line.
2. ➤ Press and hold the mouse button while dragging the lines to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable lines are inserted.


Copy several variables with "Drag & drop"

1. ➤ Press and hold the key *[Ctrl]* while highlighting all desired variable lines in the first column.
 - or -
 - In order to highlight a row of variable lines, press and hold the key *[shift]* and click on the second column of the first and the last line.
2. ➤ Press and hold the mouse button and the key *[Ctrl]* while dragging the lines to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable lines are copied and inserted. The new variables have the same properties as the initial variables. the operands are adopted and numbered consecutively.

Overlapping addresses

Overlapping addresses (consistency errors) occur when multiple symbol names are assigned to an operand. Overlaps are indicated in the 'Name' column with the  symbol. Overlaps can also occur through multiple variable tables, e.g. with a symbol name at `E0.0` in the system hardware configuration and another symbol name also at `E0.0` in the standard project configuration.

Changing the presentation of the variable table

You can display the variable table grouped or ungrouped:
 ➤ Click on  in the toolbar (1) to change the presentation.

In the grouped presentation, you can show or hide entire groups:

- ▶ Hide slave group
- ▼ Show slave group

8.12 Address overview 

The input and output addresses (I/O addresses) of all projected devices and components assigned to a control are shown in a table in the address overview.

Select one of the following options in order to open the address overview:

- **Project tree:** Click on 'Address overview' in the control.
- **"Devices and networking" editor **: Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control and select 'Address overview'.

Address overview

I/O addresses

Input addresses

Start address:

End Address:

Filter: Inputs Outputs

No.	Device	Component	Slot	I-Address	O-Address	Order number
1	PLC_01 [CPU 015-CEFPR01]	DI8xDC24V	1	0		021-1BF00
2	PLC_01 [CPU 015-CEFPR01]	DI4xDC24V	2	1		021-1BD00
3	PLC_01 [CPU 015-CEFPR01]	CP 343-1 Industrial Ethernet	X1	864 - 879	864 - 879	CP343
4	PLC_01 [CPU 015-CEFPR01]	vipa-slio-cpu-015-cefpr01 Port 2	-	2040*		015-CEFPR01
5	PLC_01 [CPU 015-CEFPR01]	vipa-slio-cpu-015-cefpr01 Port 1	-	2041*		015-CEFPR01
6	PLC_01 [CPU 015-CEFPR01]	vipa-slio-cpu-015-cefpr01 Port 0	-	2042*		015-CEFPR01
7	PLC_01 [CPU 015-CEFPR01]	PROFINET-IO-System	X4	2043*		015-CEFPR01
8	PLC_01 [CPU 015-CEFPR01]	PROFINET-IO-System	X4	2046*		015-CEFPR01
9	PLC_01 [CPU 015-CEFPR01]	MPI interface	X3	2047*		015-CEFPR01
10	PLC_01 [CPU 015-CEFPR01]	DO8xDC24V 0,5A	3		0	022-1BF00

Fig. 198: Address overview

The table includes all local and decentralised components of the control. The input components (I addresses) and further below the output components (O addresses) are listed at the top of the table.

'No.' – Consecutive number

'Device' – Device name [order number of the device]

'Component' – Component name

'Slot' – Slot number within the rack

'I-Address' – Configured input address (byte address) of an input component

'O-Address' – Configured output address (byte address) of an output component

'Order number' – Order number of the device or component

Byte addresses

Depending on the number of channels, a component occupies a different number of byte addresses. Here are some examples on the basis of Fig. 198:

- No. 1: The "DI8xDC24V" input component occupies the input byte 0.
- No. 2: The input component "DI4xDC24V" occupies the first four **bits** of input byte 1. The remaining bits of input byte 1 cannot be used.
- No. 4: The communication processor "CP343" for the control occupies the 16 consecutive input and output bytes 864 to 879.
- No. 7 and 8: The PROFINET IO system for the control occupies input bytes 2043 and 2046 for the exchange of diagnostics data.
- No. 10: The "DO8xDC24V 0.5A" output component occupies the output byte 0.

Changing I/O addresses

When you add new components to the project, the necessary I/O address ranges are automatically reserved, shown in the address overview and entered in the "System hardware configuration".

You can change the I/O addresses of individual components:



Please note that changes to the I/O addresses can result in overlaps and consistency errors can thus occur, see [🔗 'Overlapping addresses' page 256](#)


1. ➔ In the table, highlight the line with the component of which you want to change the address.
2. ➔ Enter the new address in the 'Start address' field.
 If this address is already occupied, a notification will appear. You can proceed as follows:
 - Enter a different start address.
 - Ignore the notification initially and then change the address or the symbol name in the variable table in which the overlap occurs. Overlaps are indicated in the variable table with the symbol.
3. ➔ Confirm your input with [Enter].
 - ⇒ The address is changed. If the component occupies several byte addresses, the 'End Address' is automatically calculated and the complete address range is assigned to the component.

Overlapping addresses

Overlapping addresses (consistency errors) occur when multiple symbol names are assigned to an operand. Overlaps are indicated in the 'Name' column with the symbol. Overlaps can also occur through multiple variable tables, e.g. with a symbol name at E0.0 in the system hardware configuration and another symbol name also at E0.0 in the standard project configuration.

When you change I/O addresses, *SPEED7 Studio* attempts to resolve overlaps itself as specified in the following table so that no addressing conflicts occur:

Initial situation with overlaps	Measures for conflict resolution
The symbol from the system hardware configuration is used in the program code.	The symbol name used in the program is preferred: <i>SPEED7 Studio</i> uses the symbol from the system hardware configuration and removes all other symbol declarations.
The symbol from a variable table (e.g. standard project configuration) is used in the program code.	The symbol name used in the program is preferred: <i>SPEED7 Studio</i> transfers the symbol from the variable table into the system hardware configuration and removes all other symbol declarations.

Initial situation with overlaps	Measures for conflict resolution
The symbol from the system hardware configuration and the symbol from a variable table are used in the program code.	<i>SPEED7 Studio</i> cannot resolve the conflict and reports a consistency error. The overlaps are indicated in the 'Name' column with the  symbol.
The symbol is not used in the program code.	<p>The amended symbol name is preferred:</p> <p>If the automatically generated symbol name has been changed in the system hardware configuration, <i>SPEED7 Studio</i> uses this symbol.</p> <p>If the automatically generated symbol name has not been changed in the system hardware configuration, <i>SPEED7 Studio</i> transfers the symbol from the variable table into the system hardware configuration.</p> <p>All other symbol declarations are removed.</p>

8.13 Cross-reference list

The cross-reference list offers an overview over all operands used in the user program. The cross-reference list is helpful in error search, e.g. in order to determine which operand should be processed in which program block with which command. You can filter those blocks and operand areas which should be displayed. Furthermore, you can jump to the references in the user program.

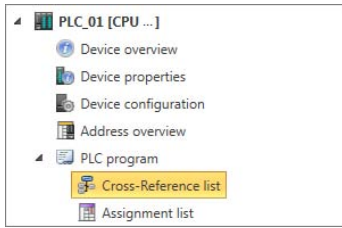
Cross-references can be displayed and filtered for the following block types:

- Organisation blocks (OB)
- Function blocks (FB)
- Functions (FC)

The following operand types can be displayed:

- Inputs
- Outputs
- memory
- Timers
- Counter
- Periphery inputs
- Periphery outputs
- Data blocks
- Instance data blocks
- Function blocks
- Functions
- System function blocks
- System functions
- indirect addressing

Cross-reference list



Click on 'Cross-Reference list' under 'PLC program' in the project tree within a control.

In addition, you can open the cross-reference list directly from the assignment list. [Further information page 265](#)

Fig. 199: Open cross-reference list

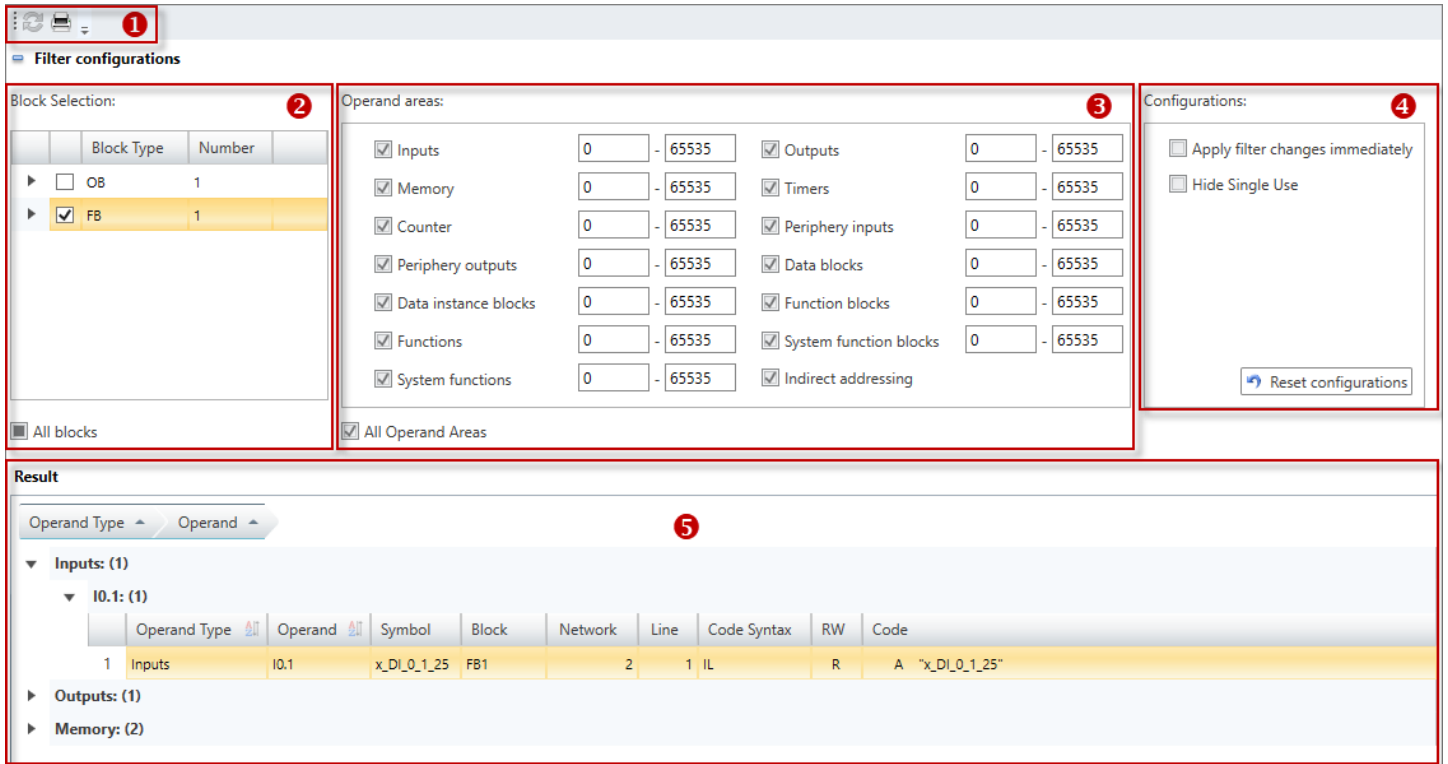


Fig. 200: Cross-reference list

- (1) Toolbar
- (2) Block selection
- (3) Operand areas (= Address areas)
- (4) Configurations
- (5) Cross-reference list (result)

Show/hide filter settings You can show or hide the filter settings:


- Shows/opens the area
- Hides/closes the area

(1) Toolbar

- Refresh:** Updates the data in the cross-reference list (result). When the data in the cross-reference list must be updated, e.g. because changes have been made in the filter settings or in the user program, this symbol is activated (green colour). When the data in the cross-reference list are up-to-date, this symbol is deactivated (grey colour).
- Print:** Prints the cross-reference list


(2) Block selection

Here, you can select blocks for which cross-references should be displayed.

1. ➤ Activate 'All blocks' or the desired blocks, e.g. 'OB0'.
The symbol at 'All blocks' shows that some blocks are marked.
2. ➤ Click on 'Refresh'  or activate 'Apply filter changes immediately', in order to refresh the configuration in the cross-references.


(3) Operand areas

Here, you can select the operand types and address areas which should be displayed in the cross-reference list.


1. ➤ Activate 'All Operand Areas' or the desired operand type, e.g. 'Inputs'.
The symbol at 'All operand areas' shows that some operand areas are marked.
2. ➤ Enter the Start and End byte addresses in the two fields next to each other, e.g. 0 to 65535.
3. ➤ Click on 'Refresh'  or activate 'Apply filter changes immediately', in order to refresh the configuration in the cross-reference list.

(4) Configurations

The configurations for the cross-reference list can be made here.


'Apply filter changes immediately' – If this option is enabled, changed operand areas or overlaps in the cross-reference list are refreshed automatically. If this option is not enabled, changes in the cross-reference list are only refreshed when you click on 'Refresh' .

'Hide Single Use' – If this option is enabled, the cross-reference list shows only those operands where the address ranges overlap. [↪ 'Overlaps' page 264](#)

'Reset configurations'  – Selects all blocks and operand types and sets the maximum address range.

(5) Cross-reference list (result)

You receive the following display when the operands are not grouped. [↪ further information page 260](#)

Result (Out of date, please update.)									
Drag a column header in this field to group the content of the column.									
	Operand Type	Operand 	Symbol	Block	Network	Line	Code Syntax	RW	Code
1	Inputs	I0.1	x_DI_0_1_25	FB1		2	1 IL	R	A "x_DI_0_1_25"
2	Memory	MW20	w_MW20	FB1		1	1 IL	R	L "w_MW20"
3	Memory	MW20	w_MW20	FB1		1	3 IL	W	T "w_MW20"
4	Outputs	Q0.0	x_DO_0_0_22	FB1		2	2 IL	W	= "x_DO_0_0_22"

In the heading, it is shown whether the data in the cross-reference list must be updated, e.g. if changes have been made in the filter settings or in the user program: "Result (Out of date, please update)"

➤ Click on 'Refresh' .

⇒ The data in the cross-reference list are updated and the message is no longer displayed.

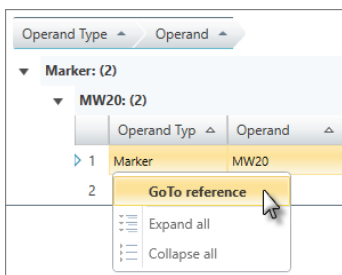
The cross-reference list shows the references for each operand in the applicable program block.

'Operand Type' – Type of the selected operand

Cross-reference list

- 'Operand' – Address of the operand
- 'Symbol' – Symbolic address of the operand
- 'Block' – Program block, in which an operand is accessed
- 'Network' – Number of the network in the program block, in which an operand is accessed
- 'Line' – Number of the program line in the network in which the access is programmed
- 'Code Syntax' – Programming language
- 'RW' – Reading/Writing access of an operand: R = reading, W = writing
- 'Code' – IL program code of the access point

Jump to reference



You can open the program block and jump to the reference of the operand.

- ➔ Right-click with the mouse button on the desired line in the cross-reference list and select 'GoTo reference'.
- ⇒ The applicable program block will open and the cursor is set to the reference in the program code.

Changing the sort sequence

No	time stamp	description
1	4/15/2014 8:11:55 AM.264	M...transiti
2	4/15/2014 8:11:55 AM.247	Automatic res

When calling the cross-reference list for the first time, the lines are sorted by operand types. You can also sort the data in a different order and by other criteria.

- ➔ In the title line of the table, click on the term according to which you would like to sort the cross-reference list, e.g. 'Block'.
- ⇒ The table entries are sorted in alphabetical or numerical order:
 - ▲ In ascending order
 - ▼ In descending order

Grouping operands

For a better overview, you can sort table entries by groups.

Drag a column header into the field above to group the content of the column.

	Operand Type	Operand	Symbol	Block	Network	Line	Code Syntax	RW
1	Inputs	I0.1	x_DI_0_1_25	FB1	2	1	IL	R
2	Memory	MW20	w_MW20	FB1	1	1	IL	R
3	Memory	MW20	w_MW20	FB1	1	3	IL	W

- (1) Select column (hold left mouse button down)
 - (2) Drag the column
 - (3) Drop column in the field (release mouse button)
1. ➔ Drag the desired column title into the field above the table.
 - ⇒ The contents of the column will be grouped. The number of lines is shown for each group.
 2. ➔ Click on ▶ to open the group. Click on ▼ to close the group.

You can repeat steps 1 to 2 in order to structure the group into further sub-groups.

In order to cancel a grouping, click on the close icon next to the group name.

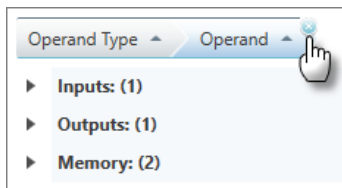


Fig. 201: Ungroup

8.14 Assignment list

In the assignment list, all operand are displayed which are used in the user program. The assignment list is helpful in error search, e.g. in order to localise multiple access to the same address (overlaps). The following operand types are displayed:

- Inputs
- Outputs
- memory
- Timers
- Counter
- Periphery inputs
- Periphery outputs

You can filter the operand areas which should be displayed. The references can be displayed in the user program and you can localise overlaps of operands. Furthermore, you can open the cross-reference list or the variable table for each operand.

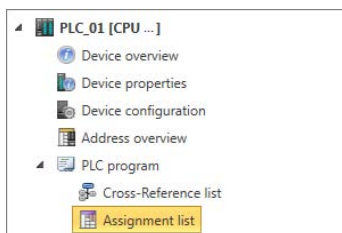


Fig. 202: Open assignment list

➔ In the project tree within a control, click on 'Assignment list' in 'PLC program'.

Assignment list

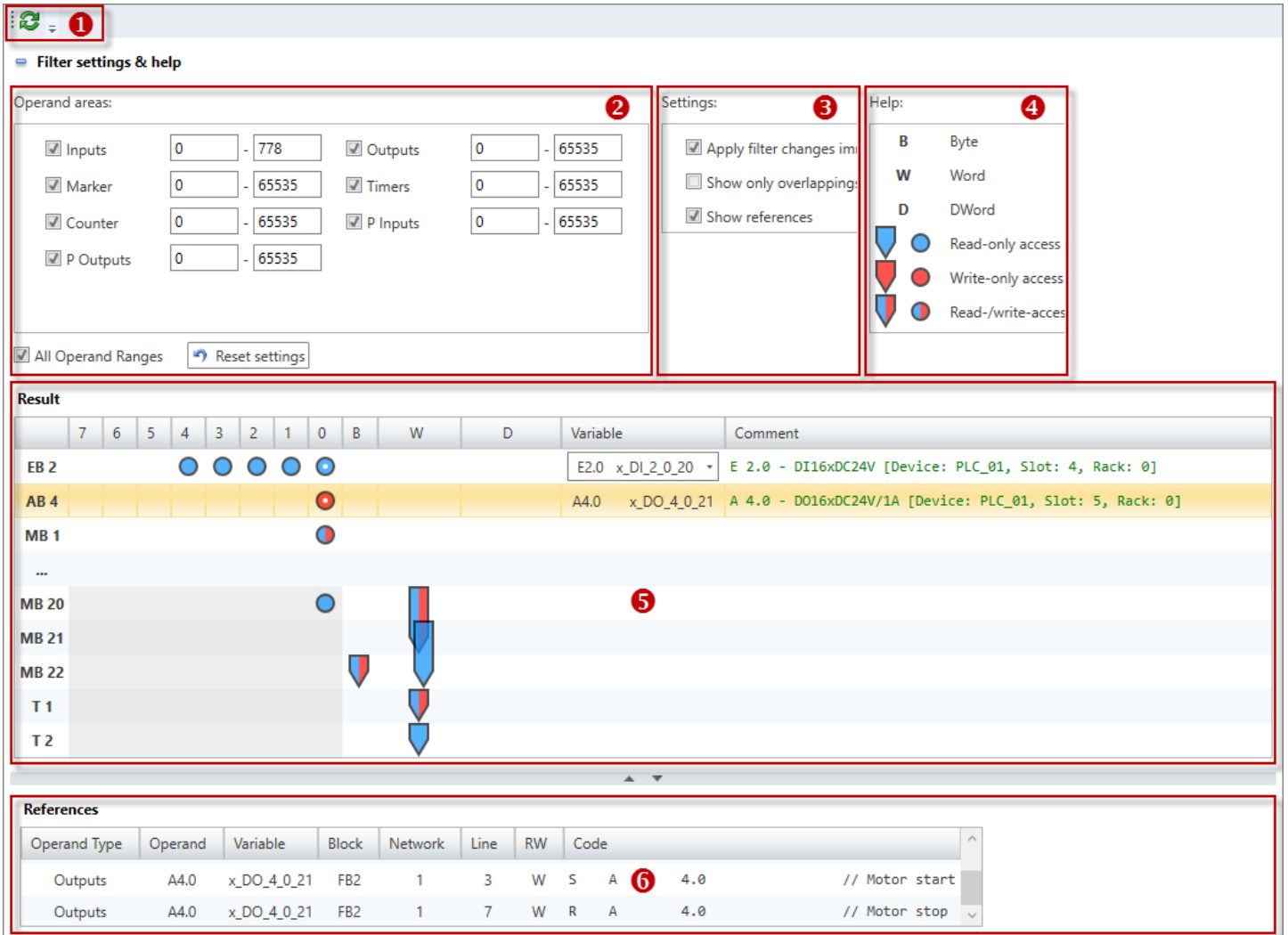




Fig. 203: Assignment list


- (1) Toolbar
- (2) Operand areas (= Address areas)
- (3) Configurations
- (4) Help (meaning of icons)
- (5) Assignment list
- (6) References

Show/hide filter settings and help

You can show or hide the area above the assignment list:



-  Shows/opens the area
-  Hides/closes the area

(1) Toolbar


 **Refresh:** All saved configurations and changed operand areas are refreshed in the assignment list.

(2) Operand areas

Here, you can select the operand types and address areas which should be displayed in the assignment list.


1.  Activate 'All Operand Areas' or the desired operand type, e.g. 'Inputs'.
2.  Enter the Start and End byte addresses in the two fields next to each other, e.g. 0 to 65535.



3. Click on 'Refresh'  or activate 'Apply filter changes immediately' in order to refresh the changes in the assignment list.

'Reset configurations'  – Selects all operand types and sets the maximum address range.

(3) Configurations

Here you can make general configurations for the assignment list.

'Apply filter changes immediately' – If this option is enabled, changed operand areas or overlaps in the assignment list are refreshed automatically. If this option is not enabled, changes in the assignment list are only refreshed when you click on 'Refresh' .

'Only show overlappings' – If this option is enabled, the assignment list shows only those operands where the address areas overlap.  'Overlaps' page 264 Click on 'Refresh'  or activate 'Apply filter changes immediately', in order to refresh the display in the assignment list.

'Show references' – Show/hide display of the references  further information page 265

(4) Help





The different symbols and tags in the assignment list are explained here.

(5) Assignment list





The operands are displayed in the assignment list as follows:

- Inputs, outputs, memories, periphery inputs and periphery outputs:
Each table line corresponds to a byte, e.g. "EB2", "MB20".
- Timers and counters:
Each table line corresponds to a word, e.g. "T1", "Z5".
- Non assigned address areas (free address gaps) in the table line are marked with "...".

'7 ... 0' – In these table columns, the bit access for the individual bits 7 to 0 of the operand are displayed. The following tags are possible:

7 ... 0	Meaning
empty row	Address is not assigned in the user program (free bit address)
	Address is assigned; read access, e.g. input bit
	Address is assigned; write access, e.g. output bit
	Address is assigned; read and write access, e.g. memory bit
	Currently selected variable, see column "variable"
white dot	
dark grey background	Address is assigned; byte, word or double word access, see column "B", "W" or "D"

'B, W, D' – These table columns display the byte, word and double word access of the operand. Example: Any tag of the column 'W' means that the address in the user program is used by a word access. The following tags are possible:


B, W, D	Meaning
	Address is assigned; read access, e.g. input
	Address is assigned; write access, e.g. output
	Address is assigned; read and write access, e.g. memory, timer, counter.
	Currently selected variable, see column "variable"
white dot	

'Variable' – Symbolic address of the operand: If several variable names are present for one operand (e.g. for bit operands), you can select the desired variable in a drop down list. The selected variable is tagged in the columns '7 ... 0' or 'B, W, D' with a white dot.

'Comment' – Shows the comment of the current variable

Overlaps

You can localise overlaps (multiple accesses on one address area) in the assignment list.

 **Filter overlaps**
 If you select 'Only show overlappings' in 'Configurations', the assignment list shows only those address areas, where the operand areas overlap, see .

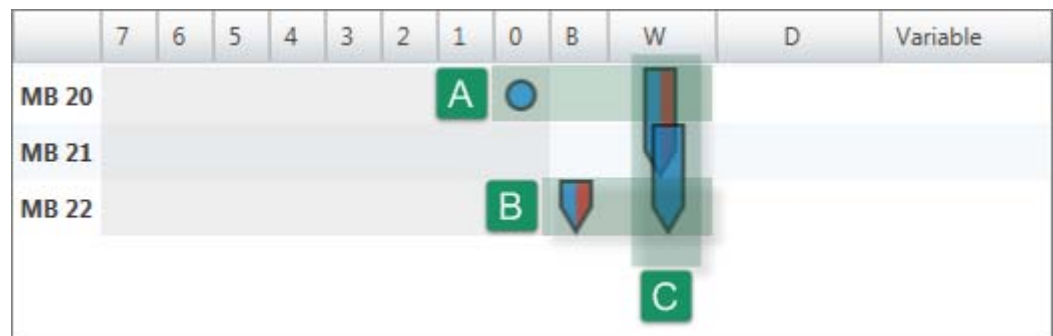



Fig. 204: Example for overlaps

The example shows a number of overlaps occurring in the memories 20 to 22:

- (A) – Multiple access via bit and word address (horizontal reading direction): At memory 20, reading access to memory bit $M20.0$ and reading and writing access to memory word $MW20$ occurs.
- (B) – Multiple access via byte and word address (horizontal reading direction): At memory 22, reading and writing access to memory byte $MB22$ and reading and writing access to memory word $MW21$ occurs.
- (C) – Multiple access via two word addresses (vertical reading direction): At memory 20 to 22, reading and writing access to memory byte $M20$ and reading and writing access to memory word $MW21$ occurs.

 If you activate the option 'Show references' in 'Configurations' and click on a operand line in the assignment list, all references of the operand are displayed.

(6) References

This table shows the points in the user program, where the operands are accessed.

1. ➤ Activate the option 'Show references' in 'Configurations'.
 - ⇒ Below the assignment list, the table with the references is shown.
2. ➤ Click in the assignment list onto a operand line.
 - ⇒ All references of the operand are displayed.

References

Operand Type	Operand	Variable	Block	Network	Line	RW	Code
Outputs	A4.0	x_DO_4_0_21	FB2	1	3	W S A	4.0 // Motor start
Outputs	A4.0	x_DO_4_0_21	FB2	1	7	W R A	4.0 // Motor stop

Fig. 205: References in the assignment list

'Operand Type' – Type of the selected operand

'Operand' – Address of the operand

'Symbol' – Symbolic address of the operand

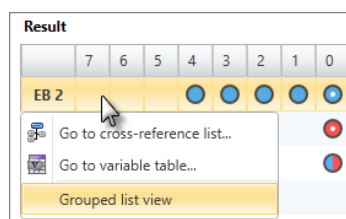
'Block' – Program block, in which an operand is accessed

'Network' – Number of the network in the program block, in which an operand is accessed

'Line' – Number of the program line in the network in which the access is programmed

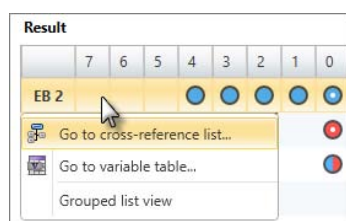
'RW' – Reading/Writing access of an operand: R = reading, W = writing

'Code' – IL program code of the access point

Jump to reference

You can open the program block and jump to the reference of the operand.

- Right-click with the mouse button on the desired operand line in the table with the references and select 'GoTo reference'.
 - ⇒ The applicable program block will open and the cursor is set to the reference in the program code.

Grouping operands

For a better overview, you can display table entries sorted by groups.

1. ➤ Right-click with the mouse button on any operand line in the assignment list and select 'Grouped list view'.
 - ⇒ The operands are grouped depending on the type. The number of operand lines is shown for each group.
2. ➤ Click on ▶ to open the group. Click on ▼ to close the group.

Switch to the cross-reference list

You can open the cross-reference list for an operand.

- Right-click with the mouse button on the desired operand line in the assignment list and select 'Go to cross-reference list'.
 - ⇒ The cross-reference list will open and the relevant operands are shown.

Check and restore consistency

Switch to the variable table

- You can open the variable table for an operand if the operand has been defined in it.
- ➔ Right-click with the mouse button on the desired operand line in the assignment list and select 'Go to variable table'.
 - ⇒ The corresponding variable table (e.g. system hardware configuration) will open.

8.15 Check and restore consistency

If you edit blocks, inconsistencies can arise, e.g. interface conflicts between two blocks. If you transfer inconsistent blocks into the control, this can lead to processing errors in the user program.

You can check the user program for inconsistencies. In a further processing step, you can remove existing inconsistencies.

Check consistency

- ➔ To check the consistency, select one of the following options:
 - **Consistency messages:** In the output range of the consistency messages, click on . ↪ Chap. 4.14.5 'Consistency messages ' page 45
 - **Menu bar:** Check 'Project → Check/correct consistency'.
 - **Toolbar:** Click on .
- ⇒ The consistency is checked and the result is shown in a dialogue window.

Show consistency messages

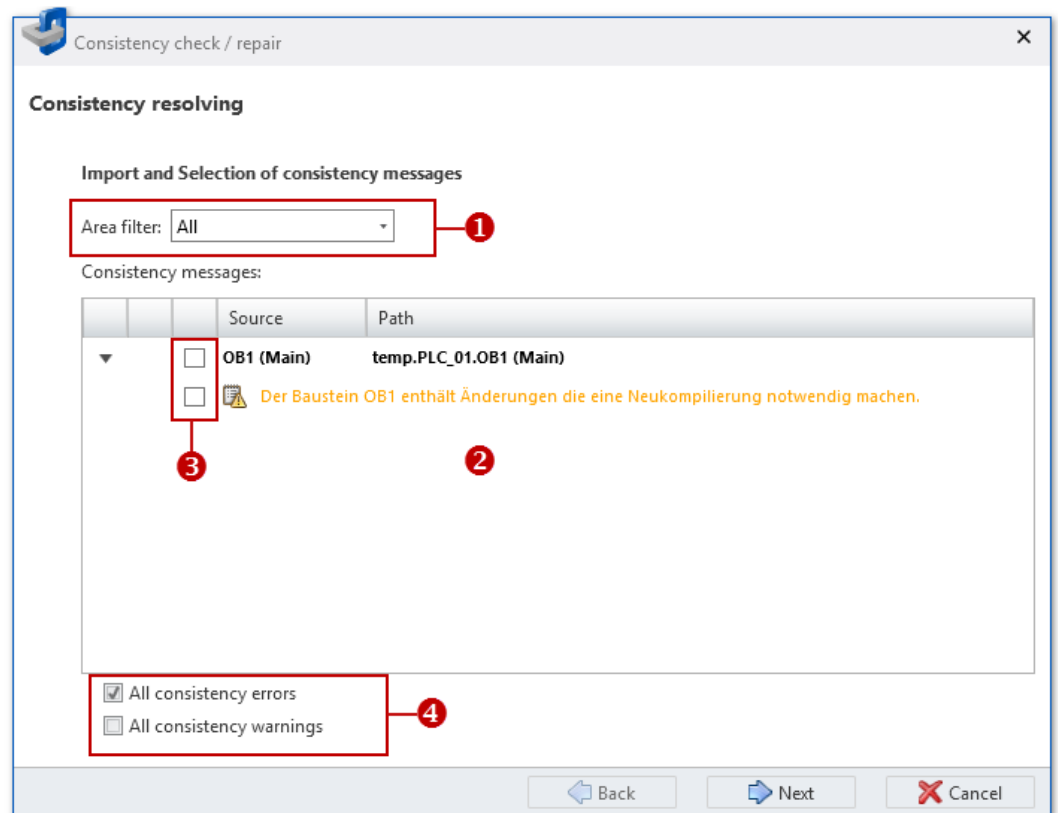


Fig. 206: Dialogue window with consistency messages

- (1) Filter consistency messages
- (2) Consistency messages
- (3) Select individual blocks for the correction
- (4) Select several blocks for the correction

- ➔ You can filter the consistency messages shown. Use the *'area filter'* (1) to select the consistency messages that are to be shown:
 - **All** – consistency messages of the user programs of all CPUs are shown.
 - **CPU...** – Only the consistency messages of the user program of the selected CPU are shown.
- ⇒ The filtered consistency messages are shown (2). If all blocks are consistent, the *'Consistency messages'* field is empty.

Restore consistency

1. ➔ Select the blocks for which you want to restore consistency in the next step:
 - Individual blocks: Highlight the desired consistency messages or blocks (3).
 - Consistency errors, e.g. interface conflicts: Select *'All consistency errors'* (4). All blocks with consistency errors are highlighted.
 - Consistency messages, e.g. changed, non-compiled blocks: Select *'All consistency messages'* (4). All blocks with consistency messages are highlighted.
2. ➔ Click on *'Next'*.
 - ⇒ The consistency of the selected blocks is restored. In this process, block dependencies are checked, corrected if necessary and all selected blocks are compiled. The individual steps and results are shown in the dialogue window.
 - If the consistency cannot be restored, you must correct the affected blocks manually in the Block editor.
3. ➔ Click on *'Done'* to close the dialogue window.



8.16 Compile user program

A user program consists of blocks. A user program must be compiled into error-free machine code so that it can be executed by the CPU. If you have changed blocks, you must compile the block or the user program.

The compilation involves the following processes:

- **Syntax test:** The user program is searched for syntax errors.
If blocks contain syntax errors, the compilation process is stopped and an error message is shown.
- **Consistency test:** The calling-interface between blocks is reviewed.
If blocks have errors at the calling-interface, the compilation process is stopped and an error message is shown.
- **Compilation:** The user program is compiled into machine code (translated) that can be processed by the CPU.
All compilation errors are listed in the *'Programming errors'* output range. ↪ *Chap. 4.14.2 'Programming events' page 44*


To compile the user program, you have various possibilities:

- **'Compile'** 
 - Only the blocks that were changed after the last compilation are compiled.
 - or -
 - Individual blocks can be selected and compiled.
 - or -
 - The block opened in the editor can be compiled.
 - ↳ [Chap. 8.16.1 'Compile' page 268](#)
- **'Compile all'** 
 - All blocks of the user program are compiled.
 - ↳ [Chap. 8.16.2 'Compile all' page 268](#)
- **Compile changed blocks directly before transferring the user program:**
 - ↳ [Chap. 8.18.2 'Transfer user program' page 272](#)
 - ↳ [Chap. 8.18.3 'Transfer all' page 273](#)


8.16.1 Compile

You can compile all the blocks that have been changed since the last compilation of the user program or select and compile individual blocks.

Compile changed blocks

- ➔ Select one of the following options:
 - **Menu bar:** Select *'Project → Compile'*.
 - **Toolbar:** Click on .
 - **Keyboard:** Press *[F6]*.
 - **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the project name and select *'Compile'*.
- ⇒ All changed blocks are compiled. The result of the compilation process is shown in the output range.

Compile block opened in the editor


- ➔ Click on  ↳ [Chap. 8.2 'Device overview \(PLC\)' page 206](#) in the block editor.
- ⇒ The block opened in the editor is compiled.

Compile individual blocks

In the *'Device overview'* editor of the control, you can select and compile individual blocks. ↳ [Chap. 8.2 'Device overview \(PLC\)' page 206](#)

8.16.2 Compile all













You can compile all blocks of the user program.

- ➔ Select one of the following options:
 - **Menu bar:** Select *'Project → Compile all'*.
 - **Toolbar:** Click on .
 - **Keyboard:** Press *[Shift]+[F6]*.
 - **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the project name and select *'Compile all'*.
- ⇒ All blocks are compiled. The result of the compilation process is shown in the output range.

8.17 Simulate user program

With the PLC simulation, you can test the user program on the PC before loading it into the control.


If you want to simulate a user program, you must proceed as follows:

1.  Compile the user program.  *Chap. 8.16 'Compile user program' page 267*
2.  Under 'Active PC interface', select the virtual interface 'Simulation'.  *Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings (PLC)' page 113*
3.  Open the 'PLC simulation configurations' dialogue window and create configurations for the simulation, if necessary.  *Chap. 8.17.1 'PLC simulation settings ' page 269*
4.  Start the simulation. Select one of the following options to this end:
 - **Menu bar:** Select 'Simulation → Start PLC simulation'.
 - **Toolbar:** Click on .
 - **"PLC simulation settings" dialogue window:** Click on 'Start'.⇒ The PLC simulation is started.
5.  Test the user program, e.g. in the Block editor or in the 'Watch table' editor. You can observe e.g. values of variables or signal states. You can overwrite variables with values so as to simulate certain situations for program execution.
6.  End the simulation. Select one of the following options to this end:
 - **Menu bar:** Select 'Simulation → End PLC simulation'.
 - **Toolbar:** Click on .
 - **"PLC simulation settings" dialogue window:** Click on 'Stop'.

8.17.1 PLC simulation settings

Here you can create settings that influence the PLC simulation. You can also start and end the simulation.

To open the 'PLC simulation configurations' dialogue window, select one of the following options:

- **Menu bar:** Select 'Simulation → PLC simulation configurations'.
- **Toolbar:** Click on .

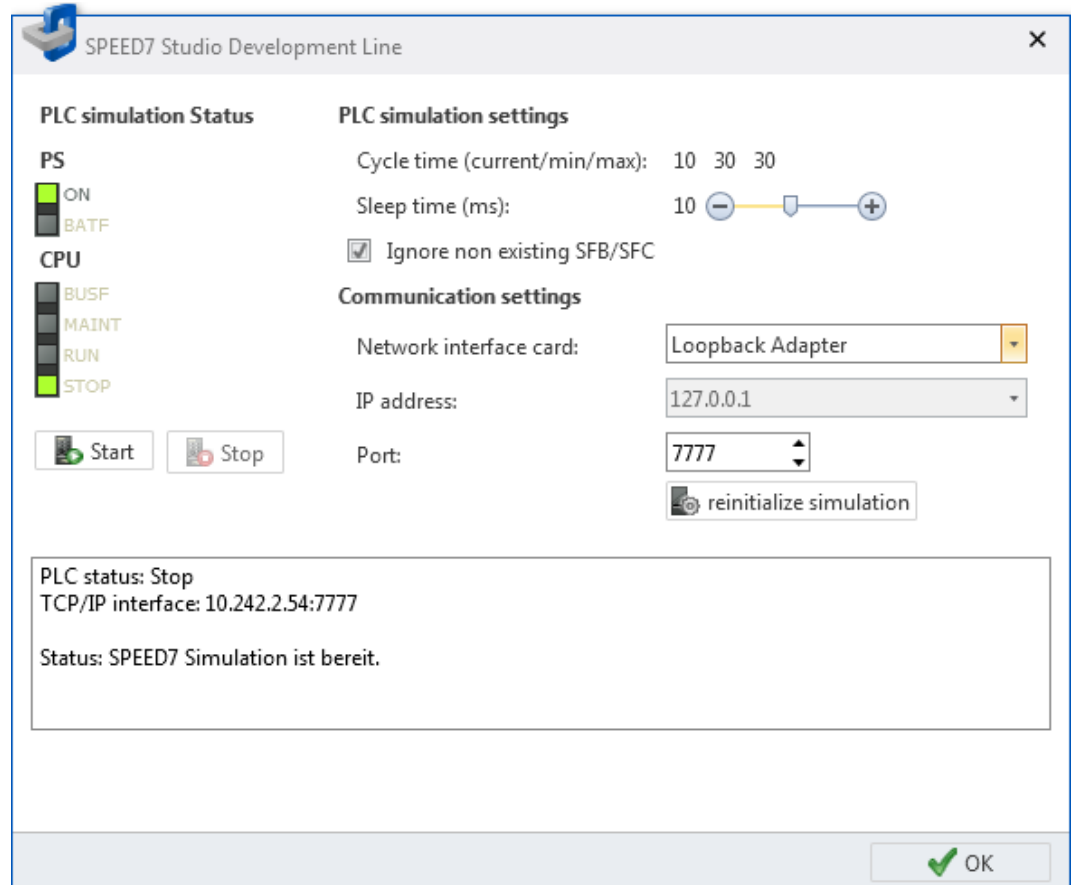


Fig. 207: PLC simulation configurations

'PLC simulation status' – Display of the operating mode of the simulated CPU

'Start/Stop' – Start/stop simulation

'Cycle Time' – Display of the current, the minimum and the maximum cycle time for the program processing

'Rest period' – Waiting period between two program processing cycles

'Ignore non-existing SFB/SFCs' – The simulation supports not all or none SFB/SFC. Activate this option in order to keep the simulation further in operating mode RUN, even if the SFB/SFC cannot be processed by the simulation.

'Network interface card' – Network adapter for the virtual communication connection: If you select "Loopback Adapter", the simulation is run on the PC without using the network adapter.


'IP address' – IP address for the virtual communication connection: If an IP address is already configured in the network adapter, it is shown here. For "Loopback Adapter" the IP address is always "127.0.0.1".


'Port' – If port "7777" of the network adapter is already being used by another function or application, enter another port number.


➔ If you change the 'Communication settings', click on 'reinitialize simulation' afterwards.


8.18 Transfer the hardware configuration and user program to the control

To transfer the hardware configuration and the user program to the control, you have various possibilities:

- **'Transfer hardware configuration'** 

Only the device configuration is transferred to the control.
 ↪ [Chap. 8.18.1 'Transfer hardware configuration' page 271](#)
- **'Transfer user program'** 




Only the user program is transferred to the control.
 ↪ [Chap. 8.18.2 'Transfer user program' page 272](#)
- **'Transfer all'** 






The hardware configuration and the user program are transferred to the control.
 ↪ [Chap. 8.18.3 'Transfer all' page 273](#)
- **'Load block into device'** 

Transfer only block opened in the editor to the control.
 ↪ [Chap. 8.5.4 'Instruction section' page 216](#)

8.18.1 Transfer hardware configuration

You can transfer the device configuration created in the project to the control as system data blocks (SDB). Blocks of the user program are not transferred.

1.  Select one of the following options:
 - **Menu bar:** Select *'Device → Transfer hardware configuration'*.
 - **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control (PLC) and select *'Transfer hardware configuration'*.
 - **"Device configuration" editor** : Click on .

⇒ The *'Transfer the configuration'* dialogue window will open.
2.  Click on the  *'Configurations'* button to establish the further processing:
 - *'Overwrite existing blocks'* – All system data blocks are transferred into the control. If you deactivate this option, only the system data blocks that have been newly added are transferred.
 - *'Delete unused blocks'* – All system data blocks that are not required are removed from the memory card of the control.
 - *'Automatic compiling'* – All system data blocks are compiled before the transfer.
3.  In the table at the top section, click on the desired interface connection, e.g. *'Ethernet interface'*.
 If you choose the serial interface, select the desired *'MPI-Destination'*, if required.
4.  If you want to check whether the programming device is connected to the control, click on *'Test connection'*.
 ⇒ *SPEED7 Studio* attempts to create a connection to the control via the selected interface. The individual steps and results are displayed in the dialogue window.
5.  If you want to check whether your programming device is connected with the correct control, you can retrieve information from the connected control and select the desired control. Click on *'Accessible partners'*.
 ⇒ The *'Search for accessible partners'* dialogue window will open, ↪ [Chap. 6.21 'Search for accessible partners' page 116](#)
 If no connection can be established, check if the connection cables are connected correctly.

Transfer the hardware configuration and user program to the control > Transfer user program

6. Click on *'Transfer'*.

- ⇒ If the control is not in operating mode STOP, a dialogue window will open in which you can switch the control into operating mode STOP. After having carried out a transfer, a dialogue window will open in which you can switch the control into operating mode RUN again.

The hardware configuration is transferred to the control. The individual steps and results are displayed in the dialogue window. At the same time, it is displayed whether the transfer has been successful or if an error occurred.

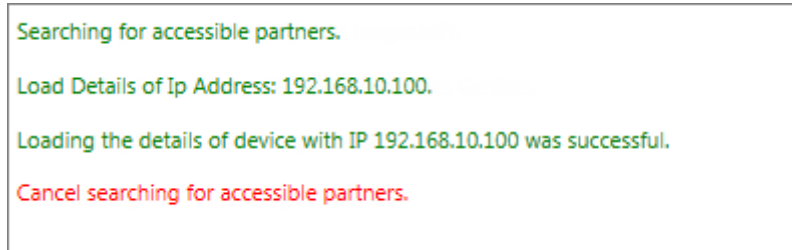


Fig. 208: Example of an transfer error



If the process was completed successfully, the device configuration in the project harmonises with the configuration in the control.

8.18.2 Transfer user program

If you have changed blocks in the project, you can compile them and then transfer them to the control as a user program (PLC program). The hardware configuration is not transferred to the control.




Transfer single program block

To transfer the program block opened in the block editor, click on  in the block editor. ↪ Chap. 8.2 'Device overview (PLC) ' page 206

1. Select one of the following options:

- **Menu bar:** Select *'Device → Transfer user program'*.
- **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control (PLC) and select *'Transfer user program'*.

- ⇒ The *'Transfer the software'* dialogue window will open.

2. Click on the  *'Configurations'* button to establish the further processing:

- *'Overwrite existing blocks'* – All blocks of the user program are transferred into the control. If you deactivate this option, only the blocks that have been newly added in the user program are transferred.
- *'Automatic compressing'* – All blocks of the user program are compressed.
- *'Delete unused blocks'* – All blocks that are not part of the user program are removed from the memory card of the control.
- *'Automatic compiling'* – All blocks of the user program are compiled before the transfer.

3. In the table at the top section, click on the desired interface connection, e.g. *'Ethernet interface'*.

If you choose the serial interface, select the desired *'MPI-Destination'*, if required.

4. If you want to check whether the programming device is connected to the control, click on *'Test connection'*.

- ⇒ *SPEED7 Studio* attempts to create a connection to the control via the selected interface. The individual steps and results are displayed in the dialogue window.

Transfer the hardware configuration and user program to the control > Transfer all

5. ➤ If you want to check whether your programming device is connected with the correct control, you can retrieve information from the connected control and select the desired control. Click on *'Accessible partners'*.
 - ⇒ The *'Search for accessible partners'* dialogue window will open. ↪ *Chap. 6.21 'Search for accessible partners' page 116*

If no connection can be established, check if the connection cables are connected correctly.
6. ➤ Click on *'Transfer'*.
 - ⇒ The user program is transferred to the control. The individual steps and results are displayed in the dialogue window. At the same time, it is displayed whether the transfer has been successful or if an error occurred.



Compile changed blocks

If you have not yet compiled changed blocks, they are listed. You can compile these blocks before transferring. To this end, in *'Configurations'*, activate *'Automatic compiling'*. The changed blocks are compiled. Click on *'Transfer'* again.

Searching for accessible partners.
 Load Details of Ip Address: 192.168.10.100.
 Loading the details of device with IP 192.168.10.100 was successful.
 Cancel searching for accessible partners.

Fig. 209: Example of an transfer error

8.18.3 Transfer all

If you have changed the device configuration and blocks of the user program in the project, you can transfer both to the control together.

1. ➤ Select one of the following options:
 - **Menu bar:** Select *'Device → Transfer all'*.
 - **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control (PLC) and select *'Transfer user program'*.
 - ⇒ The *'Transfer all...'* dialogue window will open.
2. ➤ Click on the *'Configurations'* button to establish the further processing:
 - *'Overwrite existing blocks'* – All blocks of the user program, including the system data blocks, are transferred into the control. If you deactivate this option, only the blocks that have been newly added in the user program are transferred.
 - *'Automatic compressing'* – All blocks of the user program are compressed.
 - *'Delete unused blocks'* – All blocks that are not part of the user program are removed from the memory card of the control.
 - *'Automatic compiling'* – All blocks of the user program, including the system data blocks, are compiled before the transfer.
3. ➤ In the table at the top section, click on the desired interface connection, e.g. *'Ethernet interface'*.

If you choose the serial interface, select the desired *'MPI-Destination'*, if required.

- 4.** ➤ If you want to check whether the programming device is connected to the control, click on *'Test connection'*.
- ⇒ *SPEED7 Studio* attempts to create a connection to the control via the selected interface. The individual steps and results are displayed in the dialogue window.
- 5.** ➤ If you want to check whether your programming device is connected with the correct control, you can retrieve information from the connected control and select the desired control. Click on *'Accessible partners'*.
- ⇒ The *'Search for accessible partners'* dialogue window will open. ↪ *Chap. 6.21 'Search for accessible partners' page 116*
- If no connection can be established, check if the connection cables are connected correctly.

- 6.** ➤ Click on *'Transfer'*.
- ⇒ If the control is not in operating mode STOP, a dialogue window will open in which you can switch the control into operating mode STOP. After having carried out a transfer, a dialogue window will open in which you can switch the control into operating mode RUN again.

The hardware configuration and the user program are transferred to the control. The individual steps and results are displayed in the dialogue window. At the same time, it is displayed whether the transfer has been successful or if an error occurred.



Compile changed blocks

If you have not yet compiled changed blocks, they are listed. You can compile these blocks before transferring. To this end, in ⚙️ 'Configurations', activate 'Automatic compiling'. The changed blocks are compiled. Click on 'Transfer' again.

Searching for accessible partners.
 Load Details of Ip Address: 192.168.10.100.
 Loading the details of device with IP 192.168.10.100 was successful.
 Cancel searching for accessible partners.

Fig. 210: Example of an transfer error

8.19 Load blocks from the device

With this function, you can transfer blocks from the control to the project. The following block types can be transferred:

- Organisation blocks (OB)
- Function blocks (FB)
- Functions (FC)
- Data blocks (DB)
- Instance data block (DI)
- System function blocks (SFB)
- System functions (SFC)

You need to create a communication connection to the control. ↪ *Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings (PLC)' page 113*

1. ➤ Select one of the following options:

- **Menu bar:** Select *'Device → Load blocks from the device'*.
- **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control (PLC) and select *'Load blocks from the device'*.

⇒ The dialogue window *'Importing online block from control'* will open.

SPEED7 Studio attempts to create a connection to the control. The result is displayed in the dialogue window under *'Communication status'*.

If no connection can be established, you cannot load the blocks from the device. Check if the connection cables are connected correctly. If required, check the communication settings. ↪ *Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings (PLC)' page 113*

2. ➤ Click on *'Next'*.

⇒ The blocks in the control are compared to the blocks in the project and displayed in a list. The block list will show which blocks are present in the project and can be overwritten or which blocks are not present in the project and can be added.

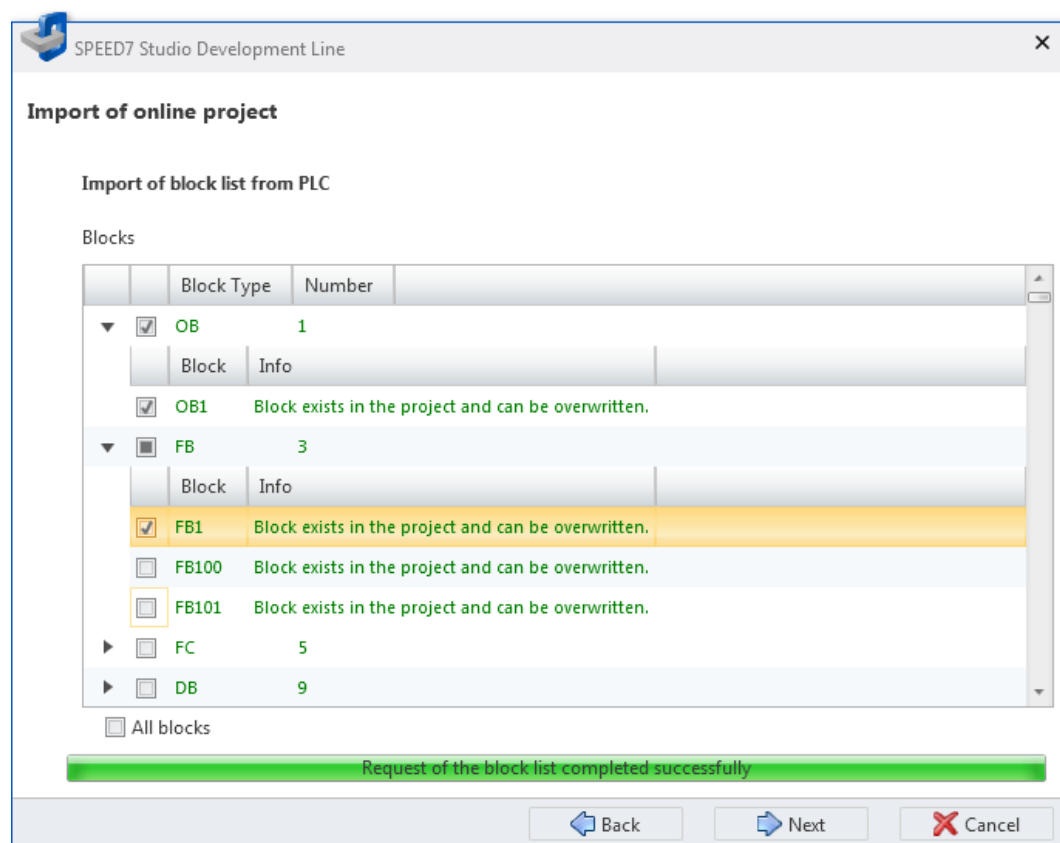


Fig. 211: Load blocks from the device: Block list

3. ➤ Click on ▶ in the block list to show all blocks of one block type. Click on ▼ to hide blocks.

Select the blocks you want to load from the device into the project.

Activate *'All blocks'*, if you want to load all listed blocks.

Load blocks from the device

4. Click on 'Next'.

⇒ The program code of the selected blocks is read and disassembled from the control, i.e. compiled from binary coded machine language in readable program code.

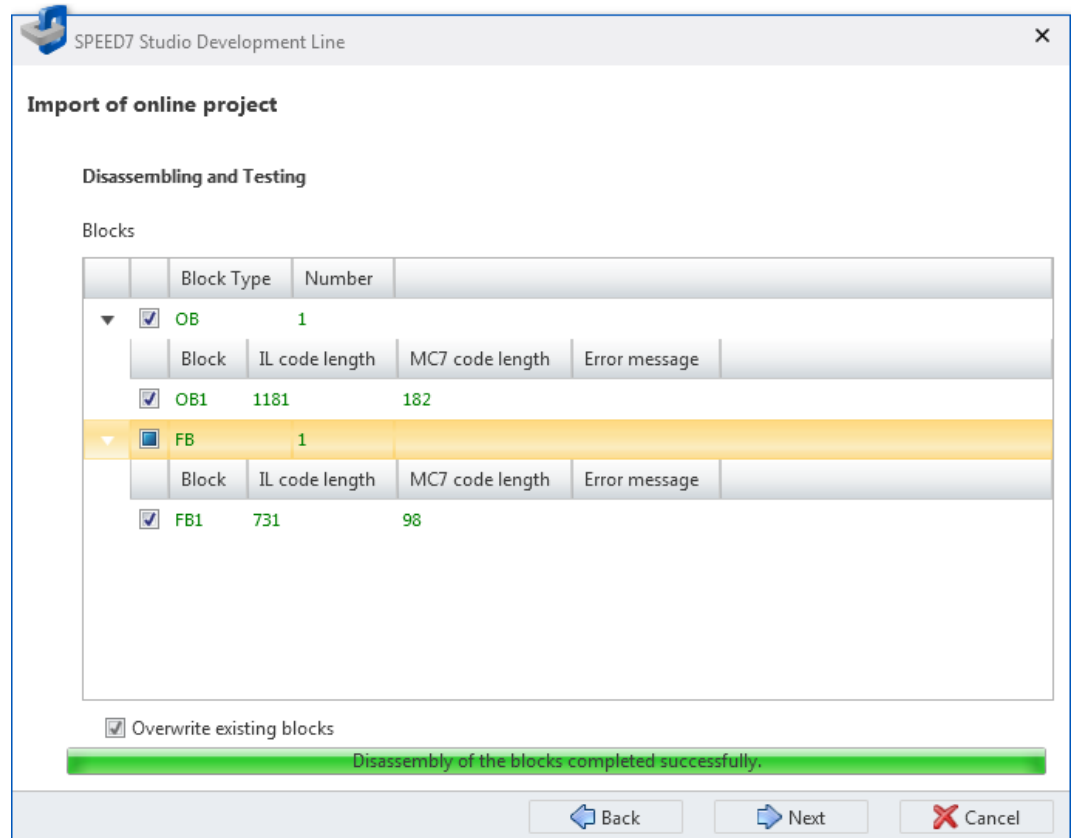


Fig. 212: Load blocks from the device: Disassembled blocks

In the block list, the size of the IL code and the MC7 machine code is shown in kByte for each compiled block.

If a block cannot be read or compiled, an error message is displayed and the applicable block is not loaded.

5. ➔ Click on 'Next'.

⇒ The blocks are transferred from the control to the project. Present blocks will be overwritten in this process. The result is displayed in a table.

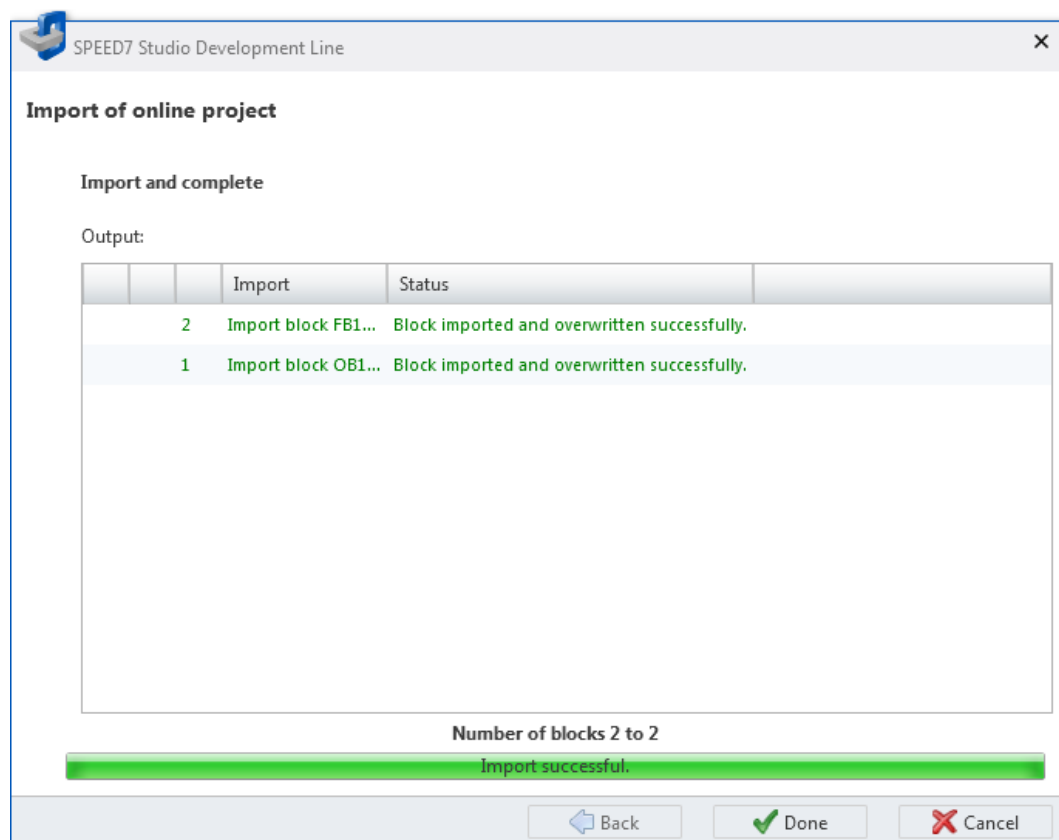


Fig. 213: Load blocks from the device: Result

8.20 Compare blocks

With this function, you can compare blocks in the control (online) with blocks in the projects (offline). The following block types can be compared:

- Organisation blocks (OB)
- Function blocks (FB)
- Functions (FC)
- Data blocks (DB)
- Instance data block (DI)

You need to create a communication connection to the control. ↪ [Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings \(PLC\)' page 113](#)

1. ➔ Select one of the following options:

- **Menu bar:** Select 'Device ➔ Compare blocks'.
- **Project tree:** Right-click with the mouse button on the desired control (PLC) and select 'Compare blocks'.

⇒ The dialogue window 'Determine the blocks of the control' will open.

SPEED7 Studio attempts to create a connection to the control. The result is displayed in the dialogue window under 'Communication status'.

If no connection can be established, you cannot compare the blocks. Check if the connection cables are connected correctly. If required, check the communication settings. ↪ [Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings \(PLC\)' page 113](#)

Compare blocks

2. Click on 'Next'.

⇒ The first step of the block comparison is carried out. The blocks in the control are compared to the blocks in the project and displayed in a list. The block list displays differences in the number of blocks with the block numbers.

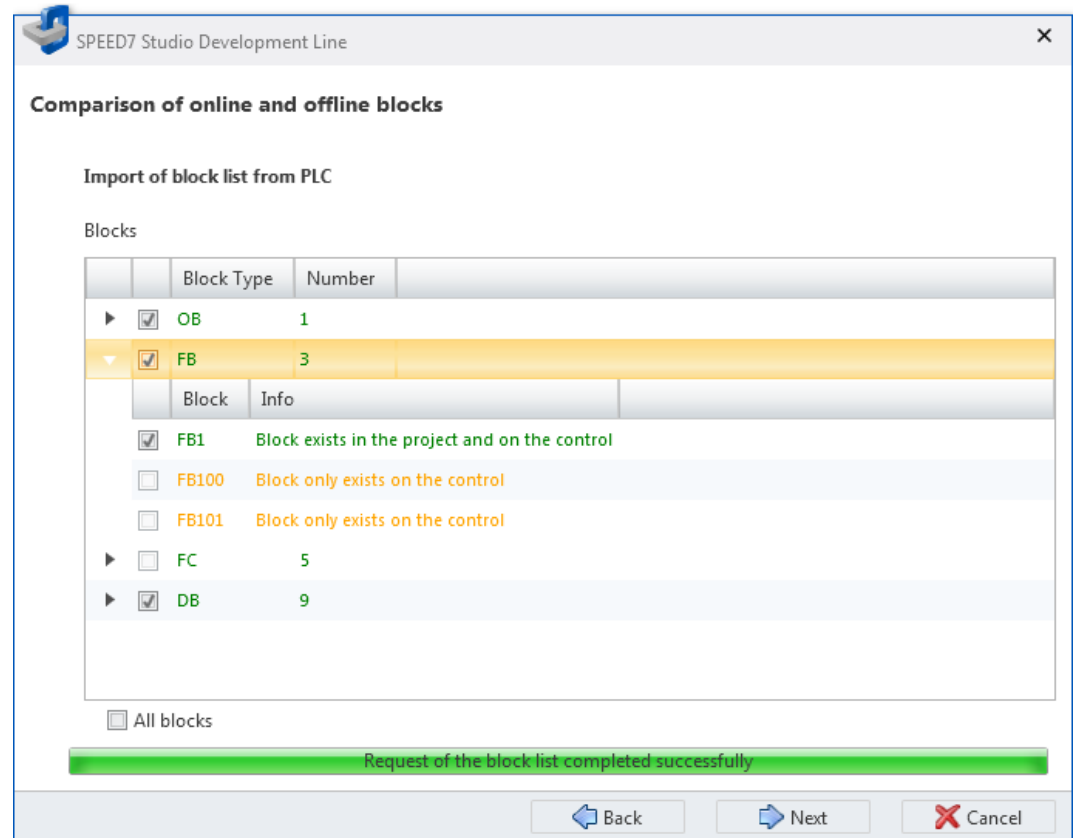


Fig. 214: Compare blocks: Block list

3. Click on ► in the block list to show all blocks of one block type. Click on ▼ to hide blocks.

Select the blocks you want to compare. You can only compare the blocks which are both present in the project and in the control.

Activate 'All blocks' if you want to compare all listed blocks.

4. Click on 'Next'.

- ⇒ The second step of the block comparison is carried out. The program code of the selected blocks is read and disassembled from the control, i.e. compiled from binary coded machine language in readable program code.

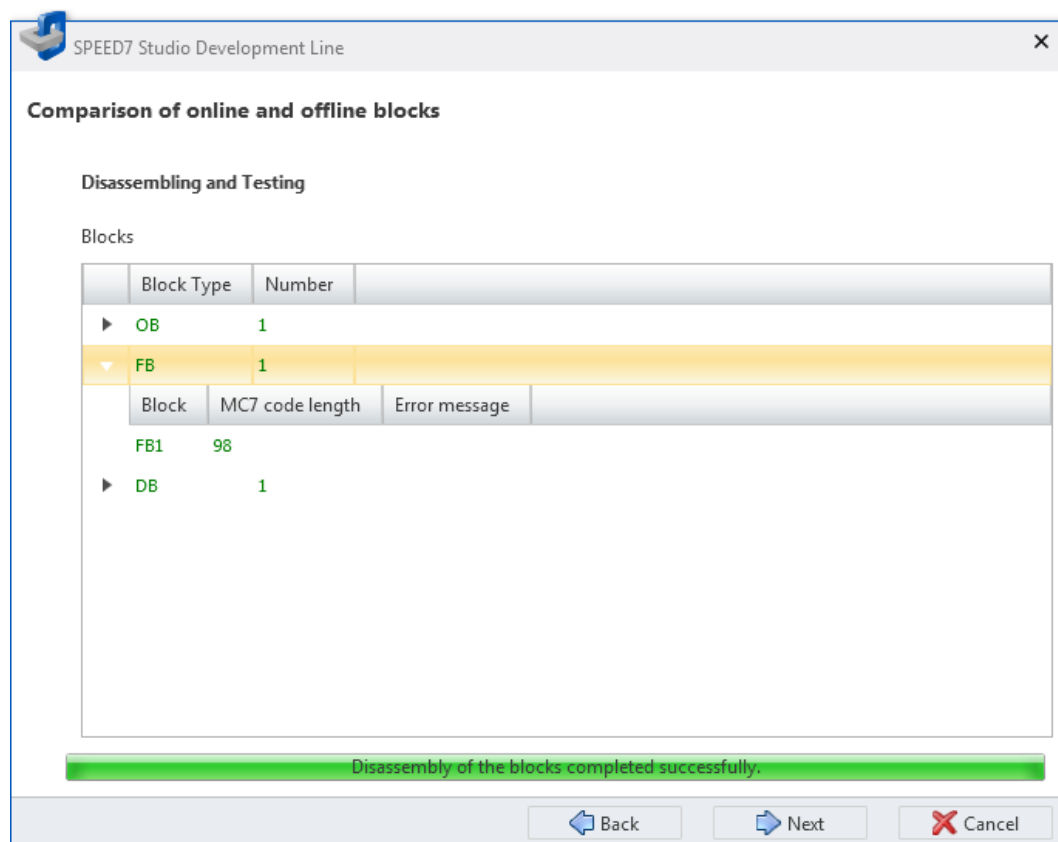


Fig. 215: Compare blocks: Disassembled blocks

In the block list, the size of the MC7 machine code is shown in kByte for each compiled block.

If a block cannot be read or compiled, an error message is displayed and the comparison cannot be continued.

5. Click on 'Next'.

- ⇒ The content of the selected blocks is compared. The result is displayed in a table.

Watch block

Result of block comparison

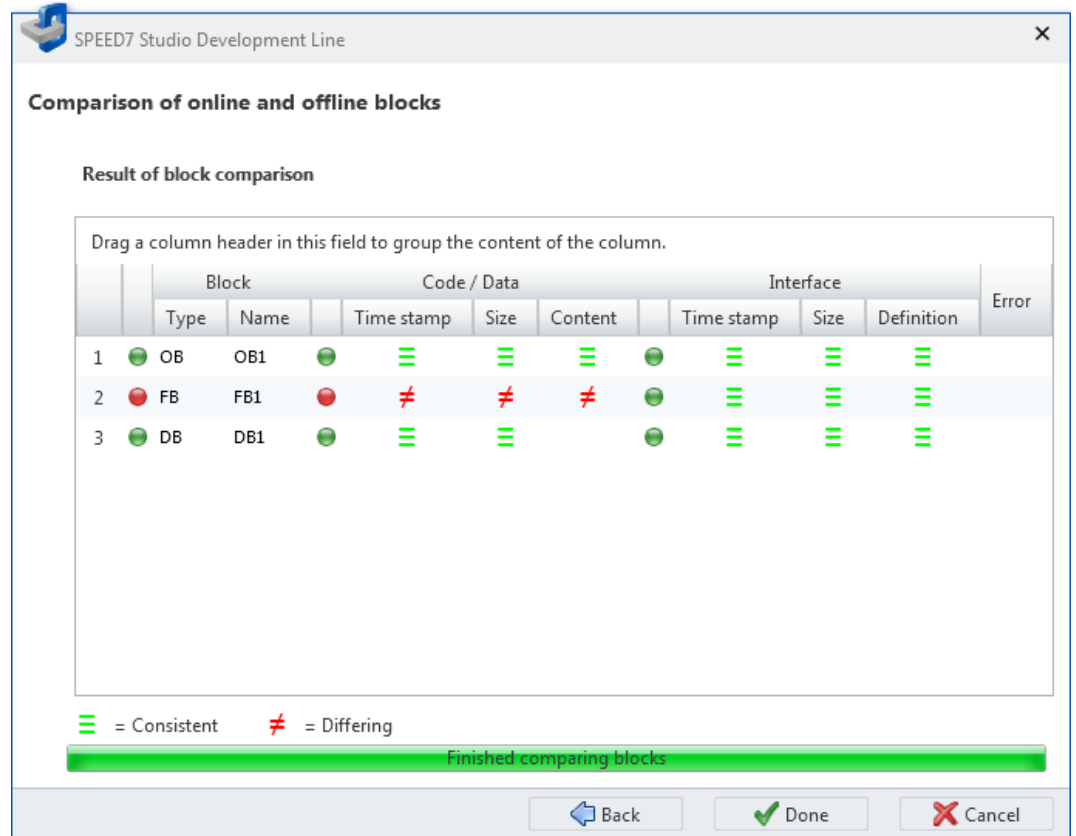


Fig. 216: Compare blocks: Result of block comparison

The table shows which properties of a block match ▬ or differ ▬ .

'Type' – Block type

'Name' – Block number

'Time stamp (Code/Data)' – Date and time of the last change in the program code (instruction section)

'Size (Code/Data)' – Length of the program code (OB, FB, FC) or size of the data range (DB, DI)

'Content' – Program code (instruction section)

'Time stamp (interface)' – Date and time of the last variable change (declaration section)

'Size (interface)' – Size of the declaration section, number of the variables

'Definition' – Variable declaration (declaration section)

'Error' – Error message, e.g. if it wasn't possible to compile the block



8.21 Watch block

With this function, you can watch the variables of the current block in the block editor (monitoring).

Switch block watch On/Off

The block to be watched must be present in the control.

You need to create a communication connection to the control. ↪ *Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings (PLC)' page 113*

1. ➤ Open the block (OB, FB, FC, DB) in the block editor.
2. ➤ Click on .
 - ⇒ The variable values are cyclically read from the control and displayed. In monitoring mode, you cannot change the block.
3. ➤ Click on  again.
 - ⇒ The monitoring mode is terminated.

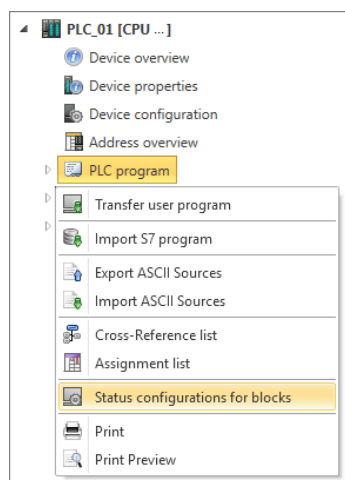
Set program status display

You can select variables for the 'Watch block' function and set the display of the variables. You can carry out these configurations for the current block or the entire project. ↪ *Chap. 8.21.1 'Set program status display' page 281*

8.21.1 Set program status display


Here, you can select variables for the 'Watch block' function and set the display of the variables. You can carry out these configurations for the current block or the entire project.

Configurations for the entire project



- In the project tree, right-click with the mouse button in the desired control at 'PLC program' on 'Status configurations for blocks'.
 - ⇒ A dialogue window will open; see below. All configurations will be applied to the entire project.

Configurations for the current block or the entire project

- Click on the  button in the toolbar of the block editor.
 - ⇒ A dialogue window will open; see below. In this dialogue window you can choose if the configurations are applied to the current block or the entire project.

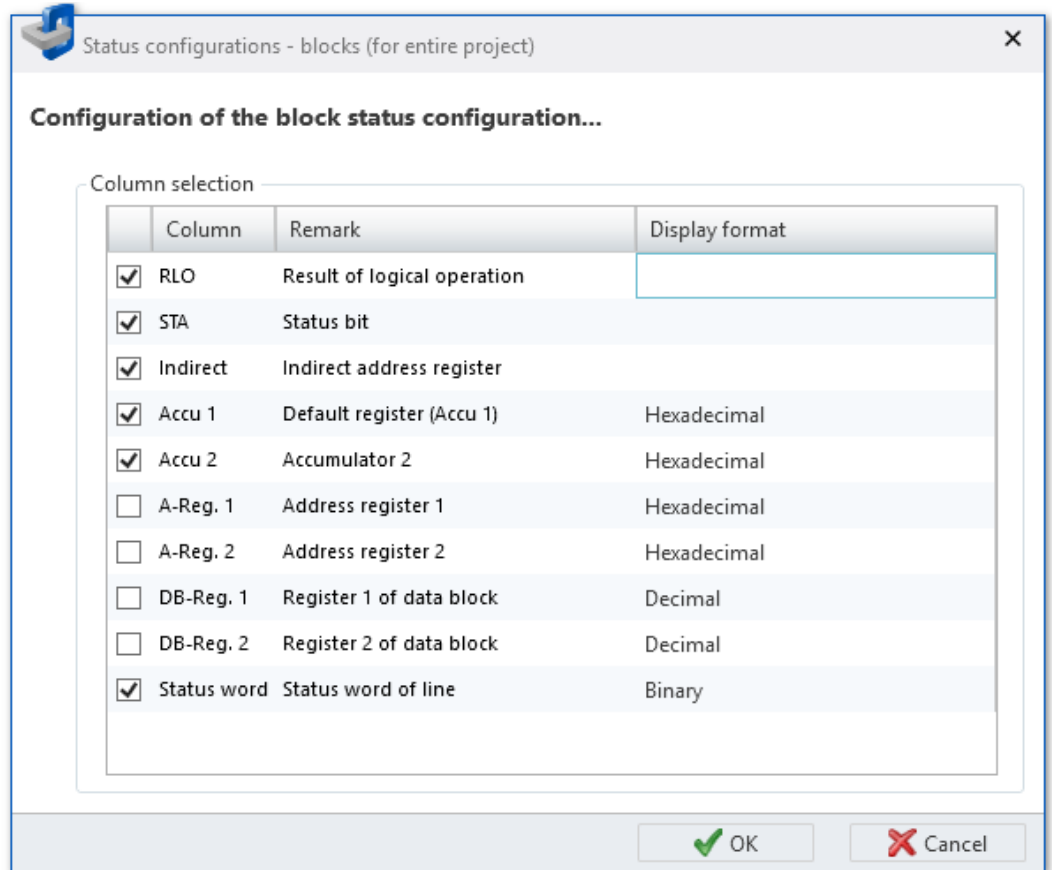


Fig. 217: Status configurations for blocks

1. Only if called from the block editor: Select by means of 'Use project configurations' or 'Use local configurations' if you want to edit the project configurations or the configurations of the current block.
2. Highlight the condition and status registers that you want to watch using the "Watch block" function.
3. Select the desired 'Display format', if required.
If you activate the 'Save as project setting' option, configurations of the current block are applied to the entire project.

8.21.2 Instruction list (IL)

On the right-hand side next to each IL row, the current result of logical operation (RLO), status bit (STA) and values of the accu and status word register are displayed.

				VKE	STA	Accu 1	Status word
1	UN	M	1.0	1	0	0050	00000000 00000011
2	L	SST#300MS		1	0	0030	00000000 00000011
3	SE	T	1	1	0	T#000.0	00000000 00000010
4	NOP	0		1	0	0030	00000000 00000010
5	NOP	0		1	0	0030	00000000 00000010
6	NOP	0		1	0	0030	00000000 00000010
7	U	T	1	1	1	T#000.0	00000000 00000111
8	L	SST#200MS		1	1	0020	00000000 00000111
9	SE	T	2	1	1	T#017.0	00000000 00000110

Fig. 218: Watch block in IL

You can change the display of the number values for the current block as follows:

- Right-click with the mouse button on a table column and select the desired display format.

The display of binary states in the columns RLO and STA cannot be changed.

You can also apply the display to the entire project. ↪ *Chap. 8.21.1 'Set program status display' page 281*

Move program status display

You can move the status display to the left or right.

1. ➤ Click on the status display and hold down the mouse button.
 2. ➤ Move the mouse to the left or right to the desired position.
 3. ➤ Release the mouse button.
- ⇒ If you move the status display completely to the left, the program lines are arranged on the right-hand side of the status display.

8.21.3 Function block diagram (FBD)

If you want to watch certain areas, you can highlight networks or elements.

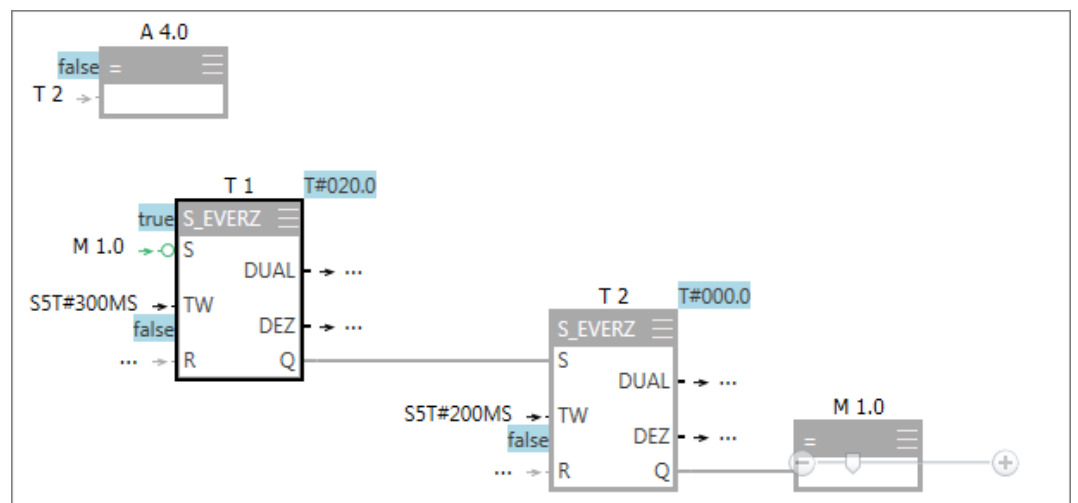


Fig. 219: Watch block in FBD

Group	Presentation	Meaning
element	Green	Element is run through: State TRUE
	Grey	Element is run through: State FALSE - or - Determination of the state not possible

Add watch table

Group	Presentation	Meaning
	Shaded grey	The buffer memory size is not sufficient to be able to display the element.
Variable value	Blue background	Variable value at the input of the element or on the right-hand side of the element

8.21.4 Data block (DB)

The current values are displayed in the column 'Actual value (Online)'.

	Address	Name	Data type	Default value	Actual value (Offline)	Actual value (Online)
	0.0	IN	BOOL	FALSE	FALSE	- TRUE
	2.0	PT	TIME	T#0MS	T#0MS	- T#50S
	6.0	Q	BOOL	FALSE	FALSE	- FALSE
	8.0	ET	TIME	T#0MS	T#0MS	- T#19S944MS
	12.0	STATE	BYTE	B#16#00	B#16#00	- B#16#01
	14.0	STIME	TIME	T#0MS	T#0MS	- T#14D21H26M54S597MS
	18.0	ATIME	TIME	T#0MS	T#0MS	- T#14D21H27M14S541MS

Fig. 220: Watch data block

Presentation	Meaning
Green	Data type BOOL: The current value is TRUE
Red	Current value - or - Data type BOOL: The current value is FALSE

8.22 Add watch table

Variables can be watched (read) and controlled (write) in the watch table. You can set which variables of a CPU you want to read and control. If necessary, you can create several watch tables.

Add watch table

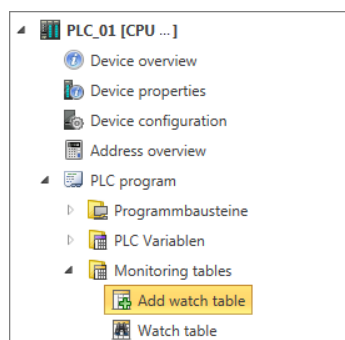


Fig. 221: Add new watch table

1. In the project tree within a control, click on 'PLC program' on 'Watch tables' → 'Add watch table'.
⇒ The dialogue window 'Add watch table' will open.
2. 'Name': Enter a different name, if required.
3. 'Comment': Enter a comment, if required, e.g. remark or explanation
4. Click on 'OK'.



If you select the 'Open edit window' option and click on 'OK', the "Watch table" editor opens. ↪ Chap. 8.23 'Watch table' page 285

⇒ The watch table is added and displayed in the project tree.

8.23 Watch table

Variables can be watched (read) and controlled (write) in the watch table. You can set which variables of a CPU you want to read and control.

To watch or control variables, you must create a communication connection to the control.
↪ Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings (PLC)' page 113

➔ To open an existing watch table, in the project tree within a control double click on the desired watch table in the 'PLC program' at 'Watch tables'.

You receive the following display when the ungrouped format is selected. ↪ 'Grouping variables' page 287

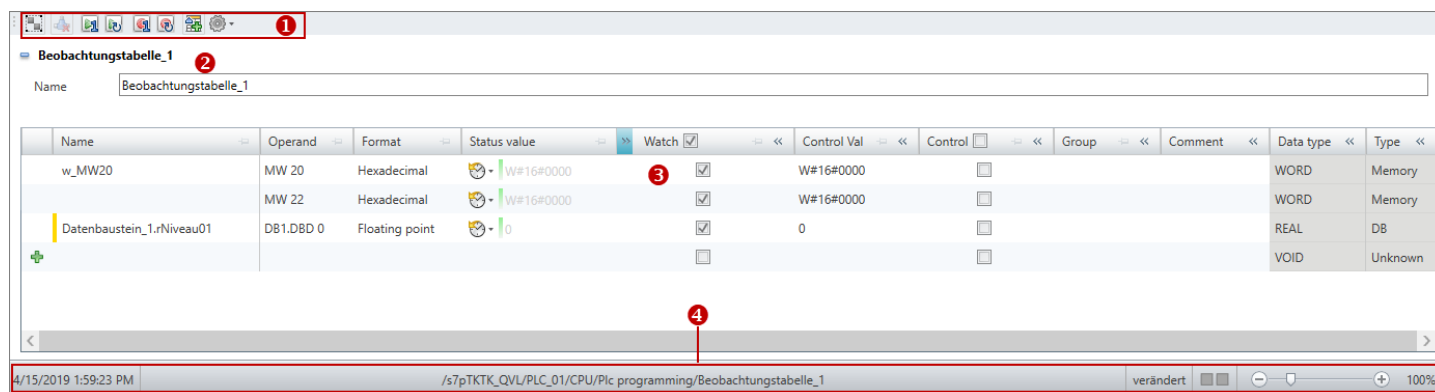




Fig. 222: "Watch table" editor

- (1) Toolbar
- (2) Information on and configurations of the watch table
- (3) Edit watch table
- (4) Information bar

Showing/hiding input areas





You can show or hide the input areas:

-  Shows/opens the input area
-  Hides/closes the input area

Watch table

- ▶ Hide slave objects
- ▼ Show slave objects

(1) Toolbar

-  **List group / ungroup:** Presentation of the watch table grouped or ungrouped [↗ further information page 290](#)
-  **Graphic display of the status values:** The development of the status value is shown in a time diagram in the 'Status value' column.
-  **Call status value(s) on a one-time basis:** The status values are read from the control on a one-time basis and are shown in the 'Status value' column.
-  **Call status value(s) cyclic:** The status values are read from the control cyclically and are shown in the 'Status value' column.







DANGER!

Danger in writing control values!

Changing variables with control values during ongoing plant operations can lead to malfunctions or programming errors that can cause serious material and personal damage!

- Ensure that no dangerous conditions can occur before you write the control values.

-  **Writing control value(s) on a one-time basis:** The control values of the selected variables are transferred to the control on a one-time basis.
-  **Writing control value(s) cyclically:** The control values of the selected variables are transferred to the control with each PLC cycle.
-  **Add address range:** Adds several consecutive operands into the watch table
-  **Configurations:**
 Expert mode — When this mode is activated, the prefixes to the operands and the button for displaying the history are shown.
 Refresh sorting — Refreshes all line sortings [↗ further information page 290](#)

(2) Information on and configurations of the watch table

Here you can change the name of the watch table, enter a comment and set the refresh rate.



Comment field: Here you can show or hide the comment field.



Refresh rate: Here you can show or hide the input field for the refresh rate. You can enter the time interval in milliseconds for the cyclical display of the status values in the 'Refresh rate' input field.

(3) Edit watch table

In the table, you can set which variables of the CPU you want to read and control.

'1st Column' – Selection area

'Name' – Symbolic address of the variables

'Operand' – Address of the variables

'Format' – Display/input format of the status and control value

'Status value' – Current value of the variables read from the control [↗ further information page 289](#)

'Watch' – The status values are shown for the variables selected here.

'Control Value' – Value to be written in the control [↗ further information page 289](#)

'Control' – In the control, the variables selected here are overwritten with the control value.

'Group' – Sort and display table entries by group [↗ 'Grouping variables' page 287](#)

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

'Data type' – Data type of the variables

'Type' – Operand area of the variables, e.g. input, output, memory

Add variable

	Operand	Alias	<<	Format	Status value
+	MW40			Please select...	False

Fig. 223: Add variable

You can make new entries in the first line of the table. You can recognise this row by the icon +.

1. Click on the input field of the 'Operand' column and enter the operand, e.g. MW 40.
- or -
If you want to use a variable from a variable table ([↗ Chap. 8.11.4 'Variable tables and "Standard project configuration" page 251](#)), click on the input field of the 'Alias' column and enter the alias name.
2. Click on the 'Format' column in the adjacent field and select the desired display/input format for the status and control value, e.g. "Decimal".
3. Highlight the the 'Watch' column if the status value for this variable is to be shown.
4. If you want to enter a comment on the variables, click on the 'Comment' field and enter the comment.
5. If you want to allocate the variable to a group, select the desired group in the 'Group' column or enter a new group name into the input field.
6. Confirm your input with [Enter].
⇒ The new variable is inserted into the table. If you have allocated the variable to a group, the variable is inserted within this group.

Grouping variables

You can have the table entries sorted and displayed by group.

You can create a new group along with a new variable. [↗ 'Add variable' page 287](#)

You can allocate variables to a group subsequently:


1. Click on the 'Group' column and select the desired group or enter a new group name into the input field.
2. Confirm your input with [Enter].
⇒ The variable is inserted within the group.

Watch table

Changing variables

You can change existing variables in the table.

- ➔ Click on the input field which you want to edit. Changes can be entered directly. For some fields, changes can be made via a selection list.

 *Fields highlighted in grey cannot be changed.*

Deleting variables

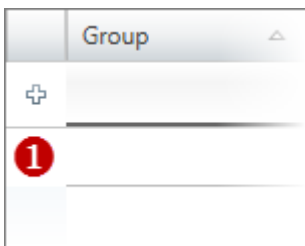


Fig. 224: (1) First column

1. ➔ In the first column, highlight the variable line which you want to delete.
2. ➔ Press *[Del]*.

A dialogue window will open, where you can select whether you want to delete the variable.

⇒ The variable is deleted and removed from the table.

Move variable with "Drag & drop"

1. ➔ In the first column, highlight the variable line which you want to move.
2. ➔ Press and hold the mouse button while dragging the line to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable line is inserted.

Copy variable with "Drag & drop"

1. ➔ In the first column, highlight the variable line which you want to copy.
2. ➔ Press and hold the mouse button and the key *[Ctrl]* while dragging the line to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable line is copied and inserted. The new variable has the same properties as the initial variable. The operand is adopted and numbered consecutively.

Move several variables with "Drag & drop"

1. ➔ Press and hold the key *[Ctrl]* while highlighting all desired variable lines in the first column.
 - or -
 - In order to highlight a row of variable lines, press and hold the key *[shift]* and click on the second column of the first and the last line.
2. ➔ Press and hold the mouse button while dragging the lines to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable lines are inserted.

Copy several variables with "Drag & drop"

1. ➔ Press and hold the key *[Ctrl]* while highlighting all desired variable lines in the first column.
 - or -
 - In order to highlight a row of variable lines, press and hold the key *[shift]* and click on the second column of the first and the last line.
2. ➔ Press and hold the mouse button and the key *[Ctrl]* while dragging the lines to the desired position.
 - ⇒ The variable lines are copied and inserted. The new variables have the same properties as the initial variables. the operands are adopted and numbered consecutively.

Watch variables

Status value	Watch
False	<input type="checkbox"/>
DW#16#FB2D5DCA	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
DW#16#0018B153	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Variables can be watched (read) in the watch table. For this, a communication connection must be created with the control.

1. In the 'Watch' column, highlight all the variables you want to watch.

If you highlight the title row of the 'Watch' column, all variables in the table are watched.

2. Click on  to read the data from the control on a one-time basis.


- or -

Click on  to read the data from the control cyclically.

⇒ The data are shown in the 'Status value' column.

Presentation	Meaning
Green	Trend display: The value increases
Red	Trend display: The value decreases



If you activate the graphical display of the status values , the development of the status value is shown in a time diagram.

Control variables

Variables can be controlled (written) in the watch table. For this, a communication connection must be created with the control.



DANGER!

Danger in writing control values!

Changing variables with control values during ongoing plant operations can lead to malfunctions or programming errors that can cause serious material and personal damage!

- Ensure that no dangerous conditions can occur before you write the control values.

1. In the 'Control' column, highlight all the variables you want to control.

If you highlight the title row of the 'Control' column, all variables in the table are watched.

2. Enter the desired control value for all the highlighted variables in the input field of the 'Control Value' column.

3. Click on  to write all the control values in the control on a one-time basis.

- or -

Click on  to write all the control values in the control with each PLC cycle.

⇒ The data are shown in the 'Status value' column.



Before control values are transferred to the control and are written there, a security notice will open and you can stop the process. If you activate the option "Don't show message again", this security notice does not open anymore and control values are written in the control immediately without enquiry.

Change sorting

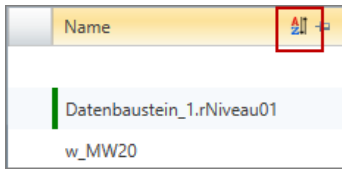


Fig. 225: Alphabetical sorting

The lines in the watch table are sorted in the order of the input. You can also sort the data in alphabetical order.

1. ➤ In the title row of the table, click on the column (e.g. “Name”) according to which you would like to sort the watch table alphabetically.


To sort the data alphabetically in the converse (descending) order, click on this column again.

2. ➤ To switch off the sorting, click on  ‘Configurations’ and select ‘Refresh sorting’.

You can sort other columns alphabetically on a subordinate basis if you press the *[Ctrl]* key before you click on the desired column title.

Change presentation of the watch table

You can present the watch table grouped or ungrouped:

➤ Click on  in the toolbar (1) to change the presentation.

In the grouped presentation, you can show or hide entire groups:

- ▶ Hide slave group
- ▼ Show slave group

8.24 Logic analysis

8.24.1 Overview



This function is only included in the license SPEED7 Studio PRO and not in the license SPEED7 Studio BASIC.

With the logic analysis, you can record the signals of a control for each cycle.

In order to open the logic analysis, select ‘View ➔ Logic analysis’.

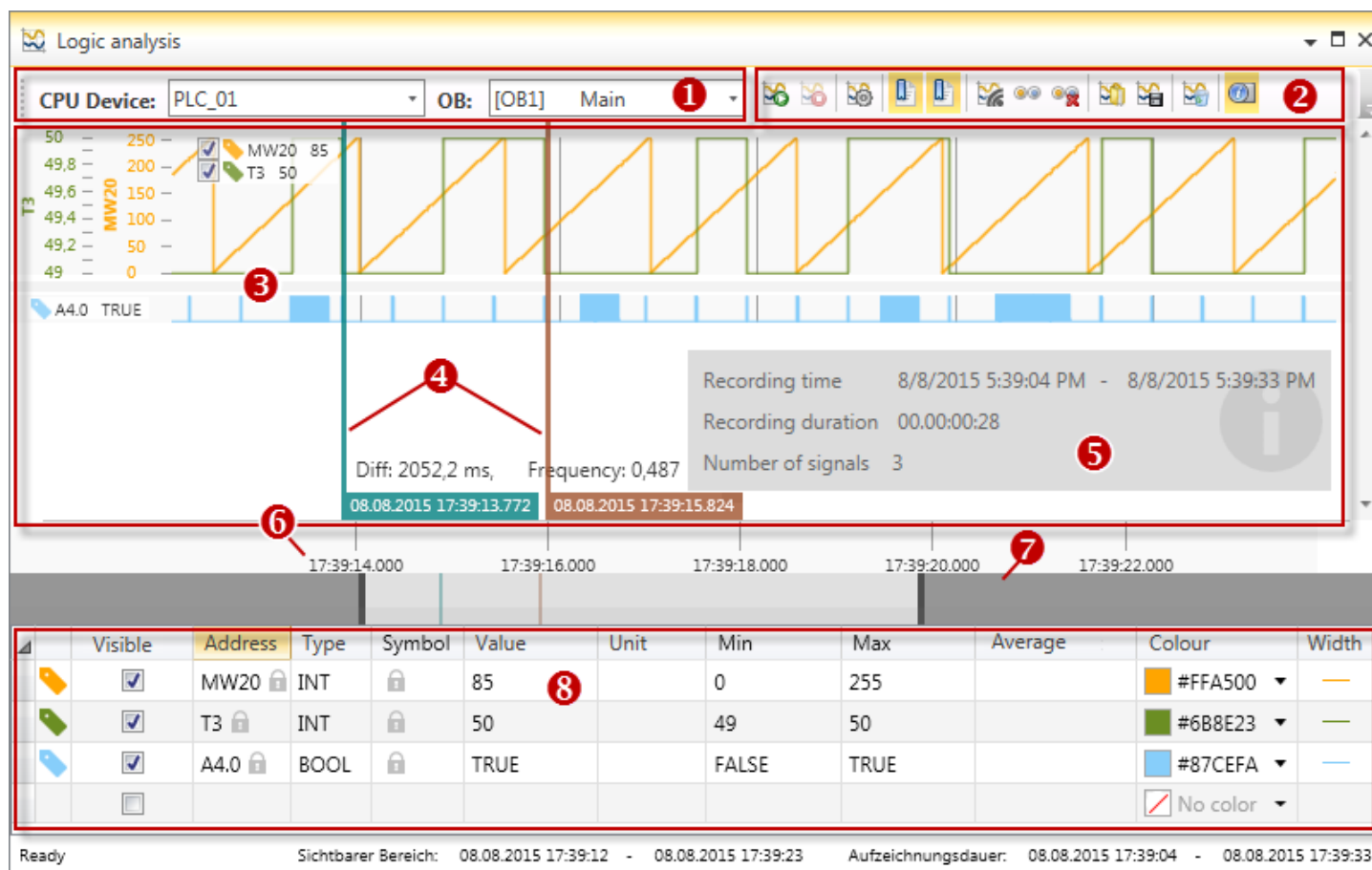


Fig. 226: Logic analysis

- (1) Control and block
 (2) Toolbar
 (3) Records
 (4) Cursors
 (5) Information about the record
 (6) Point in time/period of the record
 (7) Zoom-bar
 (8) Operand table

(1) Control and block

Here, you can select the control and the program block for the logic analysis.

(2) Toolbar

Commands you need for executing the logic analysis, are provided in the toolbar.



Start recording: Starts recording the signal states.



Stop recording: Terminates recording the signal states.



Configurations: Opens the dialogue window configuration for the logic analysis.



Show main cursor: Shows/hides the cursor to read a point in time.



Display 2nd cursor: Shows/hides the cursor for time measurements.



Live display: The display will automatically create an afterimage during recording as soon as the recorded signals exceed the visible area.








Show all nodes: Scales the visible area in a way that all recorded signals are visible.



Delete all nodes: Deletes all recorded signals.



Load recording: Opens a stored record. [Chap. 8.24.10 'Saving and opening a record': page 299](#)

-  **Save recording:** Saves the last record onto a data carrier. ↪ *Chap. 8.24.10 'Saving and opening a record:  * page 299
-  **Delete all (reset):** Deletes the operand table and all recorded signals.
-  **Show additional information:** Shows/hides information about the record.


(3) Records


In the upper record area, all operands are recorded which are bigger than one bit (e.g. BYTE; WORD). The records are shown as line diagrams.

In the lower record area, all bit operands are recorded (e.g. single inputs/outputs).

(4) Cursors

You can show two cursors within the recorded diagrams. You can move the cursors in order to read the point in time or to measure the time.

↪ *Chap. 8.24.6 'Show time * page 295

↪ *Chap. 8.24.7 'Measure a period of time * page 296

(5) Information about the record

Displays information about the status, the number of signals and time and duration of the current record.

(6) Point in time/period of the record

Displays time of day from the control at the moment of the record.

(7) Zoom-bar

With the zoom-bar, you can change the section from the record.

↪ *Chap. 8.24.8 'Change section' page 297*












(8) Operand table

You can determine operands to be recorded.

↪ *Chap. 8.24.3 'Edit operand table' page 293*


8.24.2 Carry out logic analysis

In order to carry out a logic analysis, proceed as follows:

- 1.**  Create and compile the user program. ↪ *Chap. 8.16 'Compile user program' page 267*
- 2.**  Transfer the hardware configuration and the user program to the control. ↪ *Chap. 8.18 'Transfer the hardware configuration and user program to the control' page 271*
- 3.**  Open the logic analysis via 'View → Logic analysis'.
- 4.**  Select the control and the program block for the logic analysis. ↪ '(1) Control and block' page 291
- 5.**  Add operands. ↪ *Chap. 8.24.3 'Edit operand table' page 293*
- 6.**  Make configurations on the logic analysis, if required, e.g. adapting the ring buffer size. ↪ *Chap. 8.24.11 'Make configurations * page 299
- 7.**  Start recording. ↪ *Chap. 8.24.4 'Start recording * page 294
 - ⇒ Signals are read from the control in each program cycle and are displayed as diagram.
- 8.**  Terminate recording. ↪ *Chap. 8.24.5 'Stop recording * page 295

9. ➤ If required, determine the point or period of time for a record.

↳ Chap. 8.24.6 'Show time ' page 295

↳ Chap. 8.24.7 'Measure a period of time ' page 296

8.24.3 Edit operand table

In the operand table, you can determine operands to be recorded. The following operand areas can be recorded:

- Inputs (E)
- Outputs (A)
- Memory (M)
- Data ranges (D)
- Timers (T)
- Counter (Z)
















	Visible	Address	Type	Symbol	Value	Unit	Min	Max	Average	Colour	Width
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	MW20 	INT		196		0	255		 #FFA500 ▾	
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	T3 	INT		49		49	50		 #6B8E23 ▾	
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	A4.0 	BOOL		FALSE		FALSE	TRUE		 #87CEFA ▾	

Fig. 227: Operand table

 – Move operands, change order  further information page 294

'Visible' – Show/hide recorded diagram

'Address' – Address of the operand

'Type' – Data type of the operand

'Value' 'Symbol' – Symbolic name of the operand

– Current value of the operand during a record or value of the operand at the current cursor position (not editable)

'Unit' – Any measuring unit, e.g. volt, litre, metre, etc.

'Min.' – Smallest value of the operand within the record (not editable)


'Max.' – Biggest value of the operand within the record (not editable)

'Average' – Average value of the operand within the record (not editable)

'Colour' – Colour of the operand in the diagram of the record

'Width' – Line width of the operand in the diagram of the record

Add operands

	Visible	Address	Type
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	

Each line in the operand table can contain one operand.

1. ➤ Double-click on the empty input field in the 'Address' column.

- or -

Highlight the input field and press **[F2]** in order to edit the field.

2. ➤ Enter an operand, e.g. A4.0, EB8, MW20, T1.


3. ➤ Press **[Enter]**.




⇒ The operand and the matching data type are entered into the table line. In the column 'Colour', the colour for the diagram of the record is determined.

4. ➤ If required, you can change further configurations, e.g. change colour or line width.

5. ➤ Finish your input with *[Enter]*.
 - ⇒ A new (empty) line will be added to the operand table.





If recording is active or if data has already been recorded, you cannot edit, delete or move operands. In the input field 'Address', the symbol  is displayed.

In order to be able to edit, delete or move operands, finish the record with  and delete all recorded data with .  '(2) Toolbar' page 291


Deleting operands

1. ➤ Click into the operand line you want to delete.
2. ➤ Press *[Del]*.
 - ⇒ The operand line is removed from the table.


Deleting all operands

- Click on the  button.  '(2) Toolbar' page 291
- ⇒ The operands are removed from the table.

Move operands, change order


1. ➤ Click in the operand line you want to move onto the symbol  and hold the mouse button pressed down.
2. ➤ Move the operand line upwards or downwards to the desired position.
3. ➤ Release the mouse button.
 - ⇒ The operand line is moved. The order of the operand in the recording area is changed.

Show/hide operands

You can show or hide operands.  *Chap. 8.24.9 'Show/hide operands' page 299*

8.24.4 Start recording

To record signals, you must create a communication connection to the control.  *Chap. 6.20.2 'Communication settings (PLC)' page 113*

- Click on the  button.
 - ⇒ Additional program blocks are transferred to the control. With these blocks, the recorded values are entered into a ring buffer and read.
- The record is started. Signals are read from the control in each program cycle and are displayed in a diagram.

Memory overflow

If values are written faster than they are read, the ring buffer will flow over. Overflows are highlighted in red in the diagram and the zoom-bar.

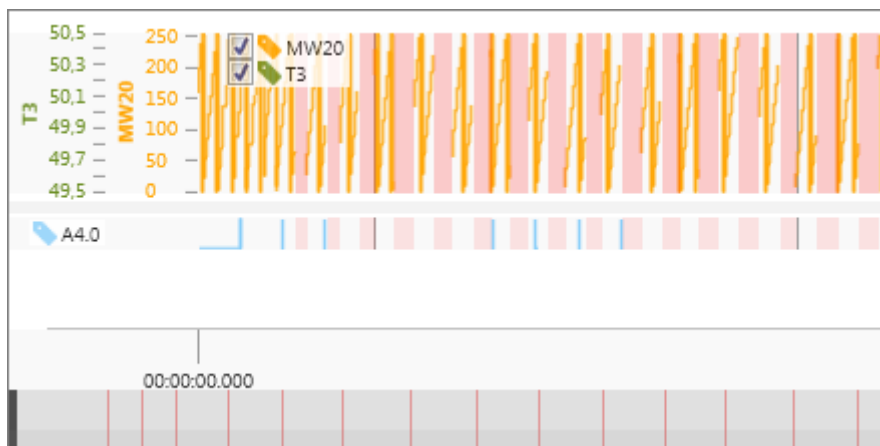


Fig. 228: Overflow of the ring buffer

To prevent memory overflows, increase the 'cyclic device time' or the 'size of the ring buffer'. ↪ Chap. 8.24.11 'Make configurations' page 299



In case of time-critical applications, not all overflows are highlighted in red in the diagram and the zoom-bar.

8.24.5 Stop recording 🛑

➔ Click on the 🛑 button.

⇒ The record is stopped.

The original user program – without additional program blocks for the ring buffer – is restored in the control.

8.24.6 Show time 🕒

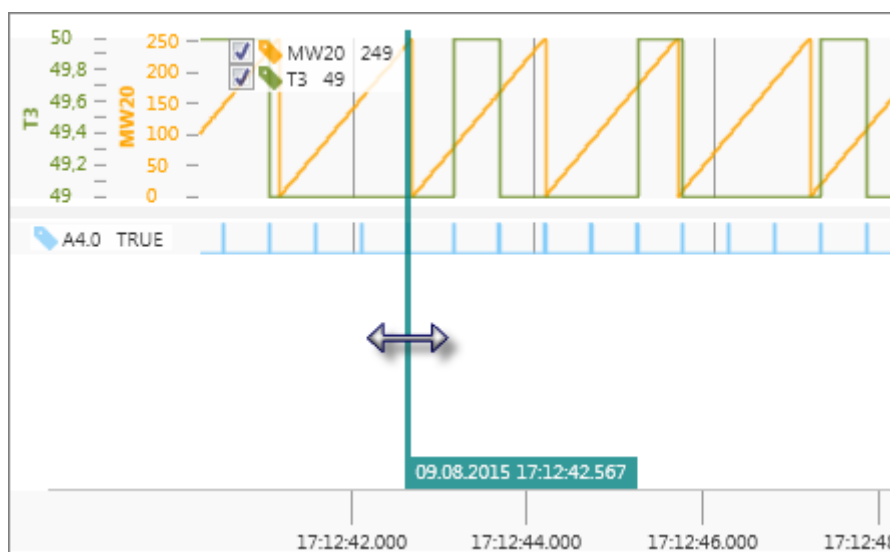



Fig. 229: Show and move cursor

In order to show a point in time within a record, use the cursor.

1. Click on one of the two buttons .
 - ⇒ A cursor is shown.
2. Drag & drop the cursor to the left or right to the desired position.
 - ⇒ At the lower end, date and time from the control of the current cursor position is shown.

In the record and in the column 'value' in the operand table, values of the current cursor position are shown for each operand.



You can insert the cursor already during recording.

8.24.7 Measure a period of time

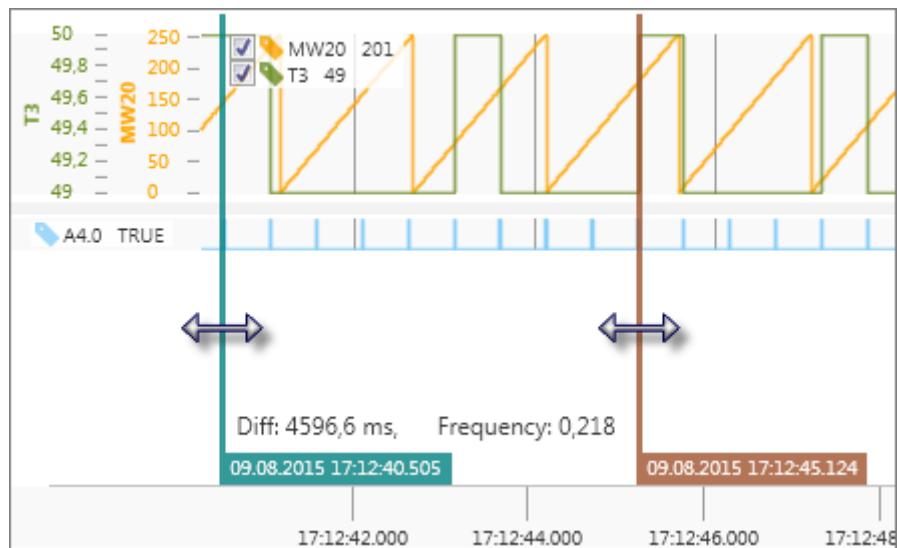




Fig. 230: Show and move cursors

In order to measure the time within a record, you can use both cursors.

1. Click on the left  button.
2. Click on the right  button.
 - ⇒ Both cursors are shown.
3. Drag & drop the cursors to the left or right to the desired position.
 - ⇒ At the lower end, date and time from the control of the current cursor position is shown.

In addition, 'Diff:' shows the time difference between both cursors.
'Frequency:', shows the frequency in hertz.



You can insert both cursors already during recording.

8.24.8 Change section

With the zoom-bar, you can change the visible area (y-axis) in the record.

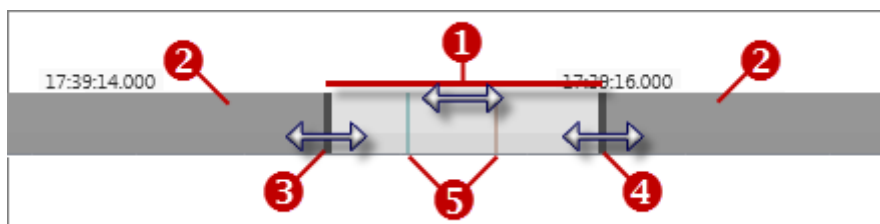


Fig. 231: Zoom-bar

- (1) Visible area for the record
- (2) Not visible area for the record
- (3) Slider left
- (4) Slider right
- (5) Cursors (measure a period of time)

Move visible area

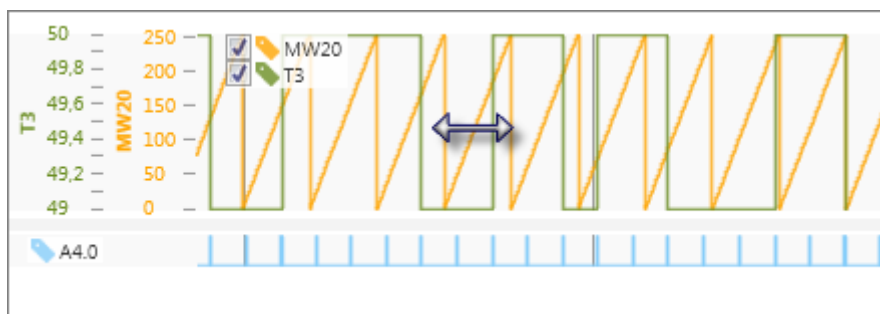


Fig. 232: Move visible area

1. Right-click with the mouse in the recorded diagram hold the mouse button pressed down.
2. Drag the mouse to the left or right to the desired position.
3. Release the mouse button.

- or -

1. Click in the zoom-bar into the visible area (light grey) and hold the mouse button pressed down.
2. Drag the area to the left or right into the desired position.
3. Release the mouse button.

- or -

- Right-click with the mouse button in the zoom-bar on the desired position.

Change size of the section (resolution)

- ➔ Rotate the mouse wheel in the recorded diagram upwards, in order to extend the visible area.
- Rotate the mouse wheel in the recorded diagram downwards, in order to compress the visible area.

- or -

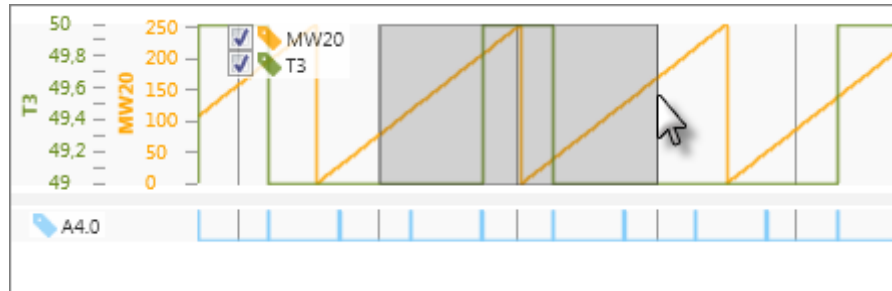


Fig. 233: Change size of the section

1. ➔ Click to the desired position in the recorded diagram and hold the mouse button pressed down.
2. ➔ Drag the mouse to the left or right until the desired section size is reached.
 - ⇒ The section is marked in grey.
3. ➔ Release the mouse button.
 - ⇒ The visible area is stretched.

- or -

1. ➔ Click in the zoom-bar on one of both sliders and hold the mouse button pressed down.
2. ➔ Drag the slider to the left or right.
3. ➔ Release the mouse button.
 - ⇒ The visible area is compressed or stretched.

Show the entire record

- ➔ Double-click on the recorded diagram.
 - ⇒ The diagrams are compressed to the length of the record.

Change the height of the diagrams

You can change the height of the diagrams (y-axis) of the upper recording area.

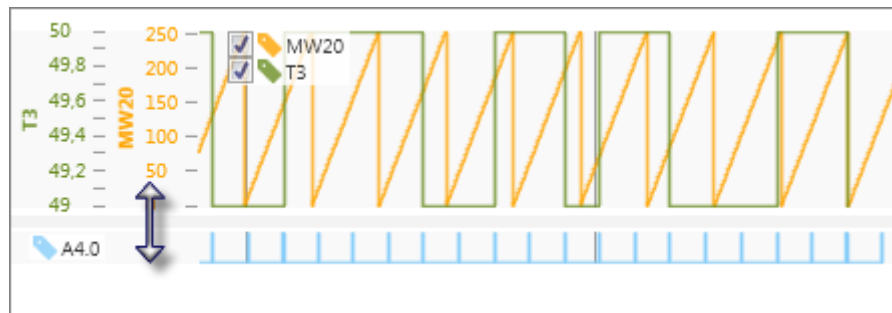


Fig. 234: Change the height of the diagrams

1. ➔ Click on the line between both recording areas and hold down the mouse button.
2. ➔ Drag the line upwards or downwards.

3. ➔ Release the mouse button.
 ⇒ The diagrams are compressed or stretched.



You can change sections already during recording. You should switch off the live display function for this purpose. ↪ '(2) Toolbar' page 291



8.24.9 Show/hide operands



- ➔ Click in the upper recording area or in the operand table in the column 'visible' on or .
- ⇒ The diagram of the recorded operand is hidden or shown.


8.24.10 Saving and opening a record:

A record will remain only until the project is closed or *SPEED7 Studio* is closed. If you want to use the recorded logic analysis even afterwards, save it and reopen it.

- ➔ Click on the  button in order to save the active record.
 Click on the  button in order to open a saved record.

8.24.11 Make configurations

Before starting a recording, you can configure the logic analysis.

- ➔ Click on the  button.
 ⇒ The dialogue window for configuration will open.

General configurations

'Active device' – Shows the selected control for the logic analysis ↪ '(1) Control and block' page 291

'Recording task (OB)' – Organisation block for recording the logic analysis



DANGER!

Danger when changing the cyclic device time!

Changing the cyclic device time will lead to longer program processing times and might cause malfunctions or program errors that can cause serious material and personal damage!

- Ensure that no dangerous conditions can occur before you set the cyclic device time bigger than 0 ms.

'Cyclic device time' – Cycle time of the control in milliseconds: Increase the cyclic device time when memory overflows occur during recording.



'Size of the ring buffer' – Size of the ring buffer for records in byte: Increase the ring buffer when memory overflows occur during recording.

'Evaluate signals at least once per second' – If the signal state of an operand does not change during the record, the diagram draws no line for this signal. Activate this option if you want to draw a line nevertheless.

Trigger configurations

You can define the start and duration of the record with a defined event (trigger signal).
 ↪ *further information page 300*

'*Activate trigger*' – Enable/disable trigger function:

- On: Recording starts when the defined event occurs after you have clicked on the  button.
- Off: Recording starts immediately, when you have clicked on the  button.

'*Activate pre-trigger*' – Record and show the progression of the signals before the trigger event

'*Number of PLC cycles*' – Number of PC cycles which should be recorded and shown before the trigger event

'*Activate post-trigger*' – Record and show the progression of the signals after the trigger event

'*Number of PLC cycles*' – Number of PC cycles which should be recorded and shown after the trigger event

Trigger definition

You can define the event for the trigger signal here. You can enter logical operations. The record is started if the result of the logical operation (RLO) is 1 (TRUE). The record is stopped if the result of the logical operation (RLO) is 0 (FALSE).

1. ➤ Under '*operation*', select the linking operation "And" or "Or".
2. ➤ In order to negate the logical operation, activate the option '*negate*'.
3. ➤ Under '*trigger source*', select the desired operand for the logical operation.
 ⇒ The logical operation is shown under '*Step7 command*'.
4. ➤ If you want to enter further conditions click on the '+' button.
 ⇒ A new line for further logical operations is added.

If you disable the '*Active*' option in a logical operation line, this line is not analysed.

8.25 Import S7 program 

With this function, you can import Siemens STEP®7-Programs or WinPLC7 projects. Only the program blocks are imported but not the hardware configuration.

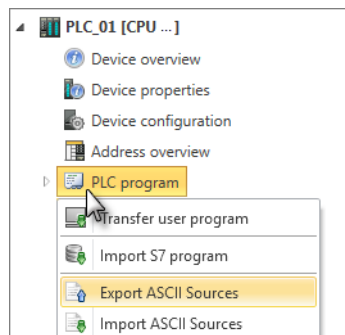
If you want to import an S7 program, a project must be open and a control must be contained in the project.

1. ➤ In the project tree, right-click with the mouse button in the desired control at '*PLC program*' on '*Import S7 program*'.
 ⇒ The dialogue window '*Import S7 program*' will open.
2. ➤ Under '*Project path*', select the directory and the project (S7P file) or the library (S7L file). Click on '*Next*'.
3. ➤ Select the station if necessary and click on '*Next*'.
4. ➤ Choose blocks to import. If existing blocks in your project are to be replaced by imported blocks, select the option '*Overwrite existing blocks*'. Click on '*Next*'.
 ⇒ The import process is started and the program blocks are imported. The individual steps and results are shown in the dialogue window.
5. ➤ Click on '*Done*'.

8.26 Export ASCII sources

You can export the user program in ASCII format in order to e.g. edit it with any text editor. You can save the blocks and the variable table of the user program in an export file in ASC or SEQ format.

If you want to export a user program, a project must be open and a control must be contained in the project.



1. In the project tree, right-click with the mouse button in the desired control at 'PLC program' on 'Export ASCII sources'.

⇒ A dialogue window will open.

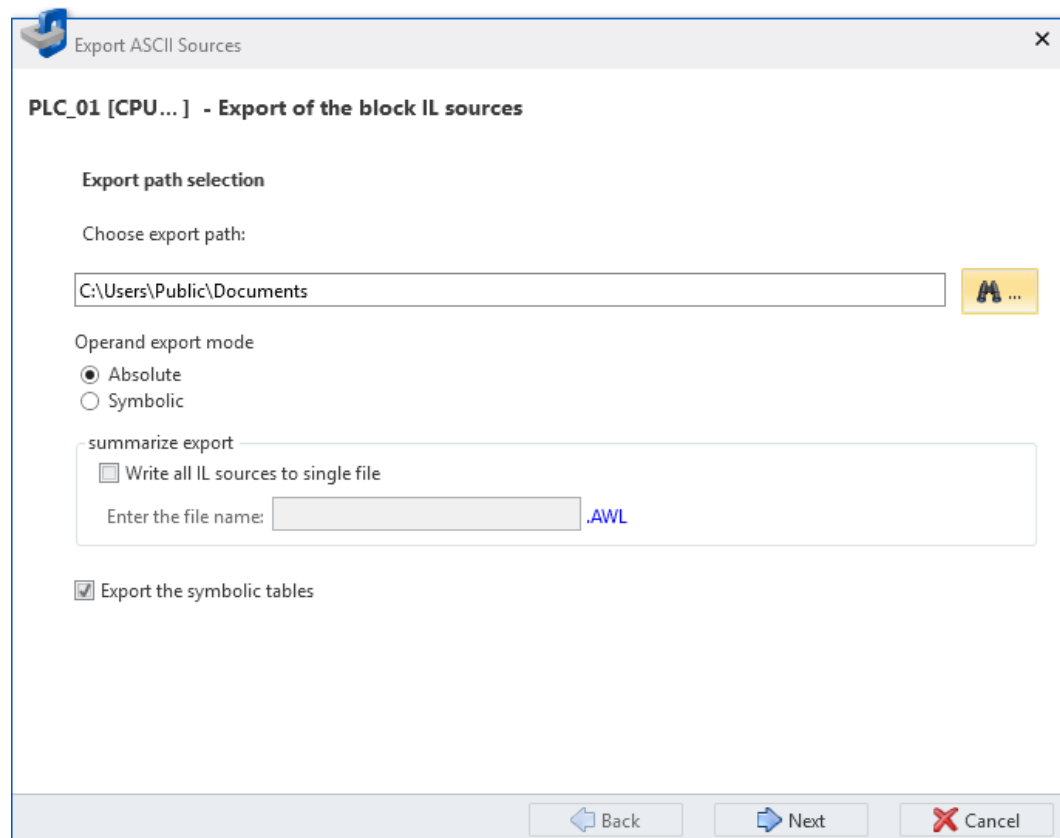


Fig. 235: Export ASCII sources: Export path and further options

2. Under 'Choose export path', select the directory where the files should be exported to.

3. Select further options, if required:

'Operand export mode' – The operands can be exported as absolute address or with the symbol name.

If you want to export all blocks into one file, enable the option 'Write all IL sources to single file' and determine a file name. If you want to export the blocks into several files, don't enable this option. The file name of the export files is a combination of the block name and the block number.

If you enable the option 'Export the symbolic tables', the variable tables are exported into a file.

🔗 [8.11.3 System hardware configuration !\[\]\(3342c215b2a8b663596a81468d5dc314_img.jpg\)](#)

🔗 [8.11.4 Variable tables and "Standard project configuration" !\[\]\(56549452e01ca28bdf2500ced9653143_img.jpg\)](#)

4. Click on 'Next'.

⇒ If you have enabled the option 'Export the symbolic tables', the variable tables are read and displayed. ↪ 'Import and select symbol tables' page 302

If you have not enabled the option 'Export the symbolic tables', the block files are read and displayed. ↪ 'Import and select block sources' page 303

Import and select symbol tables

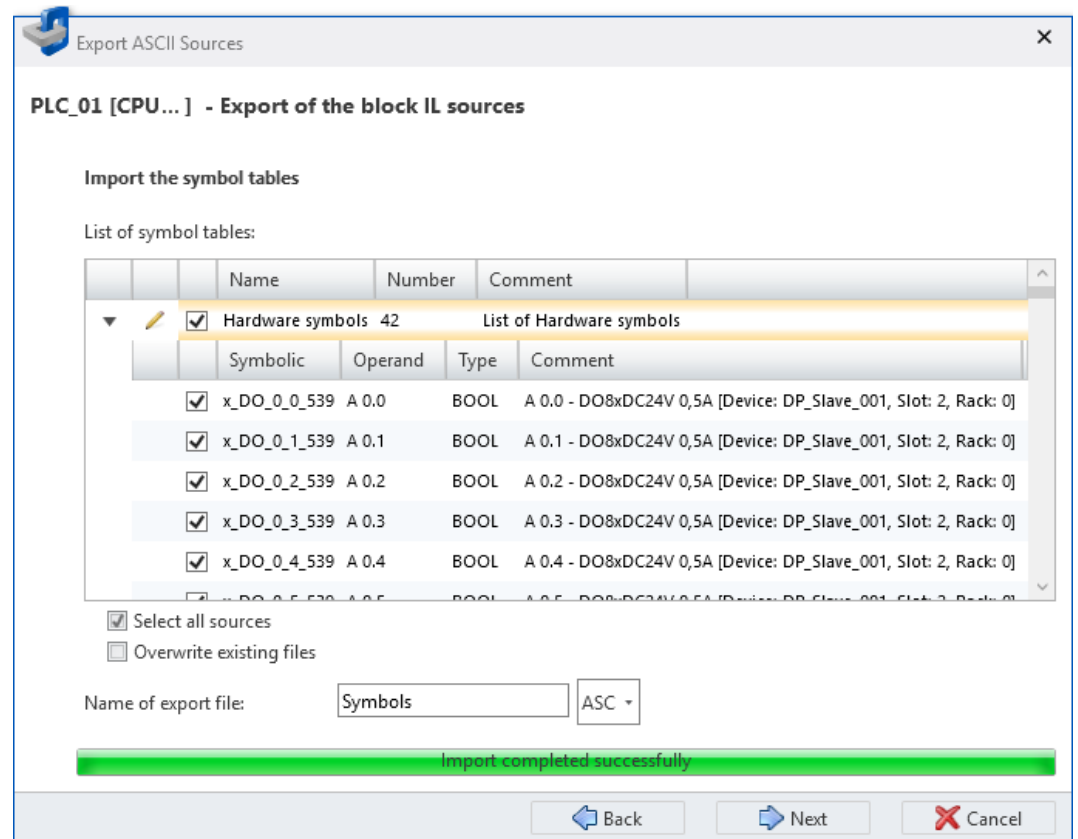


Fig. 236: Export ASCII sources: Import and select symbol tables

1. Click in the list of the symbol tables on ▶, in order to display all symbols of one area. Click on ▼ to hide symbols.

Select the symbols you want to export.

Activate 'Select all sources' if you want to export all listed symbols.

If you enable the option 'Overwrite existing files', already present export files are overwritten. If you don't enable this option, present files remain unchanged – the symbol tables are not exported.

2. Enter a file name for the export file of the symbols. If required, select the file type 'ASC' or 'SEQ'.

3. Click on 'Next'.

⇒ The block files are read and displayed.

Import and select block sources

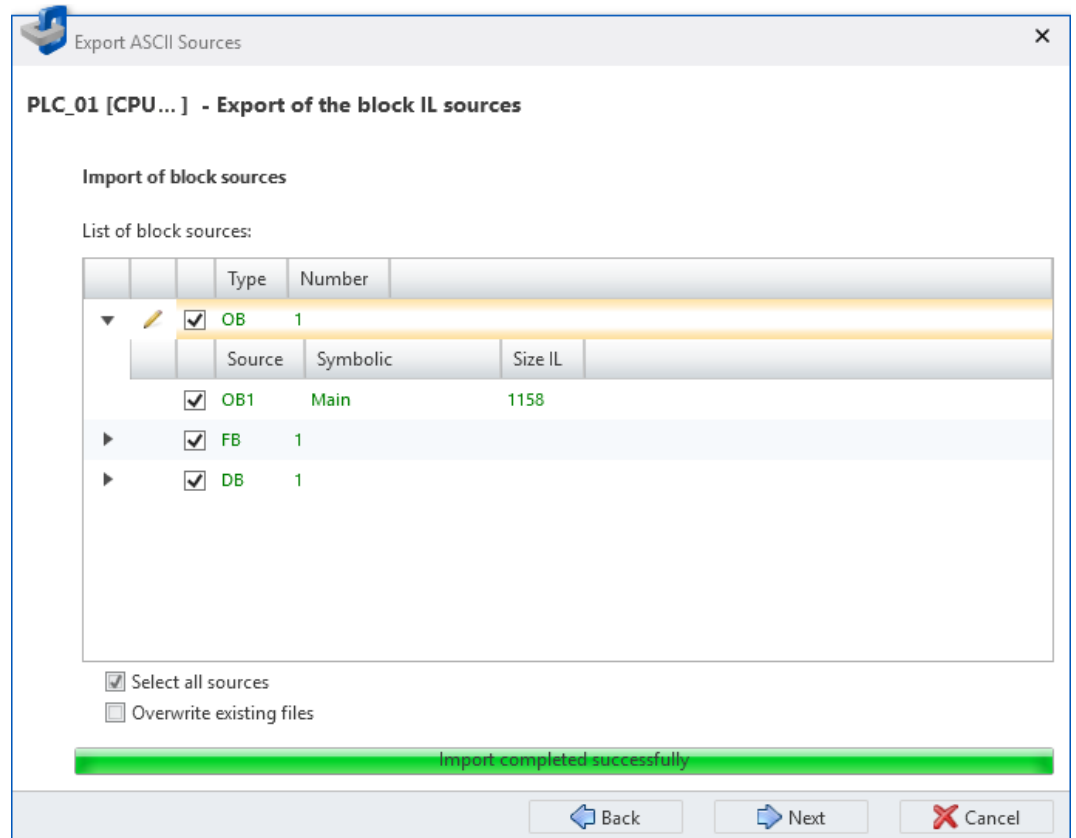


Fig. 237: Export ASCII sources: Import and select block sources

1. Click in the list of the block sources on ►, in order to display all blocks of one area. Click on ▼ to hide blocks.

Select the blocks you want to export.

Activate 'Select all sources' if you want to export all listed blocks.

If you enable the option 'Overwrite existing files', already present export files are overwritten. If you don't enable this option, present files remain unchanged – the block sources are not exported.



Know-how-protected blocks cannot be selected and exported.

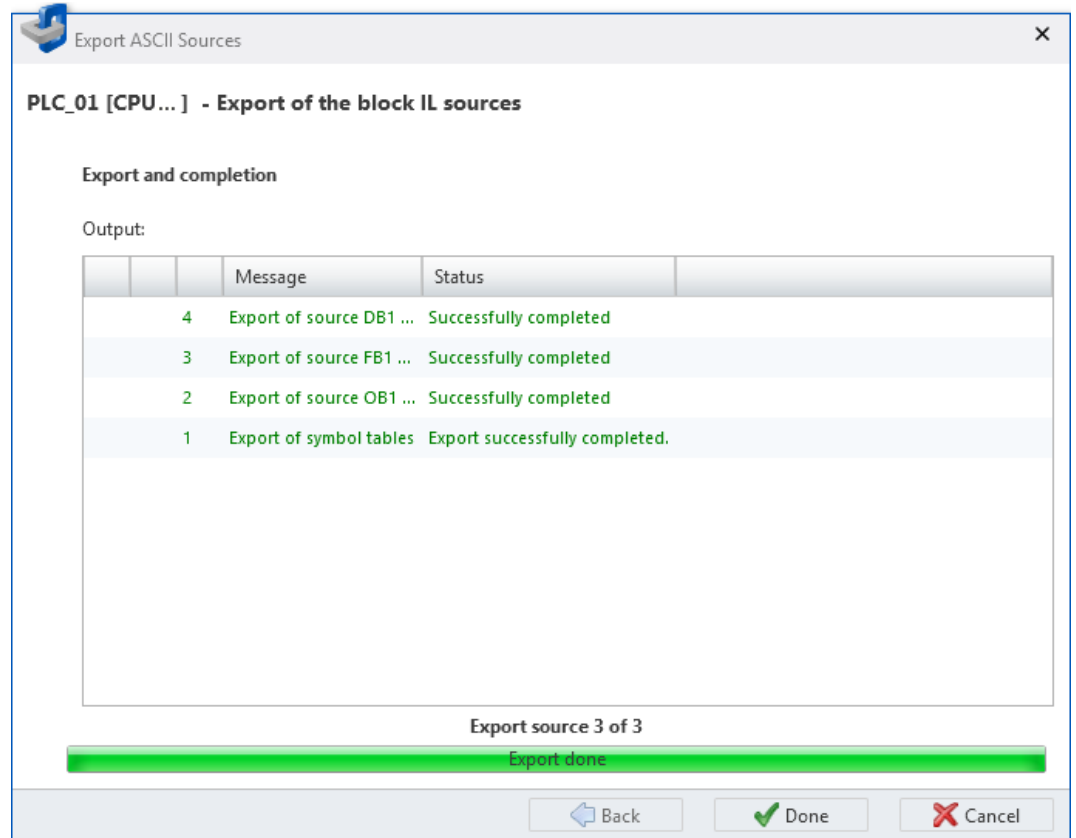


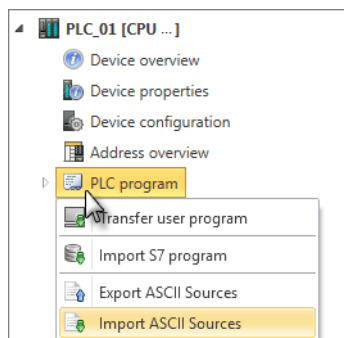
Fig. 238: Export ASCII sources: Exported symbol tables and blocks

2. ➤ Click on 'Next'.
 - ⇒ The export process is started and the symbol tables and block sources are exported. The individual steps and results are shown in the dialogue window.
3. ➤ Click on 'Done' to close the dialogue window.

8.27 Import ASCII sources

You can import blocks and variable tables of the user program that have been created in ASC or SEQ format, into the project.

If you want to import a user program, a project must be open and a control must be contained in the project.



1. ➤ In the project tree, right-click with the mouse button in the desired control at 'PLC program' on 'Import ASCII sources'.
 - ⇒ A dialogue window will open.

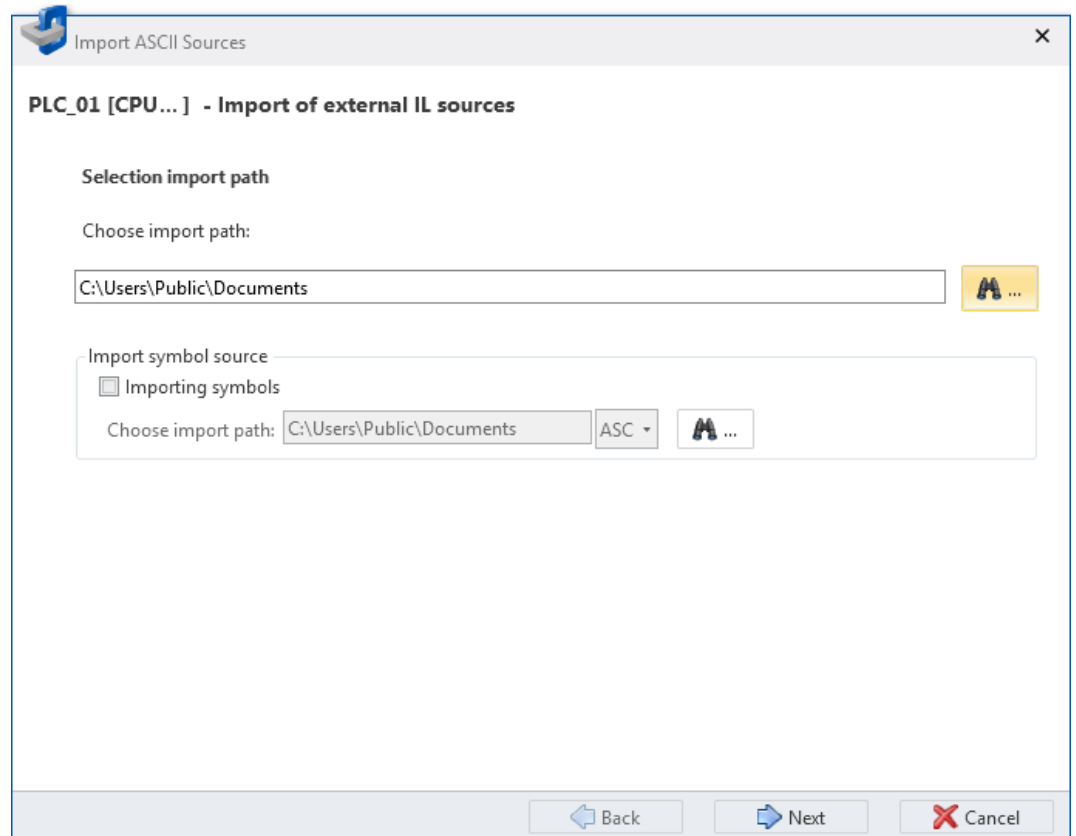


Fig. 239: Import ASCII sources: Import path and further options

2. Under 'Choose import path', select the directory where the ASCII files are stored.
3. Enable 'Importing symbols' if you want to import variable tables on top of the program blocks. If required, select another directory and the file type 'ASC' or 'SEQ'.
4. Click on 'Next'.
 - ⇒ If you have enabled the option 'Importing symbols', the variable tables are read and displayed. ↪ 'Import and select symbol tables' page 306
 - If you have not enabled the option 'Importing symbols', only the block files are read and displayed. ↪ 'Import and select block sources' page 307

Import and select symbol tables

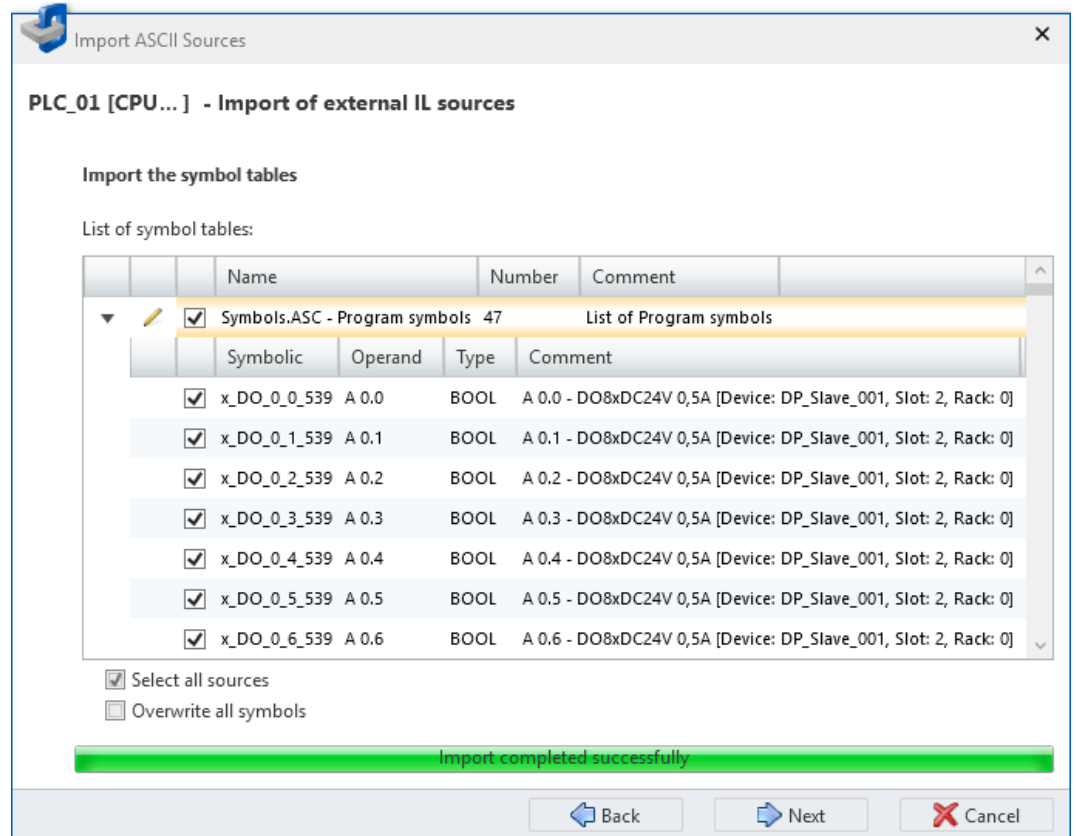


Fig. 240: Import ASCII sources: Import and select symbol tables

1. Click in the list of the symbol tables on , in order to display all symbols of one area. Click on to hide symbols.

Select the symbols you want to import.

Enable 'Select all sources' if you want to import all listed symbols.

If you enable the option 'Overwrite existing files', already present variable tables in the project are overwritten. If you don't enable this option, present symbols remain unchanged – the symbol tables are not imported.

If the symbol names are already allocated in the project, an error message is displayed. In this case, continue as follows:

- *Disable the symbols already allocated in the project and continue with the import procedure. The disabled operands are not imported.*
- *or –*
- *Abort the import procedure. Manually change all symbol names in the project which have already been allocated. Then restart the import procedure. All operands are imported.*

2. Click on 'Next'.
 - ⇒ The block files are read and displayed.

Import and select block sources

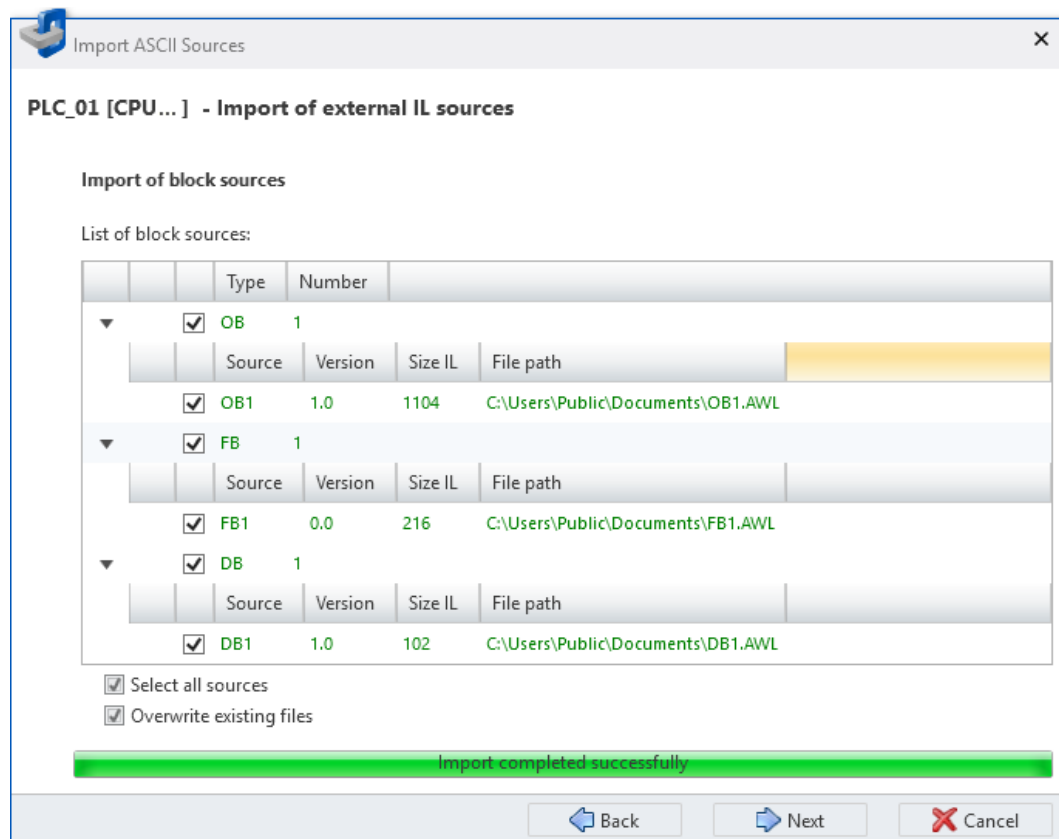


Fig. 241: Import ASCII sources: Import and select block sources

1. Click in the list of the block sources on ▶, in order to display all blocks of one area. Click on ▼ to hide blocks.

Select the blocks you want to import.

Enable 'Select all sources' if you want to import all listed blocks.

If you enable the option 'Overwrite existing files', already present program blocks in the project are overwritten. If you don't enable this option, present blocks remain unchanged – the block sources are not imported.



Know-how-protected blocks cannot be selected and imported.

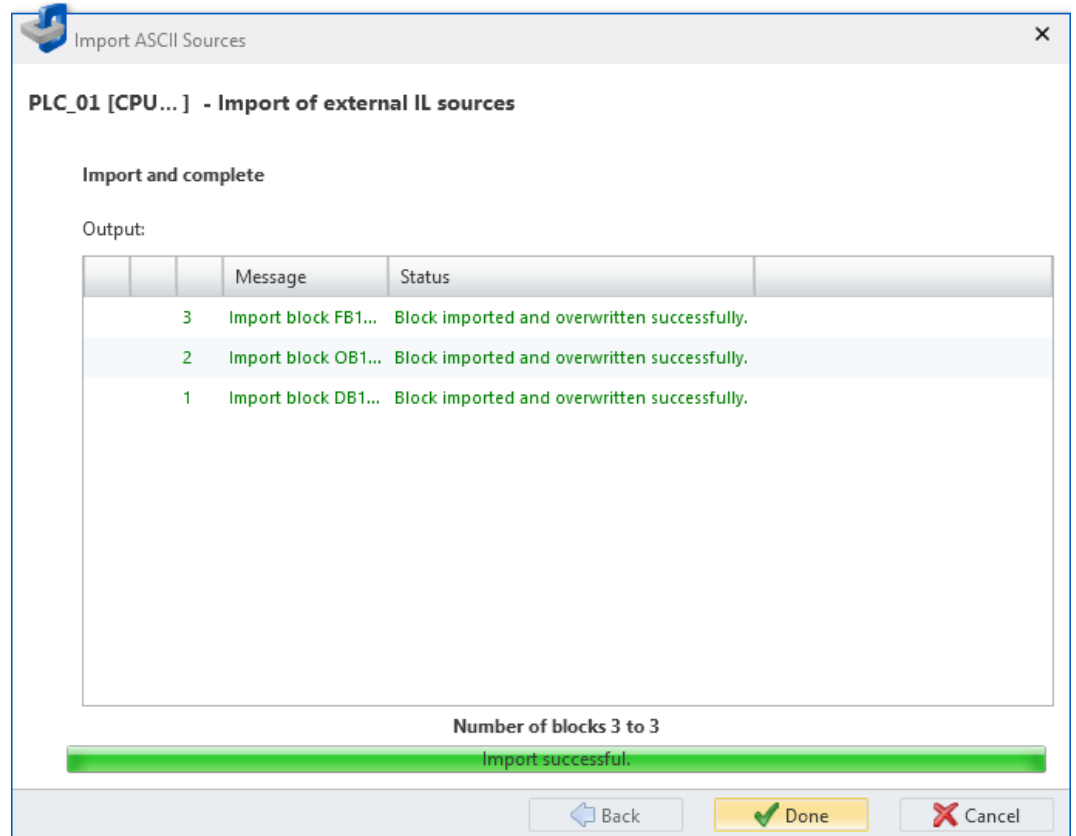


Fig. 242: Import ASCII sources: Imported symbol tables and blocks

2. Click on 'Next'.
 - ⇒ The import process is started and the block sources and symbol tables are imported into the project. The individual steps and results are shown in the dialogue window.
3. Click on 'Done' to close the dialogue window.

8.28 Install block library

You can install blocks from libraries and add them to the catalog. You can then use these blocks in your projects.

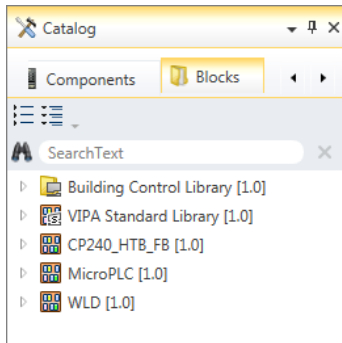
Install block library

If you want to install libraries, a project must be opened.

1. Select in the menu bar 'Extras → Install block library'.
 - ⇒ The 'Installing libraries' dialogue window will open.
2. Under 'Project path', select the directory and the library (S7L file) or a Simatic project (S7P file). Click on 'Next'.
 - ⇒ The packages and/or stations available in the library are displayed.
3. Select the desired package and/or the desired station. If symbolic identifiers from the library are to be adopted into the project, select the option 'Install symbols'. Click on 'Next'.
 - ⇒ If symbol tables are entered into the library, these are displayed.
4. If necessary, select the symbols you want to install. Click on 'Next'.

5. ➤ If necessary, select the blocks you want to install. Click on 'Next'.
 - ⇒ The import process is started and the libraries are imported. The individual steps and results are shown in the dialogue window.
6. ➤ Click on 'Done'.
 - ⇒ The libraries are installed in the *SPEED7 Studio* catalog.

Use installed blocks



1. ➤ Open the desired block group in the 'Blocks' register of the catalog.
2. ➤ Drag the desired block into the 'Program blocks' section of the project tree.
 - ⇒ The block is added to the current project.

8.29 Keyboard commands in the block editor

Keyboard command	Function
[Ctrl]+[1]	Switch according to ladder diagram (LD)
[Ctrl]+[2]	Switch according to instruction list (IL)
[Ctrl]+[3]	Switch according to function block diagram (FBD)
[Ctrl]+[A]	Select/mark all (empty lines in the declaration section are not selected)
[Ctrl]+[C]	Copy selection
[Ctrl]+[X]	Cut selection
[Ctrl]+[V]	Insert selection
[F3]	Find Next in block
[Ctrl]+[H]	Replace in block
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[O]	Open block
[Del]	Deleting networks
[Ctrl]+[C]	Copy network
[Ctrl]+[V]	Paste copied network
[Ctrl]+[R]	Add new network
[Ctrl]+[J]	Create new symbol
[Alt]+[R]	Reset data sorting
[Alt]+[E]	Switch expert mode on/off
Programming language IL	
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[C]	Places comment signs at the start of the current line and/or the marked lines
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[U]	Resets comment signs at the start of the current line and/or the marked lines
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[B]	Formats the instructions of the entire network
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[P]	Updates block calls whose interface is not consistent. If no block is marked, all blocks of the network are updated. If one of the blocks is marked, only this block is updated.
Programming language LD and FBD	
[Alt]+[3]	FBD only: Adds a negation to a binary input or output
[Alt]+[4]	LD and FBD: Adds a branch to a connection
Watch table	
[Insert]	Add new variable after the current line
[Ctrl]+[Insert]	Add new variable before the current line
[Ctrl]+[F2]	Move marked variable to the value 1
[Ctrl]+[F3]	Move marked variable to the value 0
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[F2]	Move marked variable to the specified control value

9 Creating a visualisation

9.1 HMI, WebVisu and Movicon projects

In HMI or *WebVisu* projects, you can edit images using a graphic editor. Ready-made elements provided in a library allow for very easy design. You can also create elements or import graphics and manage them in the library. All texts in the images can be translated into multiple languages.

Alternatively, you can create an HMI device with the Movicon functionality. A Movicon project can be edited in an external Movicon application.

HMI projects

In an HMI project, you can create and edit the visualisations for HMI devices.

Before you create a visualisation, you need to add an HMI device to the project, create configuration settings and edit the variable table. For this, please see the following chapters:

- [↪ Chap. 6.4 'Add new device \(HMI\)' page 82](#)
- [↪ Chap. 9.3 "'Device properties' editor \(HMI device\) !\[\]\(d27edc55493507da2f9b8c7a52b3b96f_img.jpg\) page 312](#)
- [↪ Chap. 9.4 "'Standard variables table' editor !\[\]\(9bf7a72a60a57323fa980b9b0338593f_img.jpg\) page 315](#)

WebVisu projects

You can create and edit *WebVisu* projects if the control has an integrated web server for web visualisation.

Before you create a visualisation, you need to create configuration settings and edit the variable table. For this, please see the following chapters:

- [↪ Chap. 6.20.3 'Server configuration \(WebVisu\)' page 115](#)
- [↪ Chap. 9.4 "'Standard variables table' editor !\[\]\(a724a4a68298d6dff85fe378e838a60a_img.jpg\) page 315](#)

Movicon projects

You can create an HMI device with the Movicon functionality. For this, please see the following chapters:

- [↪ Chap. 6.4 'Add new device \(HMI\)' page 82](#)
- [↪ Chap. 6.4.1 'Movicon project configurations' page 85](#)

If you want to edit the Movicon project subsequently, please see the following chapters:

- [↪ Chap. 9.14 'Movicon projects' page 332](#)
- [↪ Chap. 9.4 "'Standard variables table' editor !\[\]\(f27fcb70c1e5b985e115fc4716d86ff2_img.jpg\) page 315](#)

9.2 "Device overview" editor (HMI device)

This editor is only available for HMI devices.

In the '*Device overview*' editor, images of the HMI device are displayed in a table. Here you can change the name, the image title and the image description of the image.

If a project is opened and an HMI device is included, you can open the '*Device overview*':

- **Project tree:** Click on '*Device overview*' in the HMI.

"Device properties" editor (HMI device)

Name	Image title	Width (Pixel)	Height (Pixel)	Image description
Diagnosis	Diagnosis	800	600	Diagnosis and errors
Facility	Facility	800	600	Production overview
Main	Main	800	600	Start screen
Status	Status	800	600	Production screen

Fig. 243: Device overview of an HMI device

'Name' – Image name: With this name, the image is displayed in the project tree.

➔ Click on the image name for change.

'Image title'

➔ Click on the image title for change.

'Width (Pixel)' and 'Height (Pixel)' – The image size depends on the screen resolution of the HMI device and cannot be changed.

'Image description' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

➔ Click on the image description for change.

Changing the sort sequence

Name	Image title	Width (Pixel)
Facility	Main	800
Diagnosis	Diagnosis	800

You can sort the images in the device overview in alphabetical order according to image names or image titles.

➔ Click on the 'Name' or 'Image title' field in the title row of the table.

⇒ The table entries are sorted in alphabetical order:

▲ Alphabetically in ascending order

▼ Alphabetically in descending order

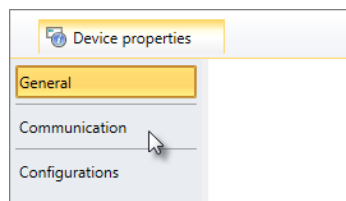
9.3 "Device properties" editor (HMI device)

This editor is only available for HMI devices.

General information on and configurations of the HMI device are displayed in the 'Device properties' editor. Here you can change the device name and the comment as well as make communication settings and further configurations.

If a project is opened and an HMI device is included, you can open the 'Device properties':

- **Project tree:** Click on 'Device properties' in the HMI.
- **"Devices and networking" editor** : Right-click with the mouse button on the HMI device and select 'Device properties'.



The *'Device properties'* editor is divided into three sections.

9.3.1 General device properties

To display or change the device properties of the HMI device, you must proceed as follows:

You have accessed the *'General'* section in the *'Device properties'* editor of the HMI device. ↪ [Chap. 9.3 "Device properties" editor \(HMI device\)](#) page 312

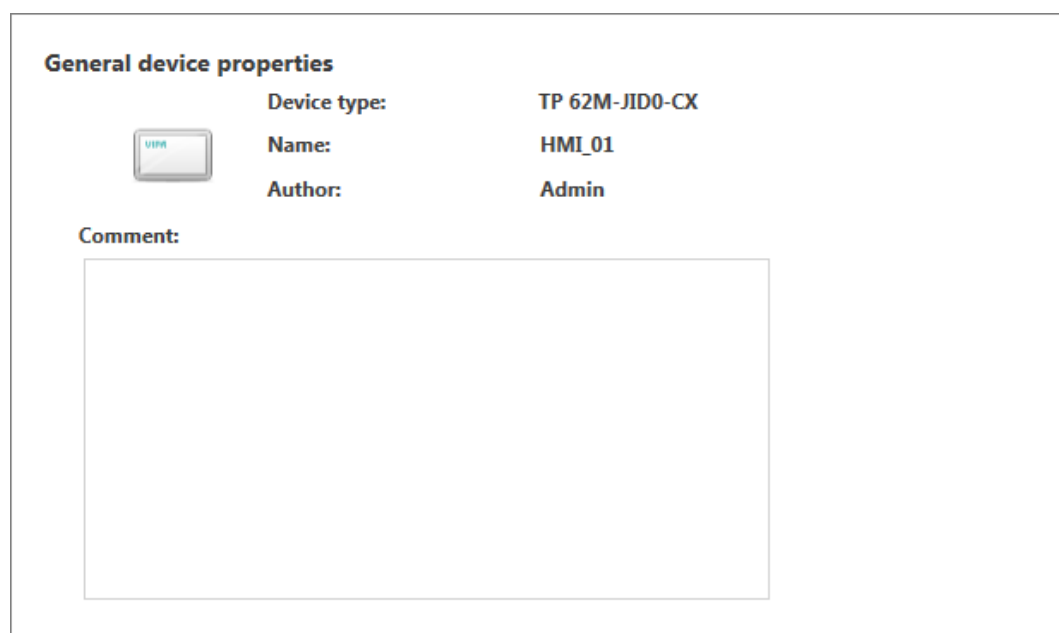


Fig. 244: Device properties of an HMI device

'Device type' – Name of the HMI device

'Name' – Device name: The name is displayed in the project tree.

'Author' – Name of the responsible person who created the block

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation


➔ Click on the input field and enter any comment, e.g. an annotation or explanation. With the *[Enter]* key, you can add a new line to the input field.

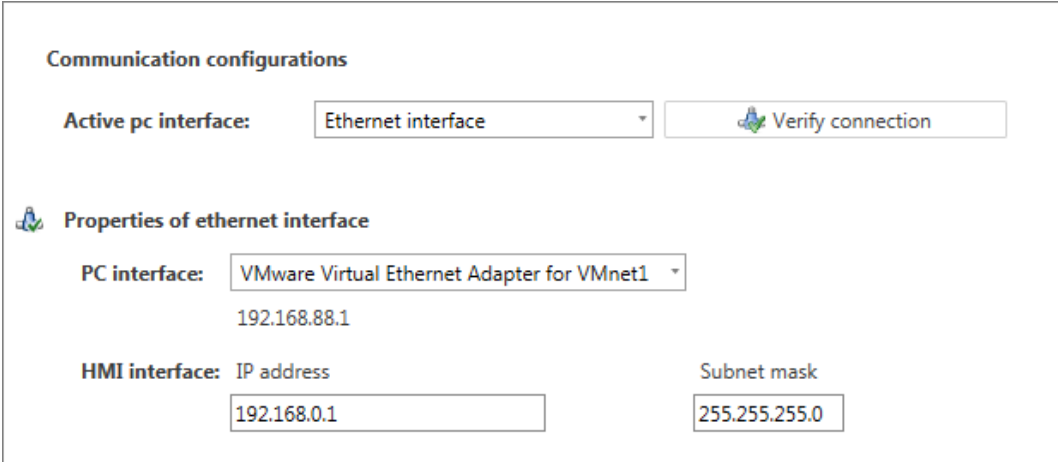
9.3.2 Communication settings

The communication settings are used to configure the interface for the data exchange between the programming device and the HMI device.

For communication settings, you must proceed as follows:

"Device properties" editor (HMI device) > Configurations

You have accessed the 'Communication' section in the 'Device properties' editor of the HMI device. ↪ *Chap. 9.3 "Device properties" editor (HMI device)*  page 312



Communication configurations

Active pc interface: Ethernet interface

Properties of ethernet interface

PC interface: VMware Virtual Ethernet Adapter for VMnet1
192.168.88.1

HMI interface: IP address Subnet mask
192.168.0.1 255.255.255.0

Fig. 245: Communication settings

1. ➤ 'Active PC interface': interface for the data exchange between the programming device and the HMI device
2. ➤ 'PC interface': Select the network adapter for the communication connection from the list.
 - ⇒ If an IP address is already configured in the network adapter, it is shown under the input field.
3. ➤ 'HMI interface': Select the desired interface of the HMI device from the list.
 - ⇒ If an IP address is already configured in the HMI device, it is shown under the input field.
4. ➤ In order to check whether a connection between the programming device and the HMI device can be established with the selected communication setting, click on 'Verify connection'.
 - ⇒ You can see in the status line, whether the connection could be established successfully.

9.3.3 Configurations

Here you can change further properties of the HMI device. For configurations, you must proceed as follows:


You have accessed the 'Configurations' section in the 'Device properties' editor of the HMI device. ↪ *Chap. 9.3 "Device properties" editor (HMI device)*  page 312

Fig. 246: HMI configurations

1. ➤ *'Currently connected PLC'*: Select from the list the control you would like to connect to the HMI device via the Ethernet interface.
 - ⇒ The selected control is marked as "in use". If you want to reset the connection, click on *'Remove connection'*.
2. ➤ *'Panel - user management'*: Enter a user name and a password if necessary to protect access to the visualisation in the HMI device. Select the *'Clear view'* option to show the password in the edit field.
3. ➤ *'Current Start display'*: Select from a list the desired image with which the HMI device is to be started.

9.4 "Standard variables table" editor

Via the standard variables table, you can use the variables belonging to the CPU in images:

- You can use the already declared variables of the system hardware configuration or of the standard project configuration (synchronise variable table).
- If necessary, you can add further variables (e.g. from data blocks) for use in images.



Before you can use control variables in images, these must be entered in the standard variables table.

- ➔ In the project tree within a visualisation project under *'Variables'*, double-click on *'Standard variables table'*.

"Standard variables table" editor

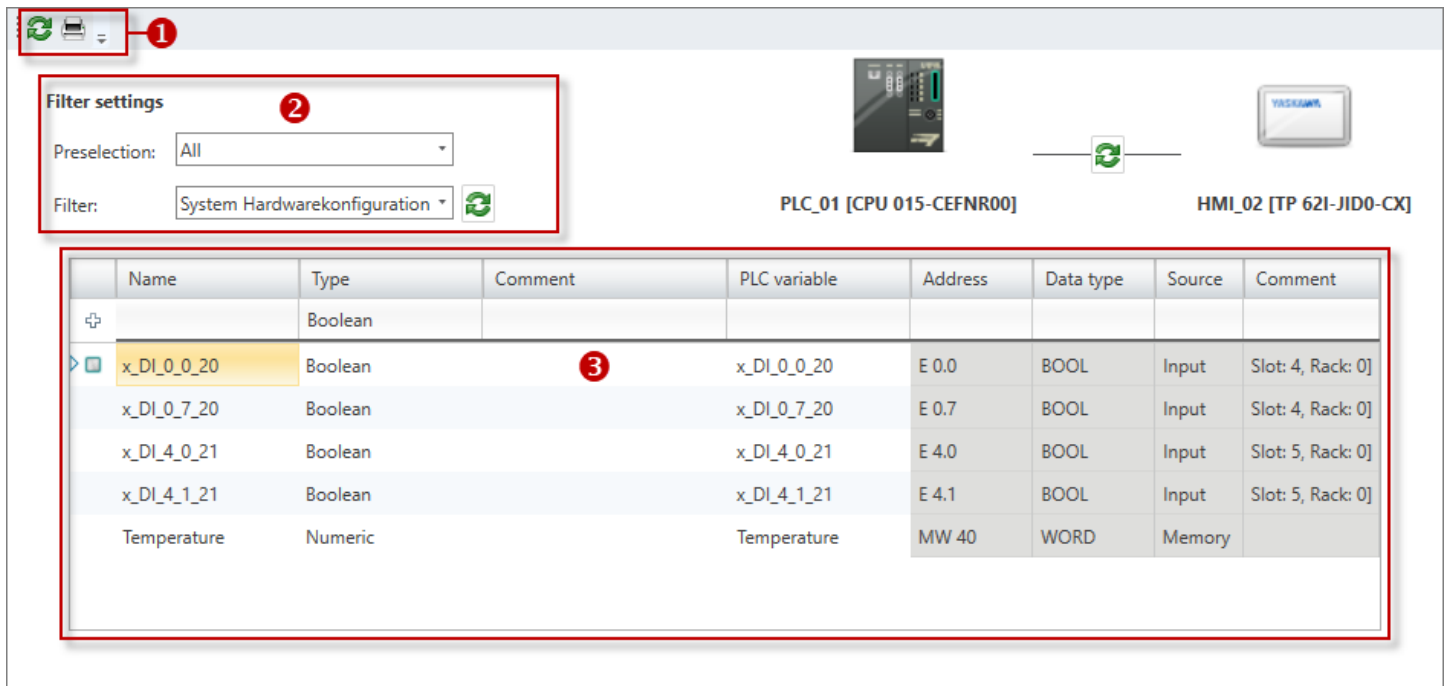


Fig. 247: "Standard variables table" editor

- (1) Toolbar
- (2) Filter settings
- (3) Variable table

(1) Toolbar



Synchronise variable table:

You can transfer the variables declared in the CPU to the variable table. All variables marked in the system hardware configuration, the standard project configuration and the data blocks in the 'Visu' column are transferred from there.

➔ Click on

⇒ The variables are copied into the variable table.



Changes to the system hardware configuration, the standard project configuration or the data blocks are not automatically adopted into the variable table. You need to synchronise the variable table in order to adopt the changes into the HMI project.




Print variable table The dialogue window "Print" will open.


(2) Filter settings

With the filter settings, you can always select specifically which variables shall be transferred to the variable table. All variables marked in the system hardware configuration, the standard project configuration and the data blocks in the 'Visu' column are transferred from there.

1. ➔ Select the area to be transferred under 'Pre-selection', e.g. data blocks.
2. ➔ Select the table or block from which the variables shall be transferred under 'Filter', e.g. DB1.

3. Click on .
 - ⇒ The variables from the selected table or the selected data block are copied to the variable table.

Add new variable

1. Under 'Current variable table', select the section from which you want to use control variables, e.g. "Data blocks" for variables from a data block.
2. You can make new entries in the first line of the table. You can recognise these lines by the  symbol.
 - Click on the input field of the 'Name' column and enter a name (symbolic address) for the control variable in the HMI project.
3. Click on the adjacent field in the 'Type' column and select the desired data type.
4. If you want to enter a comment on the variables, click on the 'Comment' field and enter the comment.
5. Click on the 'PLC variable' column in the adjacent field and select the desired control variable from the list.
 - Only the variables from the system hardware configuration and the standard project configuration which are marked in the 'Visu' column are displayed from there.
6. Confirm your input with [Enter].
 - ⇒ The new variable is inserted into the table.

(3) Variable table

'Name' – Name of the control variable (symbolic address) for use in HMI images.

'Type' – Data type for the use in images

'Comment' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

'PLC variable' – Name of the control variables (symbolic address), as declared in the system hardware configuration, the standard project configuration or in the data block. The name cannot be changed.

'Address' – Address of the variables

'Data type' – Data type of the variables



'Source' – Operand area of the variables, e.g. input, output, memory, DB

'Comment' – Comment from the system hardware configuration, the standard project configuration or the data block. The comment cannot be changed.

9.5 HMI elements

HMI elements are, for example, graphics or visual control elements (controls) that you can use in images. The HMI elements are available in file format SVG (Scalable Vector Graphics) and can be enlarged or made smaller without losses.

Using HMI elements in an image

Ready-made HMI elements can be found in the catalog ( Chap. 4.10 'Catalog 

1. Under 'HMI elements', open an element group, e.g. 'Controls'.
2. Drag the desired element from the catalog to any place in the drawing field.
 - ⇒ The element is inserted in the image.




 Chap. 9.9.2 'Inserting elements from the catalog' page 321

9.6 HMI library




You can create HMI elements and manage them in the HMI library to use them in images. In addition, you can import graphics in file format SVG (Scalable Vector Graphics) into the HMI library and use them in images.

9.6.1 Create, edit and use new element

Create new element


1.  In the catalog under *'HMI library'*, *'Catalog'*, right-click with the mouse button and select *'Create new element'*.
⇒ A dialogue window will open.
2.  Enter a name for the element and select the desired size of the element.
3.  Click on *'OK'*.
⇒ The element is inserted under *'Catalog'*.

Edit element

1.  Under *'Catalog'*, double-click on the desired element.
⇒ The editor for editing HMI elements will open.
2.  Edit the element in the editor. The editing functions, shapes and graphical elements of the editor for images are available to you. [↪ Chap. 9.9 "Image" editor !\[\]\(5a658b86f2c8900a276c586c1f8f9f2f_img.jpg\)](#) page 320
3.  Save the project.

Using element in an image



You can use the element in images.

-  Drag the element from the HMI library to the desired location in the image (drag & drop).

9.6.2 Importing and using resources


Resources are, for example, graphics or visual control elements (controls) that you can use in images. Resources can exist in different graphic file formats. Resources in file format SVG (Scalable Vector Graphics, Version Tiny 1.2) can be enlarged or made smaller without losses.

Import resource

1.  In the catalog under *'HMI library'*, *'Catalog'*, right-click with the mouse button on *'Import resource'*.
⇒ A dialogue window will open allowing you to select a graphic file.
2.  Select a graphic file and click on *'Open'*.
⇒ The file is inserted as an element under *'Catalog'*.

Using resource in an image

You can use the element in images.

-  Drag the element from the HMI library to the desired location in the image (drag & drop).

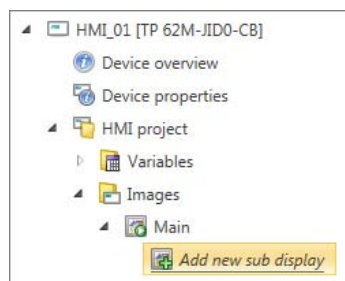
9.6.3 Delete element

You can delete an element from the HMI library.

1. ➤ In the catalog under *'HMI library'*, *'Catalog'*, right-click with the mouse button on the desired element and select *'Delete element'*.
 - ⇒ A dialogue window will open, where you can select whether you want to delete the element.
2. ➤ Click on *'Yes'*.
 - ⇒ The element is removed from the HMI library and from the images in which it is used.

9.7 Add new sub display

You can add a new image to the project. Each new image is added in the project tree as a so-called sub display underneath an image.



1. ➤ In the project tree, within the visualisation project, under *'Images'*, click on *'Add new sub display'*.
 - ⇒ A dialogue window with image configurations will open.
2. ➤ Create configurations, if necessary, and click on *'OK'*.
 - ⇒ The image is added and displayed in the project tree.

9.7.1 Configurations

Here you can make the configurations for the image.

'Image name' – With this name, the image is displayed in the project tree.

'Image title'

'Image description' – Any comment e.g. remark or explanation

'Image size' – The image size depends on the screen resolution and cannot be changed.

9.7.2 Background

Here you can set the background for the image. You can select a graphic file as the background image or you can select a background colour.

If you click on *'Reset'*, the background colour is set to white.

9.8 Delete image



You can delete an image from the project.

1. ➤ In the project tree, within the visualisation project, under *'Images'*, right-click with the mouse button on the image and select *'Delete image'*.
 - ⇒ A dialogue window will open, where you can select whether you want to delete the image.
2. ➤ Click on *'Yes'*.
 - ⇒ The image is deleted and removed from the project tree.

"Image" editor > Drawing a shape

9.9 "Image" editor

Individual images can be edited for the visualisation in the 'Image' editor. Different shapes and graphical elements are available to you to illustrate processes of your machine or system.

Create a new image ( *Chap. 9.7 'Add new sub display'  page 319*) or select an image for editing.

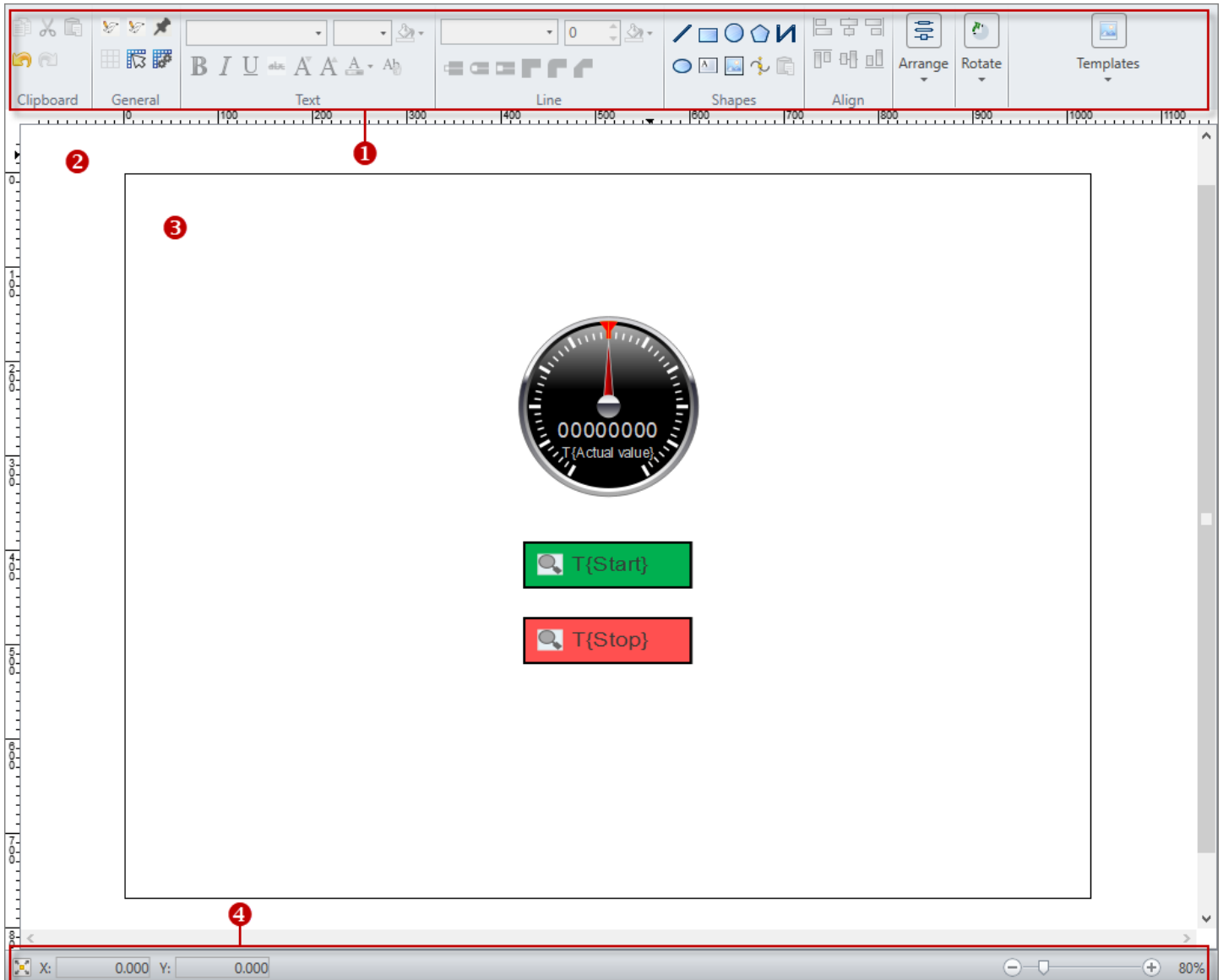


Fig. 248: "Image" editor

- (1) Toolbar
- (2) Drawing field
- (3) Image
- (4) Information bar

9.9.1 Drawing a shape

You can insert shapes directly at the desired position and in the desired size in the drawing field.

Then you can change the shape:

- [🔗 Chap. 9.9.4 'Edit object' page 322](#)
- [🔗 Chap. 9.9.5 'Edit object properties' page 324](#)



1. In the toolbar, click on the desired shape under 'Shapes'.
2.
 - **Draw line:** Click on the position in the drawing field where you want the line to start. Drag the line and click again to set the end point of the line.
 - **Draw rectangle:** Click on the position in the drawing field where you want the shape to start. Press and hold the mouse button. Drag the mouse until the shape has the desired size and then let go of the mouse button.
When you press and hold the *[Ctrl]* button while drawing the shape, a square is drawn.
 - **Draw ellipse or circle:** Click on the position in the drawing field where you want the shape to have its centre point. Press and hold the mouse button. Drag the mouse until the shape has the desired size and then let go of the mouse button.
 - **Draw polygon or polyline:** Click on the position in the drawing field where you want the shape to start. Drag the line and click several times to set the individual points. Double-click with the mouse button to set the last point.
 - **Draw Bézier curve:** Click on the position in the drawing field where you want the shape to start. Drag the line and click several times to set the individual points. Press and hold the mouse button to define the curvature. Double-click with the mouse button to set the last point.
 - **Add text box:** Click on the position in the drawing field where you want the shape to start. Enter your text.
 - **Add image:** A dialogue window will open allowing you to select a graphic file. Select a graphic file and click on 'Open'. The graphic is inserted at position x: 0, y: 0.

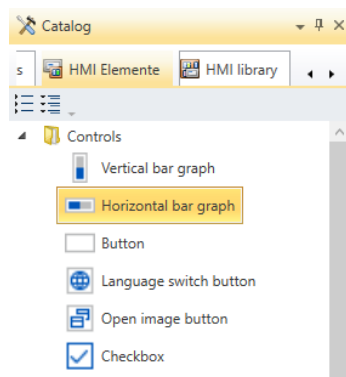
9.9.2 Inserting elements from the catalog

You can insert elements from the catalog directly at the desired position in the drawing field. You can use ready-made or self-created HMI elements:

- [🔗 Chap. 9.5 'HMI elements' page 317](#)
- [🔗 Chap. 9.6 'HMI library' page 318](#)

Then, you can change the element and assign control variables:

- [🔗 Chap. 9.9.4 'Edit object' page 322](#)
- [🔗 Chap. 9.9.5 'Edit object properties' page 324](#)



1. In the catalog under 'HMI elements', open an element group, e.g. 'Controls'.
If the properties are displayed instead of the catalog, you must click on 'Catalog' at the lower screen edge.
2. Drag the desired element from the catalog to any place in the drawing field.
 - ⇒ The element is added to the image and is saved in the project tree as a graphic file under 'Resources'.

9.9.3 Align and arrange objects

You can align and arrange objects you have inserted in an image.

Align

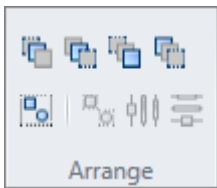


1. Select the desired object.
2. In the toolbar under 'Align', click on a button to align the object at the top, at the bottom, vertically centred, left-hand, right-hand or horizontally centred.

Arrange

When the objects are inserted in the image, they are positioned on top of each other in the order in which they are created. You can change this order and move the objects to the front or to the back.

In addition, you can group several objects in order to apply changes to all objects included in this group.

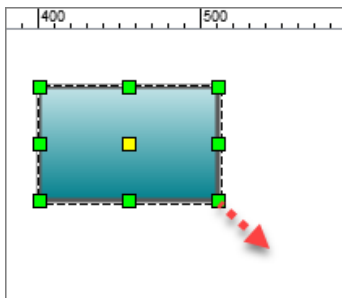


1. Select the desired object.
2. In the toolbar under 'Arrange', click on a button to arrange the object:
 - **Bring forward:** Moving object by one position to the front
 - **Send backward:** Moving object by one position to the back
 - **Bring to front:** Move object to the foremost position
 - **Send to back:** Move object to the rearmost position
 - **Group:** Group several selected objects to an object group
 - **Ungroup:** Disband object group
 - **Horizontally distributed:** Distribute several selected objects horizontally in the image
 - **Vertical distributed:** Distribute several selected objects vertically in the image

9.9.4 Edit object

You can subsequently edit and change any inserted objects.

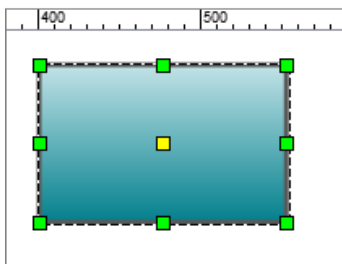
Change size (scale)



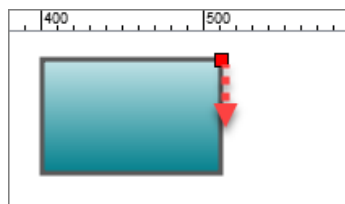
1. Select the desired object.
2. Click on one of the green squares and hold down the mouse button.
3. Drag the mouse until the object has the desired size and then let go of the mouse button.

If the option 'Catch on grid' is enabled, the object size is aligned to the grid.

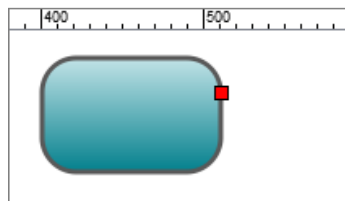
When you press and hold the [Ctrl] key while drawing the square, the object size is changed proportionately.



Change edges, segments and points

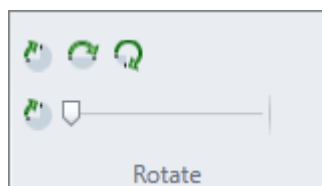


1. ➤ Double-click on the desired shape.
⇒ Handles are shown as red squares.
2. ➤ Click on a square and hold down the mouse button.
3. ➤ Drag the mouse until the object or the object section has the desired shape and then let go of the mouse button.



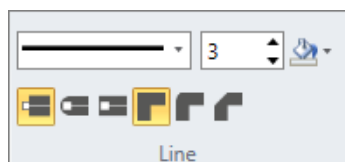
If the option 'Catch on grid' is enabled, the shape is changed step by step based on the grid.

Rotate



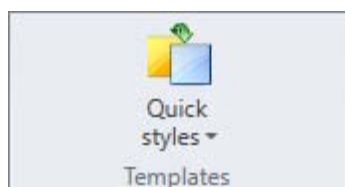
1. ➤ Select the desired shape or the desired element.
2. ➤ If necessary, you can move the home position (yellow square) to change the centre of rotation.
3. ➤ Click on a button in the toolbar under 'Rotate'. You can rotate the object by 90°, 180°, 270° or by a value selected with the slider.
⇒ The object is rotated around the home position.

Change lines and contours



1. ➤ Select the desired shape.
2. ➤ In the toolbar under 'Lines', click in a selection field or on a button to change the line or the contour:
 - **Line type:** Solid lines or broken lines
 - **Line width:** Line width in pixels
 - **Outline:** Line colour
 - **Line end:** Flat, round or square
 - **Connection:** Angular, rounded or bevelled

Use a template



You can apply pre-defined layouts to a shape.

1. ➤ Click on 'Format templates' in the toolbar.
2. ➤ Select the desired layout.

Transfer formatting

1. ➤ In the toolbar, under 'Shapes', click on 'Transfer formatting'.
2. ➤ Click on the shape to which you want to transfer the formatting.

"Image" editor > Edit object properties

9.9.5 Edit object properties

Properties of an Element

You can edit the properties of objects in images to change the presentation. You can assign control variables to certain pre-defined elements.

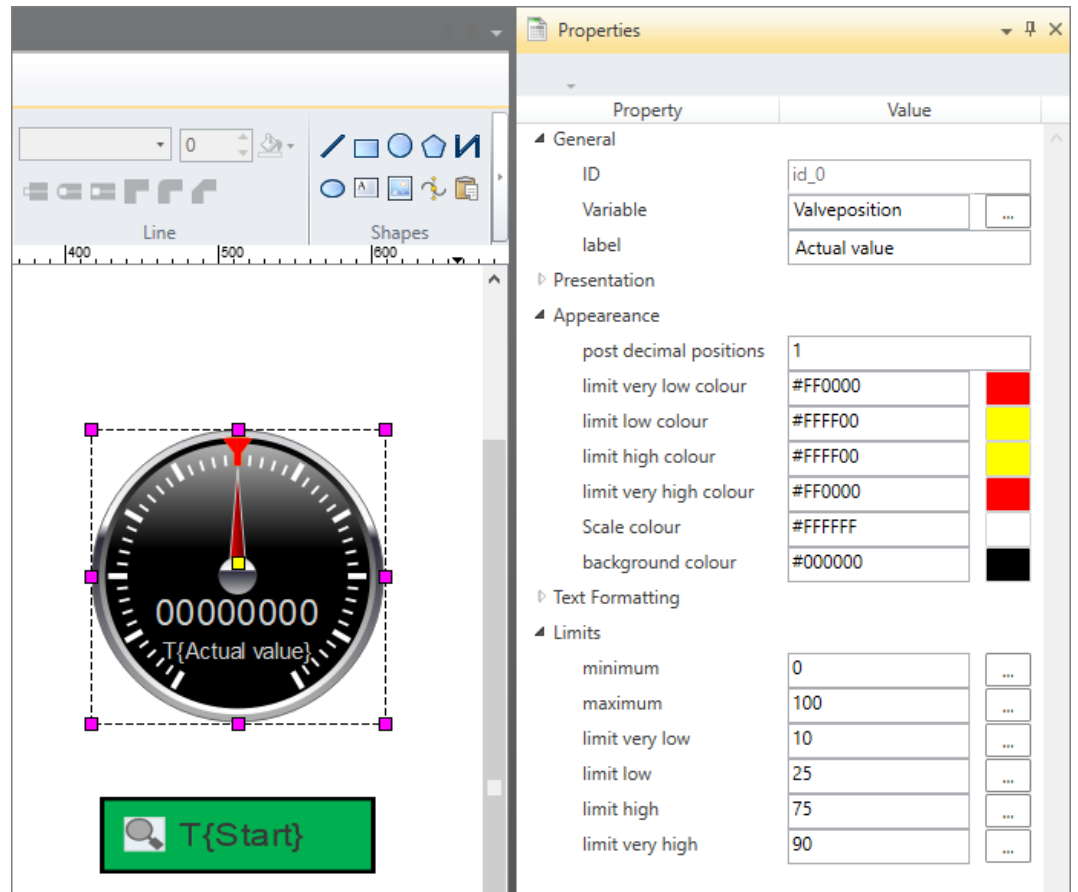


Fig. 249: Properties of a marked element

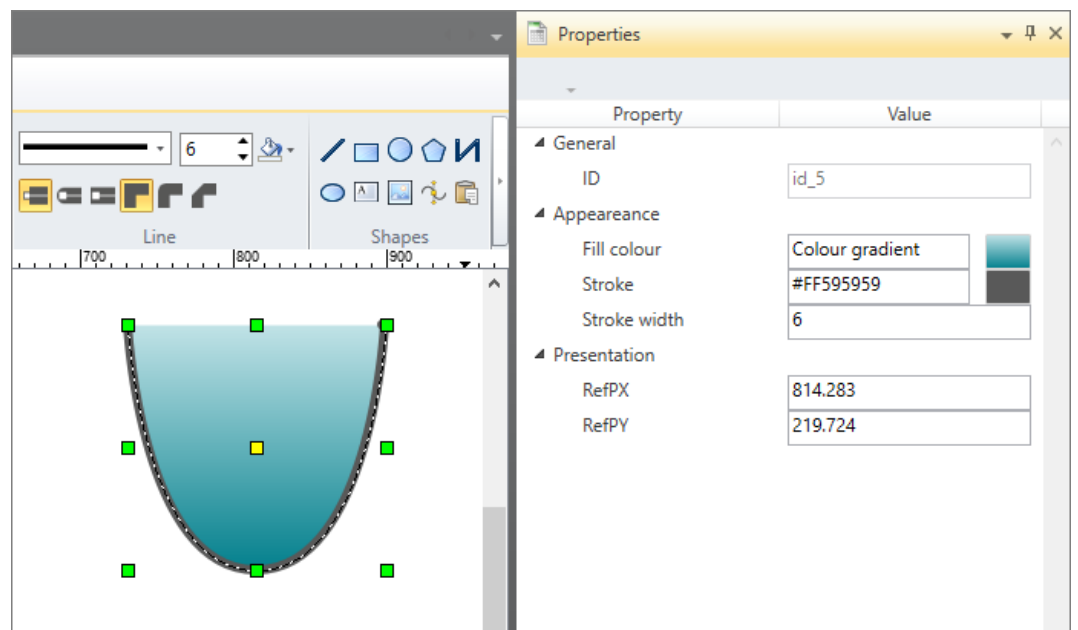


Fig. 250: Properties of a marked shape

➔ Select the desired object in the image.

⇒ The properties of the object are displayed.

If the properties are not displayed, select 'View → Properties' or press [Ctrl]+[Shift]+[M].

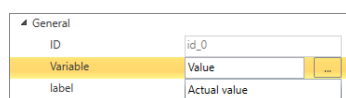
If the catalog is displayed instead of the properties, you must click on 'Properties' at the lower screen edge.

Edit properties

Different properties are presented depending on the shape or element type, e.g.:

- 'General' – Assign control variable (not for shapes) ↪ *further information page 325*
- 'Format' – Position, size and rotation
- 'Composition' – Colours
- 'Text formatting' – Formatting of text
- 'Limits' – Limit values

Assign control variable



1. ➔ To assign a control variable to the element, under 'General', click on the '...' button next to the input field 'Variable'.

⇒ A dialogue window for assigning control variables to the HMI element will open.

If no control variables are shown (empty list), you must first edit the 'Standard variables table'. ↪ *Chap. 9.4 "Standard variables table" editor* page 315

2. ➔ Select the desired variable from the list and click on 'OK'.

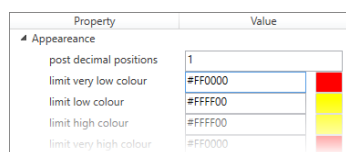
⇒ The variable is entered in the input field.

If you open the "Typed representation" window, all variables are listed therein. ↪ *Chap. 4.16 'Typed representation' page 49*

Insert control variables as an element

You can use the mouse to insert control variables into the image using the "Typed representation" window, thereby creating a new element. ↪ *Chap. 4.16 'Typed representation' page 49*

Change colours



For certain objects, you can define different colours, e.g. for the background, contour and filling of an object, for the font or the presentation of limit values.

➔ To change a colour, enter the hexadecimal value in the input field as follows:

- RGB value without transparency: #rrggbb, e.g. #0080FF
- RGB value with transparency (alpha channel): #aarrggbb, e.g. #C00080FF

- or -

Next to the input field, click on the colour field to open the dialogue window for the colour selection.

Edit dynamic samplings

You can dynamise elements so as to stimulate process flows in images. ↪ *Chap. 9.9.6 'Edit dynamic samplings – "Simple dynamics"' page 325*

9.9.6 Edit dynamic samplings – "Simple dynamics"

You can dynamise elements so as to stimulate process flows in images. The 'Simple dynamics' dialogue window contains pre-defined animations that you can assign to an element in the image.

"Image" editor > Edit dynamic samplings – "Simple dynamics"

You can define several dynamic samplings per element. If, for example, you want to stimulate the level of a container, you can "Scale" the dynamic sampling for the visualisation of the level and also use "Colour" dynamic sampling to present limit values.

9.9.6.1 Add dynamic sampling +

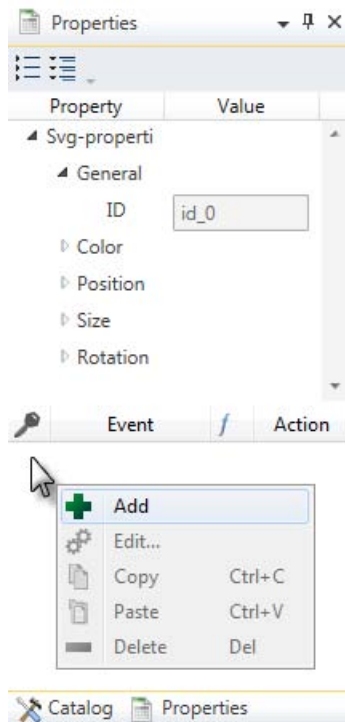
If you want to dynamise an element, you must proceed as follows:

1. ➤ Highlight the desired element in the image.
2. ➤ Right-click with the mouse button on the lower section of the 'Properties' and select 'Add'.

If the properties are not displayed, select 'View → Properties' or press [Ctrl]+[Shift]+[M].

If the catalog is displayed instead of the properties, you must click on 'Properties' at the lower screen edge.

⇒ The 'Simple dynamics' dialogue window will open.



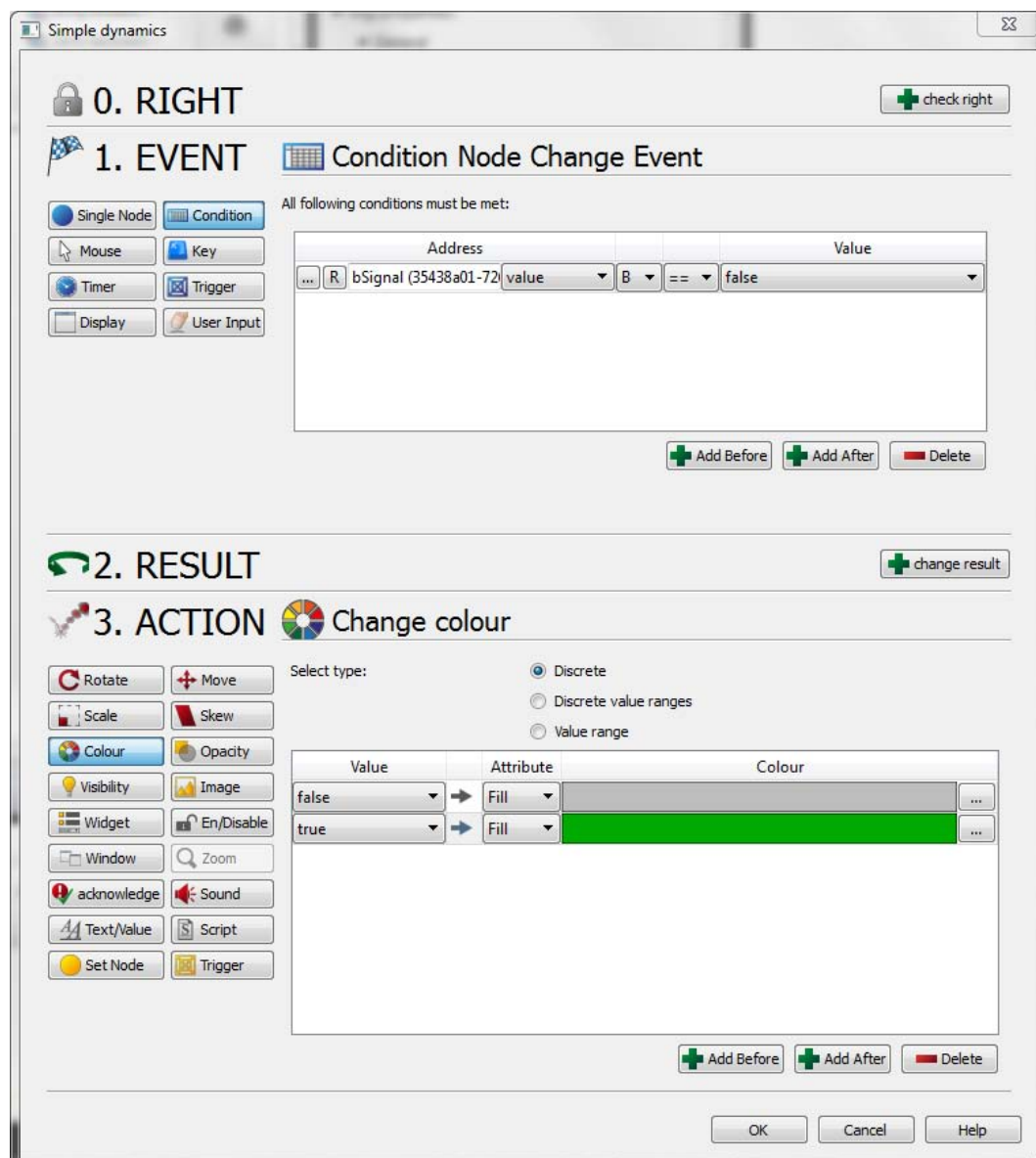


Fig. 251: "Simple dynamics" dialogue window

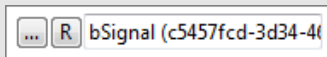
You must create the following configurations for the dynamic sampling of an element:

- Event that triggers the dynamic sampling, e.g. the value of a variable, a click of the mouse, timer
- Action to be executed when the event takes place, e.g. colour, size of position of the element

Define event

1. To assign an event to the element, click in section '1. Event' on the desired event that triggers the dynamic sampling, e.g. 'condition'.
2. Create further settings to narrow down the event further, e.g. select control variable.

Example: Select control variable

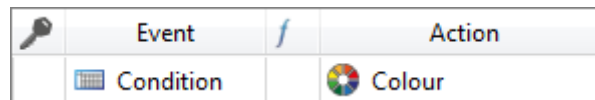


1. Select the event 'Node' (change of a certain attribute of a variable) or 'Condition' (value of a variable).
2. Click on the '...' button.
 - ⇒ A dialogue window for selecting control variables will open.

If no control variables are shown here (empty list), you must first edit the 'Standard variables table'. [↪ Chap. 9.4 "Standard variables table" editor](#)
3. Select the desired variable from the list and click on 'OK'.
 - ⇒ The variable and an ID number are entered in the input field.

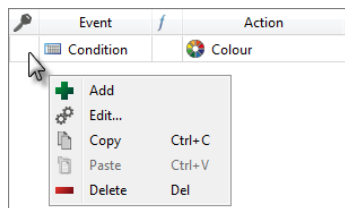
Define action

1. To stimulate the element, click in section '3. Action' on the desired action, e.g. 'colour'.
2. Create further settings to adapt the action, e.g. select control variable.
3. Close the dialogue window 'Simple dynamics'.
 - ⇒ The dynamic sampling is added to the 'Properties'.



9.9.6.2 Edit dynamic sampling

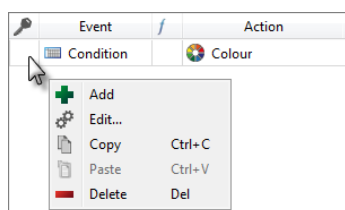
To display or change the dynamic sampling of an element, you must proceed as follows:



1. Highlight the desired element in the image.
2. In the lower section of the 'Properties', right-click with the mouse button on the desired dynamic sampling and select 'Edit'.
 - ⇒ The 'Simple dynamics' dialogue window will open.
3. Change the configurations of the dynamic sampling, if necessary.
4. Close the dialogue window 'Simple dynamics'.

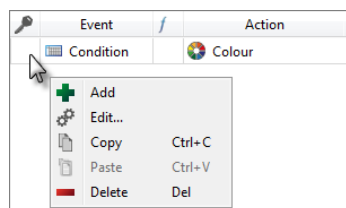
9.9.6.3 Copying and pasting dynamic sampling

You can copy the dynamic sampling of an element and add it to another element:






1. Highlight the desired element in the image.
2. In the lower section of the 'Properties', right-click with the mouse button on the desired dynamic sampling and select 'Copy'.
3. Highlight the element in the image that is to receive the same dynamic sampling.
4. Right-click with the mouse button on the lower section of the 'Properties' and select 'Paste'.
 - ⇒ The marked element receives the same dynamic sampling as the first selected element.

9.9.6.4 Delete dynamic sampling







To delete the dynamic sampling of an element, you must proceed as follows:


1.  Highlight the desired element in the image.
2.  In the lower section of the *'Properties'*, right-click with the mouse button on the desired dynamic sampling and select *'Delete'*.
 - ⇒ A dialogue window will open where you can select whether you want to delete the dynamic sampling.
3.  Click on *'Yes'*.
 - ⇒ The dynamic sampling is removed from the element.

9.10 Add new enumeration

An enumeration is a list of texts that can be displayed, instead of values, in HMI elements. You can use enumerations in certain HMI elements.

1.  In the project tree within the visualisation project, under *'Enumerations'*, click on *'Add new enumeration'*.
 - ⇒ A dialogue window will open.
2.  Enter a name for the enumeration.
3.  Select the type of enumeration:
 - BOOL for two texts instead of the two states TRUE and FALSE
 - NUMERIC for texts instead of numerical values
 - STRING for character strings instead of values
4.  Click on *'OK'*.
 - ⇒ The enumeration is added to the project tree, and the editor to edit the enumeration is opened.





9.11 Edit and use enumeration

-  In the project tree within a visualisation project under *'Enumerations'*, double-click on the desired enumeration.
 - ⇒ The enumeration is opened in the editor.



Enumeration of the BOOL type

-  Enter the desired text for the values TRUE and FALSE in the *'Text'* input fields.

Enumeration of the NUMERIC type

1.  Enter the desired text in the first line of the table in the *'Text'* input field.
2.  Enter a numerical value in the *'Value'* input field.
3.  Confirm your input with *[Enter]*.
 - ⇒ The enumeration element is inserted in the table.
4.  You can add further enumeration elements.

Enumeration of the STRING type


1.  Enter the desired text in the first line of the table in the *'Text'* input field.
2.  Enter a value in the *'Value'* input field.

- 3. ➤ Confirm your input with *[Enter]*.
⇒ The enumeration element is inserted in the table.
- 4. ➤ You can add further enumeration elements.

Using an enumeration in an image

You can use the enumeration in certain HMI elements. During run-time, the filed texts instead of the values are displayed in the HMI elements.

- 1. ➤ Highlight the desired element in the image.
⇒ The properties of the element are displayed. ↪ *Chap. 9.9.5 'Edit object properties' page 324*
- 2. ➤ Under 'General', select the 'Mode' "Enumeration".

 *If the property 'Mode' is not displayed, the enumeration cannot be applied to this HMI element.*

- 3. ➤ Under 'General', 'Enum list', select the desired enumeration.

9.12 Translations 

You can translate all texts in the images into as many languages as desired.

- Click on 'Translations' in the project tree within a visualisation project.
⇒ The 'Translations' editor will open.

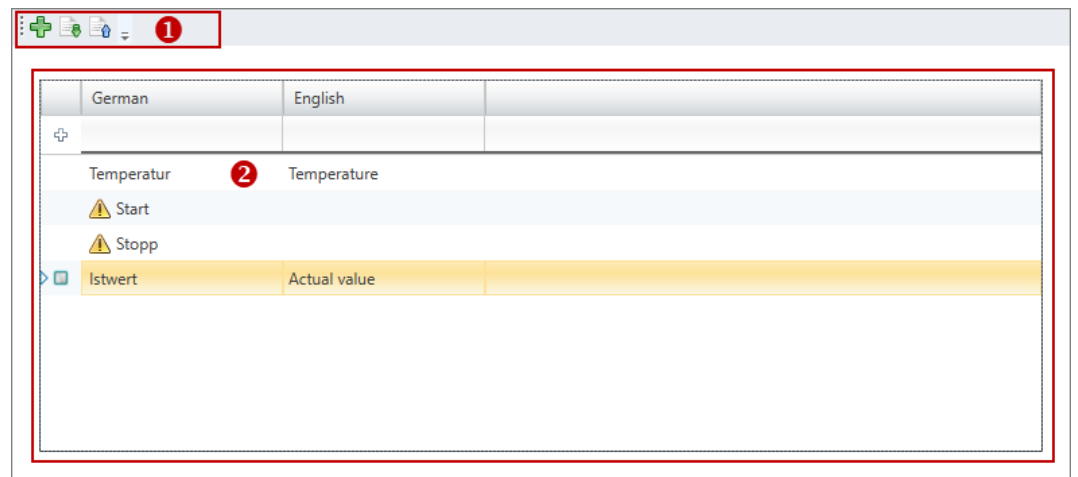





Fig. 252: Translations

- (1) Toolbar
- (2) Editor for translations (translation table)


(1) Toolbar

-  **Add language:** Add new language column ↪ *further information page 331*
-  **Import:** Import translation table into the HMI project ↪ *further information page 331*
-  **Export:** Export translation table to a translation file ↪ *further information page 331*

**(2) Editor for translations
(translation table)**

The first column of the translation table contains the texts of the standard language. This column displays all texts that are contained in the text boxes of images. You can add a new column for each desired language and edit the texts.

Add language


1. ➤ Click on the  button.
⇒ A dialogue window will open.
2. ➤ Enter the desired language.
⇒ The new language is inserted into the table. The text boxes for this language are empty.

Change language columns

You can rename, delete as well as show and hide individual language columns.

- Right-click with the mouse button on the desired language column in the header and select the desired function.

Edit texts

- Double-click in the desired table line and edit the text.
As long as a text box has not been edited, the symbol  is displayed.


Delete text lines

You can delete individual lines.

1. ➤ Highlight the table line which you want to delete.
2. ➤ Press *[Del]*.
- or -
Right-click with the mouse button on the line and select *'Delete highlighted line...'*.


Export translation table

You can export the translation table in XML format (VTR file) in order to e.g. edit it with any editor.

1. ➤ Click on the  button.
⇒ A dialogue window will open.
2. ➤ Select a directory and enter a file name.
⇒ The translation table is exported.

Import translation table

You can import translation tables into the HMI project.

1. ➤ Click on the  button.
⇒ A dialogue window will open.
2. ➤ Select the desired VTR file.
⇒ The translation table is imported into the HMI project.


9.13 User management

The user management allows you to create a user list. For each user, you can define a password and write permission.

Movicon projects > Opening a Movicon project

Fig. 253: User management

Adding a user

1. ➤ Click on .
2. ➤ Enter the desired user name in the input field 'Name'.
3. ➤ Enter the password in the input field 'Password' and repeat the input under 'Re-enter password'.
4. ➤ Click on 'Apply'.
 - ⇒ The user will be entered in the user list.
5. ➤ To allow the user to modify HMI images, activate the option 'Write permission'.

Removing a user

- Right-click with the mouse button on the user line and select 'Delete user'.
 - or -
 - Left-click with the mouse button on the user line and then press [Del].
 - ⇒ A dialogue window will open, where you can select whether the user should be deleted or not.

9.14 Movicon projects

You can create an HMI device with the Movicon functionality. You can thus use the HMI device in a SCADA (Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition) system. For this, please see [Chap. 6.4.1 'Movicon project configurations' page 85](#).

You can open an existing Movicon project and change the project path.

9.14.1 Opening a Movicon project

- Click on 'Open Movicon project' within the HMI at 'HMI Movicon project'.
 - ⇒ The external Movicon application will be started (if available) and the Movicon project will be opened.




9.14.2 Changing the project path

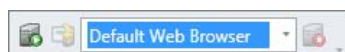
- ➔ Right-click with the mouse button on 'HMI Movicon project' within the HMI and select 'Change project path'.
- ⇒ A dialogue window will open where you can reassign the project path.

9.15 Simulate HMI visualisation

With the HMI simulation, you can test the images in the web browser of your PC before you load the project into the visualisation device or into the control.

If you want to simulate the HMI visualisation, you must proceed as follows:

1. ➔ Create and save all images in your HMI project.
2. ➔ Start the PLC simulation if necessary in order to execute the user program.
↳ *Chap. 8.17 'Simulate user program' page 269*
3. ➔ In the toolbar, select the web browser in which the HMI simulation is to be executed.
4. ➔ Start the HMI simulation. Select one of the following options to this end:
 - **Toolbar:** Click on .
 - **Project tree:** In the HMI project, right-click with the mouse button on 'Images' and select 'Dynamic Simulation'.
 - **Image editor:** Click on the 'Preview' button.
 ⇒ The start image is opened in the web browser.
5. ➔ Test the HMI visualisation. For example, you can test whether dynamic samplings work correctly.
6. ➔ If you want to reload the HMI simulation into the web browser with the start image, click on .
7. ➔ End the HMI simulation. To this end, click on .
8. ➔ If you have executed the PLC simulation, end it.



Keyboard commands in "Image" editor (HMI)

9.16 Keyboard commands in "Image" editor (HMI)

Keyboard command	Function	Description
[Ctrl]+[+]	Zoom in	Increases the zoom factor
[Ctrl]+[-]	Zoom out	Decreases the zoom factor
[Shift]+[Tab]	Select next element	Selects the next element in the image (jump to the next element)
[Ctrl]+[A]	Select all elements	Selects all elements in the image
[Esc]	Reset selection	Reset selected elements (= no element is selected)
[Ctrl]+[C]	Copy	Copy selected elements
[Ctrl]+[X]	Cut	Cut selected elements
[Ctrl]+[V]	Paste	Paste selected elements
[Ctrl]+[Z]	Undo	Undo last change
[Ctrl]+[Y]	Redo	Restore last undone change
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[B]	Bold	Changes the text of the selected element to "bold"
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[I]	Ital	Changes the text of the selected element to "italics"
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[U]	Underline	Changes the text of the selected element to "underline"
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[B]	Font colour	Changes the font colour of the selected element
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[+]	Increase font size	Increases the font size of the selected element
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[-]	Decrease font size	Decreases the font size of the selected element
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[D]	Delete formatting	Restores the standard formatting of the selected element
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[1]	Draw line	Sets the mode of the editor to "Draw line"
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[2]	Draw rectangle	Sets the mode of the editor to "Draw rectangle"
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[3]	Draw circle	Sets the mode of the editor to "Draw circle"
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[4]	Draw polygon	Sets the mode of the editor to "Draw polygon"
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[5]	Draw polyline	Sets the mode of the editor to "Draw polyline"
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[6]	Draw ellipse	Sets the mode of the editor to "Draw ellipse"
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[7]	Add text box	Sets the mode of the editor to "Add text"
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[8]	Add image	Opens the dialog in order to add a new image
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[9]	Bézier curves	Sets the mode of the editor to "Draw circle"
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[Image ↓]	Bring forward	Element is brought forward a level
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[Image ↑]	Send backward	Element is sent backward a level
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[←]	Align left-aligned	Selected elements are aligned left-aligned
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[→]	Align right aligned	Selected elements are aligned right aligned
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[↓]	Arrange below	Selected elements are aligned towards the lower edge of the lowest-positioned element
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[↑]	Arrange above	Selected elements are aligned towards the upper edge of the highest-positioned element
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[Pos 1]	Align vertically	Selected elements are cantered vertically

Keyboard command	Function	Description
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[End]	Align horizontally	Selected elements are cantered horizontally
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[H]	Horizontally distributed	Selected elements are aligned horizontally with the same spacing
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[V]	Vertical distributed	Selected elements are aligned vertically with the same spacing
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[←]	Shift to the left	Selected elements are shifted to the left, aligned towards the grid
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[→]	Shift to the right	Selected elements are shifted to the right, aligned towards the grid
[Ctrl]+[G]	Group	Selected elements are grouped
[Ctrl]+[U]	Ungroup	Grouping of elements is removed
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[R]	Rotate 90°	Rotate clockwise 90 degrees
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[T]	Rotate 270°	Rotate element clockwise 270 degrees (= 90 degrees anti-clockwise)
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[P]	Preview in web browser	Rotate clockwise 90 degrees
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[X]	Toggle Grid	Switch visibility of the grid: visible/not visible
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[Q]	Configure grid	Opens the dialog 'Configure grid'
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[A]	Align towards the grid	Selected elements are aligned towards the grid
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[N]	Change line end	Change line end: flat/round/square
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[M]	Change connection	Change connection: angular/rounded/bevelled
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[G]	Colour gradient	Opens the dialog 'Colour gradient'
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[Y]	Clone style	Save formatting of the selected element for transfer to another element
[Ctrl]+[Alt]+[S]	Open configurations	Opens the dialog 'Configurations' ↻ Chap. 9.7.1 'Configurations' page 319
[Ctrl]+[Shift]+[S]	Save HMI library element	Saves the HMI library element currently processed in the editor

Add drive

10 Motion Control

10.1 Functions of Motion Control

Functions of Motion Control are supported by VIPA controls of the series *SLIO CPU iMC7* (e.g. SLIO-CPU 015-CEFNR00). The control communicates via the communication protocol EtherCAT with the drive modules.

- You can choose drive modules from the catalog and configure them.
- You can call up further tools, such as *YASKAWA SigmaWin+* or *YASKAWA DriveWizard*.
- You can add and configure axes.
- With the Motion Control library, you can program machine functionalities.

10.2 Add drive

Functions of Motion Control are supported by VIPA controls of the series *SLIO CPU iMC7* (e.g. SLIO-CPU 015-CEFNR00). The control communicates via the communication protocol EtherCAT with the drive modules.

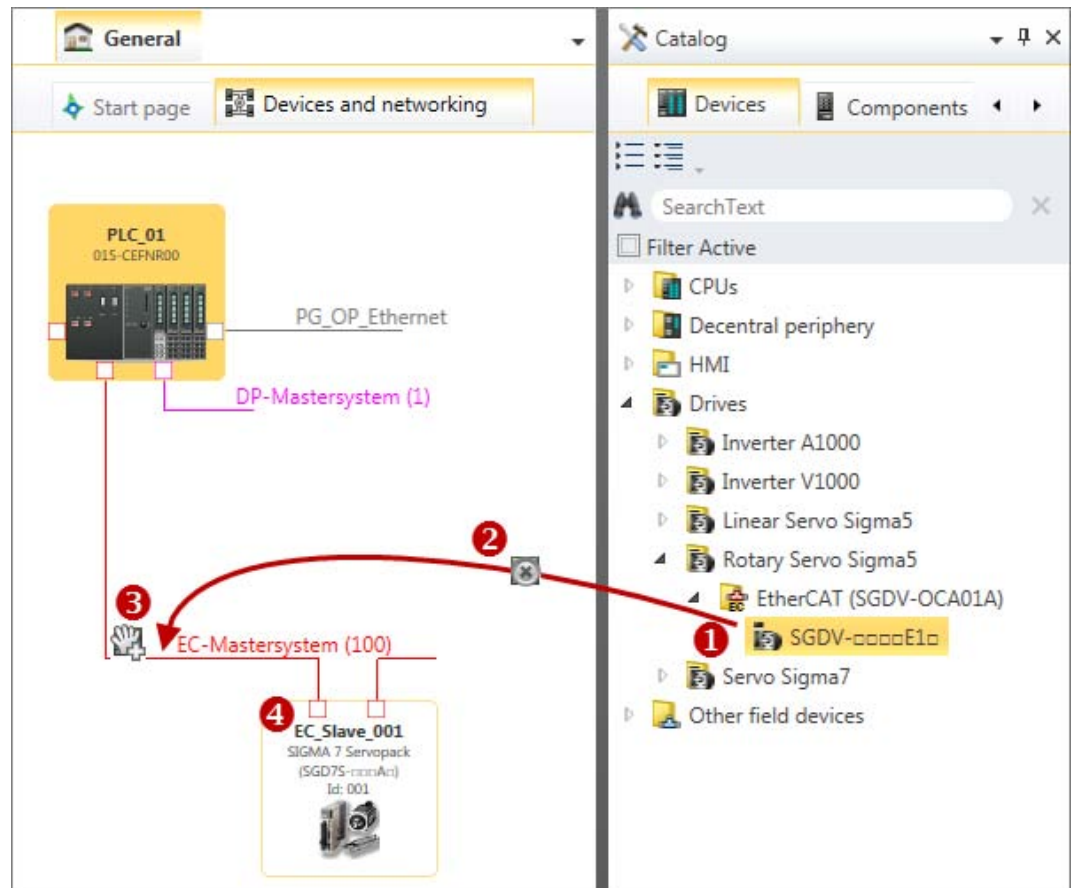


Fig. 254: Adding slave via "Catalog"

- (1) Select drive module (hold left mouse button down)
- (2) Drag drive module
- (3) Drop the drive module at a suitable place (release the mouse button)
- (4) The drive module is added

1. Select one of the following options if you want to add a drive module:
 - **Catalog:** Drag the desired drive module from the 'Device templates' register of the catalog ([Chap. 4.10 'Catalog'](#) page 34) to the connecting line of the EtherCAT bus system in the 'Devices and networking' editor. Fig. 62
The drive module is directly added and displayed in the project tree.
 - **Project tree:** Within the PLC under 'Decentralised periphery', 'EC master system', click on 'Add new device'. Fig. 63
 - **Editor "Devices and networking":** Right-click with the mouse button on the connecting line of EC master system and select 'Add new device'.

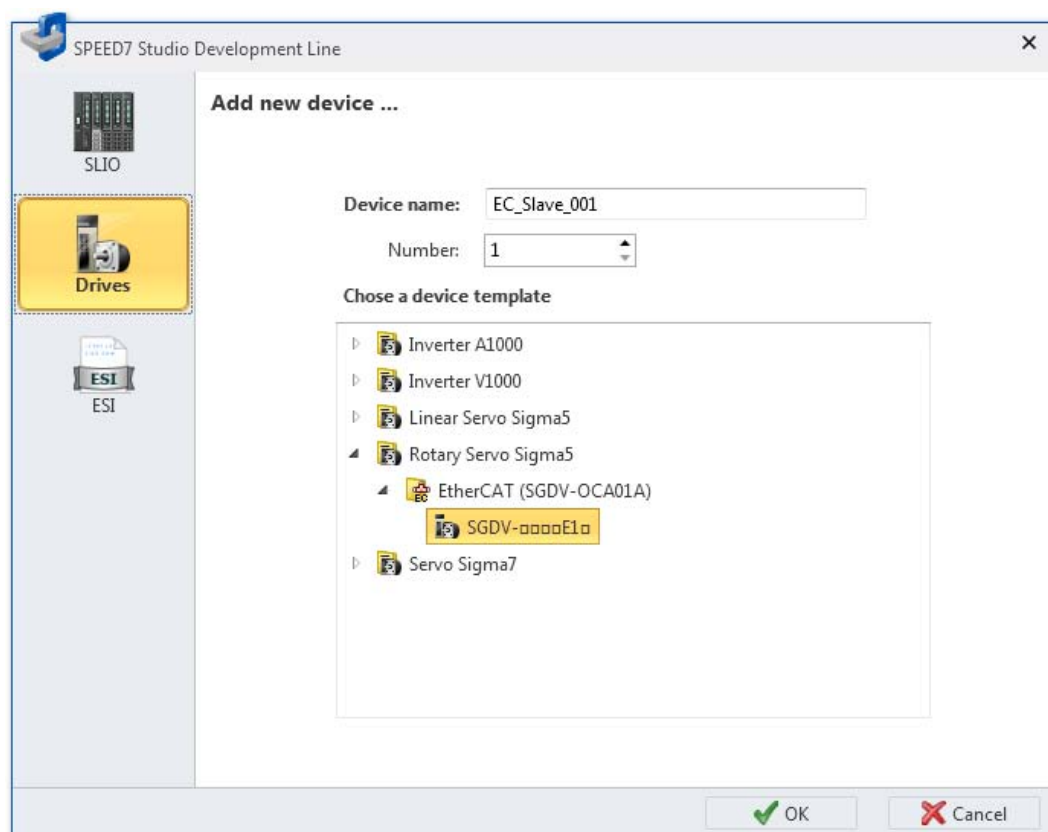


Fig. 255: "Add new device" (drive) dialogue window (drive)

2. Select 'Drives'.
3. Select the desired device template from the list.
4. 'Device name': Enter a device name, if required.
5. Click on 'OK'.
 - ⇒ The drive module is added and displayed in the project tree.



If you enter a value in the 'Number' box, several structurally identical drive modules are added.

Add drive > Adaptation of the Sigma 5/7 drives, which are integrated via ESI file

10.2.1 Adaptation of the Sigma 5/7 drives, which are integrated via ESI file



With each version of the SPEED7 Studio the catalog data of the Sigma 5/7 drives are updated. You can also update the data of your Sigma 5/7 drives in the catalog by means of an ESI files.

Please note that system-specific default values are changed in the input/output PDOs. These must be adapted with the SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager as described below! Otherwise, you will receive a mapping error during commissioning.

Inputs: 1st Transmit PDO

Name	Index single / double axis module 1	Index double axis module 2	Bit length
Status word	0x6041:00	0x6841: 00	16bit
Position actual internal value	0x6063:00	0x6863:00	32bit
Position actual value	0x6064:00	0x6864:00	32bit
Torque actual value	0x6077:00	0x6877:00	16bit
Following error actual value	0x60F4:00	0x68F4:00	32bit
Modes of operation display	0x6061:00	0x6861:00	8bit
Digital inputs	0x60FD:00	0x68FD:00	32bit

Inputs: 2nd Transmit PDO

Name	Index single / double axis module 1	Index double axis module 2	Bit length
Touch probe status	0x60B9:00	0x68B9:00	16bit
Touch probe 1 position value	0x60BA:00	0x68BA:00	32bit
Touch probe 2 position value	0x60BC:00	0x68BC:00	32bit

Outputs: 1st Receive PDO

Name	Index single / double axis module 1	Index double axis module 2	Bit length
Control word	0x6040:00	0x6840: 00	16bit
Target position	0x607A:00	0x687A: 00	32bit
Target velocity	0x60FF:00	0x68FF: 00	32bit
Modes of operation	0x6060:00	0x6860:00	8bit
Touch probe function	0x60B8:00	0x68B8: 00	16bit

Outputs: 2nd Receive PDO

Name	Index single / double axis module 1	Index double axis module 2	Bit length
Target Torque	0x6071: 00	0x6871: 00	32bit
Torque Slope	0x6087: 00	0x6887: 00	32bit

10.3 Start *SigmaWin+* or *DriveWizard*

If you have installed tools for the configuration of *YASKAWA drives* on your PC, you can call up the tools via the drive modules.

➔ In the editor "Devices and networking" right-click with the mouse button on the drive module and select the desired tool, e.g. '*Start SigmaWin+*' for servo drives or '*Start DriveWizard*' for frequency converters.

⇒ The configuration tool is started for the drive module.

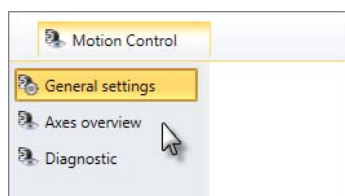
Tools which have not been installed are highlighted in grey and cannot be called up.

10.4 Editor "Motion Control Overview"

In the editor '*Motion Control Overview*', you can change the configurations of the Motion Control functions.

If a project is open and a control is included which supports Motion Control functionalities, you can open the '*Motion Control Overview*' editor:

- **Project tree:** Within the PLC under '*Motion Control*', click on '*Motion Control Overview*'.



The '*Motion Control Overview*' editor is divided into three sections.

10.4.1 General settings

You have selected the '*General settings*' section in the '*Motion Control Overview*' editor.
↳ [Chap. 10.4 'Editor "Motion Control Overview" !\[\]\(f219cfc00b8db0cd1a81ae1fc9afaf28_img.jpg\)', page 339](#)

Editor "Motion Control Overview" > General settings

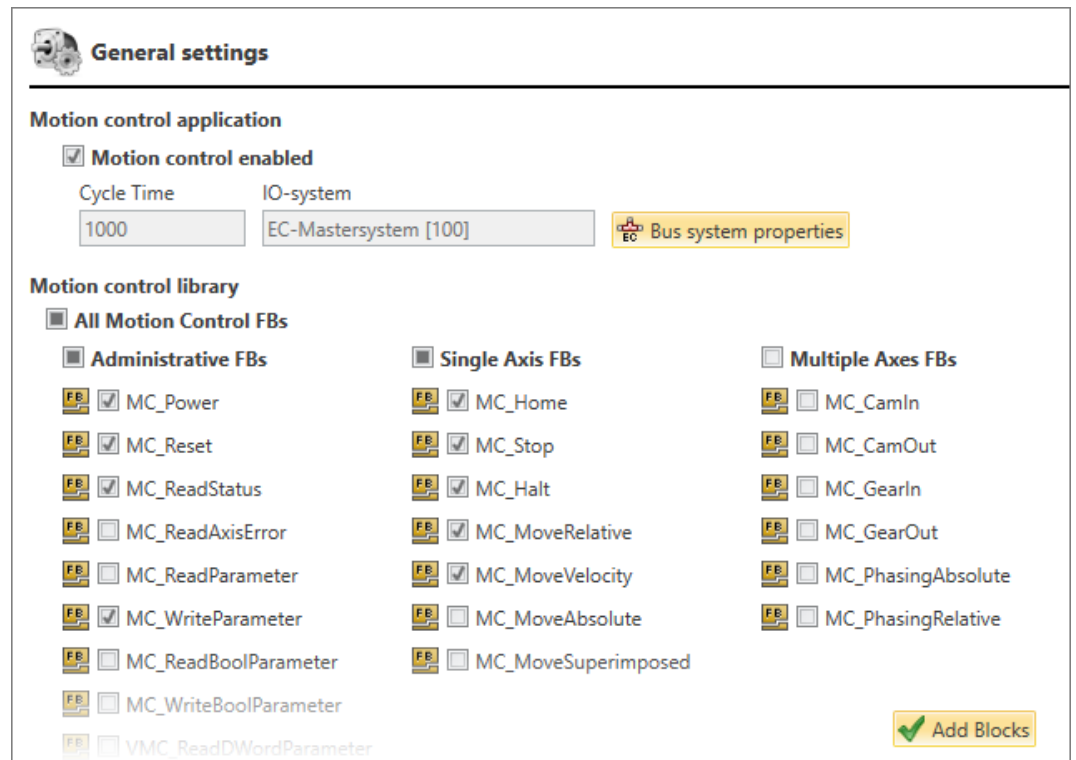


Fig. 256: Motion Control General Settings

Activate Motion Control

- Activate under Motion Control application the option *'Motion control enabled'*.
 - ⇒ By activating Motion Control, the following directories and blocks are created by *SPEED7 Studio* in the project tree under *'program blocks'*:
 - Directory *'MC_APP'* with data blocks for the Motion Control user program
 - Directory *'MC_SYSTEM'* with system blocks for the Motion Control user program
 - Organisation blocks for Motion Control, e.g. OB1, OB60 and OB61, including precall and postcall of the motion control system and synchronisation settings in the OB61.
- Moreover, a synchronisation-enabled bus system (e.g. EtherCAT master system) is entered in the *'IO-system'* field.

'Cycle time' – Cycle time in microseconds, adjustable in the configurator of the IO system

'IO-system' – Used IO system

'Bus system properties' – Open the dialogue window for the properties of the used IO system

Select Motion Control functions

All available Motion Control functions are grouped and listed under the *'Motion Control library'*.

1. ➤ Activate the Motion Control groups or individual functions you want to use in the Motion Control user program, e.g. *'MC_Power'*.
2. ➤ Click on *'Add blocks'*.




By activating Motion Control functions, *SPEED7 Studio* creates the directory *'MC_LIB'* and within the function block, matching the activated Motion Control function, in the project tree under *'Program blocks'*, e.g. "MC_Power [FB700]".

If you delete the function block of an activated Motion Control function from the directory 'MC_LIB', this function block is added automatically when you compile the user program the next time.


10.4.2 Axis overview

In the axis overview, all configured axes are listed in a table. For each axis, the table lists the input and output parameters of the cyclic communication, the user units and limit values.

Detailed information on the parameters is available at:

-  [Chap. 10.6.1 'Basic settings' !\[\]\(b3cfbfd04368a71f4c64e073908d25d7_img.jpg\) page 344](#)
-  [Chap. 10.6.2 'User units' !\[\]\(68986557a06757f8727dab2acf01c000_img.jpg\) page 345](#)
-  [Chap. 10.6.3 'Limit values' !\[\]\(d654786d397f9e11efa637705495f10d_img.jpg\) page 348](#)

In the 'Expert View', more details are shown than in the 'Smart View', e.g. further parameters and calculated values.



Axes overview

Smart View
 Expert View

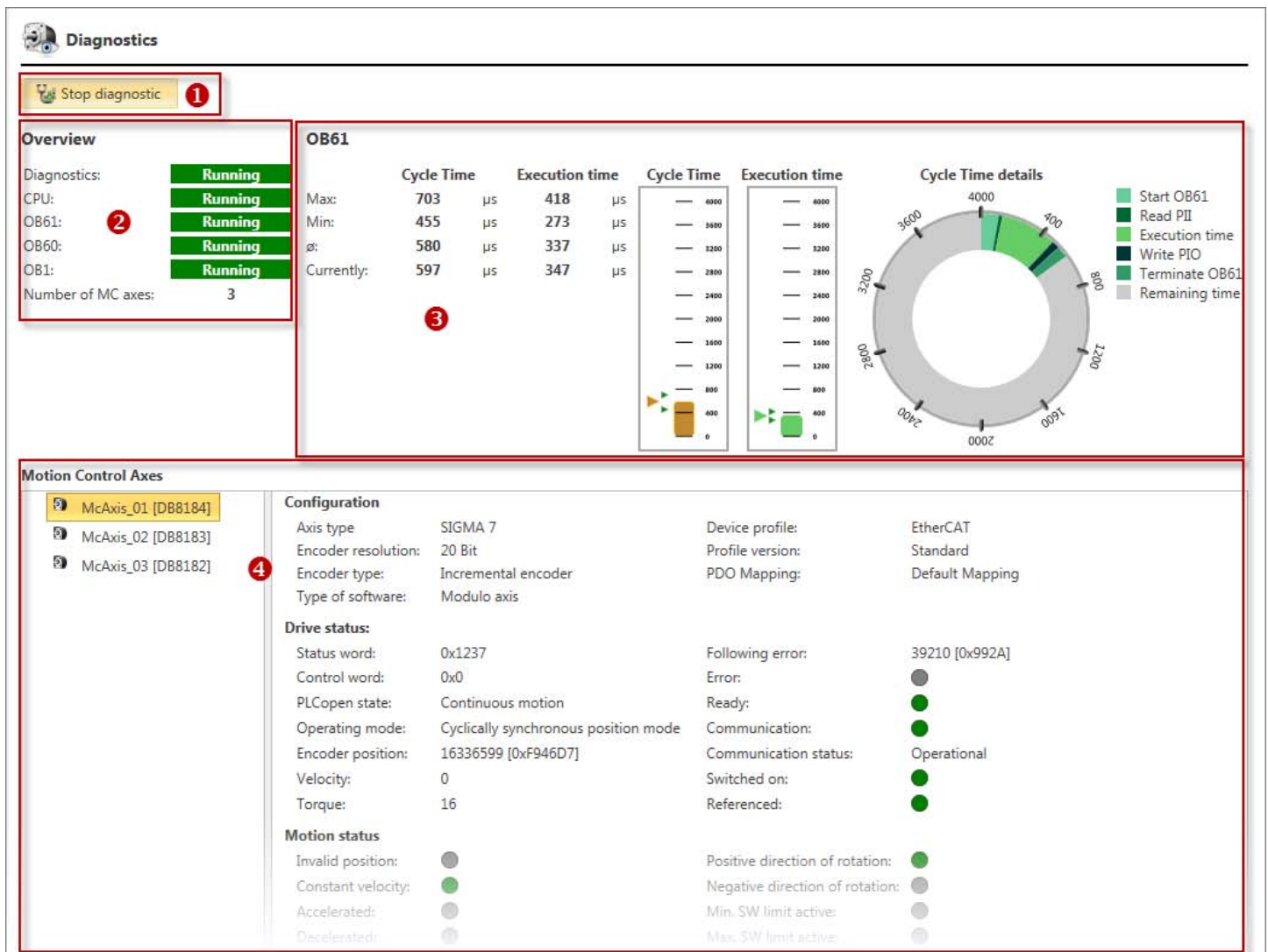
Basic settings	MC_Axis_01	MC_Axis_02
Name of axis	<input type="text" value="MC_Axis_01"/>	<input type="text" value="MC_Axis_02"/>
Axis type	Virtual axis	Positionierungsachse incremental
Encoder type		incremental
Encoder resolution		20 bit
User units	MC_Axis_01	MC_Axis_02
Machine cycle		
Type of software	<input type="checkbox"/> modulo <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> limited	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> modulo <input type="checkbox"/> limited
minimum	<input type="text" value="-1000.00"/>	<input type="text" value="-1000.00"/>
maximum	<input type="text" value="1000.00"/>	<input type="text" value="1000.00"/>
Gear ratio		
Motor revolutions	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>
Revolutions drive	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>
Mechanics		
Revolutions drive	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>
User units	<input type="text" value="1.00"/>	<input type="text" value="1.00"/>
Limits	MC_Axis_01	MC_Axis_02
Dynamics		
Max. velocity	<input type="text" value="•"/>	<input type="text" value="•"/>
Max. acceleration	<input type="text" value="•"/>	<input type="text" value="•"/>
Max. deceleration	<input type="text" value="•"/>	<input type="text" value="•"/>
Max. jerk	<input type="text" value="•"/>	<input type="text" value="•"/>
Positioning		
Monitoring minimum position	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Min. position	<input type="text" value="0.00"/>	
Monitoring maximum position	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Max. position	<input type="text" value="0.00"/>	

Fig. 257: Motion Control Axis Overview

Editor "Motion Control Overview" > Diagnostics

10.4.3 Diagnostics

With the Motion Control diagnostics, you can check OB callings, execution and cycle times and see information on the axes during operation.



Diagnostics

Stop diagnostic **1**

Overview

Diagnostics: **Running**

CPU: **Running**

OB61: **Running** **2**

OB60: **Running**

OB1: **Running**

Number of MC axes: 3

OB61

	Cycle Time	Execution time	Cycle Time	Execution time
Max:	703 μ s	418 μ s		
Min:	455 μ s	273 μ s		
σ :	580 μ s	337 μ s		
Currently:	597 μ s	347 μ s		

3

Cycle Time details

- Start OB61
- Read PII
- Execution time
- Write PIO
- Terminate OB61
- Remaining time

Motion Control Axes

- McAxis_01 [DB8184]
- McAxis_02 [DB8183]
- McAxis_03 [DB8182] **4**

Configuration

Axis type: SIGMA 7

Encoder resolution: 20 Bit

Encoder type: Incremental encoder

Type of software: Modulo axis

Device profile: EtherCAT

Profile version: Standard

PDO Mapping: Default Mapping

Drive status:

Status word: 0x1237

Control word: 0x0

PLCopen state: Continuous motion


Operating mode: Cyclically synchronous position mode


Encoder position: 16336599 [0xF946D7]


Velocity: 0

Torque: 16


Following error: 39210 [0x992A]


Error: 

Ready: 


Communication: 


Communication status: Operational


Switched on: 


Referenced: 


Motion status


Invalid position: 


Constant velocity: 

Accelerated: 

Decelerated: 

Positive direction of rotation: 

Negative direction of rotation: 

Min. SW limit active: 











Max. SW limit active: 

Fig. 258: Motion Control Diagnostics

- (1) Switch on/off diagnostics
- (2) OB callings and number of axes
- (3) Run time behaviour of the OB61 and Motion Control cycle
- (4) Information on the axis

(1) Switch on/off diagnostics

In order to start the Motion Control diagnostics, you must proceed as follows:

1.  Configure all axes.  Chap. 10.5 'Add new axis  page 343
2.  Create and compile the user program.  Chap. 8.16 'Compile user program' page 267
3.  Transfer the hardware configuration and the user program to the control.  Chap. 8.18 'Transfer the hardware configuration and user program to the control' page 271
4.  Click on 'Start diagnostics'.
 \Rightarrow Motion Control diagnostics will be started.
5.  End the Motion Control diagnostics. Click on 'Stop diagnostics' for this purpose.

(2) Diagnostics display, OB callings and number of axes

This shows whether the diagnostics is running and the organisation blocks OB1, OB60 and OB61 are run through. Moreover, the number of the configured axes is shown here.

(3) Run time behaviour of the OB61 and Motion Control cycle

The following information relating to the cycle time and execution time of the OB61 is shown in tables and as bar diagrams:

- Max. measured time since the start of the Motion Control diagnostics
- Min. measured time since the start of the Motion Control diagnostics
- Average value since the start of the Motion Control diagnostics
- Currently measured time

The pie chart displays the entire Motion Control cycle time in micro seconds. The individual pie sections display the current execution duration of the program processing of the OB61:

- Start OB61 – Internal CPU time for the preparation of the program processing
- Read PAE – Inputs reading
- Execution time – Processing user program
- Write PAA – Outputs writing
- Terminate OB61 – Internal CPU time for terminating the program processing
- Remaining time – Idling time

(4) Information on the axis

➔ Click left on the desired axis.

⇒ Configured data (set values) and current states (actual values) are displayed for the selected axis.

10.5 Add new axis

You can add new axes to a control with the Motion Control functionality axes. In the user program, you can control axes and thus move the drive.

In order to be able to add axes, a control which supports Motion Control functions must already be present in the project. ↪ *Chap. 10.1 'Functions of Motion Control' page 336*

"Motion Control" must already be activated in the "Motion Control overview". ↪ *Chap. 10.4.1 'General settings' page 339*

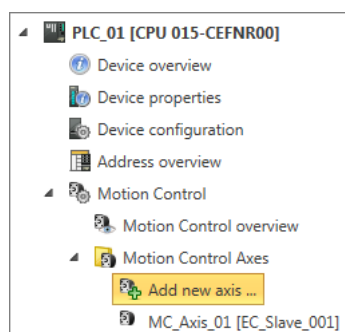


Fig. 259: Add new axis

1. ➔ In the project tree within the control under 'Motion Control', 'Motion Control axes', click on 'Add new axis'.

⇒ A dialogue window will open.

2. ➔ 'Name of axis': Enter an axis name, if required. You can reference the axis in the user program with this name.

3. ➔ Click on 'OK'.



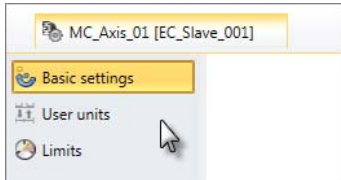
If you select the option 'Open Motion Control configuration' and click on 'OK', "Motion Control axis" editor will open.

⇒ The axis is added and displayed in the project tree. Additionally, *SPEED7 Studio* creates a data block with the same name under 'Program Blocks', 'MC_APP'.

10.6 Editor "Motion Control axis"

In the 'Motion Control axis' editor, you can make configurations at an axis of the drive. In order to open the editor of a Motion Control axis, proceed as follows:

- **Project tree:** In the control under 'Motion Control', 'Motion Control axes', double click on the desired axis.



The 'Motion Control axis' editor is divided into three sections.

10.6.1 Basic settings

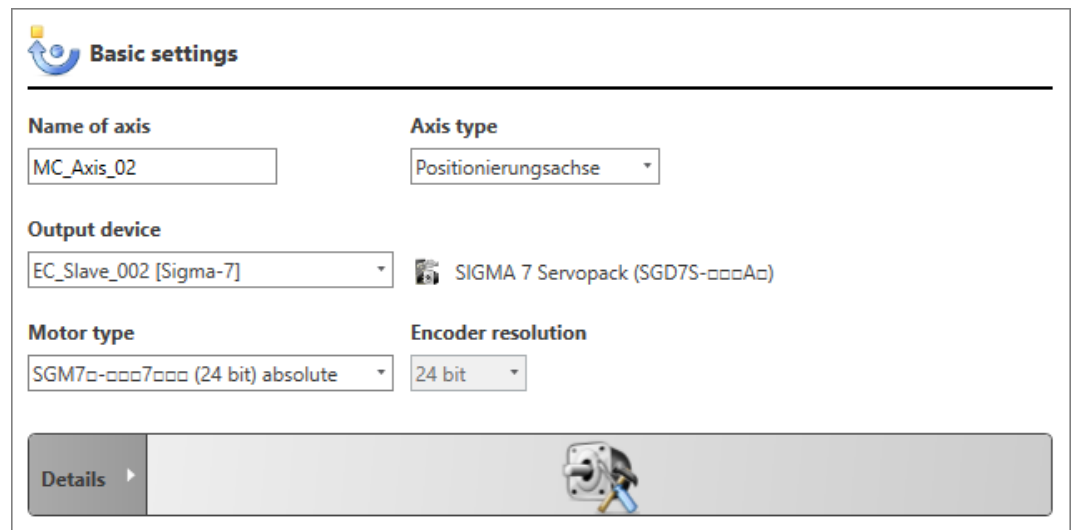


Fig. 260: Motion Control axis: Basic settings

Depending on the axis type, different setting possibilities are displayed.

'Name of axis' – Is displayed in the project tree and used in the user program

'Axis type' – Virtual axis, position or speed controlled axis, axis on external sensor/encoder

'Output device' – Assign the axis to a drive module e.g. EtherCAT drive module

'Motor type' (only for axis type "positioning axis")– Select motor according to the type designation or select "User defined" and set corresponding sensor resolution

'Sensor resolution' (only for axis type "positioning axis") – resolution of the encoder: The suitable resolution is set automatically depending on the motor type. If you select "User defined" as motor type, you have to set the resolution manually.

'absolute' / 'incremental' – Encoder type: Absolute encoder or incremental encoder

'Number of bits for revolution' (only for axis type "External encoder") – Resolution of the used encoder per motor revolution

'Number of bits for multi turns' (only for axis type "External encoder") – Number of available bits, if the encoder is ready for multi turn. If the encoder is not ready for multi turn, enter value 0.

1. ➤ First, select the 'Axis type'.
2. ➤ If you have selected a real axis or an external encoder, assign an 'Output device'.

3. ➤ If an I/O allocation of the drive module does not match the used axis type, a dialogue window will open where you can choose whether *SPEED7 Studio* should correct the I/O allocation (IO mapping) automatically.
If this dialogue window will open, click on 'Yes'.
4. ➤ Select the used motor with the '*Motor type*'. If no suitable motor is listed, select '*User defined*', the '*Sensor resolution*' and '*absolute*' or '*incremental*'.

Details

1. ➤ Click on '*Details*' in order to display the parameters for the cyclic communication.
2. ➤ If required, change the configuration for the cyclic reading and writhing access of the axis.

10.6.2 User units

Here you can determine the areas and units of the axis. You can change the transmission ratio of the axis. The selected unit will be used for the input and output parameters of the Motion Control function blocks.

Editor "Motion Control axis" > User units

Unit
 Increments mm μ m nm degree inch

Axis type
 modulo finite

Machine cycle
 Maximum: [*] mm
 Minimum: [*] mm

Scaling
Motor resolution
 Increments: [1048576]
 Revolutions motor: [1]

Gear ratio
 Revolutions motor: [2]
 Revolutions output: [1]

Mechanics
 Revolutions output: [1]
 User units: [*] mm

Details

Machine cycle		Cycle		Overflow		Error numerator		Error denominator	
Range	[2000] mm	[4194304000]	inc	[4194303999]	inc	[0]	inc	[0]	inc
		Cycle Hi	[0] inc	Overflow Hi	[0] inc	Error numerator Hi	[0] inc	Error denominator Hi	[0] inc
		Cycle Lo	[-100663296] inc	Overflow Lo	[-100663297] inc	Error numerator Lo	[0] inc	Error denominator Lo	[0] inc

Position	Velocity	Acceleration	Jerk
Factor	Factor	Factor	Factor
[2097152]	[*]	[*]	[*]
Offset			
[-1000] mm			

Fig. 261: Motion Control axis: User units

'Unit' – Unit for displays, e.g. in the motion diagram of the cam editor: The unit has no influence on the calculation of motions.

Axis type

'Modulo':

- For endless positioning in positive direction (exceeding "maximum") or negative direction (exceeding "minimum")
- The maximum value (e.g. 360 degrees) corresponds to the minimum value (e.g. 0 degrees).

'Limited':

- For positioning within the limits "Minimum" and "Maximum"
- If the axis is driven across the limits, the position will be set to invalid.
- The maximum value (e.g. 360 degrees) doesn't correspond to the minimum value (e.g. 0 degrees).

Machine cycle

Traversing range of the axis: The values can be used for the calculation of a motion, examples see below.

'Maximum' – Upper limit value for the traversing range

'Minimum' – Lower limit value for the traversing range



CAUTION!

The axis can run out of control!

A limited axis is not stopped, even if the configured traversing range is left!

Program the Motion Control function blocks (e.g. MC_MoveVelocity, MC_GearIn, etc.) in a way that the configured traversing range is not exceeded! Use the monitoring function of the positioning and the function block MC_ReadAxisInfo for that purpose. [↪ further information page 349](#)

Motor resolution

'Increments', *'Motor revolution'* – Resolution of a motor revolution: The value displays the number of increments per motor revolution of the used drive. The motor resolution can be set via the motor type and the sensor resolution. [↪ Chap. 10.6.1 'Basic settings' page 344](#)

Gear ratio

Transmission ration of the gear: The number of motor revolutions corresponds to the number of revolutions of the output (on the load side, e.g. on the drive output), see example below.

'Motor revolutions' – Number of motor revolutions: The value is used for the transmission ratio of a motion.

'Revolutions drive' – Number of revolutions of the output side: The value is used for the calculation of a motion.

If no drive is used on the axis (transmission ratio 1:1), select "Motor revolutions = 1" and "Revolutions drive = 1".

Mechanics

Relation between the mechanics and the user units: The number of the *'Revolutions drive'*, corresponds to the value of *'User units'*, see example below.

Example for the axis configuration

The total motion (working travelling distance) of a linear axis should be max. 2,000 mm in an area between -1,000 mm and +1,000 mm. A drive with a transmission ratio of 2:1 is used. For three revolutions on the load side (output) a distance of 100 mm is travelled.

Select the following configurations for this example:

- Unit: mm
- Axis type: limited
- Machine cycle – Maximum: 1,000, Minimum: -1,000
- Gear ratio – Motor revolutions: 2, revolutions output: 1
- Mechanics – revolutions output: 3, User units: 100

Details

➔ Click on 'Details' in order to display an overview over the calculated values, e.g. velocity, acceleration and jerk.

10.6.3 Limit values




Fig. 262: Motion Control axis: Limit values

Operation settings

Here, you can enter the maximum limit values of the axis for velocity, acceleration, delay and jerk. The values are used for the input and output parameters of the Motion Control function blocks.

Positioning

You can monitor the traversing range of a limited axis. "Software limit switches" can be programmed via the user program.

1.  Enable the option 'Monitoring minimum position' or 'Monitoring maximum position'.
 2.  Enter the limit values into the input fields 'Min. position' or 'Max. position'. The values must be within the configured traversing range.  'Machine cycle' page 347
- ⇒ Motion Control function block MC_ReadAxisInfo displays if a limit value has been exceeded via the parameters LimitSwitchNeg or LimitSwitchPos.



CAUTION!

The axis can run out of control!

A limited axis is not stopped, even if the configured traversing range is left!

Program the Motion Control function blocks (e.g. MC_MoveVelocity, MC_GearIn, etc.) in a way that the configured traversing range is not exceeded! Use the monitoring function of the positioning and the function block MC_ReadAxisInfo for that purpose.

Details

-  Click on 'Details' in order to display an overview over the calculated values.

10.7 Create cams


10.7.1 The "Electronic cam"

Irregular motions can be created with mechanical cam gears. If a change of a motion sequence is required, the system must be retooled and the cam must be exchanged. "Electronic cams" have the advantage that motion sequences can be changed in a real short time, even during operation, without the necessity to retool the system.

Electronic servo drives will assume the function of the "Electronic cam". Those drives can carry out very complex motions. Information on the motion can be found in a "data point table". You can set the data points with the cam editor and reproduce and develop mechanical cams. The data points are stored in a data block and are transferred from the control to the drive via the function block "MC_CamIn".

10.7.2 Add new cam

You can add new cams to a control with the Motion Control functionality and edit them in the cam editor.

In order to be able to add cams, a control which supports Motion Control functions must already be present in the project.  Chap. 10 'Motion Control' page 336

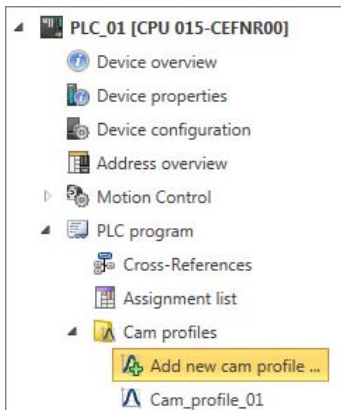


Fig. 263: Add new cam

In addition, at least two axes must be present in the project. ↪ [Chap. 10.5 'Add new axis'](#) [page 343](#)

1. In the project tree within the control under 'PLC program', 'Cams', click on 'Add new cam'.
⇒ A dialogue window will open.
2. 'Name': Enter a cam name, if required.
3. 'Master axis': Select the desired master axis (or leading axis, reference axis). You can use virtual or real axes.
4. 'Slave axis': Select the desired slave axis. You can use virtual or real axes.
5. Click on 'OK'.
⇒ The cam is added and displayed in the project tree. Additionally, *SPEED7 Studio* creates a data block with the same name under 'Program Blocks', 'MC_APP'.

You can change the master axis and following axis afterwards. ↪ [Chap. 10.7.3.9 'Properties of the cam \(profile properties\)'](#) [page 361](#)

10.7.3 Cam editor [A](#)

In the cam editor, you can set the data points of the "Electronic cam".

In order to open the cam editor, proceed as follows:

- **Project tree:** Within a control, double click on the desired cam under 'PLC program', 'cams'.

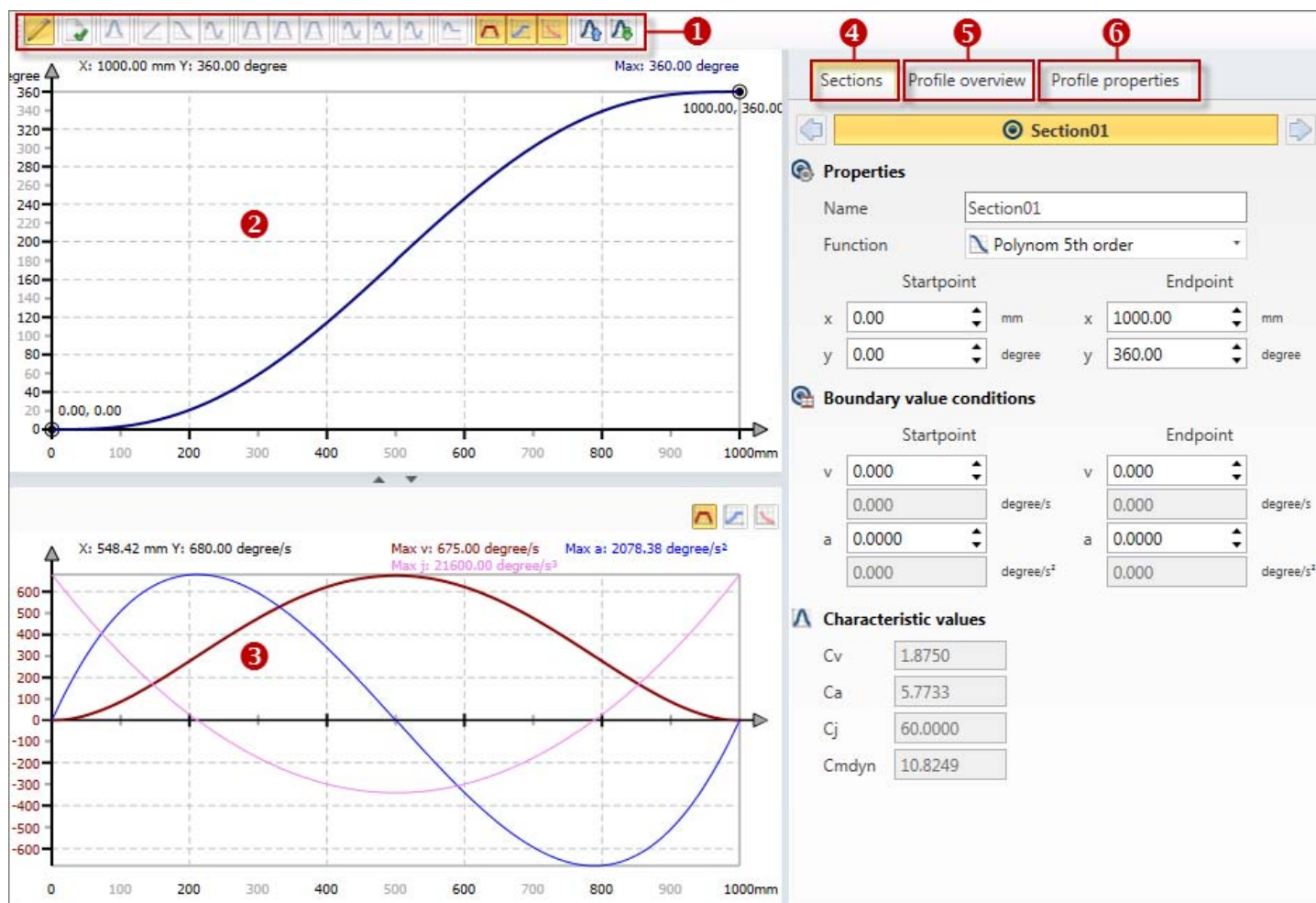




















Fig. 264: Cam editor

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| (1) Toolbar | (4) Properties of a motion segment |
| (2) Motion diagram | (5) Overview over motion segments |
| (3) Motion characteristics | (6) Properties of the cam |

(1) Toolbar

-  Editing mode: Edit selected motion segment [↪ further information page 353](#)
-  Create new curve: The data points are recalculated and stored in the data block.
-  Have the motion function inserted automatically [↪ Chap. 10.7.3.5 'Auto-complete the curve ▲' page 357](#)
In order to insert and draw motion functions: [↪ Chap. 10.7.3.4 'Draw segments' page 355.](#)
For an overview over the motion functions: [↪ Chap. 10.7.4 'Motion functions' page 362](#)
-  Insert motion function "Straight line"
-  Insert motion function "Polynomial 5. grade"
-  Insert motion function "Inclined sine"
-  Insert motion function "Modified acceleration trapezium (PP)"
-  Insert motion function "Modified acceleration trapezium (PR)"

-  Insert motion function "Modified acceleration trapezium (RP)"
-  Insert motion function "Modified sine (VV)"
-  Insert motion function "Modified sine (VR)"
-  Insert motion function "Modified sine (RV)"
-  Insert motion function "Sine-straight-combination"
-  Show/hide motion characteristic velocity (v)
-  Show/hide motion characteristic acceleration (a)
-  Show/hide motion characteristic jolt (j)
-  Export cam profile: Save all data from the cam profile in a VPCAM file (XML format)
-  Import cam profile: Load cam profile from a VPCAM file into the cam editor

- (2) Motion diagram** In the motion diagram (or motion plan) of the cam editor, you can edit the total motion graphically.
 ↪ *Chap. 10.7.3.1 'Motion diagram' page 352*
- (3) Motion characteristics** This diagram shows the development of the velocity, the acceleration and the jerk.
 ↪ *Chap. 10.7.3.6 'Motion characteristics' page 357*
- (4) Properties of a motion segment** You can display and edit all data of a motion segment here.
 ↪ *Chap. 10.7.3.7 'Properties of the motion segment' page 358*
- (5) Overview over motion segments** You can display and edit all data of the motion segment of the cam profile here.
 ↪ *Chap. 10.7.3.8 'Overview over motion segments (profile overview)' page 360*
- (6) Properties of the cam** You can display and edit general data about the cam profile and the selected master and slave axes here.
 ↪ *Chap. 10.7.3.9 'Properties of the cam (profile properties)' page 361*

10.7.3.1 Motion diagram

In the motion diagram (or motion plan) of the cam editor, you can edit the total motion graphically.

- The total motion (or cam profile) is divided into individual successive motion segments. The motion diagram includes the individual segments of the total motion.
- Individual motion function (or motion laws) can be included into the motion diagram.
- Shockproof and jolt free motions can be guaranteed between the motion segments via matching conditions (or boundary value conditions).

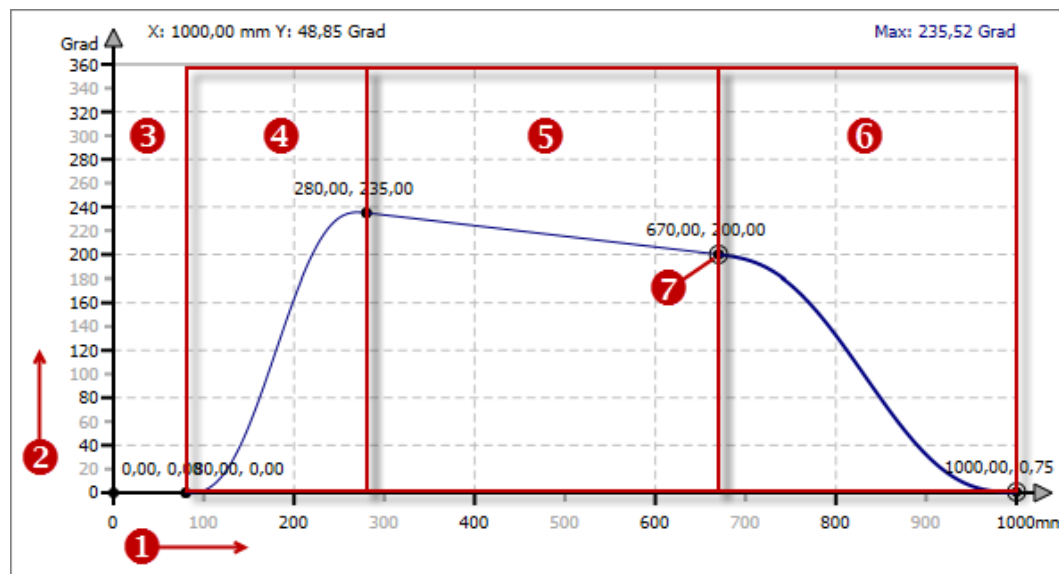


Fig. 265: Motion diagram

- (1) x-axis (master axis)
- (2) y-axis (slave axis)
- (3) free segment (curve is thus not complete)
- (4) 1. Motion segment, here Polynomial 5. grade
- (5) 2. Motion segment, here straight line
- (6) 3. Motion segment (highlighted), here Polynomial 5. grade
- (7) Boundary point/connection point

Select/highlight segment

You can highlight a segment in the motion diagram.

- ➔ Left-click on the desired motion segment.
- ⇒ The segment will be displayed highlighted.

The properties of the highlighted motion segment are shown in the tab 'segment'. ↪ Chap. 10.7.3.7 'Properties of the motion segment' page 358

For pasting and editing of motion segments:

- ↪ Chap. 10.7.3.2 'Insert segments' page 353
- ↪ Chap. 10.7.3.4 'Draw segments' page 355
- ↪ Chap. 10.7.3.8 'Overview over motion segments (profile overview)' page 360
- ↪ Chap. 10.7.3.5 'Auto-complete the curve' page 357

10.7.3.2 Insert segments

In the motion diagram of the cam editor, you can insert successive motion segments in order to create the total motion of the cam.

Empty motion diagram

For a newly created cam, no motion segments are available – the motion diagram is empty.

- ➔ Right-click with the mouse button on the motion diagram and select 'Add new section'.
- ⇒ A motion segment with the motion function "Polynomial 5. grade" will be inserted.

In order to change the motion function: [Chap. 10.7.3.7 'Properties of the motion segment' page 358](#)

Insert segment before

You can insert another segment in front of a motion segment.

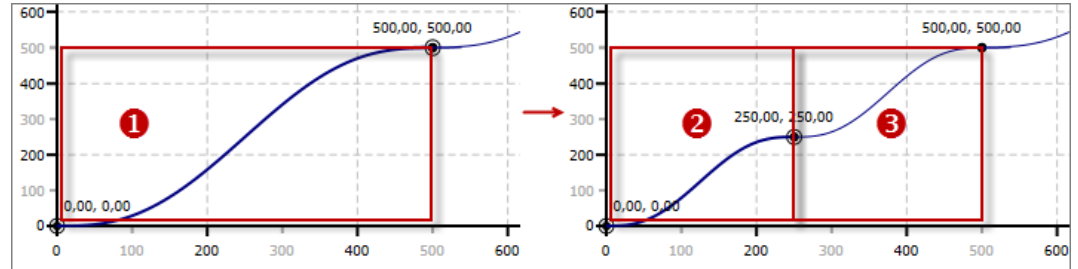


Fig. 266: Insert segment in front

- (1) highlighted segment
- (2) original, shortened segment
- (3) new segment

➔ Right-click with the mouse button on the desired motion segment in the motion diagram and select 'Insert segment in before'.

- ⇒ The starting point of the highlighted segment will be moved to the centre. A motion segment with the motion function "Polynomial 5. grade" will be inserted at the free position. The boundary points of the two segments are connected in order to create a closed curve.

In order to change the motion function: [Chap. 10.7.3.7 'Properties of the motion segment' page 358](#)

Insert segment behind

You can insert another segment behind a motion segment.

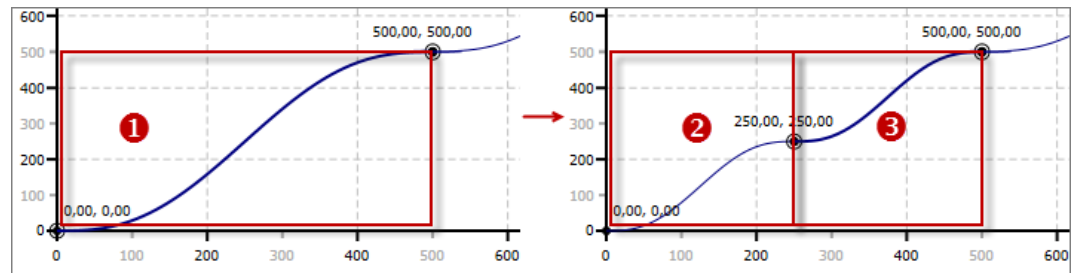


Fig. 267: Insert segment behind

- (1) highlighted segment
- (2) new segment
- (3) original, shortened segment

➔ Right-click with the mouse button on the desired motion segment in the motion diagram and select 'Insert segment after'.

- ⇒ The end point of the highlighted segment will be moved to the centre. A motion segment with the motion function "Polynomial 5. grade" will be inserted at the free position. The boundary points of the two segments are connected in order to create a closed curve.

In order to change the motion function: [Chap. 10.7.3.7 'Properties of the motion segment' page 358](#)

10.7.3.3 Delete segment

➔ Right-click with the mouse button on the desired motion segment in the motion diagram and select 'Delete section'.

⇒ The motion segment will be deleted.

Starting and end points of the neighbouring segments are moved into the centre of the deleted segment to avoid a closed curve being interrupted.

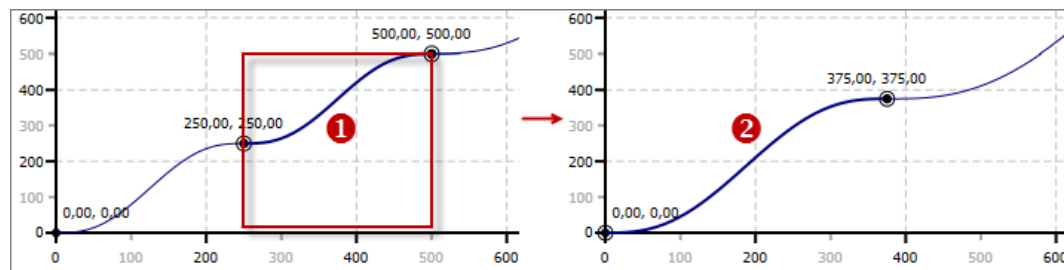


Fig. 268: Delete motion segment

- (1) highlighted segment
- (2) neighbouring segments after deletion

10.7.3.4 Draw segments

In the motion diagram of the cam editor, you can insert motion functions and move boundary points.

Insert and draw motion functions

If the cam profile is not complete, i.e. if there are free segments in the motion diagram, you can select motion functions via the toolbar and draw diagrams.

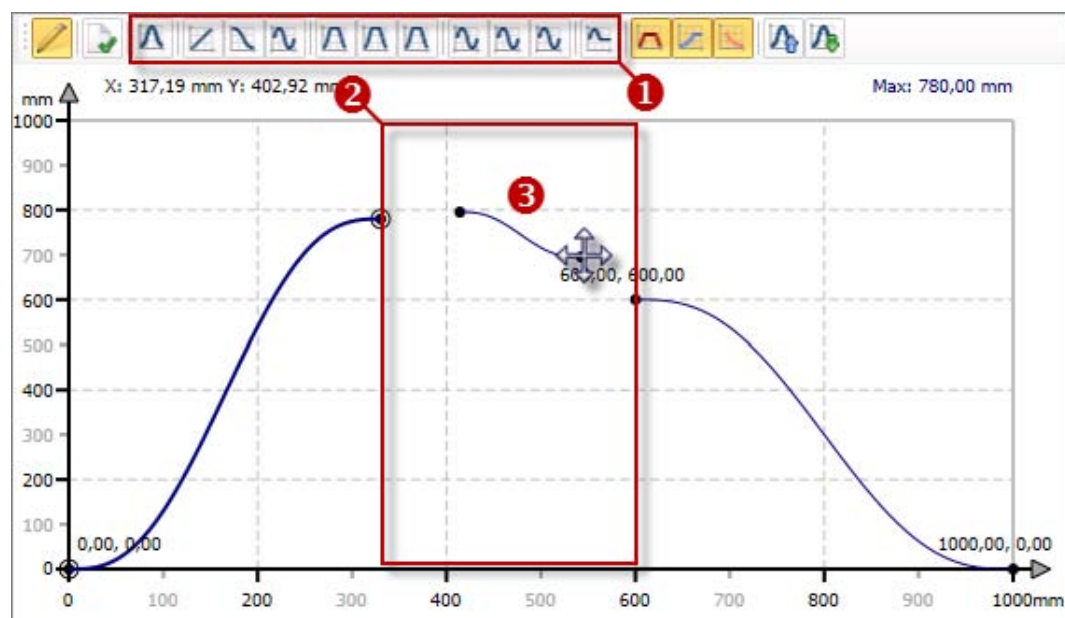


Fig. 269: Insert and draw motion functions

- (1) select motion function
- (2) free motion segment
- (3) draw motion functions

1. ➤ Select the desired motion function in the toolbar of the cam editor. For an overview over the motion functions: [↗ Chap. 10.7.4 'Motion functions' page 362](#)
2. ➤ Left-click with the mouse in the free segment of the motion diagram and hold the mouse button pressed down.
 - ⇒ The starting point of the motion function will be set.
3. ➤ Drag the mouse to the right, e.g. up to the starting point of the following segment, in order to connect both segments.
 - ⇒ The end point of the motion function will be moved.
4. ➤ Release the mouse button.



Auto-complete the curve

Between motion segments which are not connected, you can have the motion function "Polynomial 5. Grade" inserted automatically. [↗ Chap. 10.7.3.5 'Auto-complete the curve' page 357](#)

Move boundary points

You can move the starting, end, or connection points of a motion function in the motion diagram.

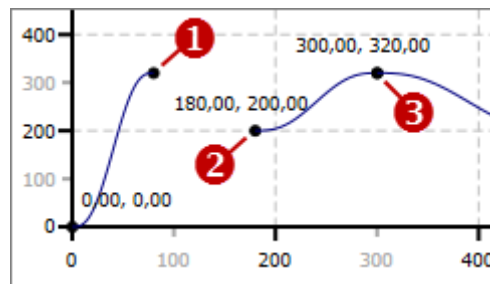


Fig. 270: Boundary points

- (1) End point
- (2) Starting point
- (3) Connection point (starting and end point)

1. ➤ Highlight the desired motion segment in the motion diagram.
 - ⇒ The segment will be displayed highlighted.
2. ➤ Left-click with the mouse on the boundary point which you want to move hold the mouse button pressed down.
3. ➤ Drag the mouse in order to move the boundary point.
4. ➤ Then release the mouse button.

Connect and disconnect boundary points

Boundary points are "magnetic":

- If you drag an end point onto the starting point of the following segment, both points will be connected.
- If you drag a starting point onto the end point of the previous segment, both points will be connected.
- If you drag a connection point slowly, the connection will stay intact.
- If you drag a connection point fast, the connection will be disconnected.



The increment when moving the points depends on the display size of the motion diagram and the screen resolution. Under 'Properties of the motion segment', you can enter accurate values for the starting points and end points. ↗ Chap. 10.7.3.7 'Properties of the motion segment' page 358

10.7.3.5 Auto-complete the curve

Between motion segments which are not connected, you can have the motion function "Polynomial 5. Grade" inserted automatically.

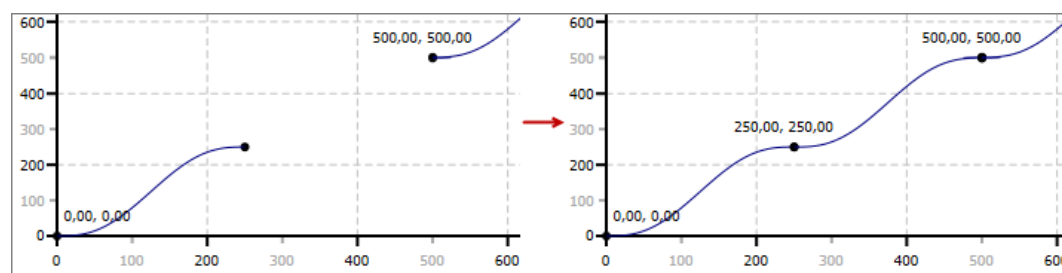


Fig. 271: Auto-complete the curve

- Select 'Auto-complete the curve' in the toolbar of the cam editor.
- ⇒ On free positions, motion segments with the motion function "Polynomial 5. Grade" will be inserted. The boundary points of all segments are connected in order to create a closed curve.

In order to change the motion function: ↗ Chap. 10.7.3.7 'Properties of the motion segment' page 358

10.7.3.6 Motion characteristics

This diagram of the cam editor shows the development of the velocity, the acceleration and the jolt.

If the desired motion characteristic is not displayed, you have to select it via the toolbar of the cam editor. ↗ '(1) Toolbar' page 351

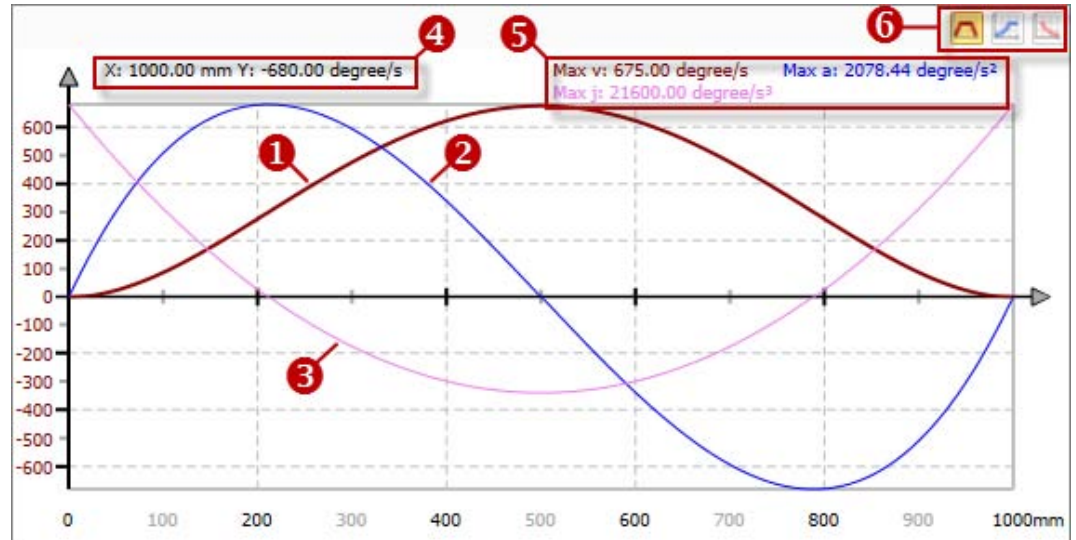


Fig. 272: Motion diagram

- (1) motion characteristic velocity (v)
- (2) motion characteristic acceleration (a)
- (3) motion characteristic jolt (j)
- (4) x- and y-coordinate of the current mouse pointer position
- (5) absolute maximum value of the characteristics
- (6) select scale of the y-axis for a motion characteristic

10.7.3.7 Properties of the motion segment



You can display and edit all data of a motion segment here.

The screenshot shows the 'Properties' tab for 'section 0'. The 'Function' is set to 'Sine-Line-Combination'. The 'Startpoint' has x=470.00 mm and y=120.01 degree. The 'Endpoint' has x=670.00 mm and y=120.00 degree. Under 'Boundary value conditions', the startpoint velocity (v) is 0.000 degree/s and acceleration (a) is -1.920 degree/s². The endpoint velocity (v) is 0.000 degree/s and acceleration (a) is 1.920 degree/s². The 'Parameter' section shows lambda = 0.50 and c = 0.50. The 'Characteristic values' section shows Cv = 1.2220, Ca = 7.6782, Cj = -48.2438, Cmdyn = 9.3831, Ca* = -7.6782, Cj* = -48.2438, and Cmdyn* = 9.3831.

Fig. 273: Properties of the motion segment

Select segment

All configurations in this tab correspond to the highlighted motion segment. You can highlight the desired segment in the motion diagram, in the 'profile overview' ([Chap. 10.7.3.8 'Overview over motion segments \(profile overview\)' page 360](#)) or here, via the two buttons:

-  Select previous motion segment
-  Select following motion segment

Properties

'Name' – Automatically created name of the motion segment. Change the name of the segment, if required.

'Function' – Motion function of the segment [Chap. 10.7.4 'Motion functions' page 362](#)

'Starting point' – x- and y-coordinates for the starting point of the motion segment

'End point' – x- and y-coordinates for the end point of the motion segment

Boundary value conditions

In the input fields you can set the velocity (v) and the acceleration (a) for starting point and end point. The entered value is normed, i.e. it refers to the geometrical conditions.

In the display fields below, the calculated physical values are displayed, e.g. "mm/s" or "degree/s" for velocity.

Parameter

The parameters are not displayed for all motion functions.

'λ' – Reversal point for asymmetric motion functions (or inflection point parameter): The entered value is normed, i.e. it refers to the geometrical conditions.

'c' – Synchronous line segment: The entered value is normed, i.e. it refers to the geometrical conditions.

Characteristic values

The characteristic values of the motion segment are displayed here. The characteristic values are evaluation criteria for the operational behaviour of a cam gear.

'Cv' – Characteristic value for velocity

'Ca' and 'Ca*' – Characteristic values for acceleration

'Cj' and 'Cj*' – Characteristic values for jolt

'Cmdyn' and 'Cmdyn*' – Characteristic values for dynamic torque

10.7.3.8 Overview over motion segments (profile overview)

You can display and edit all data of the motion segment of the cam profile here.

Sections		Profile overview	Profile properties
x	y	Function	
0.00	0.00	Straight line	
200.00	185.00	Polynom 5th order	
470.00	120.01	Straight line	
670.00	120.00	Polynom 5th order	
1000.00	0.75		

Fig. 274: Overview over motion segments

Each line of the profile overview contains the data of a motion segment.

'x' – x-coordinate of the starting point of the segment

'y' – y-coordinate of the starting point of the segment

'Function' – Motion function of the segment ↪ Chap. 10.7.4 'Motion functions' page 362

the last line of the profile overview contains the x- and y-coordinates of the end point of the last motion segment.

Highlight/select segment

➡ Left-click with the mouse in a line of the profile overview.

⇒ The segment will be displayed highlighted.

Change boundary points

You can change the starting point, endpoint, or connecting point of a motion segment.

- ➔ Enter the desired x- or y-coordinate into the input field or click on the button ▲/▼.
- ⇒ The boundary point will be moved. If the starting point is connected to the end point of the previous motion segment, this end point is set on the same coordinate. The connection between motion segments remains intact.

Insert segment before 

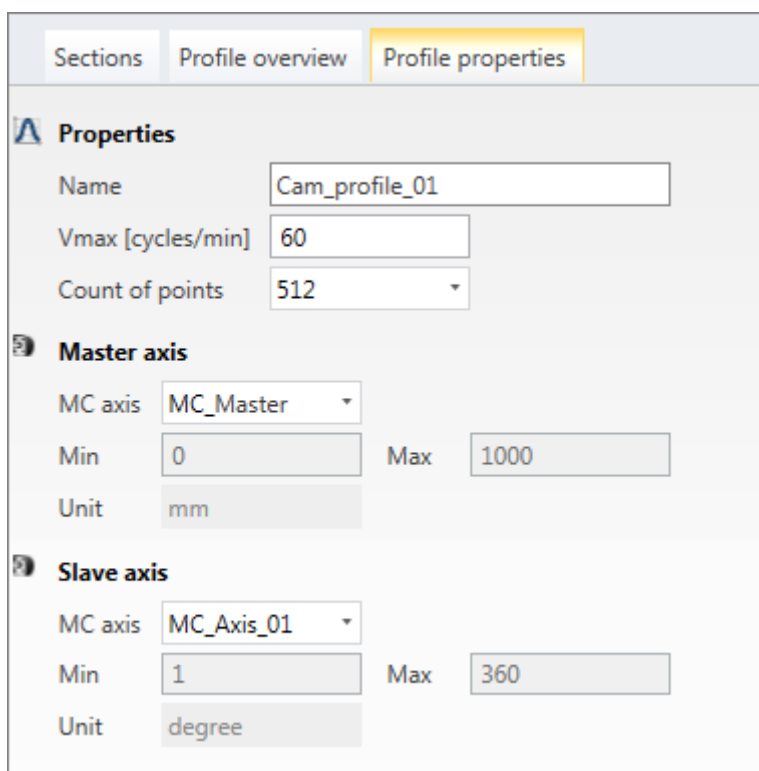
1. ➔ Right-click with the mouse button in a line of the profile overview and select *'Insert section before'*.
 - ⇒ The starting point of the highlighted segment will be moved to the centre. A motion segment with the motion function "Polynomial 5. grade" will be inserted at the free position. The boundary points of the two segments are connected in order to create a closed curve.
2. ➔ Change the motion function, if necessary.

Insert segment behind 

1. ➔ Right-click with the mouse button in a line of the profile overview and select *'Insert section after'*.
 - ⇒ The end point of the highlighted segment will be moved to the centre. A motion segment with the motion function "Polynomial 5. grade" will be inserted at the free position. The boundary points of the two segments are connected in order to create a closed curve.
2. ➔ Change the motion function, if necessary.

10.7.3.9 Properties of the cam (profile properties)

You can display and edit general data about the cam profile and the selected master and slave axes here.



Section	Property	Value
Properties	Name	Cam_profile_01
	Vmax [cycles/min]	60
	Count of points	512
Master axis	MC axis	MC_Master
	Min	0
	Max	1000
	Unit	mm
Slave axis	MC axis	MC_Axis_01
	Min	1
	Max	360
	Unit	degree

Fig. 275: Properties of the cam


Properties


'Name' – Name of the cam: If you change the name, a dialogue window will open where you can choose if *SPEED7 Studio* should adapt the name of the corresponding data block and the program code as well.

'Vmax' – Velocity of the master axis, number of pulses per minute: V_{max} influences the values of the derivatives velocity, acceleration, and jolt and the dynamic characteristic values.

'Number of data points' – Resolution of the master encoder: Number of data points which are stored in the data block and which are transferred from the control to the drive via the function block "MC_CamIn".

Master axis

To add axes: ↗ Chap. 10.5 'Add new axis ' page 343.

To determine the measurement and user units of the axes: ↗ Chap. 10.6.2 'User units ' page 345


'MC axis' – Master axis (or leading axis, reference axis): x-axis in the motion diagram


'Min' – Minimum value of the x-axis: The value is always 0.

'Max' – Maximum value of the x-axis

'Unit' – Unit of the x-axis: The unit has no influence on the calculation of motions.

Slave axis

To add axes: ↗ Chap. 10.5 'Add new axis ' page 343.

To determine the measurement and user units of the axes: ↗ Chap. 10.6.2 'User units ' page 345.

'MC axis' – Slave axis: y-axis in the motion diagram

'Min' – Minimum value of the y-axis: The value is always 0.

'Max' – Maximum value of the y-axis

'Unit' – Unit of the y-axis: The unit has no influence on the calculation of motions.

10.7.4 Motion functions**Motion states**

Depending on the velocity (v) and the acceleration (a), the following motion states result:

Characteristic	State	Boundary condition
R	Pause	Velocity (v) = 0, Acceleration (a) = 0
G	Velocity (constant)	Velocity (v) ≠ 0, Acceleration (a) = 0
U	Reversal	Velocity (v) = 0, Acceleration (a) ≠ 0
B	Motion	Velocity (v) ≠ 0, Acceleration (a) ≠ 0

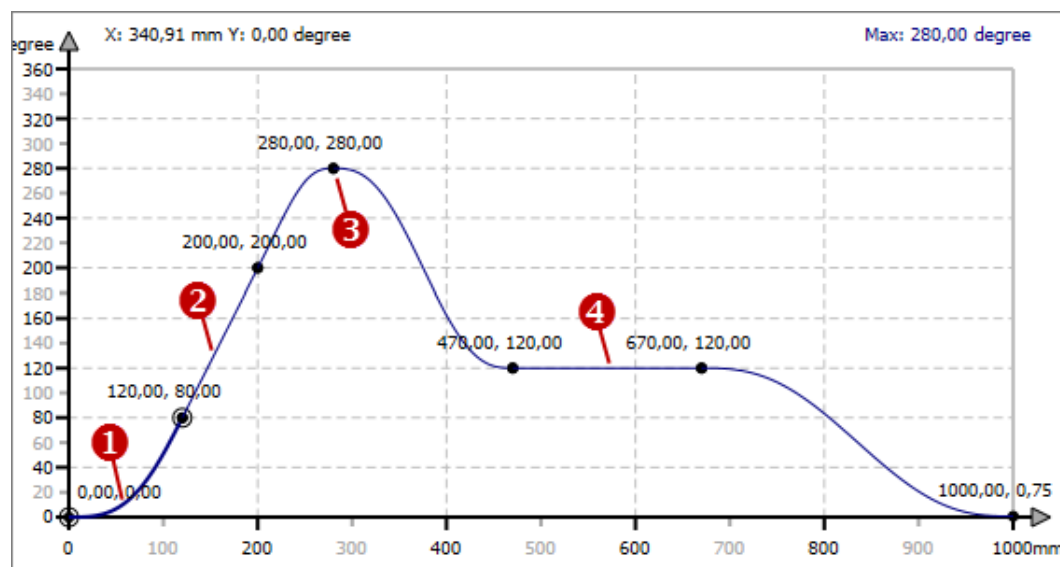


Fig. 276: Motion states

- (1) Motion
- (2) Velocity (constant)
- (3) Reversal
- (4) Pause

Motion task

A motion task describes the transition from one motion state to another (or motion transition).

Example: The drive should maintain a constant velocity after the initial acceleration. The motion task is "motion in velocity", abbreviated "(MV)".













Motion tasks and applicable motion functions

Generally, the entire motion of a cam consists of several motion segments. At the segment boundaries (boundary points), several motion functions (or motion laws) can be connected with each other. The following table lists the usable motion functions for different motion tasks. At least one applicable motion function can be used for each possible combination of motion tasks.

Example: The motion task "Velocity in reversal (VR)" can be realised with the motion function "Polynomial 5. grade" or "Modified sine".

	Pause	Velocity	Reversal	Motion
Pause	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Straight line <input type="checkbox"/> Polynomial 5. grade <input type="checkbox"/> Inclined sine <input type="checkbox"/> Modified sine <input type="checkbox"/> Modified acceleration trapezium	<input type="checkbox"/> Polynomial 5. grade <input type="checkbox"/> Modified sine	<input type="checkbox"/> Polynomial 5. grade <input type="checkbox"/> Modified sine <input type="checkbox"/> Modified acceleration trapezium	<input type="checkbox"/> Polynomial 5. grade
Velocity	<input type="checkbox"/> Polynomial 5. grade <input type="checkbox"/> Modified sine	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Straight line <input type="checkbox"/> Polynomial 5. grade <input type="checkbox"/> Modified sine	<input type="checkbox"/> Polynomial 5. grade <input type="checkbox"/> Modified sine	<input type="checkbox"/> Polynomial 5. grade

Create cams > Motion functions

	Pause	Velocity	Reversal	Motion
Reversal	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Polynomial 5. grade  Modified sine  Modified acceleration trapezium 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Polynomial 5. grade  Modified sine 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Polynomial 5. grade  Sine-straight-combination 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Polynomial 5. grade
Motion	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Polynomial 5. grade 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Polynomial 5. grade 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Polynomial 5. grade 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Polynomial 5. grade

10.7.4.1 Straight line 

The motion task "Straight line" can be used for synchronous line segments.

The following motion tasks can be connected with the motion function "Straight line":

	Pause	Velocity	Reversal	Motion
Pause	•			
Velocity		•		
Reversal				
Motion				

10.7.4.2 Polynomial 5. grade 

Motion function "Polynomial 5. grade" can be used for all motion tasks.

Benefits:

- Low characteristic values C_v , C_a and C_{mdyn} – i.e. low forces and torques

Disadvantages:

- The C_j value is higher than for "Inclined sine".

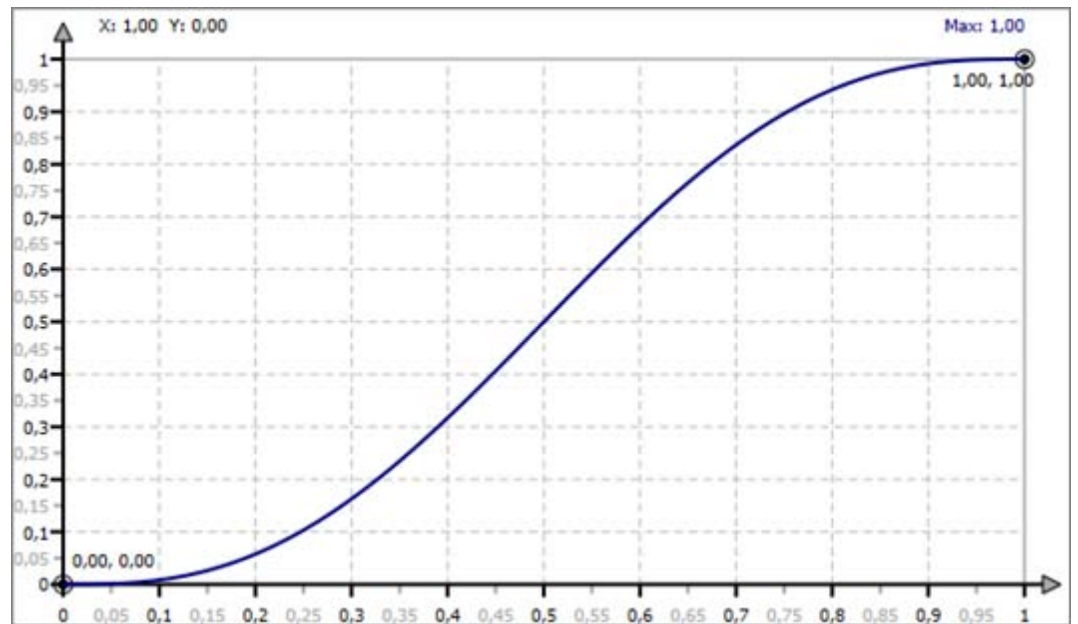


Fig. 277: Motion "Polynomial 5. grade"

With the motion function "Polynomial 5. grade", all motion tasks can be connected to each other:

	Pause	Velocity	Reversal	Motion
Pause	•	•	•	•
Velocity	•	•	•	•
Reversal	•	•	•	•
Motion	•	•	•	•

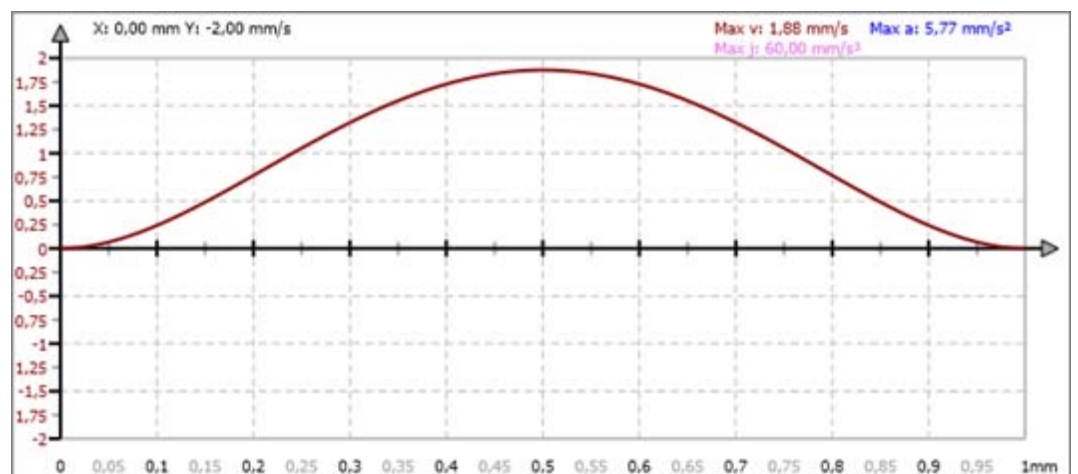


Fig. 278: Velocity "Polynomial 5. grade"

Create cams > Motion functions

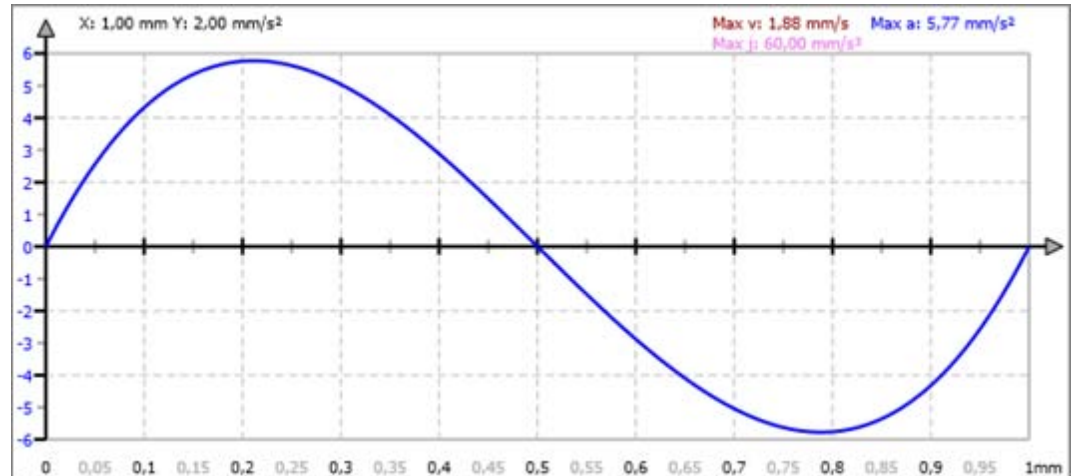


Fig. 279: Acceleration "Polynomial 5. grade"

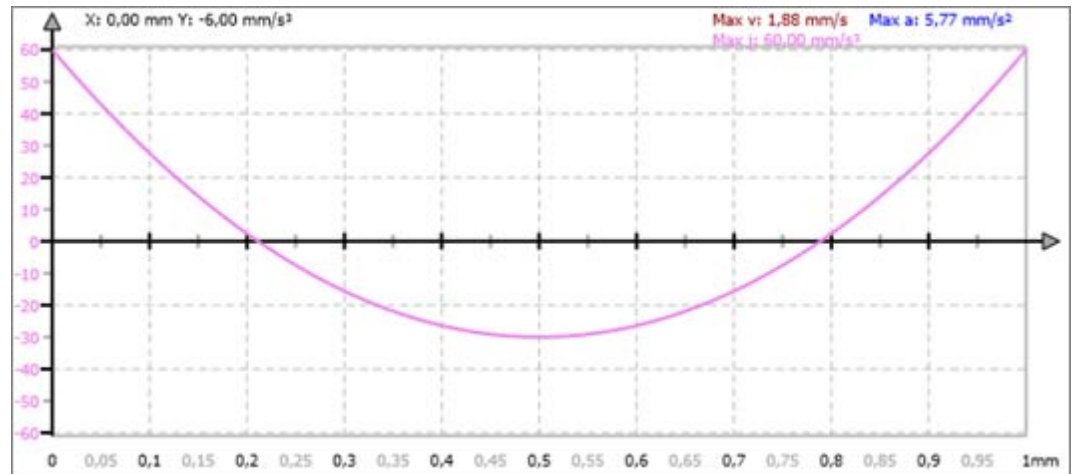


Fig. 280: Jolt "Polynomial 5. grade"

10.7.4.3 Inclined sine

Benefits:

- Very low C_j value
- Low-vibration motion
- Suitable for high speeds

Disadvantages:

- The characteristic values C_v , C_a and C_{mdyn} are higher than for "Polynomial 5. grade".

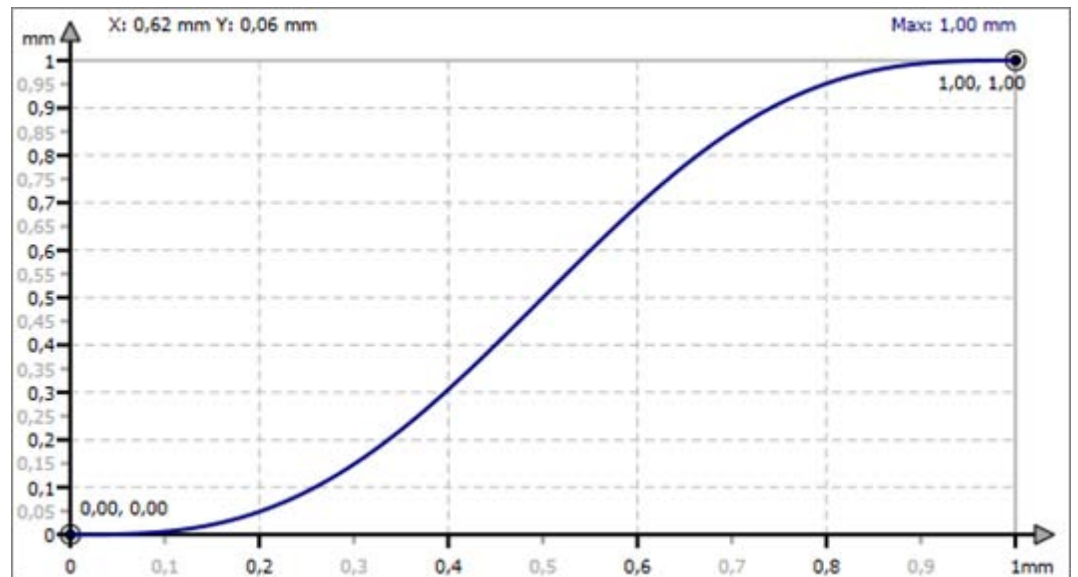


Fig. 281: Motion "Inclined sine"

With the motion function "Inclined sine", the following motion tasks can be interconnected:

	Pause	Velocity	Reversal	Motion
Pause	•			
Velocity				
Reversal				
Motion				

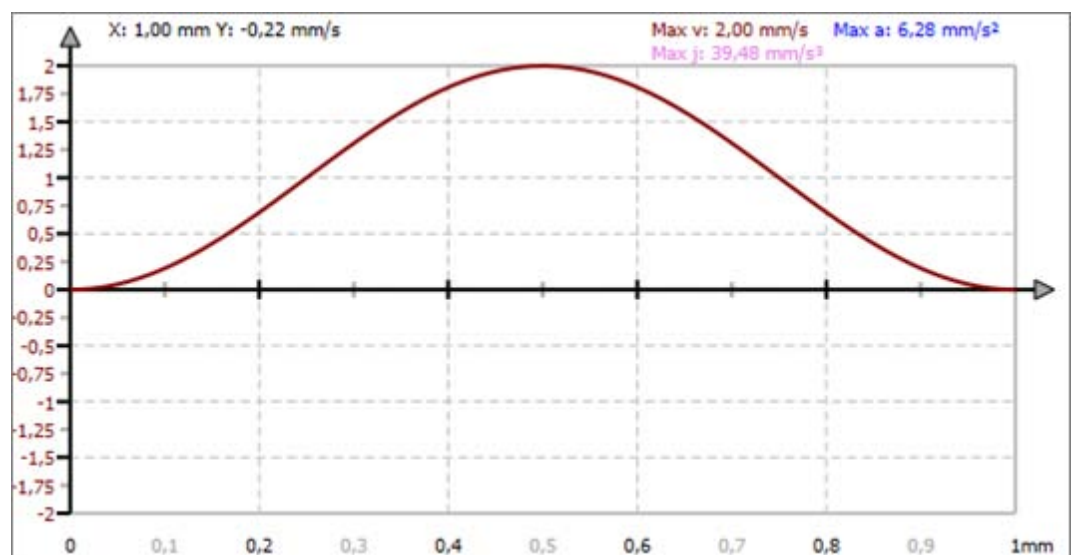


Fig. 282: Velocity "Inclined sine"

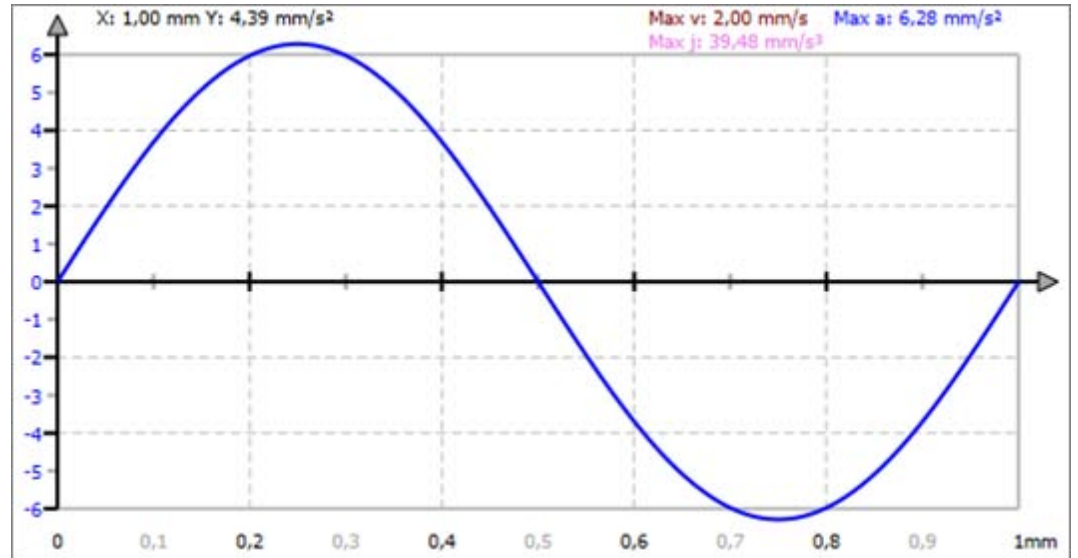


Fig. 283: Acceleration "Inclined sine"

10.7.4.4 Modified sine

Benefits:

- Very low characteristic values C_v , C_a and $C_{m\text{dyn}}$ – i.e. very low forces and torques
- Suitable for high speeds

Disadvantages:

- The C_j value is higher than for "Inclined sine".

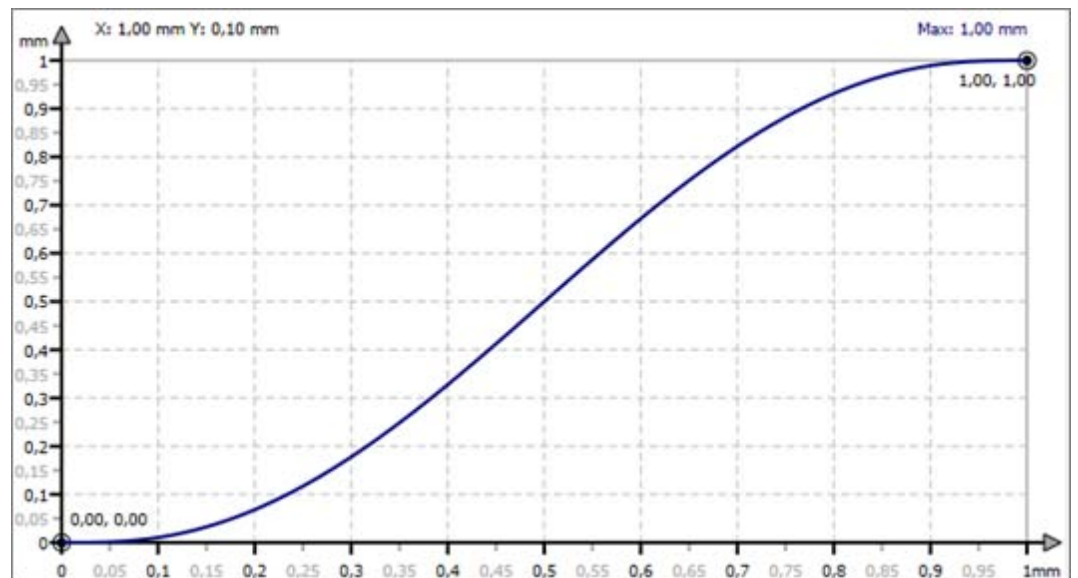


Fig. 284: Motion "Modified sine"

With the motion function "Modified sine", the following motion tasks can be interconnected:

	Pause	Velocity	Reversal	Motion
Pause	•	•	•	
Velocity	•	•	•	
Reversal	•	•		
Motion				

Velocity in velocity (VV)

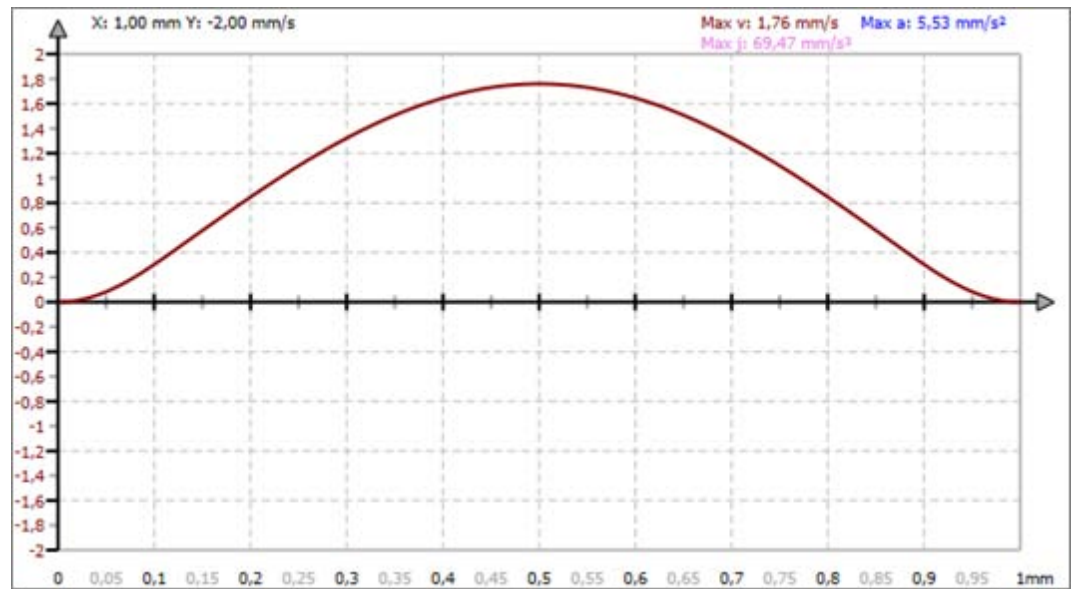


Fig. 285: Velocity "Modified sine (VV)"

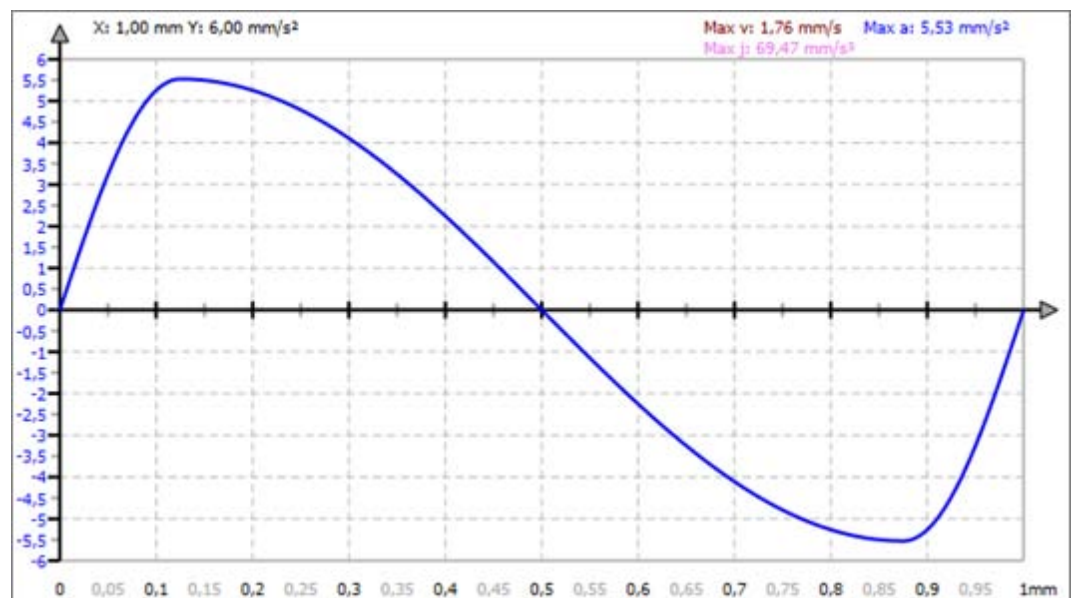


Fig. 286: Acceleration "Modified sine (VV)"

Velocity in reversal (VR)

This motion form is also called "Harmonic combination".

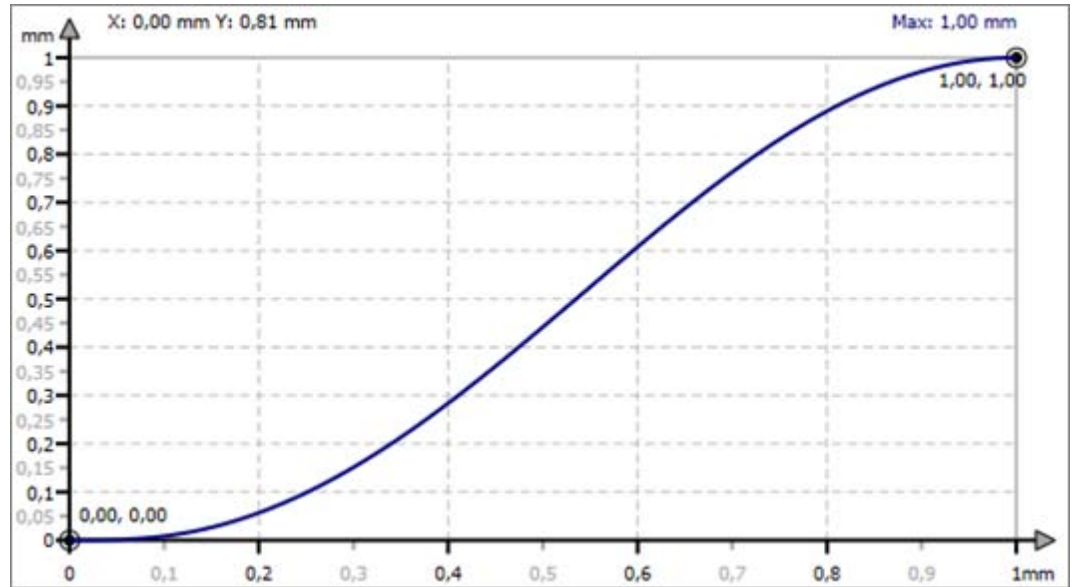


Fig. 287: Motion "Modified sine (VR)"

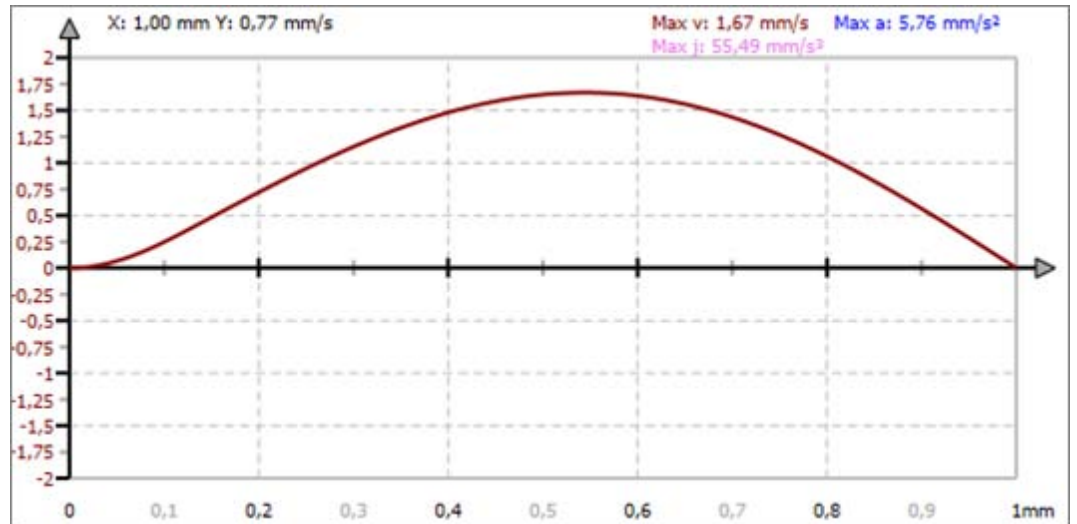


Fig. 288: Velocity "Modified sine (VR)"

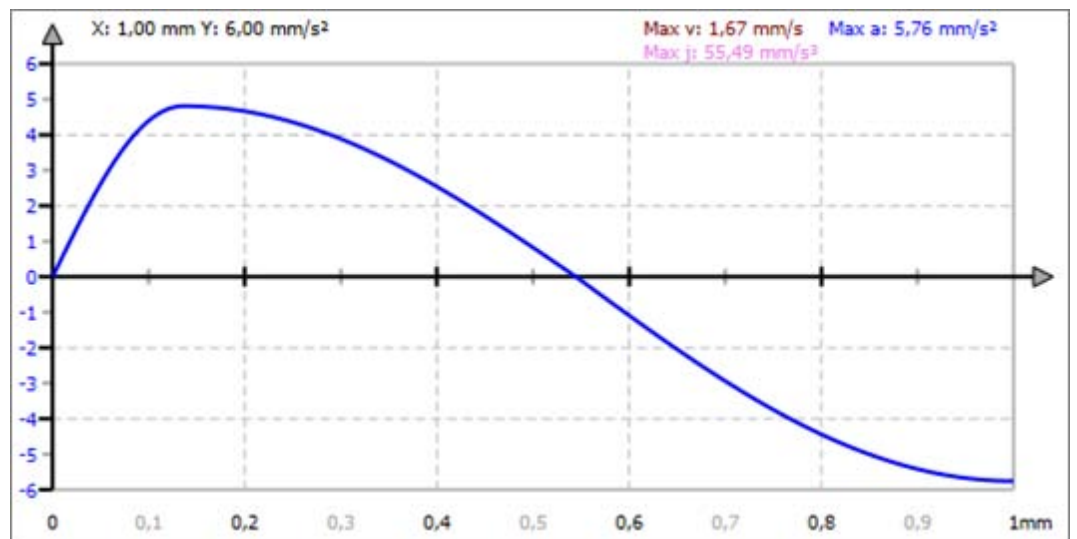


Fig. 289: Acceleration "Modified sine (VR)"

Reversal in velocity (RV)

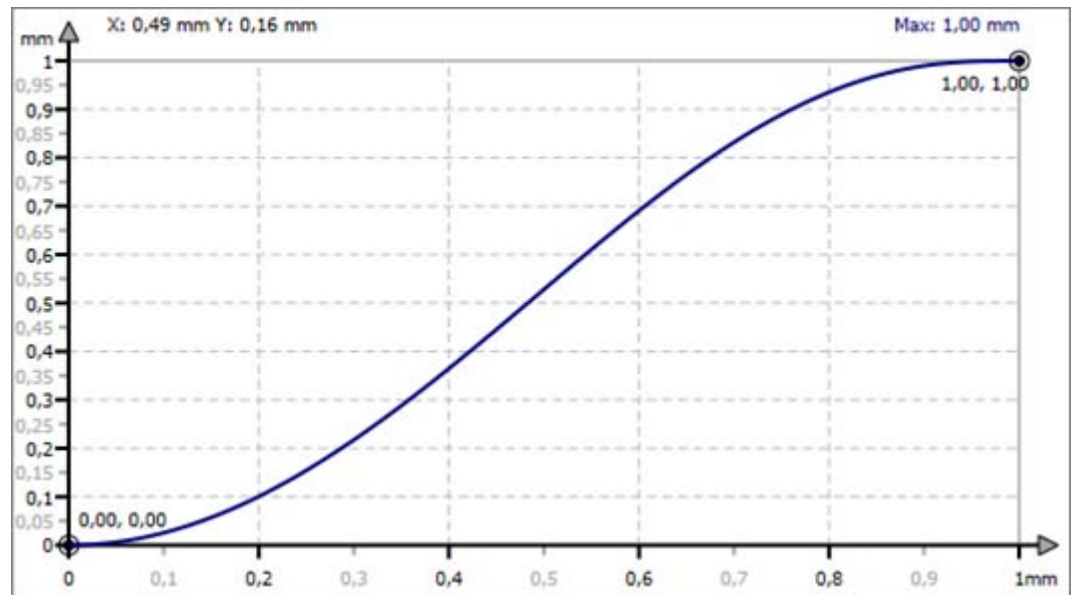


Fig. 290: Motion "Modified sine (RV)"

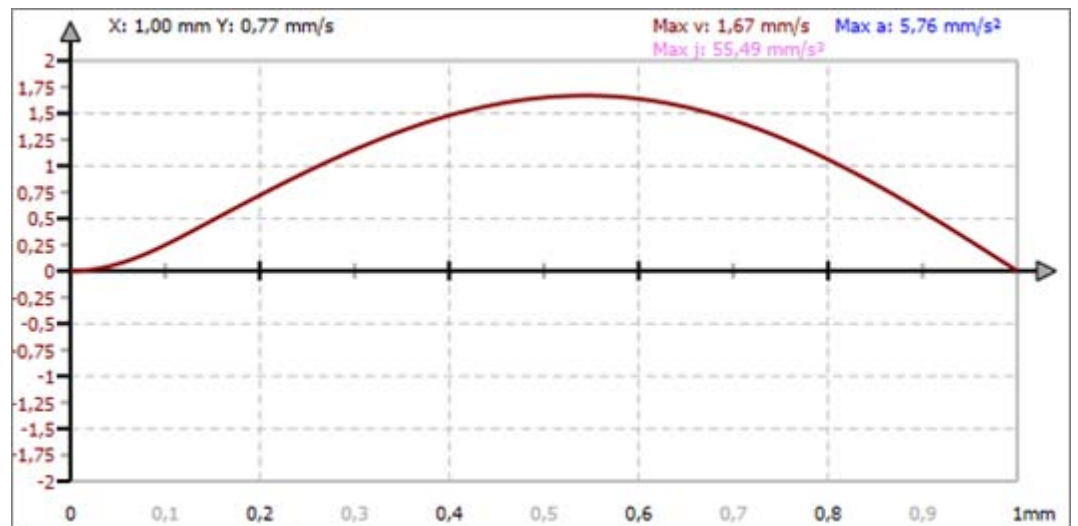


Fig. 291: Velocity "Modified sine (RV)"

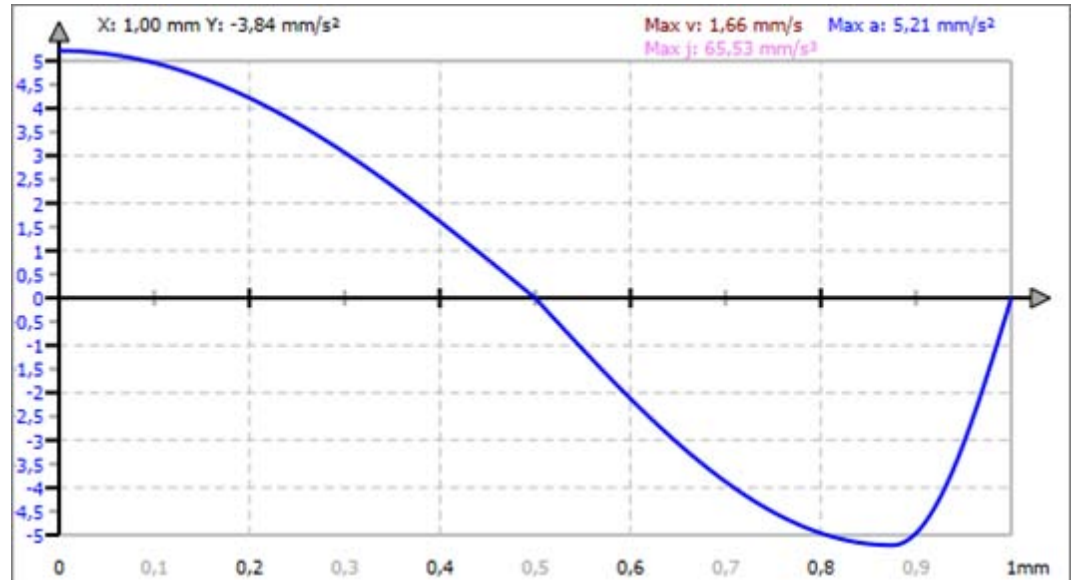


Fig. 292: Acceleration "Modified sine (RV)"

10.7.4.5 Modified acceleration trapezium

Benefits:

- Very low C_a value
- Low inertia forces

Disadvantages:

- The C_j value is higher than for "Inclined sine".

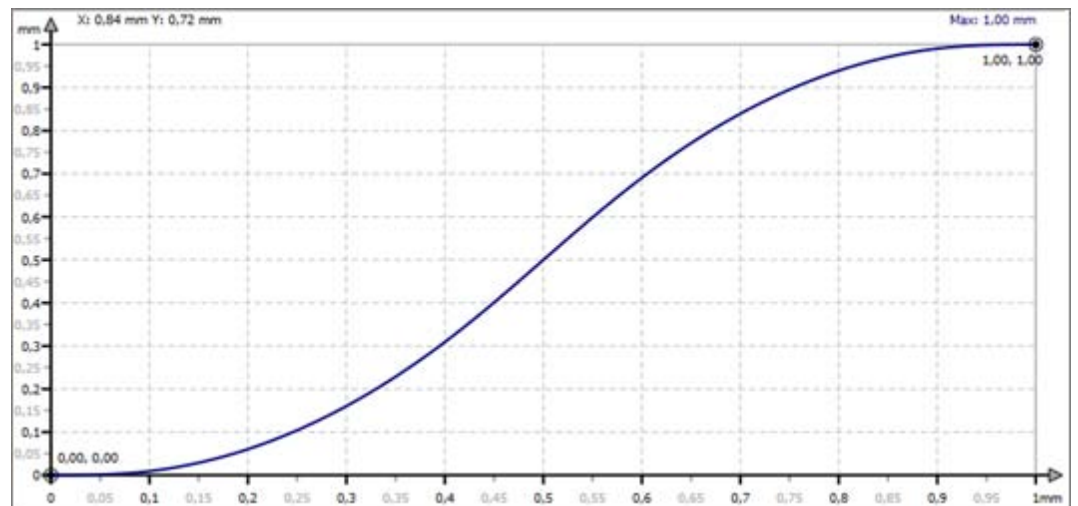


Fig. 293: Motion "Modified acceleration trapezium"

With the motion function "Modified acceleration trapezium", the following motion tasks can be interconnected:

	Pause	Velocity	Reversal	Motion
Pause	•		•	
Velocity				

	Pause	Velocity	Reversal	Motion
Reversal	•			
Motion				

Pause in pause

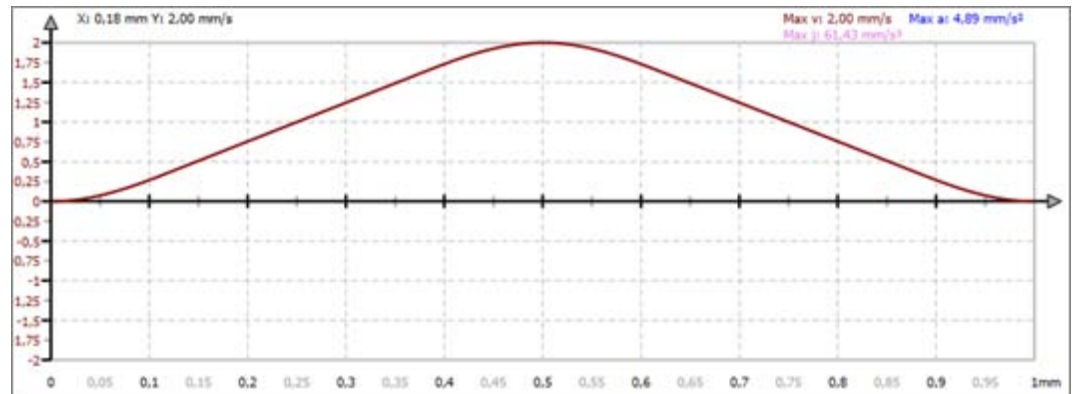


Fig. 294: Velocity "Modified acceleration trapezium (PP)"

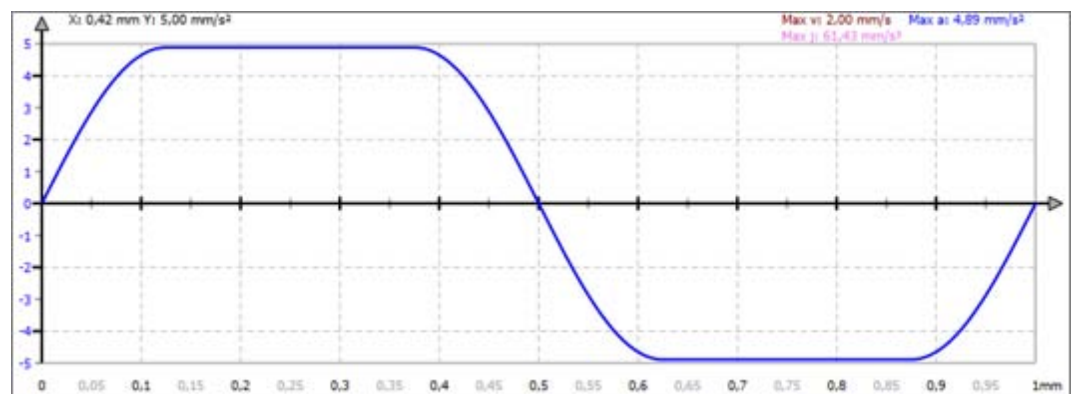


Fig. 295: Acceleration "Modified acceleration trapezium (PP)"

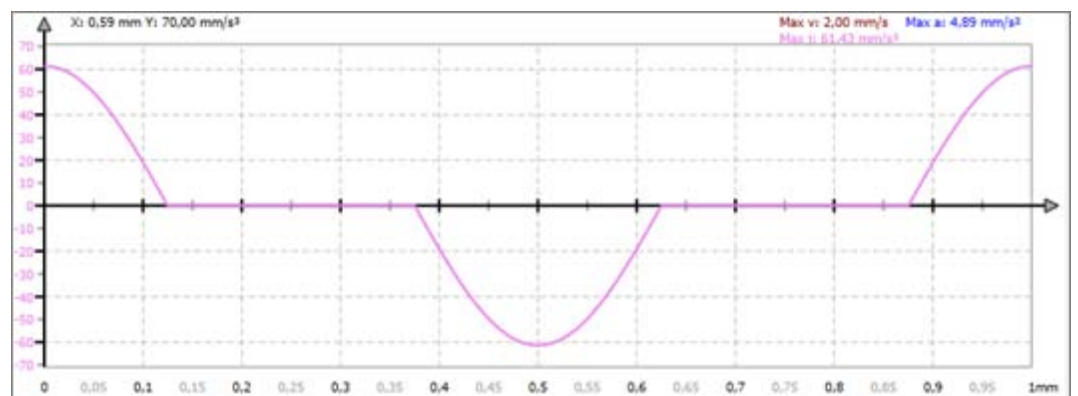


Fig. 296: Jolt "Modified acceleration trapezium (PP)"

Pause in reversal (PR)

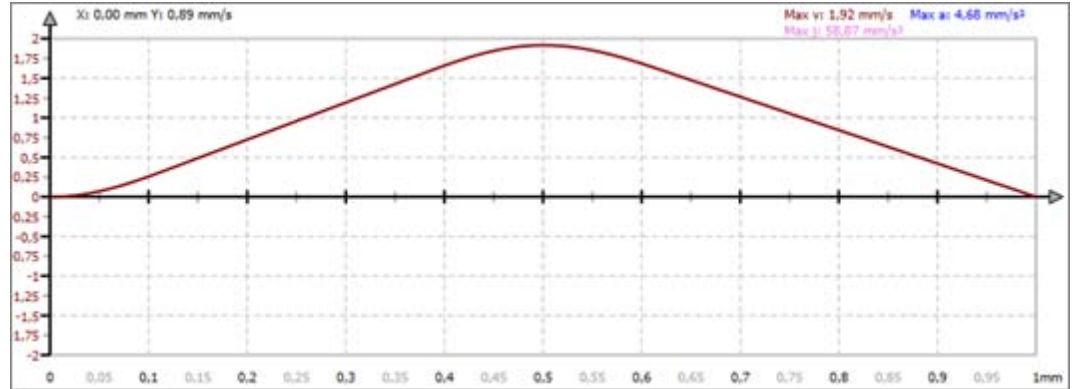


Fig. 297: Velocity "Modified acceleration trapezium (PR)"

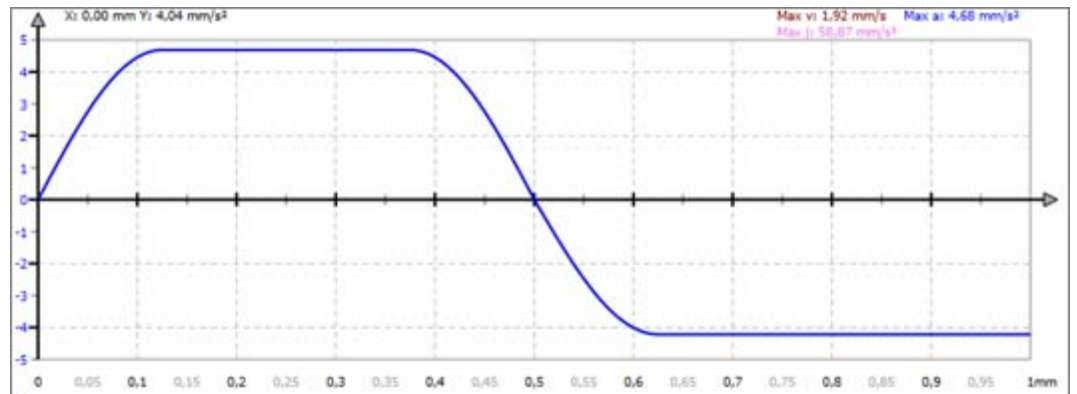


Fig. 298: Acceleration "Modified acceleration trapezium (PR)"

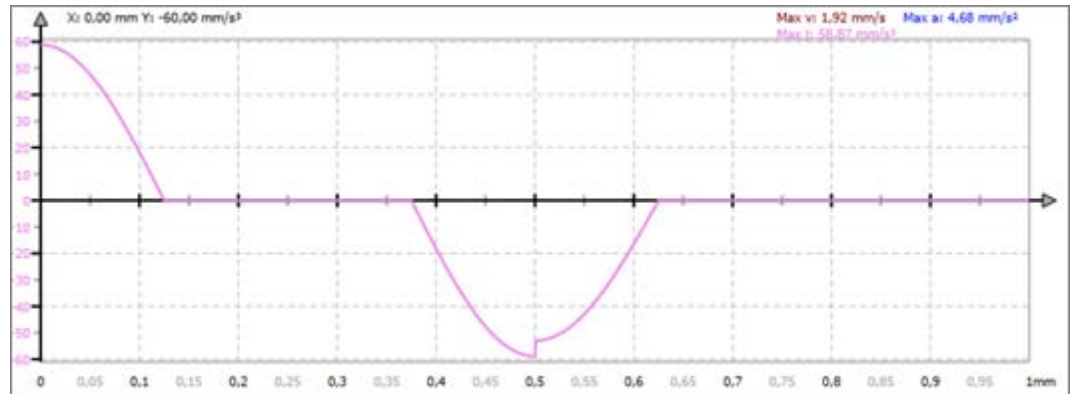


Fig. 299: Jolt "Modified acceleration trapezium (PR)"

Reversal in pause (RP)

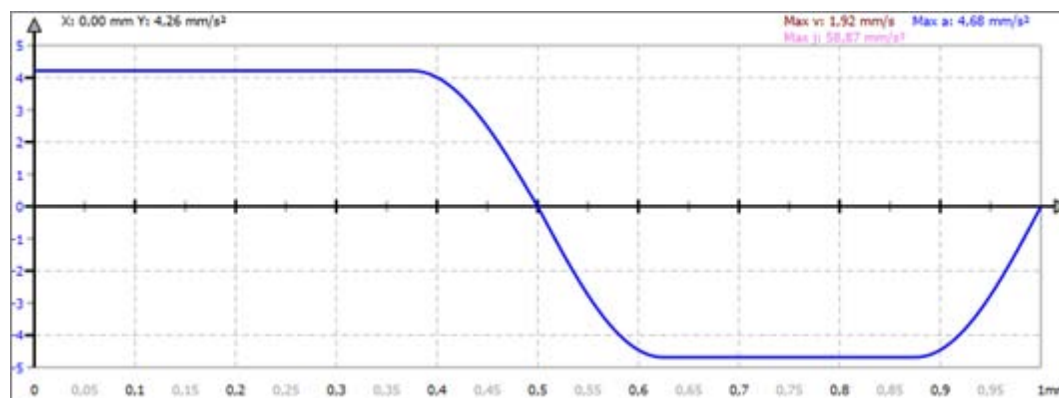


Fig. 300: Acceleration "Modified acceleration trapezium (RP)"

10.7.4.6 Sine-straight-combination 

Benefits:

- Very low C_v value
- Low-vibration motion
- Suitable for high speeds

Disadvantages:

- the C_a value is higher than for "Simple sine".

You will get the motion function "Simple sine" if you use the motion function "Sine-straight-combination" and set the parameter $c=1$. ↪ *Chap. 10.7.3.7 'Properties of the motion segment' page 358*

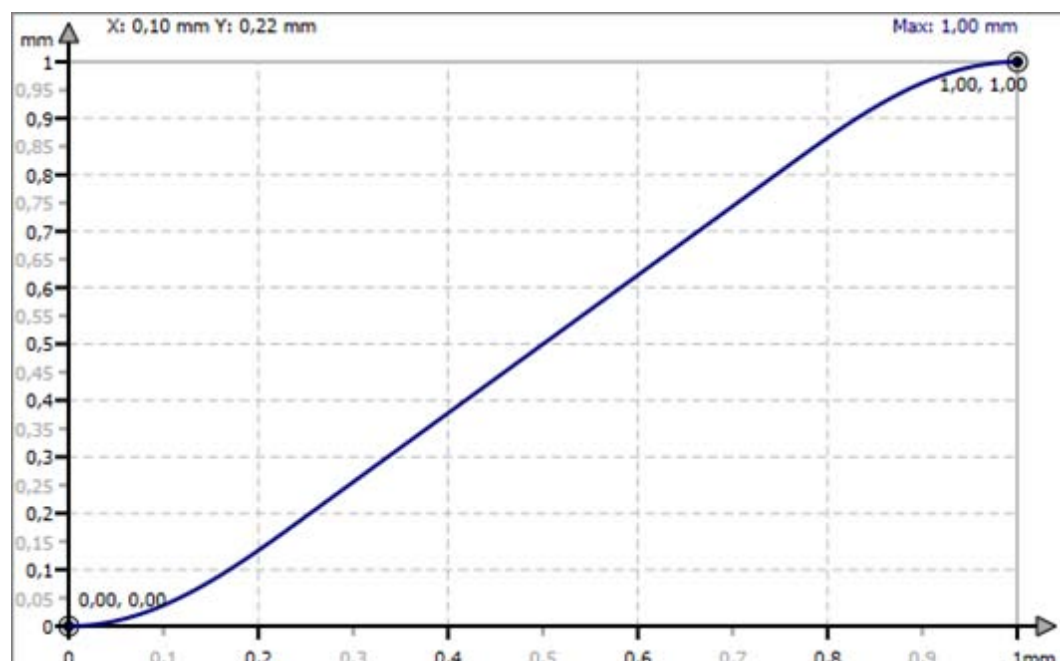


Fig. 301: Motion "Sine-straight-combination"

The following motion tasks can be connected with the motion function "Sine-straight-combination":

Create cams > Motion functions

	Pause	Velocity	Reversal	Motion
Pause				
Velocity				
Reversal			•	
Motion				

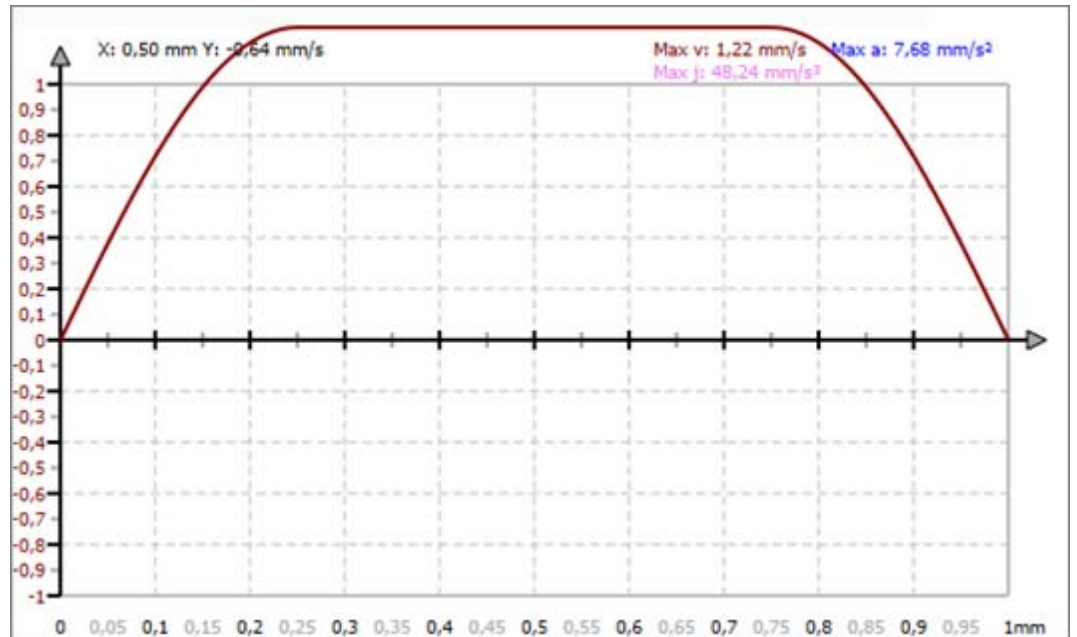


Fig. 302: Velocity "Sine-straight-combination"

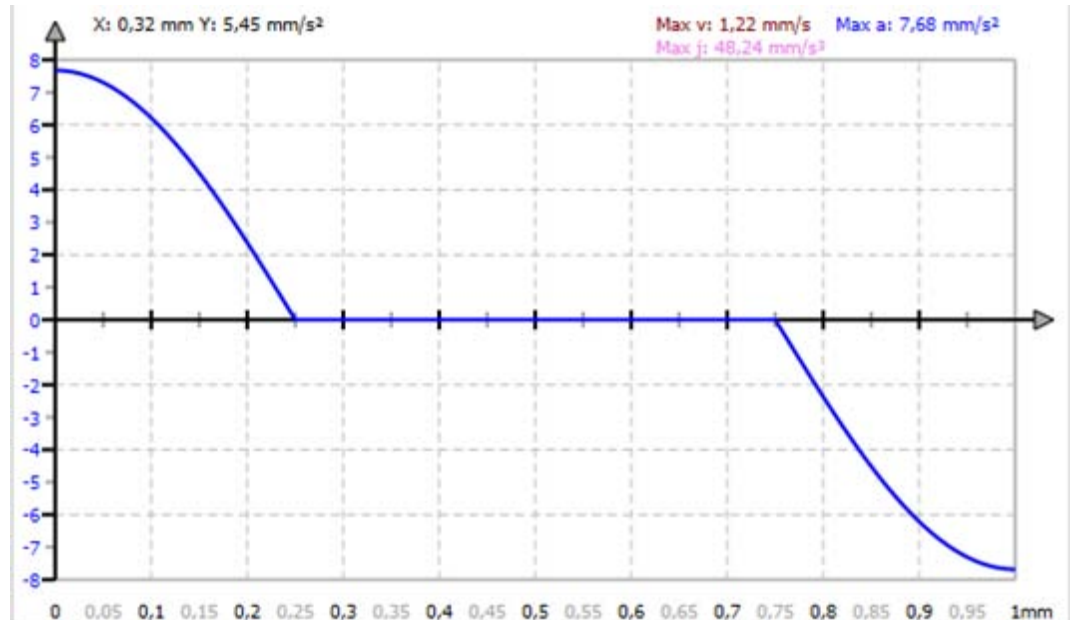


Fig. 303: Acceleration "Sine-straight-combination"

11 Deployment *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager*

11.1 Overview

Properties

- Serves to configure EtherCAT master.
- Is called within the *SPEED7 Studio*.
- Synchronizes the address areas with the *SPEED7 Studio*.
- Saves the configuration in the *SPEED7 Studio* project.
- Expanded functionality by choose-able 'Expert' mode.

Functions

- Automatic configuration
- Manual configuration
- Diagnosis

Starting the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager*

In *SPEED7 Studio* you can call via the 'Project tree', 'Field periphery' of the EtherCAT CPU the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager* with 'Bus system properties'.

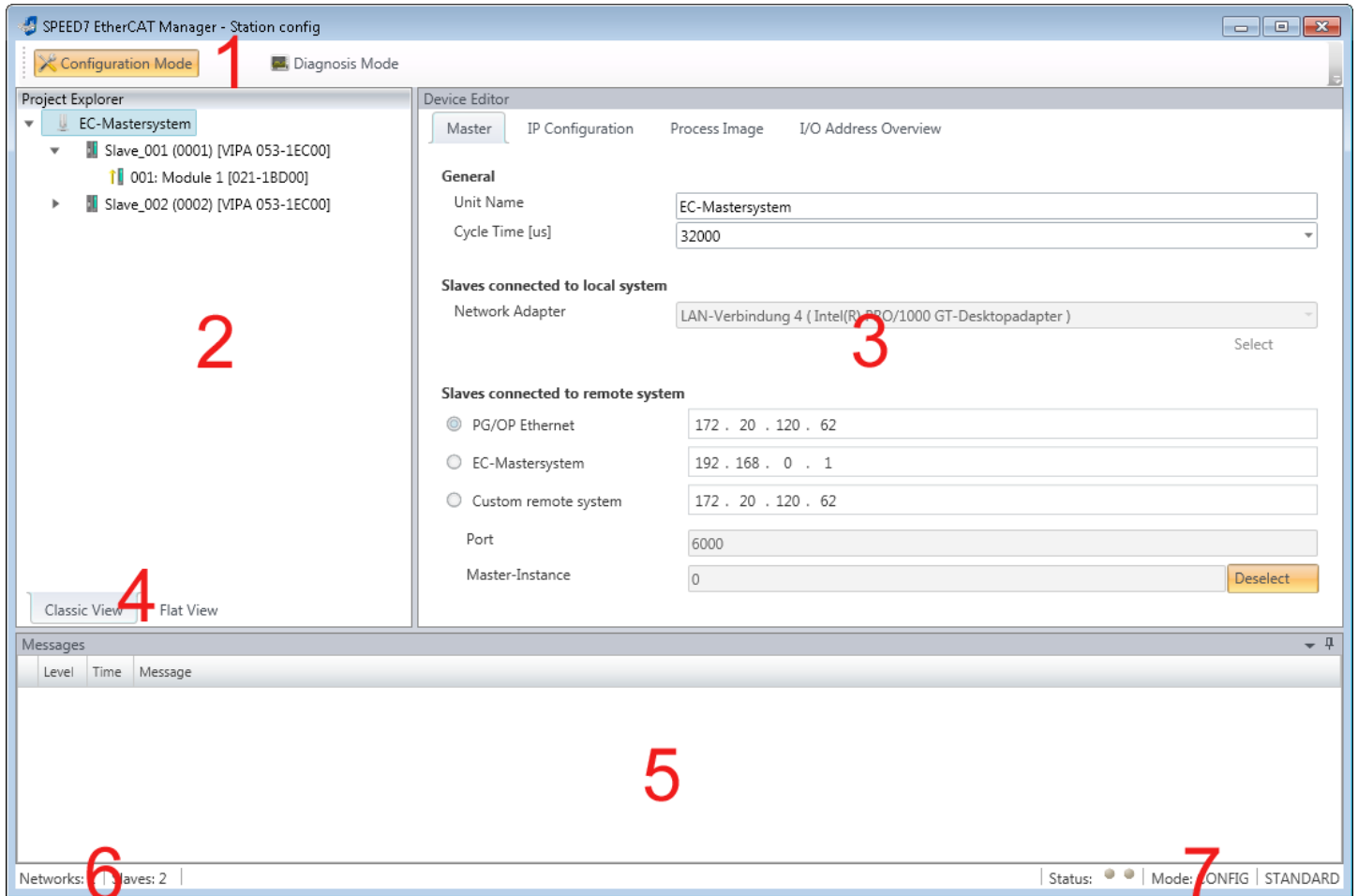
Exit the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager*

By clicking at [X] in the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager*, the dialog is closed and the configuration is taken to the *SPEED7 Studio*.

Work environment of the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager*

The work environment of the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager* is divided into the following parts:

Automatic configuration of a slave system



- 1 Tool bar: Here you can switch between *Configuration* and *Diagnosis*.
- 2 Project explorer: Here master and slave stations of your system are listed.
- 3 Device editor: Properties dialog of a device (parameter) respectively information area.
- 4 Selection of the view: In *Classic View* all the subordinate stations are shown indented. In *Flat View* all the subordinate stations are shown at the same level.
- 5 Here all the messages are listed.
- 6 In this section you can find the number of networks and slave stations.
- 7 Status area: With an online connection the 2 *Status* LEDs flash alternately. At *Modus* it is shown whether you are in operating mode *Diagnosis* or *Configuration*, followed by the selected dialog sight *Standard* respectively *Expert*.

'Expert mode'

In *SPEED7 Studio* you can call via the 'Project tree', 'Field periphery' of the EtherCAT CPU the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager* with 'Bus system properties (Expert)'. When enabled, the properties dialogs are extended accordingly. In 'Expert mode' you will have the full scope of the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager*. Additionally in the status area 'Expert' is shown.

Input area - numeric format

Some input fields have [Dec] respectively [Hex] buttons. By selecting the corresponding button you can select the input format *decimal* respectively *hexadecimal* for the input field.

11.2 Automatic configuration of a slave system

Precondition

The automatic configuration assumes that your EtherCAT system is mounted and can be reached on-line.

There are the following possibilities for on-line connection:

- Slaves connected to the local system
 - You are directly connected to a slave station via EtherCAT by means of a separate network adapter. Here the on-line connection is established by specifying the *Network Adapter*.
- Slaves connected to remote system
 - You are connected to the Ethernet PG/OP channel of your CPU and can use this to access the EtherCAT master. The on-line connection is established by specifying *IP Address*, *Port* and *Master Instance*. With *VIPA Port* 6000 and *Master Instance* 0 is to be set.

Proceeding

1. ➤ Open if not already done the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager*
 2. ➤ Click in the 'Project Explorer' at 'EC-Mastersystem'
 3. ➤ Set depending on the on-line access in the 'Device Editor > Master' as follows:
 - If you are directly locally connected to a slave station via EtherCAT by means of a separate network adapter, select your *Network adapter* and click at [Select].
 - If you are connected to the Ethernet PG/OP channel of you CPU, please enter *IP Address*, *Port* and *Master Instance* and click at [Select]. With *VIPA* set *Port* to 6000 and *Master Instance* to 0.
- ⇒ The *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager* uses the set connection for communication. By clicking on [Deselect] you can change the connection parameters.



When called from the SPEED7 Studio the IP address is taken from your project. If you change the IP address you need to adjust this in your project and start the SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager again!

4. ➤ Click in the 'Project Explorer' at 'EC-Mastersystem' and select from the context menu 'Scan EtherCAT network'
 - ⇒ You might be asked if you want to delete the existing slaves. Confirm with [Yes].
- Then the master is listed with its slaves and the associated PDO configuration in the 'Project Explorer', which was found by the network scan. The system can now be configured accordingly.



If there is no connection possible with the local master, the an anti virus software could block the connection. Then disabling the packet filter of the protocols of the network card in the anti virus software could help.

11.3 Manual configuration of a slave system

Precondition

With the manual configuration the system need not be built and connected online. The system can freely be configured in the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager*.

Proceeding

1. ➤ Open if not already done the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager*.
2. ➤ Click at the '*Project Explorer*' at '*EC-Mastersystem*' and select '*Context menu*'
➔ *Append Slave(s)*.
 - ⇒ A dialog opens to insert slave systems
3. ➤ Select the according slave from the list, enter the number of slaves and confirm with [OK].
 - ⇒ The corresponding slave systems are inserted and can be configured now.

11.4 Configuration - EC-Mastersystem

11.4.1 Preparation

Click in the Toolbar at [Configuration] and select '*EC-Mastersystem*' in the '*Project Explorer*'. As soon you have configured at least one slave station, the following registers are available:

- 🔗 *Chap. 11.4.2 'Master' page 381*
- 🔗 *Chap. 11.4.3 'Process Data Image' page 382*
- 🔗 *Chap. 11.4.4 'Advanced Options (Expert mode)' page 382*
- 🔗 *Chap. 11.4.5 'Distributed Clocks (Expert mode)' page 385*
- 🔗 *Chap. 11.4.6 'I/O Address Overview' page 386*

11.4.2 Master

Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001)
 - 001: Module 1

General

Unit Name: EC-Mastersystem

Cycle Time [us]: 32000

Slaves connected to local system

Network Adapter: LAN-Verbindung 4 (Intel(R) PRO/1000 GT-Desktopadapter) Select

Slaves connected to remote system

PG/OP Ethernet: 192 . 168 . 0 . 1

EC-Mastersystem: 192 . 168 . 0 . 1

Custom remote system: 192 . 168 . 0 . 1

Port: 6000

Master-Instance: 0 Deselect

Here you can perform master and bus-specific settings.

- **General**
 - Unit Name: Name of the master
 - Cyclic time: Interval in μs , in which the process data are read and written (PDO cycle time). Here you can choose between different values.
- **Slaves connected to the local system**
 - You are directly connected to a slave station via EtherCAT by means of a separate network adapter. Here the on-line connection is established by specifying the *Network Adapter*.
- **Slaves connected to remote system**
 - You are connected to the PG/OP channel of your CPU and can use this to access the EtherCAT master. The on-line connection is established by specifying *IP Address*, *Port* and *Master Instance*.
 - IP Address: Enter the IP Address of the PG/OP channel of the remote CPU.
 - Port: Port, over which the communication takes place with the remote CPU. With VIPA use Port 6000.
 - Master-Instance: Serves for the master instance of the remote system. With VIPA the master instance is 0.

With [Select] the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager* uses the set connection for communication. By clicking on [Deselect] you can change the connection parameters.



When called from the SPEED7 Studio the IP address is taken once from your project. If you change the IP address you need to adjust this in your project and then start the SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager again.

11.4.3 Process Data Image

No.	Bus address	Slave	Module	Slot	S7 Input address	Process Image	S7 Output address	Process Image	EtherCAT input address	EtherCAT output address	Type	Order number	Cor
1	1	Slave_001			384 - 391	---		---	0 - 7		VIPA 053-1EC00	VIPA 053-1EC00	
2	1	Slave_001	Module 1	1	392	---		---	8		021-1BF00	021-1BF00	
3	1	Slave_001	Module 2	2		---	384	---		0	022-1BF00	022-1BF00	

Here you have a list of S7 respectively EtherCAT addresses, which are used by the modules of all the slave stations. The 'S7 address' corresponds to the address in the address area of the CPU. By entering a new 'Start Address' you can adjust the S7 addressing of the input and output areas of the modules accordingly.

Information about the assignment of the in/output area can be found in the manual of your module.

The 'I/O Addresses EtherCAT' are only visible in 'Expert mode'! 'I/O Addresses EtherCAT' are the offset addresses, which are used within the EtherCAT process image. You cannot change the address. You can use the addresses e.g. for EtherCAT network analysis.

If you have activated "Isochronous mode" via the feature set 'Motion Control + ... axes', you can use the 'Process image' to place the address area of the corresponding module of a slave station in the OB61 process image. Otherwise, the address area is located in the OB1 process image or in the I/O area.

11.4.4 Advanced Options (Expert mode)

Master Settings

Init Command Retries: 3

Name	Value
MasterStateChangeTimeout (ms)	60000

Slave Settings

Startup Checking

- Check Vendor ID
- Check Product Code
- Check Revision Number
- Check Serial Number

Identification Checking

- Check Identification
 - Use Current Values
 - Copy Station Address -> Identification Value
 - Copy Identification Value -> Station Address

Process Data Mode

- Disable LRW

Overwrite Watchdog

- Set Multiplier (Reg.: 0x400):
- Set PDI Watchdog (Reg.: 0x410):
- Set SM Watchdog (Reg.: 0x420):

Timeouts

- SDO Access: 0 [ms]
- Init->Pre-Op/Init->Bootstrap: 3000 [ms]
- Pre-Op->Safe-Op/Safe-Op->Op: 10000 [ms]
- Back to Pre-Op, Init: 5000 [ms]
- Op->Safe-Op: 200 [ms]

Mailbox Mode

- Cyclic
- State Change

Overwrite Mailbox Size

- Output Size: [bytes]
- Input Size: [bytes]

Apply changes to all slaves...

This dialog is only visible in the 'Expert mode'! In this dialog the parameters of the master system can be adjusted and the default settings for all the slave stations can be defined.

- Master Settings
 - Init Command Retries: Number of retries, beyond which a transmission error is returned. (default: 3)
 - MasterStateChangeTimeout: Here you can define a timeout for the state change of the master and its slave stations (default: 60000ms). If the *MasterStateChangeTimeout* is too short, the EtherCAT master reports the error message 0xED21.
- Slave Settings
 - In this area default parameters can be applied for all the slave stations. The settings are applied for all slave stations as default setting by clicking on [Apply changes (to all slaves)]. By selecting the slave station in the *'Project Explorer'* you always have the possibility to customize the slave parameters via the register *'Advanced Options'*.

Slave Settings

- Start-up checking:

Here you can define the items, the EtherCAT master has to check during the transition *'Init→Pre-Op'* (Vendor ID, Product code, Revision number).

 - Revision number can be verified:
 - "==" → High word is equal, Low word is equal
 - ">=" → High word is equal or greater, Low word is equal or greater
 - "LW == " → Low word is equal
 - "LW ==, HW >=" → Low word is equal, High word is equal or greater
 - "HW == " → High word is equal
 - "HW ==, LW >=" → High word is equal, Low word is equal or greater
- Identification checking:
 - With these parameters, you determine via which HotConnect address the EtherCAT master should identify the slave station.
 - *'Check identification'*: When activated, the text box below shows the current Hot-Connect address, which the EtherCAT master has to use to identify the slave station.
 - For identification via the address set on the address switch of the slave station (Explicit Device ID), you have to activate *'Check identification'* and enter the corresponding ESC register address for addressing via the address switch at *'Select local address'*.
 - For identification via SSI (Configured Station Alias) you have to activate *'Check identification'* and enter the corresponding ESC register address for SSI activation at *'Select local address'*. In this case, the *Configured Station Alias* address must be specified via *'EEPROM'* of the slave station in *diagnostics mode*. In addition, you must specify the *Configured Station Alias* address in your configuration in *'Group'* by means *'Identification value'*.
 - ↪ *Chap. 11.8.4 'EEPROM (Expert mode)' page 410*
 - ↪ *Chap. 11.9.3 'Create Hot Connect group' page 416*



For more information about the ESC register addresses, refer to the manual for your slave station.

- **Process Data Mode:**
Here you specify the command that should be used for process data access.
 - ‘*LRW activate:*’ With one **Logical-Read-Logical-Write** command inputs are read and also outputs are set. This needs 1 frame.
 - ‘*LRW deactivate:*’ ‘*LRD/LWR:*’ Read access with **Logical-Read** command to inputs and write access with **Logical-Write** command to outputs. This needs 2 frames.
- **Overwrite Watchdog:**
Writes the configured value in the relevant register of the slave station. Here among others you can set the time of the ‘*SM Watchdog*’ (SyncManager-Watchdog).
 - ‘*Set Multiplier:*’ Writes the configured value to the corresponding slave register: 0x0400
 - ‘*Set PDI Watchdog:*’ Writes the configured value to the corresponding slave register: 0x0410
 - ‘*Set SM Watchdog:*’ Writes the configured value to the corresponding slave register: 0x0420



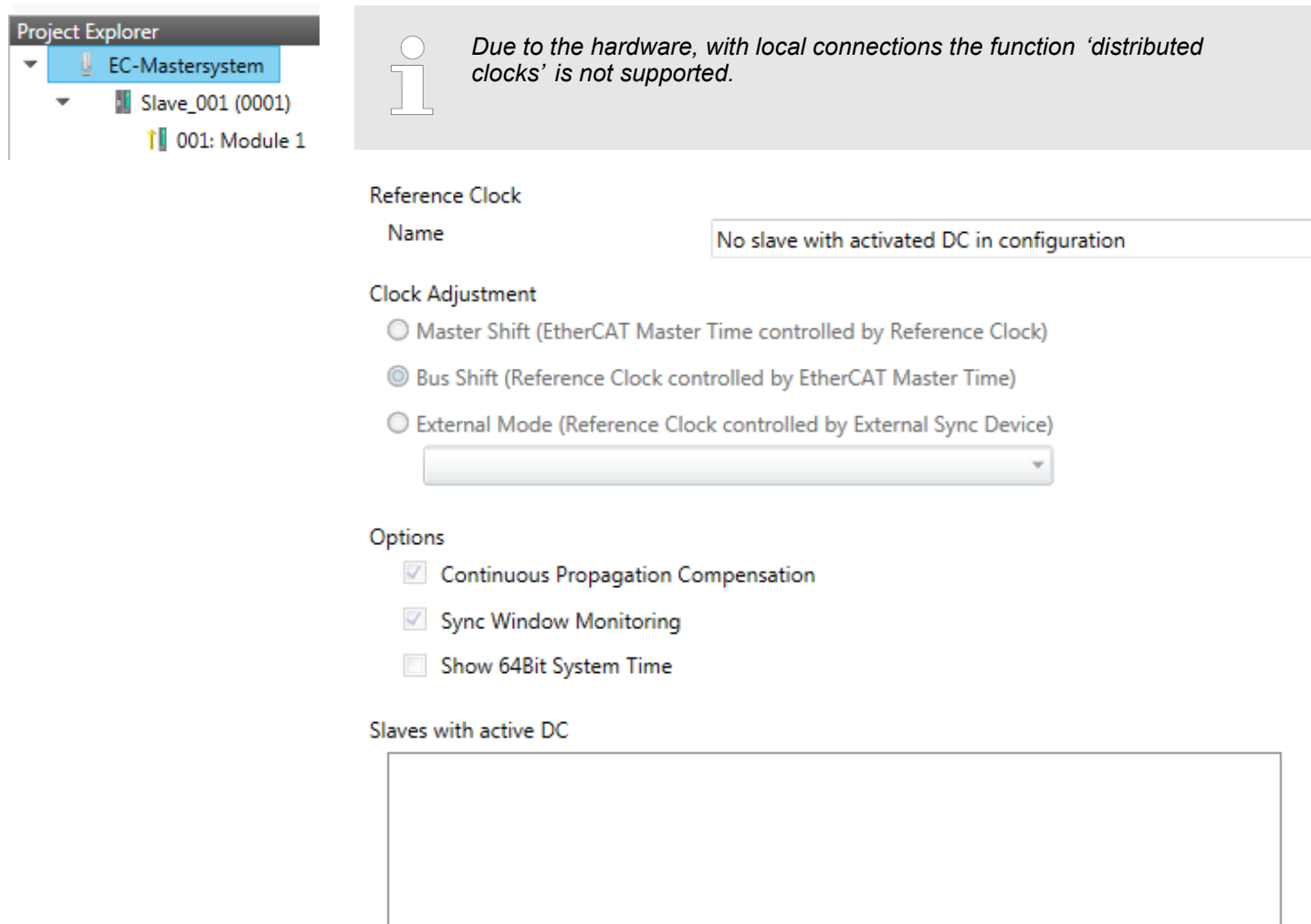
Please note that even if a watchdog is present, this need not be indicated in the ESI file and this is shown as inactive!

- **Timeouts:**
 ‘*SDO Access:*’ Internal master timeout for SDO access
 ‘*Init→Pre-Op:*’ Internal master timeout for slave state change from *Init* to *Pre-Op*
 ‘*Pre-Op→Safe-Op/Safe-Op→Op:*’ Internal master timeout for slave state change from *Pre-Op* to *Safe-Op* and then to *Op*.
 ‘*Back to Pre-Op, Init:*’ Internal master timeout for slave state change to *Pre-Op* and *Init*
 ‘*Op→Safe-Op:*’ Internal master timeout for slave state change from *Op* to *Safe-Op*
 ↪ *Chap. 11.10 ‘EtherCAT State Machine’ page 418*
- **Mailbox Mode:**
The ‘*Mailbox*’ is an a-cyclic communication channel. Here mostly ‘*Emergencies*’ messages and ‘*SDOs*’ are buffered. The way of accessing the just unread mailbox data can be specified here.
 - ‘*Cyclic:*’ Interval in ms within which the mailbox is to be read (polling mode). If you want short interrupt response times, you should select the mode ‘*Cyclic*’ and set a short time e.g. 1ms.
 - ‘*State change:*’ The mailbox is read only on a state bit change.
- **Overwrite Mailbox Size**
 - ‘*Output Size:*’ Overwrites mailbox output size
 - ‘*Input Size:*’ Overwrites mailbox input size



- *When changing the ‘Process Data Mode’ you have to refresh the addresses in the Register ‘Process Image’.*
- *If the Process Data Mode ‘LRW’ is used, the input and the output address of the EtherCAT process image must be identical. Here address leaks can occur between slave stations. If an EtherCAT address exceeds the maximum address area of the CPU, the current configuration gets invalid. You need to reduce the configuration or change to process data mode ‘LRD/LWR’.*
- *If you use long cycle times (> 100ms) you should always accordingly raise the ‘SM Watchdog’. Otherwise your slave station changes after laps of ‘SM Watchdog’ time to Safe-Op and releases OB 86. From now on you can only manually set the slave to Op!*

11.4.5 Distributed Clocks (Expert mode)



Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001)
 - 001: Module 1

Due to the hardware, with local connections the function 'distributed clocks' is not supported.

Reference Clock

Name: No slave with activated DC in configuration

Clock Adjustment

- Master Shift (EtherCAT Master Time controlled by Reference Clock)
- Bus Shift (Reference Clock controlled by EtherCAT Master Time)
- External Mode (Reference Clock controlled by External Sync Device)

Options

- Continuous Propagation Compensation
- Sync Window Monitoring
- Show 64Bit System Time

Slaves with active DC

This dialog is only visible in the 'Expert mode'! Here you can adjust the clock functionality accordingly. In EtherCAT "Distributed Clocks" means a logical combination of "clocks", which are located in the EtherCAT devices. With this there is the possibility to locally provide a synchronized time in each bus device. If an EtherCAT device supports the Distributed Clocks functionality, it has its own clock. After PowerON this first locally works, based on an own pulse generator. By selecting an EtherCAT slave station, which has to provide the reference time, the distributed clocks can be synchronized. This reference clock so represents the system time.

- Reference clock: Here you get information about the clock, which provides the reference time.
 - Name: Name of the reference clock. Per default this is always the 1. slave station, which supports the "Distributed Clock (DC)" functionality.
- Clock adjustment
 - Master Shift: The EtherCAT master time is synchronized by the reference clock.
 - Bus Shift: The reference clock is synchronized by the EtherCAT master time.
 - External Mode: The reference clock is controlled by an external master

- Options
 - Continuous Propagation Compensation: A command (datagram) will be inserted in the cyclic frame which allows the EtherCAT master to measure and compensate the propagation delay time by time.
 - Sync Window Monitoring: A command (datagram) will be inserted in the cyclic frame to read the ESC registers 0x092C. If this is selected the master will throw a notification about the state (*sync* respectively *out-of-sync*) of your system.
 - 64bit system time: Master supports slaves with 32bit and 64bit system time register (0x0910). If this is selected he will interpret it as 64bit system time.
- Slaves with active DC
 - Shows a list of all slave stations with active DC

11.4.6 I/O Address Overview

I/O addresses


Input addresses **Output addresses**

Start address: Start address:

End Address: End Address:

Address	Name	Data type	Comment
ED 0	d_HardwareInterruptC_0_1	DWORD	ED 0.0 - Slave_001 Hardware Interrupt Counter When Auto-Acknowledge is enabled it in process alarms. Otherwise it shows only that an alarm has occurred. Write on object 0x5000:6 to reset the counter or to acknowledge the alarm respectively. [Device: Slave_001 Slot 0]
ED 4	d_DiagnosticInterrup_4_1	DWORD	ED 4.0 - Slave_001 Diagnostic Interrupt Counter When Auto-Acknowledge is enabled it in diagnostic alarms. Otherwise it shows only that an alarm has occurred. Write on object 0x5002:6 to reset the counter or to acknowledge the alarm respectively. [Device: Slave_001 Slot 0]

Here you have a list of addresses that are used by the I/O components of all the modules in the address area of the CPU. By entering a new 'Start address' you can adjust the addressing of the input and output areas accordingly. You can edit 'Name' and 'Comment' by clicking at the corresponding entry.

 *Information about the assignment of the in/output area can be found in the manual of your module.*

11.5 Configuration - slave station

11.5.1 Preparation

Click in the Toolbar at [Configuration] and select the Slave-Station 'Slave_...' in the 'Project Explorer'. The following registers are available now:

↳ *Chap. 11.5.2 'General' page 388*

↳ *Chap. 11.5.3 'Modules' page 389*

↳ *Chap. 11.5.4 'PDO Mapping' page 390*

Group - if a group exists for this slave station

↳ *Chap. 11.9 'Grouping logic' page 413*

↳ *Chap. 11.5.5 'Advanced Options (Expert mode)' page 393*

↳ *Chap. 11.5.6 'Ethernet (EoE)' page 396*

↳ *Chap. 11.5.7 'Distributed Clocks (Expert mode)' page 397 - if supported*

↳ *Chap. 11.5.8 'Init Commands (Expert mode)' page 398*

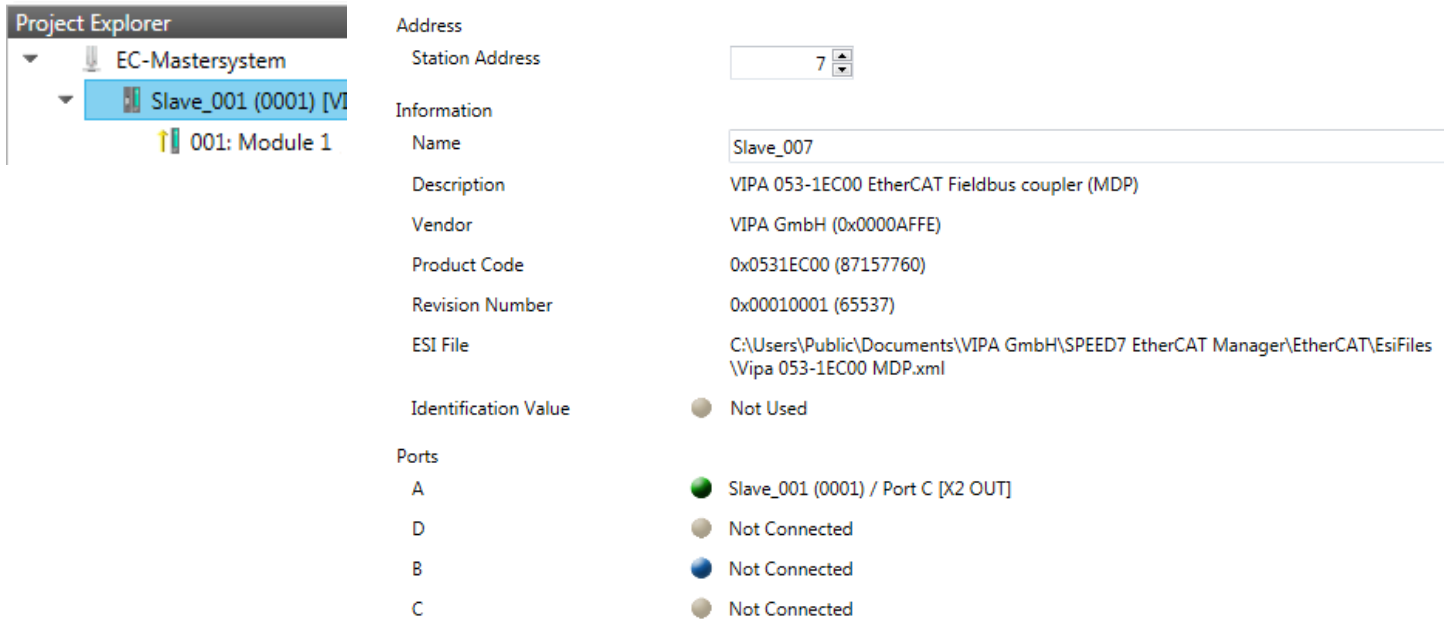
↳ *Chap. 11.5.9 'CoE Object Dictionary (Expert mode)' page 400*

↳ *Chap. 11.5.10 'Process Image' page 401*

↳ *Chap. 11.5.11 'I/O Address Overview' page 401*

↳ *Chap. 11.5.12 'Parameter' page 402*

11.5.2 General



Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001) [M]
 - 001: Module 1

Address

Station Address: 7

Information

Name: Slave_007

Description: VIPA 053-1EC00 EtherCAT Fieldbus coupler (MDP)

Vendor: VIPA GmbH (0x0000AFFE)

Product Code: 0x0531EC00 (87157760)

Revision Number: 0x00010001 (65537)

ESI File: C:\Users\Public\Documents\VIPA GmbH\SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager\EtherCAT\EsiFiles\Vipa 053-1EC00 MDP.xml

Identification Value: Not Used

Ports

A: Slave_001 (0001) / Port C [X2 OUT]

D: Not Connected

B: Not Connected

C: Not Connected

Here you can perform slave-specific settings such as assignment of name and address to a station. It is also possible to change the connection to the station.

- Address
 - Station Address: EtherCAT address of the slave station.
- Information
 - Name: Name of the slave station can be assigned accordingly.
 - Description: Description of the slave station.
 - Vendor: Name of the vendor.
 - Product Code: Internal product code of the slave station.
 - Revision Number: Internal revision number of the slave station.
 - ESI File: Path and name of the device file, in which the data of the slave station is stored.
 - Identification Value: Identification Value of the slave station
- Ports
 - Connected Devices: List of connected slave stations.
 - Predecessor Device: Name of the predecessor device.
If topology should be changed, please use the *'Edit Topology'* dialog.

11.5.3 Modules

Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001) [M]
 - 001: Module 1

Assign the modules

001 : Terminals [021-1BD00] (VIPA 021-1BD00)

002 : Terminals [--]

003 : Terminals [--]

004 : Terminals [--]

005 : Terminals [--]

006 : Terminals [--]

007 : Terminals [--]

008 : Terminals [--]

009 : Terminals [--]

010 : Terminals [--]

011 : Terminals [--]

012 : Terminals [--]

013 : Terminals [--]

014 : Terminals [--]

015 : Terminals [--]

016 : Terminals [--]

<< X

SM 021 - Digital Input Modules

021-1BB00 (VIPA 021-1BB00, DI 2x)

021-1BB10 (VIPA 021-1BB10, DI 2x)

021-1BB50 (VIPA 021-1BB50, DI 2x)

021-1BB70 (VIPA 021-1BB70, DI 2x)

021-1BD00 (VIPA 021-1BD00, DI 4x)

021-1BD10 (VIPA 021-1BD10, DI 4x)

021-1BD40 (VIPA 021-1BD40, DI 4x)

021-1BD50 (VIPA 021-1BD50, DI 4x)

021-1BD70 (VIPA 021-1BD70, DI 4x)

021-1BF00 (VIPA 021-1BF00, DI 8x)

021-1BF50 (VIPA 021-1BF50, DI 8x)

021-1DF00 (VIPA 021-1DF00, DI 8x)

SM 022 - Digital Output Modules

022-1BB00 (VIPA 022-1BB00, DO 2x)

022-1BB20 (VIPA 022-1BB20, DO 2x)

Additional settings

Download Slot Configuration

Load Modules



With an E-Bus slave this dialog is hidden. ↗ Chap. 11.9 'Grouping logic' page 413

In this dialog you can assign modules to the appropriate slot.

- Connect module to slot ("<<")
 - Select your module from the list on the right and add it to a selected slot 'Terminals' in the left list by clicking [<<]. This takes place according to the following rules:
 - If no modules are configured, the module is connected to the highlighted slot. Each additional module is inserted below.
 - If modules are already exist, the module is added to the highlighted slot and the following modules are moved accordingly.
- Disconnect module from slot ("X")
 - Select from the left list the appropriate slot, which you want to disconnect from the module again and click at ["X"].



There is also the possibility to add or remove modules via the context menu of the 'Project Explorer'.

- Option field - 'Download slot configuration'
 - When enabled, an Init Command is created, which contains the slot configuration with the unique module identifier. During start-up of the slave station the slot configuration serves for comparison between configured and inserted modules. This can prevent misconfigurations.
- 'Load modules'
 - With this function you can load the configuration from the EtherCAT master for the selected slave station.

11.5.4 PDO Mapping

11.5.4.1 Description

The screenshot shows the 'PDO Mapping' dialog. On the left, the 'Project Explorer' displays a tree structure: 'EC-Mastersystem' > 'Slave_001 (0001) [V]' > '001: Module 1'. The main area is split into two panels: 'Select The Inputs' and 'Select The Outputs'. The 'Select The Inputs' panel contains a table with the following data:

Inputs			0x1AFF
Name	Index	Bit Length	
Hardware Interrupt	0xF100:01	32	
Diagnostic Interrupt	0xF100:02	32	
Module 1 (031-1BB10).Eingänge			0x1A00
Name	Index	Bit Length	
AI 0	0x6000:01	16	
AI 1	0x6000:02	16	

The 'Select The Outputs' panel is currently empty. Below the tables are buttons: 'Add', 'Delete', 'Edit', 'Up', 'Down', and 'Load PDO information'.

This dialog shows a list of the assigned PDOs. With some slave stations it is possible to activate respectively de-activate certain PDO configurations.

- Select the Inputs
 - If your slave station supports it, you can hide the corresponding input PDO from the configuration by disabling the checkbox.
- Select the Outputs
 - If your slave station supports it, you can hide the corresponding output PDO from the configuration by disabling the checkbox.
- Only **'Expert mode'**
 - Add / Delete / Edit:
 - Used for changing the lists, if it is allowed by the ESI. First the list, which you want changed, must be selected.
 - Up / Down:
 - Moving the selected PDO in the selected list up or down.
 - Load PDO information:
 - Here you can load PDO information directly from the slave station.

11.5.4.2 Add or edit PDO (Expert mode)

Edit PDO

General

Name: Module 1 (021-18D00).Inputs

Index: 0x1A00 (Dec/Hex)

Optional

Exclude:

- 1AFF
- 1A02

Flags

- Mandatory
- Fixed Content
- Virtual PDO

Direction

- TxPdo
- RxPdo

Sync Manager

0

Entries

Name	Index	Bit Length	Comment
DI 0	0x6000:01	1	
DI 1	0x6000:02	1	
DI 2	0x6000:03	1	
DI 3	0x6000:04	1	

Add Delete Edit Up Down

OK Cancel

PDOs can only be edited in the 'Expert mode'! Otherwise, the functions are hidden. With [Edit] the dialog 'Edit PDO' opens.

- General
 - Name: Name of the PDO
 - Index: Index of the PDO (can be entered in hexadecimal or decimal)
- Flags
 - Mandatory: If activated the PDO cannot be deleted.
 - Fixed Content: If activated the content of the PDO is write protected. to create new or to edit existing PDOs you have to disable 'Fixed Content'.
 - Virtual PDO: If activated the PDO has no entries.
- Direction
 - TxPDO: Send PDO of the slave station for input data.
 - RxPDO: Receive PDO of the slave station for output data.
- Sync Manager
 - Selected the sync manager, which should be used. The selection is only visible if more than one sync manager can be used.
- Optional
 - Exclude: Select the PDOs which cannot be activated if this PDO is activated.
- Entries
 - Here is the list of configured PDO entries shown.



After editing the PDOs, the addresses need to be re-calculated! For this jump to register 'Process Image' and click at [Recalculate].

11.5.4.3 Add PDO (Expert mode)

Via the following dialog the user add a PDO entry.

- General
 - Name: Name of the PDO entry
 - Comment: Comment of the PDO entry
 - Swapping: Swapping mode of the PDO entry
- Settings
 - Index: Index of the PDO entry (can be entered in hexadecimal or decimal)
 - Subindex: Subindex of the PDO entry (hexadecimal)
 - Datatype: List of available datatypes
 - Bit Length: Length of the PDO entry in bits
- CoE Object-Dictionary (loaded only if Object-Dictionary is supported by slave)

11.5.4.4 Edit PDO (Expert mode)

Via the following dialog the user edit a PDO entry.

- General
 - Name: Name of the PDO entry
 - Comment: Comment of the PDO entry
 - Swapping: Swapping mode of the PDO entry

11.5.5 Advanced Options (Expert mode)

Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001) [M]
 - 001: Module 1

Startup Checking

- Check Vendor ID
- Check Product Code
- Check Revision Number
 - ==
- Check Serial Number

Identification Checking

- Check Identification
 - 0 [Dec] Hex
- Select Local Address
 - 0x0012 [Dec] Hex

Process Data Mode

- Disable LRW

Overwrite Watchdog

- Set Multiplier (Reg.: 0x400): [] []
- Set PDI Watchdog (Reg.: 0x410): [] []
- Set SM Watchdog (Reg.: 0x420): [] []

Distributed Clocks

- Potential Reference Clock

Timeouts

- SDO Access: [0] [ms]
- Init->Pre-Op/Init->Bootstrap: [3000] [ms]
- Pre-Op->Safe-Op/Safe-Op->Op: [10000] [ms]
- Back to Pre-Op, Init: [5000] [ms]
- Op->Safe-Op: [200] [ms]

Mailbox Mode

- Cyclic
- State Change [10] [ms]

Overwrite Mailbox Size

- Output Size: [] [bytes]
- Input Size: [] [bytes]

This dialog is only visible in the 'Expert mode'! Here you can make further adjustments to the slave station.

Slave Settings

- **Start-up checking:**
 - Here you can define the items, the EtherCAT master has to check during the transition *'Init→Pre-Op'* (Vendor ID, Product code, Revision number).
 - Revision number can be verified:
 - "==" → High word is equal, Low word is equal
 - ">=" → High word is equal or greater, Low word is equal or greater
 - "LW ==" → Low word is equal
 - "LW ==, HW >=" → Low word is equal, High word is equal or greater
 - "HW ==" → High word is equal
 - "HW ==, LW >=" → High word is equal, Low word is equal or greater
- **Identification checking:**
 - With these parameters, you determine via which HotConnect address the EtherCAT master should identify the slave station.
 - *'Check identification'*: When activated, the text box below shows the current Hot-Connect address, which the EtherCAT master has to use to identify the slave station.
 - For identification via the address set on the address switch of the slave station (Explicit Device ID), you have to activate *'Check identification'* and enter the corresponding ESC register address for addressing via the address switch at *'Select local address'*.
 - For identification via SSI (Configured Station Alias) you have to activate *'Check identification'* and enter the corresponding ESC register address for SSI activation at *'Select local address'*. In this case, the *Configured Station Alias* address must be specified via *'EEPROM'* of the slave station in *diagnostics mode*. In addition, you must specify the *Configured Station Alias* address in your configuration in *'Group'* by means *'Identification value'*.
 - ↳ [Chap. 11.8.4 'EEPROM \(Expert mode\)' page 410](#)
 - ↳ [Chap. 11.9.3 'Create Hot Connect group' page 416](#)



For more information about the ESC register addresses, refer to the manual for your slave station.

- **Process Data Mode:**
Here you specify the command that should be used for process data access.
 - *'LRW activate:'* With one **Logical-Read-Logical-Write** command inputs are read and also outputs are set. This needs 1 frame.
 - *'LRW deactivate:'* *'LRD/LWR:'* Read access with **Logical-Read** command to inputs and write access with **Logical-Write** command to outputs. This needs 2 frames.
- **Overwrite Watchdog:**
Writes the configured value in the relevant register of the slave station. Here among others you can set the time of the *'SM Watchdog'* (SyncManager-Watchdog).
 - *'Set Multiplier:'* Writes the configured value to the corresponding slave register: 0x0400
 - *'Set PDI Watchdog:'* Writes the configured value to the corresponding slave register: 0x0410
 - *'Set SM Watchdog:'* Writes the configured value to the corresponding slave register: 0x0420



Please note that even if a watchdog is present, this need not be indicated in the ESI file and this is shown as inactive!

- **Timeouts:**
'SDO Access': Internal master timeout for SDO access
'Init→Pre-Op': Internal master timeout for slave state change from *Init* to *Pre-Op*
'Pre-Op→Safe-Op/Safe-Op→Op': Internal master timeout for slave state change from *Pre-Op* to *Safe-Op* and then to *Op*.
'Back to Pre-Op, Init': Internal master timeout for slave state change to *Pre-Op* and *Init*
'Op→Safe-Op': Internal master timeout for slave state change from *Op* to *Safe-Op*
↪ *Chap. 11.10 'EtherCAT State Machine' page 418*
- **Mailbox Mode:**
The *'Mailbox'* is an a-cyclic communication channel. Here mostly *'Emergencies'* messages and *'SDOs'* are buffered. The way of accessing the just unread mailbox data can be specified here.
 - *'Cyclic'*: Interval in ms within which the mailbox is to be read (polling mode). If you want short interrupt response times, you should select the mode *'Cyclic'* and set a short time e.g. 1ms.
 - *'State change'*: The mailbox is read only on a state bit change.
- **Overwrite Mailbox Size**
 - *'Output Size'*: Overwrites mailbox output size
 - *'Input Size'*: Overwrites mailbox input size



- *When changing the 'Process Data Mode' you have to refresh the addresses in the Register 'Process Image'.*
- *If the Process Data Mode 'LRW' is used, the input and the output address of the EtherCAT process image must be identical. Here address leaks can occur between slave stations. If an EtherCAT address exceeds the maximum address area of the CPU, the current configuration gets invalid. You need to reduce the configuration or change to process data mode 'LRD/LWR'.*
- *If you use long cycle times (> 100ms) you should always accordingly raise the 'SM Watchdog'. Otherwise your slave station changes after laps of 'SM Watchdog' time to Safe-Op and releases OB 86. From now on you can only manually set the slave to Op!*

■ Distributed Clocks: *'Potential Reference Clock'*

- Every slave station can be used as a *'Potential Reference Clock'* if the slave supports the DC registers. The setting is used, when you remove the slave with activated *'Potential Reference Clock'* e.g. via *'Hot Connect'*, then the master searches for a slave station where *'Potential Reference Clock'* is activated. If no slave is available, the first DC slave is used.

11.5.6 Ethernet (EoE)

The screenshot shows the configuration window for Ethernet (EoE) settings. On the left, the Project Explorer shows the hierarchy: EC-Mastersystem > Slave_001 (0001) [M] > 001: Module 1. The main configuration area is titled 'Ethernet' and includes the following settings:

- Ethernet:** (checked)
- Virtual MAC address:** 02 00 00 00 00 04 Auto
- Time Stamp Requested:**
- Port Mode:** Switch Port IP Port
- Overwrite IP Settings:**
- IP Address:** 1 . 0 . 0 . 0
- Subnet Mask:** 1 . 0 . 0 . 0
- Default Gateway:** 1 . 0 . 0 . 0
- DNS Server:** 1 . 0 . 0 . 0
- DNS Name:** (empty text field)

Here you activate or change EoE (**E**thernet **o**ver **E**therCAT) the settings.

- Ethernet (activates EoE support)
 - Virtual MAC address: Virtual MAC address. If 'Auto' is checked, the Virtual MAC address will be generated from the Station Address, e.g. Station Address is "1010" (= 0x03F2), will generate the Virtual MAC address: "01 00 00 00 03 F2"
 - Time Stamp Requested: Slave station will response with the exact send time and the same Frame number and he should response as soon as possible.
 - Port Mode: Slave station can be run in 'Switch Port' or 'IP Port' mode.
- Override IP Settings
 - All IP settings will be overwritten from master like IP Address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway, DNS Server and DNS Name.

11.5.7 Distributed Clocks (Expert mode)

This dialog is only visible in the ‘Expert mode’ if this is supported by your slave station! Here you can adjust the settings for *Distributed Clocks* accordingly. In EtherCAT "Distributed Clocks" (DC) means a logical combination of "clocks", which are located in the EtherCAT devices. With this there is the possibility to locally provide a synchronized time in each bus device. If an EtherCAT device supports the *Distributed Clocks* functionality, it has its own clock. After PowerON this first locally works, based on an own pulse generator. By selecting an EtherCAT slave station, which has to provide the reference time, the distributed clocks can be synchronized. This *reference clock* so represents the system time.

- Reference clock
 - Operation Mode: Here you can set the operation mode of the reference clock. More may be found in the manual of your slave station.
 - Sync Unit Cycle: Cycle time of the master. ↪ *Chap. 11.4 ‘Configuration - EC-Mastersystem’ page 380*
- Sync Units
 - Sync Unit 0
 - Cycle Time: Here you can specify the cycle time in relation to the ‘Master Cycle’ or ‘User defined’.
 - Time Shift: Specify here a time shift. This is used for fine adjustment.
 - Sync Unit 1
 - Cycle Time: Here you can specify the cycle time in relation to the ‘Master Cycle’, to the cycle of Sync Unit 0 ‘Sync 0 Cycle’ or ‘User defined’.
 - Time Shift: Specify here a time shift. This is used for fine adjustment.



Due to the hardware with a local connection Distributed Clocks (connection via network adapter) is not supported!

Configuration - slave station > Init Commands (Expert mode)

11.5.8 Init Commands (Expert mode)

11.5.8.1 Description

Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001) [M]
 - 001: Module 1

Init Commands

Transition	Protocol	Index	Value	Comment	Access
Pre-Op->Safe-Op	CoE	0x3100:007	0	Download to Upper limit value channel 0	RW
Pre-Op->Safe-Op	CoE	0x3100:003	0	Download to Limit value monitoring	RW

Edit Value

Value:

Edit Init Commands

Move Up Move Down New Copy Edit Delete

This dialog is only visible in the 'Expert mode'!



- For each parameter of a slave station or module, which differs from the standard setting you have to create an Init command!
- If a write access to an object in the configuration mode is performed, and the written value does not reflect to the default value of the object, so this command is automatically added to the 'Init Commands'. ↪ Chap. 11.5.9 'CoE Object Dictionary (Expert mode)' page 400

Here you can see a list of the current configured Init Commands and if it is allowed you can also add/edit/delete the commands.

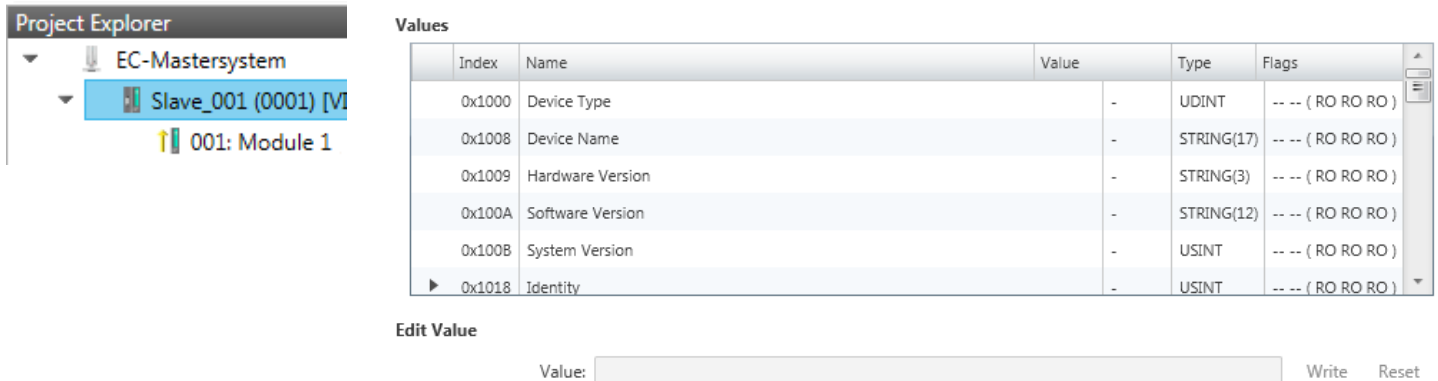
- **Init Commands:** Init Commands come from the ESI file or are automatically generated on write access to CoE objects or can be created by the user. You either have full-access (RW = Read/Write) or only read access (RO = Read-only). Init commands from ESI files are automatically listed here. These cannot be changed or deleted.
- **Edit Init Commands**
 - New, Copy, Edit, Delete: Used for changing Init Commands.
 - Move Up, Move Down: Moving the selected Init Command up or down.

11.5.8.2 CoE Init Command (Expert mode)

This dialog is only visible in the 'Expert mode'! With [New] the dialog 'Add CoE Init Command' opens. This dialog also opens to edit CoE Init Commands, which just exist.

- General
 - Index/Subindex: CoE-Index respectively Subindex of the Init Command
 - Value: Value of the Init Command, which should be written in the chose transition (only available if 'Direction' is set to 'Download'). If type of data is unknown, the hex format must be used. (Example: "0011 2233 ...").
 - Comment: Here you can comment your Init Command.
- Transition
 - Determines in which transition the Init Command will be executed.
- Further Settings
 - Complete Access: Determines if the complete SDO object should be written/read.
- Direction
 - Download: Writes value to slave station.
 - Upload: Reads value from slave.
- CoE Object Dictionary: Select here the value in the CoE Object Dictionary of the slave station, you want to edit.

11.5.9 CoE Object Dictionary (Expert mode)



Index	Name	Value	Type	Flags
0x1000	Device Type	-	UDINT	--- (RO RO RO)
0x1008	Device Name	-	STRING(17)	--- (RO RO RO)
0x1009	Hardware Version	-	STRING(3)	--- (RO RO RO)
0x100A	Software Version	-	STRING(12)	--- (RO RO RO)
0x100B	System Version	-	USINT	--- (RO RO RO)
0x1018	Identity	-	USINT	--- (RO RO RO)

Edit Value

Value: Write Reset

This dialog is only visible in the ‘Expert mode’! Here you will have read and write access to the CoE Object Dictionary of the slave station. This can be changed if your slave station permits. It is indicated by the ‘Flags’ of each object, if write access is permitted. Information about the structure of the Object Dictionary can be found in the manual of your slave station.

Description of the flags: "AA BB (CC DD EE)"

- AA, BB
 - Rx: Mapping as receive PDO
 - Tx: Mapping as send PDO
 - --: Mapping not allowed
- CC:
 - Access rights for state *PreOp* (RO, WO, RW)
- DD:
 - Access rights for state *SafeOp* (RO, WO, RW)
- EE:
 - Access rights for state *Op* (RO, WO, RW)
 - ↳ *Chap. 11.10 ‘EtherCAT State Machine’ page 418*
- Edit Value
 - Write: Changes the selected entry
 - Reset: Resets the selected entry to ESI default



If a write access to an object in the configuration mode is performed, and the written value does not reflect to the default value of the object, so this command is automatically added to the ‘Init Commands’. ↳ Chap. 11.5.8 ‘Init Commands (Expert mode)’ page 398

11.5.10 Process Image

Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001) [M]
 - 001: Module 1

I/O addresses

Input addresses

Start address:

End Address:

Inputaddresses assigned (Byte). 20

Output addresses

Start address:

End Address:

Outputaddresses assigned (Byte). 15

No.	Bus address	Slave	Module	Slot	S7 Input address	S7 Output address	EtherCAT input address	EtherCAT output address	Typ
2	1	Slave_001			0 - 7		0 - 7		VI
3	1	Slave_001	Module 1	1	8 - 11		8 - 11		VI

Here you have a list of S7 respectively EtherCAT addresses, which are used by the modules of the slave system. The 'S7 address' corresponds to the address in the address area of the CPU. By entering a new 'Start address' you can adjust the S7 addressing of the input and output areas of the modules accordingly.

Information about the assignment of the in/output area can be found in the manual of your module.

The 'I/O addresses EtherCAT' are only visible in 'Expert mode'! 'I/O addresses EtherCAT' are the addresses, which are used within the EtherCAT bus. You cannot change the address. You can use the addresses e.g. for EtherCAT network analysis.

11.5.11 I/O Address Overview

Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001) [M]
 - 001: Module 1

I/O addresses

Input addresses

Start address:

End Address:

Output addresses

Start address:

End Address:

Address	Name	Data type	Comment
ED 0	d_HardwareInterruptC_0_1	DWORD	ED 0.0 - Slave_001 Hardware Interrupt Counter When Auto-Acknowledge is enabled it indicates process alarms. Otherwise it shows only that an alarm has occurred. Write on object 0x5000:6 to reset the counter or to acknowledge the alarm respectively. [Device: Slave_001 Slot 0]
ED 4	d_DiagnosticInterrupt_4_1	DWORD	ED 4.0 - Slave_001 Diagnostic Interrupt Counter When Auto-Acknowledge is enabled it indicates diagnostic alarms. Otherwise it shows only that an alarm has occurred. Write on object 0x5002:6 to reset the counter or to acknowledge the alarm respectively. [Device: Slave_001 Slot 0]

Here you have a list of addresses, which are used by the I/O components of the modules of the selected slave system in the address area of the CPU. By entering a new 'Start address' you can adjust the addressing of the input and output areas accordingly. You can edit 'Name' and 'Comment' by clicking at the corresponding entry.

Information about the assignment of the in/output area can be found in the manual of your module.

11.5.12 Parameter



The screenshot shows the 'Parameter' configuration window. On the left, the 'Project Explorer' displays the tree structure: 'EC-Mastersystem' (expanded) contains 'Slave_001 (0001) [M]' (expanded), which contains '001: Module 1'. The 'Parameter' dialog has a label 'Auto-Acknowledge' and a dropdown menu showing the value '5'. A 'Reset' button is located in the top right corner of the dialog.

If the parameters of the slave station can be determined such as a System SLIO slave station, the slave parameters can be set here. With [Reset], the parameters of the slave station are reset to their default values.



More information about the parameters can be found in the manual of you slave station.

11.6 Configuration - modules

11.6.1 Please note



*With an E-Bus slave the dialog of the module configuration are hidden!
↳ Chap. 11.9 'Grouping logic' page 413*

11.6.2 Preparation

Select in the configuration mode in the 'Project Explorer' the module of the according slave station. The following registers are available now:

- ↳ Chap. 11.6.3 'MDP Slot Properties' page 403
- ↳ Chap. 11.6.4 'Process Image' page 403
- ↳ Chap. 11.6.5 'I/O Address Overview' page 404
- ↳ Chap. 11.6.6 'Parameter' page 404

11.6.3 MDP Slot Properties

Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001) [VI]
 - 001: Module 1

General

Vendor: VIPA GmbH (0xAFFE / 45054)
 ESI File of Slave: C:\Users\Public\Documents\VIPA GmbH\SPEED7 Studio\EtherCAT\EsiFiles\Vipa 053-1EC00 MDP.xml

Slot

Name: Terminals
 Number: 001

Module

Name: Module 1
 Description: VIPA 031-1BB10, AI 2x12Bit 0...20mA, potentialgetrennt
 Type: 031-1BB10
 Class: sm_ana_in
 Ident: 0x04111543 (68228419)

Here you can see the MDP Slot Properties of the corresponding module. This dialog serves for information. You cannot change something.

- **General**
 - Vendor: Name of the vendor of the module.
 - ESI file: Path and name of the device file, in which the data of the module and the associated slave station is stored.
- **Slot**
 - Name: Name of the slot
 - Number: Number of the slot
- **Module**
 - Name: Name of the module
 - Type: Order number of the module
 - Class: Module class
 - Identifier: Identification number of the according module class.

11.6.4 Process Image

Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001) [VI]
 - 001: Module 1

I/O addresses

Input addresses


Start address: End Address:
 Input addresses assigned (Byte): 20

Output addresses

Start address: End Address:
 Output addresses assigned (Byte): 0

No.	Bus address	Slave	Module	Slot	S7 Input address	S7 Output address	EtherCAT input address	EtherCAT output address	Typ
2	1	Slave_001	Module 1	1	8 - 11		8 - 11		VIP

Here you have a list of S7 respectively EtherCAT addresses, which are used by the modules of all the slave stations. The 'S7 address' corresponds to the address in the address area of the CPU. By entering a new 'Start Address' you can adjust the S7 addressing of the input and output areas of the modules accordingly.

 *Information about the assignment of the in/output area can be found in the manual of your module.*

The 'I/O Addresses EtherCAT' are only visible in 'Expert mode'! 'I/O Addresses EtherCAT' are the addresses, which are used within the EtherCAT bus. You cannot change the addresses. You can use the addresses e.g. for EtherCAT network analysis.

11.6.5 I/O Address Overview

Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001) [VI]
 - 001: Module 1

I/O addresses

Input addresses

Start address:

End Address:

Output addresses

Start address:

End Address:

Address	Name	Data type	Comment
EW 8	w_AI_CH01_715	WORD	E 8 - AI2x12Bit 0..20mA, 4..20mA - ISO [Device: Slave_001, Slot: 1, Rack: 0]
EW 10	w_AI_CH02_715	WORD	E 10 - AI2x12Bit 0..20mA, 4..20mA - ISO [Device: Slave_001, Slot: 1, Rack: 0]

Here you have a list of addresses that are used by the module in the address area of the CPU. By entering a new 'Start address' you can adjust the addressing of the input and output areas accordingly. You can edit 'Name' and 'Comment' by clicking at the corresponding entry.

Information about the assignment of the in/output area can be found in the manual of your module.

11.6.6 Parameter

Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001) [VI]
 - 001: Module 1

Parameter Reset

Diagnostic interrupt

Temperature system

Interference frequency suppression

**** Ch0 ****

Wire break recognition

Limit value monitoring

If there is a parametrizable module, whose parameters can be determined such as a System SLIO module, the module parameters can be set here. Here also the necessary Init command for the EtherCAT slave station is generated [Chap. 11.5.8 'Init Commands \(Expert mode\)'](#) page 398. With [Reset], the parameters of the module are reset to their default values.

More information about the parameters can be found in the manual of you module.

11.7 Diagnostics - EC-Mastersystem

11.7.1 Preparation

To use the *'Diagnostics'* functions, you must be connected online with your EtherCAT system.

1. Click in the Toolbar at [Configuration] and select *'EC-Mastersystem'* in the *'Project Explorer'*.
2. Activate in the *'Device editor'* the register *'Master'*.
3. Set depending on the on-line access in the *'Device Editor > Master'* as follows:
 - If you are directly connected to a slave station via EtherCAT by means of a separate network adapter, select your *Network Adapter* and click at [Select].
 - If you are connected to the PG/OP channel of you CPU, please enter *IP Address, Port* and *Master Instance* and click at [Select]. With *VIPA Port 6000* and *Master Instance 0* is to be set.

⇒ The *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager* uses the set connection for communication. By clicking on [Deselect] you can change the connection parameters.
4. Click in the Toolbar at [Diagnosis Mode].
 - ⇒ An online connection to your EtherCAT system is established via the preset communication channel and the current project configuration in the *'Project Explorer'*.

With an online connection the 2 LEDs flash alternately in the *'Status area'*. In addition *'Modus'* switches to *'Diagnosis'*.
5. Click in the *'Project Explorer'* at Master.
 - ⇒ The following registers are available now:
 - ↳ *Chap. 11.7.2 'General' page 405*
 - ↳ *Chap. 11.7.3 'CoE Object Dictionary' page 407*
 - ↳ *Chap. 11.7.4 'History (Expert mode)' page 407*

11.7.2 General

Project Explorer





- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001) [V]
 - 001: Module 1

State Machine			
Current State		<input type="text" value="Op"/>	
Requested State		<input type="text" value="Op"/>	
		Init	Bootstrap
Change State		Pre-Op	Safe-Op
		Op	

Information		Frame Counter	
Number of found slaves	<input type="text" value="2"/>	Sent frames	<input type="text" value="20388"/>
Number of slaves in configuration	<input type="text" value="2"/>	Lost frames	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Number of DC slaves	<input type="text" value="0"/>	Cyclic frames	<input type="text" value="20306"/>
DC in-sync	<input type="text" value="-"/>	Acyclic frames	<input type="text" value="82"/>
Topology Ok	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>		
Link Connected	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>		
Slaves in Master State	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>		

Colors and states

The state of the state machine can be determined via the color according to the following specifications:

Color	State of the state machine
 - red	Init / Bootstrap
 - blue	Pre-Op
 - yellow	Safe-Op
 - green	Op

Here you will get master and bus-specific information.

- State Machine
 - Current State: Shows the current state of master. ↪ *Chap. 11.10 'EtherCAT State Machine' page 418*
 - Requested State: Shows the currently requested state of the master which was requested by 'Change State'.
 - Change State: Here you can change the state of the master.
- Information
 - Number of found slaves: Shows number of found slave stations at the bus.
 - Number of slaves in configuration: Shows number of configured slave stations at the bus.
 - Number of DC slaves: Shows the number of slave stations, which support distributed clocks functionality (DC).
 - DC in-sync: If distributed clocks is configured you can find here information about the synchronization status of the system.
 - Topology OK: The '*Topology*' is OK ('Yes'), if the number of configured matches the number of found slave stations. Here only the mandatory slaves stations are considered.
 - Link Connected: Here you will find 'Yes', if there is a physical connection to the configured slave stations.
 - Slaves in Master State: Here you will find 'Yes', if every configured slave station is in master state.
- Frame Counter
 - Sent frames: Number of sent frames since the last power cycle.
 - Lost frames: Number of lost frames since the last power cycle.
 - Cyclic frames: Number of cyclic frames since the last power cycle.
 - Acyclic frames: Number of acyclic frames since the last power cycle.

11.7.3 CoE Object Dictionary

Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001) [VI]
 - 001: Module 1

Values

Index	Name	Value	Type	Flags
0x1000	Device type	1100 (0x44C)	UDINT	-- -- (RO RO RO)
0x1008	Device name	EC-Master	STRING(11)	-- -- (RO RO RO)
0x1009	Hardware version	V 02.06.00.07	STRING(14)	-- -- (RO RO RO)
0x100A	Software version	V 02.06.00.07	STRING(14)	-- -- (RO RO RO)
▶ 0x1018	Identity	4 (0x04)	USINT	-- -- (RO RO RO)
▶ 0x10F3	History	254 (0xFE)	USINT	-- -- (RO RO RO)
0x2000	Master State Change Command	0 (0x00)	UDINT	-- -- (RW RW RW)
0x2001	Master State Summary	67457 (0x10781)	UDINT	-- -- (RO RO RO)
▶ 0x2002	Bus Diagnosis Object	14 (0x0E)	USINT	-- -- (RO RO RO)
▶ 0x2005	MAC Address Object	4 (0x04)	USINT	-- -- (RO RO RO)

Edit Value

Value: Write

Here you will have read and write access to the CoE Object Dictionary of the slave station. This can be changed if your slave station permits. It is indicated by the 'Flags' of each object, if write access is permitted. Information about the structure of the Object Dictionary can be found in the manual of your slave station.

11.7.4 History (Expert mode)

Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001) [VI]
 - 001: Module 1

Settings

Show Info Messages	True
Show Warning Messages	True
Show Error Messages	False
Show Emergency Messages	False
Current Mode	Overwrite Mode

Messages

Severity	Time	ID	Acknowledged	Code	Message
	WRN 13.01.2014 12:58:34	010	No	0x00000001 (0x4413)	I2T Amplifier overload
	WRN 13.01.2014 12:58:33	009	No	0x00000001 (0x4101)	Terminal-Overtemperature
	ERR 13.01.2014 12:58:32	008	Yes	0x00000001 (0x8406)	Undervoltage DC-Link
	INF 13.01.2014 12:58:31	007	Yes	0x00000001 (0x0002)	Communication established

Number of messages: 200 / 200

Change Message Handling

Task: Execute

In this dialog box, you can access all the diagnostic messages in the master and edit them if necessary. Via 'Settings' they may be filtered accordingly.

11.8 Diagnostics - slave station

11.8.1 Preparation

To use the '*Diagnostics*' functions, you must be connected online with your EtherCAT system.

1. ➤ Click in the Toolbar at [Configuration] and select '*EC-Mastersystem*' in the '*Project Explorer*'.
2. ➤ Activate in the '*Device editor*' the register '*Master*'.
3. ➤ Set depending on the on-line access in the '*Device Editor > Master*' as follows:
 - If you are directly connected to a slave station via EtherCAT by means of a separate network adapter, select your *Network Adapter* and click at [Select].
 - If you are connected to the PG/OP channel of you CPU, please enter *IP Address*, *Port* and *Master Instance* and click at [Select]. With *VIPA Port 6000* and *Master Instance 0* is to be set.

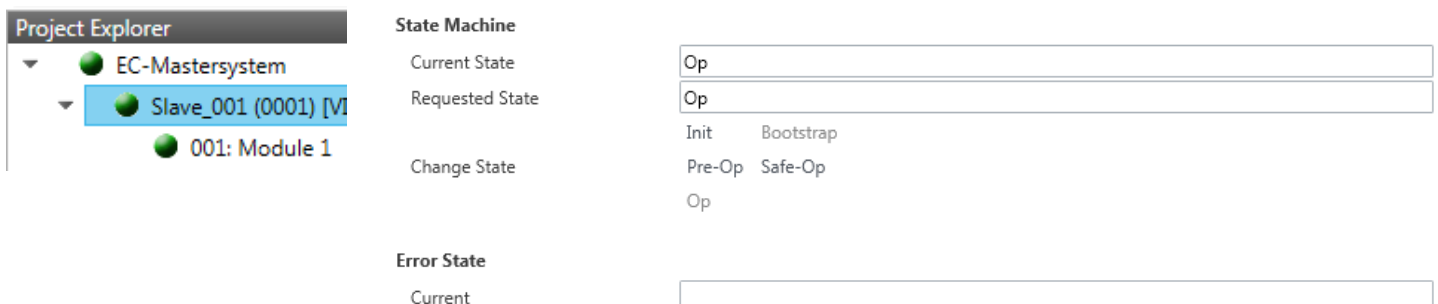
⇒ The *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager* uses the set connection for communication. By clicking on [Deselect] you can change the connection parameters.
4. ➤ Click in the Toolbar at [Diagnosis Mode].
 - ⇒ An online connection to your EtherCAT system is established via the preset communication channel and the current project configuration in the '*Project Explorer*'

With an online connection the 2 LEDs flash alternately in the '*Status area*'. In addition '*Modus*' switches to '*Diagnosis*'.
5. ➤ Click in the '*Project Explorer*' at the according slave station '*Slave_...*'

The following registers are available now:

- 🔗 [Chap. 11.8.2 'General' page 408](#)
- 🔗 [Chap. 11.8.3 'ESC Register \(Expert mode\)' page 409](#)
- 🔗 [Chap. 11.8.4 'EEPROM \(Expert mode\)' page 410](#)
- 🔗 [Chap. 11.8.5 'Extended Diagnosis \(Expert mode\)' page 410](#)
- 🔗 [Chap. 11.8.6 'DC Diagnosis \(Expert mode\)' page 411](#)
- 🔗 [Chap. 11.8.7 'CoE Object Dictionary' page 411](#)





11.8.2 General



The screenshot shows the 'Project Explorer' on the left with a tree view containing 'EC-Mastersystem', 'Slave_001 (0001) [M]', and '001: Module 1'. The 'State Machine' configuration is shown on the right, with 'Current State' and 'Requested State' both set to 'Op'. The 'Change State' dropdown menu is open, showing options: 'Init', 'Bootstrap', 'Pre-Op', 'Safe-Op', and 'Op'. The 'Error State' section shows 'Current' as an empty field.

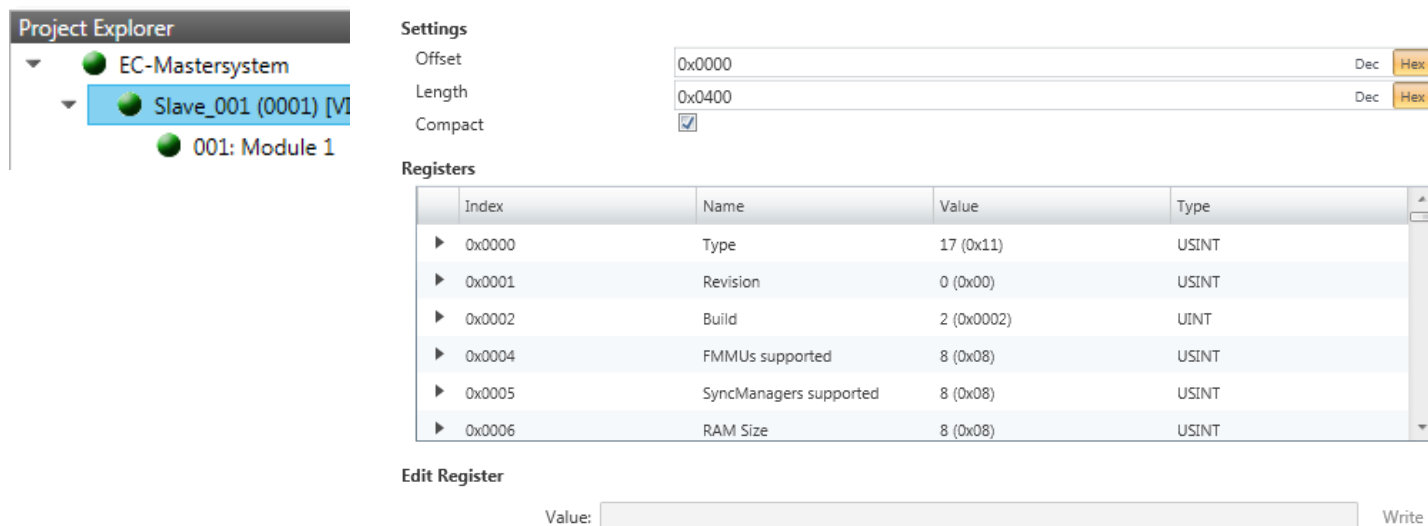
Colors and states

The state of the state machine can be determined via the color according to the following specifications:

Color	State of the state machine
 - red	Init / Bootstrap
 - blue	Pre-Op
 - yellow	Safe-Op
 - green	Op

- State Machine
 - Current State: Shows the current state of the state machine of the slave station.
 ↳ *Chap. 11.10 'EtherCAT State Machine' page 418*
 - Requested State: Shows the requested state of the slave station.
 - Change State: Here you can change the state of the state machine of the slave station.
- Error State
 - Current: Slave error which occurred during state transition.

11.8.3 ESC Register (Expert mode)



Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001) [M]
 - 001: Module 1

Settings

Offset: 0x0000 [Dec] [Hex]

Length: 0x0400 [Dec] [Hex]

Compact:

Registers

Index	Name	Value	Type
▶ 0x0000	Type	17 (0x11)	USINT
▶ 0x0001	Revision	0 (0x00)	USINT
▶ 0x0002	Build	2 (0x0002)	UINT
▶ 0x0004	FMMUs supported	8 (0x08)	USINT
▶ 0x0005	SyncManagers supported	8 (0x08)	USINT
▶ 0x0006	RAM Size	8 (0x08)	USINT

Edit Register

Value: Write

This dialog is only visible in the 'Expert mode'! Here you can directly access the registers of the EtherCAT ASIC. You should not make any changes here!

11.8.4 EEPROM (Expert mode)

Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001) [M]
 - 001: Module 1

Smart View Hex View

EEPROM Values

Index	Name	Value	Type
0x0000	PDI Control	3080 (0x0C08)	UINT
0x0001	PDI Configuration	34818 (0x8802)	UINT
0x0002	Pulse Length of SYNC Signals	0 (0x0000)	UINT
0x0003	Extended PDI Configuration	0 (0x0000)	UINT
0x0004	Configured Station Alias	0 (0x0000)	UINT
0x0005	Reserved	0 (0x00000000)	UDINT
0x0007	Checksum	0 (0x0000)	UINT
0x0008	Vendor ID	45054 (0x0000AFFE)	UDINT
0x000A	Product Code	87157760 (0x0531EC00)	UDINT

Edit EEPROM Value

Value: Write

This dialog is only visible in the 'Expert mode'! Here you can access the contents of the EEPROM of the slave station. Currently you can only change the parameter 'Configured Station Alias'. This can be used for forming groups. ↪ *Chap. 11.9 'Grouping logic' page 413*

CAUTION!

Please regard that your slave station can get unusable by entering incorrect values especially in 'Hex view'! In this case, any warranty of the vendor is excluded!

11.8.5 Extended Diagnosis (Expert mode)

Project Explorer

- EC-Mastersystem
 - Slave_001 (0001) [M]
 - 001: Module 1

Common Error Counter

Processing Unit Error Counter

PDI Error Counter

Clear Error Counters

Port 0 (In port)

Invalid Frame Counter

RX Error Counter

Lost Link Counter

Forwarded RX Error Counter

Port 1

Invalid Frame Counter

RX Error Counter

Lost Link Counter

Forwarded RX Error Counter

Port 2

Invalid Frame Counter

RX Error Counter

Lost Link Counter

Forwarded RX Error Counter

Port 3

Invalid Frame Counter

RX Error Counter

Lost Link Counter

Forwarded RX Error Counter

This dialog is only visible in the 'Expert mode'!

- Common Error Counter
 - Processing Unit Error Counter: Number of received frames by the slave station, which are no EtherCAT frames.
 - PDI Error Counter: Number of PDI access errors (**P**rocess **D**ata **I**nterface). These are physical errors, which were detected by the PDI at the EtherCAT bus.
 - With [Clear Error Counters] the error counters can be reset.
- Port 0...3
 - Invalid Frame Counter: Number of invalid frames from *Port y* (access at register $0x300+y*2$)
 - RX Error Counter: Number of RX errors from *Port y* (access at register $0x300+y*2+8bit$)
 - Lost Link Counter: Number of lost connections from *Port y* (access at register $0x310+y$)
 - Forwarded RX Error Counter: Number of forwarded RX errors from *Port y* (access at register $0x380+y$)

11.8.6 DC Diagnosis (Expert mode)

This dialog is only visible in the 'Expert mode'! Here status information for the distributed clock of your slave station is shown. More may be found in the manual of the slave station.

11.8.7 CoE Object Dictionary

Index	Name	Value	Type	Flags
0x1000	Device Type	-	UDINT	--- (RO RO RO)
0x1008	Device Name	-	STRING(17)	--- (RO RO RO)
0x1009	Hardware Version	-	STRING(3)	--- (RO RO RO)
0x100A	Software Version	-	STRING(12)	--- (RO RO RO)
0x100B	System Version	-	USINT	--- (RO RO RO)
0x1018	Identity	-	USINT	--- (RO RO RO)

Edit Value
 Value: Write Reset

Here you will have read and write access to the CoE Object Dictionary of the slave station. This can be changed if your slave station permits. It is indicated by the 'Flags' of each object, if write access is permitted. Information about the structure of the Object Dictionary can be found in the manual of your slave station.



If a write access to an object in the diagnosis mode is performed, and the written value does not reflect to the default value of the object, so this command is automatically added to the 'Init commands'. ↪ Chap. 11.5.8 'Init Commands (Expert mode)' page 398

This dialog is only visible in the 'Expert mode':

- Designation from ESI
 - By selecting this function the designations are loaded from the ESI file.
- Designation from slave
 - By selecting this function the designations are loaded from the slave station.
- Single Object
 - With this function you have read and write access to a single object in the object dictionary by specifying index and subindex.

11.8.8 FoE Download/Upload

- With this function you have the possibility to transfer files between PC and slave station (if this is supported by the device). If the slave station is in state *Bootstrap*, a firmware update of the slave station can be established via 'FoE Download'. Here you have to enter the file name without extension. ↪ Chap. 11.11 'Firmware update - VIPA System SLIO IM 053-1EC0x' page 419
 - Local filename: Name of the file at the PC.
 - Slave filename: Name of the file at the slave station.
 - Password: Password to access the slave station.
 - Timeout: Maximum time for data transfer.
 - Max. file size: Maximum size of the file, which is to be transferred from the slave station to the PC.

11.9 Grouping logic

11.9.1 Overview

Slave types


With EtherCAT, the following slave types are distinguished:

- MII slave - MII corresponds to **Media Independent Interface**. An MII slave has an EtherCAT interface to connect to EtherCAT for integration into a system bus (backplane bus) for connecting peripheral modules. The MII slave receives data via EtherCAT and passes them through its backplane to the according peripheral module. Conversely, it reads the input data and passes it via EtherCAT. The System SLIO 053-1EC0x e.g. is a MII-Slave.
- E-Bus slave - In an E-Bus slave the EtherCAT protocol is used for communication on the backplane bus. For this reason, the attached peripheral modules are also shown as a slave station in the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager*

Possibilities

The EtherCAT Manager supports the following ways to group the individual slave stations. Each group may consist of 1 .. n slave stations. Group nesting is not supported:

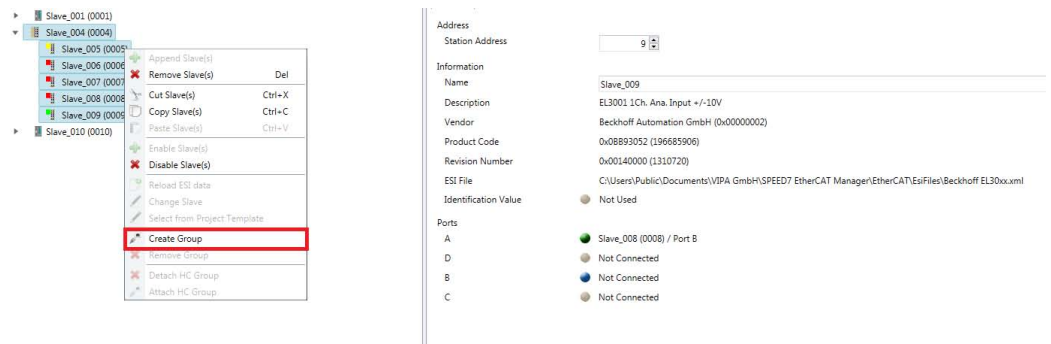
- ↳ *Chap. 11.9.2 'Create group with pinned process data offset' page 415*
- ↳ *'Hot Connect group with Dynamic Position in Topology' page 417*
- ↳ *'Hot Connect group with Fixed Position in Topology' page 417*
- ↳ *'Hot Connect group with Pinned or Dynamic Process Data Offset' page 417*



Please consider that Hot Connect groups are not possible with E-Bus slaves!

Create Group

1. Click in the Toolbar of the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager* at [Configuration].
2. Click in the *Project Explorer* at the slave station and select *'Context menu' → Create Group'*.
 - ⇒ The dialog *'Create Group'* opens. Here always the 1. slave station is selected. You can either select more slave stations or depending on the group type selection, the necessary slave stations are automatically selected.

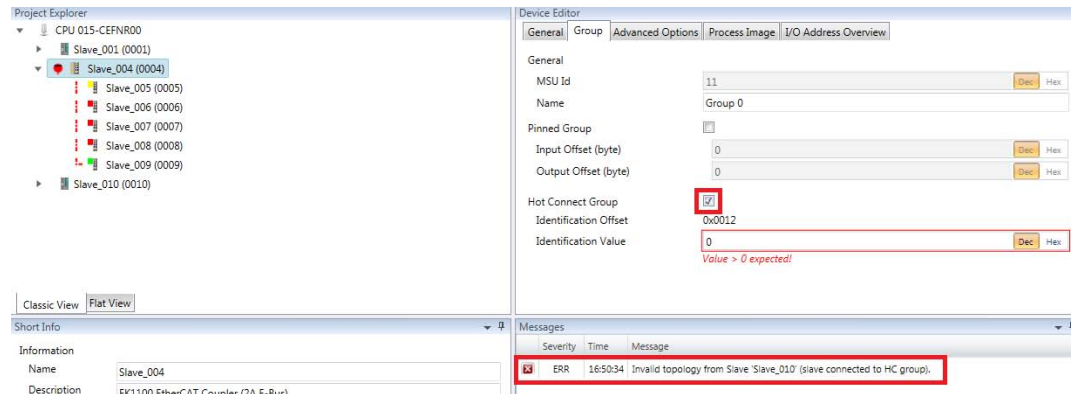


With the *'Create Group'* functionality you have two different functions:

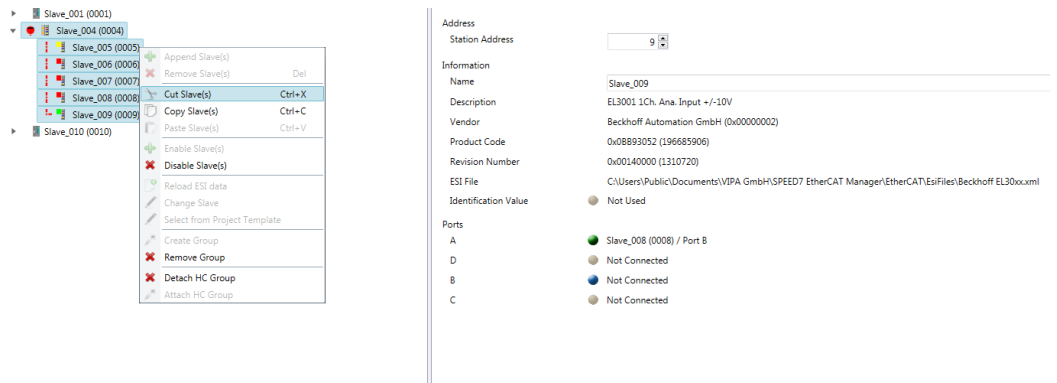
- You can create a new group if the selected slave station is not yet part of a group.
- If the selected slave station is already part of a group, the current group is divided into two sub-groups from the selected slave station.

Edit Group

After creating a group, the *'Device Editor'* of the slave station is extended with the register *'Group'*. Here you can adjust the group properties accordingly.

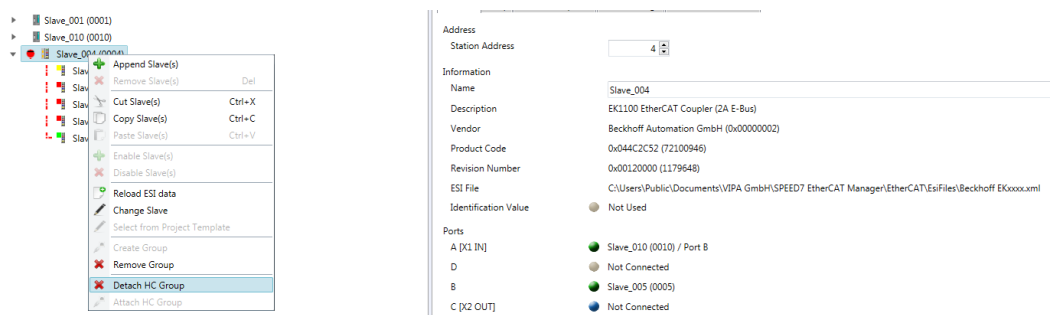


The new group can be selected by selecting this group via *'Cut Slave(s)'* be changed.



Detach HC Group

If you want to connect this group to an other slave station on the network, you can detach the current connection by *'Detach HC Group'*.



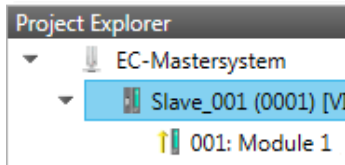
Remove Group

➔ To remove a group click in the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager* at a slave station and select *'Context menu → Remove Group'*.

⇒ The group is removed. Depending on the group, the previously grouped slave stations are reintegrated into the topology or remain at the current position.

11.9.2 Create group with pinned process data offset

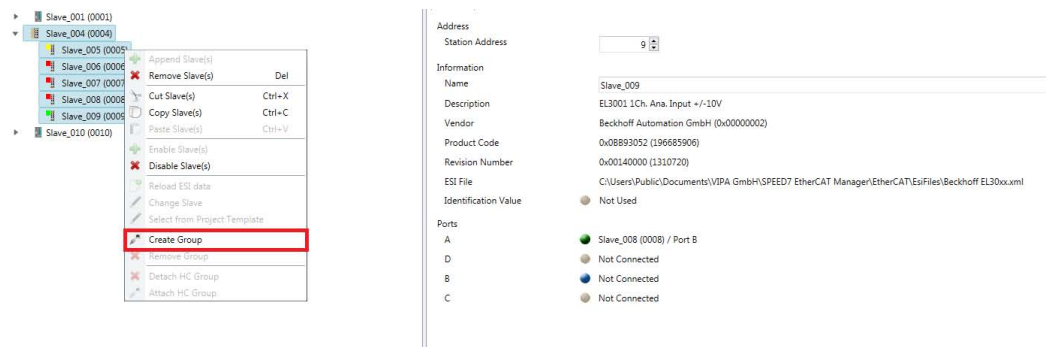
Procedure



This group may start at any slave station and either end at himself, at a following slave station, at a following group or at the last slave station. The group functionality is possible with each slave type. The slave stations of this group are pinned at a fix position in the topology.

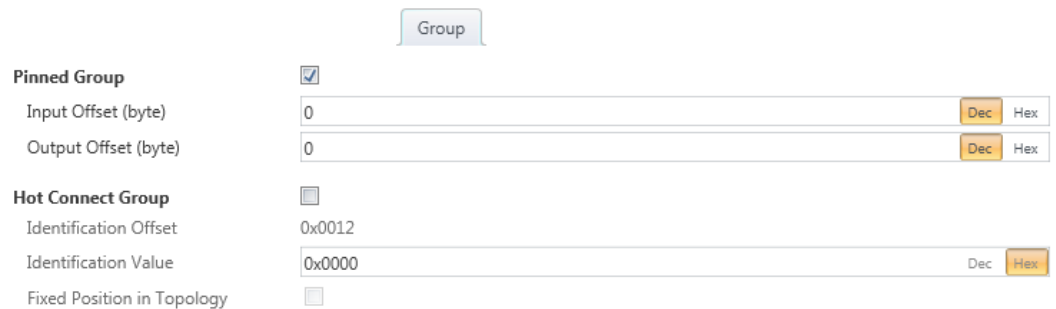
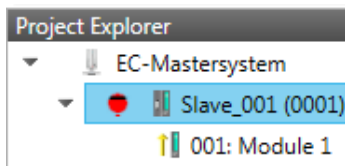
Create Group

1. Click in the Toolbar of the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager* at [Configuration].
2. Click in the *Project Explorer* at the slave station and select 'Context menu' → 'Create Group'.
 - ⇒ The dialog 'Create Group' opens. Here always the 1. slave station is selected. You can either select more slave stations or depending on the group type selection, the necessary save stations are automatically selected.



Pinned group

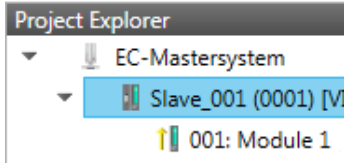
1. Choose from 'Select the slaves' the slave stations, which you want to include in the 'Pinned group'.
 - ⇒ The dialog is closed, the slave station is marked as group in the 'Project Explorer' and a tab "Group" is created in the 'Device Editor'.



2. Enable the option 'Pinned Group'.
3. Enable the option 'Input Offset = Output Offset' if the input and output addresses are identical.
 - ⇒ The group is now defined as *Pinned Group*.

11.9.3 Create Hot Connect group

11.9.3.1 Proceeding



In a *Hot Connect group* several slave stations can be located, which must only optional be available at the EtherCAT bus. So you have the possibility to take or add pre-configured sections from the traffic before starting the system or during the operation. This can be done by disconnecting/connecting the communication path or enabling/disabling the participant.

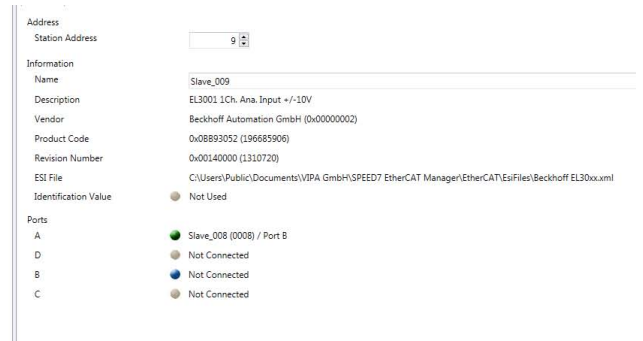
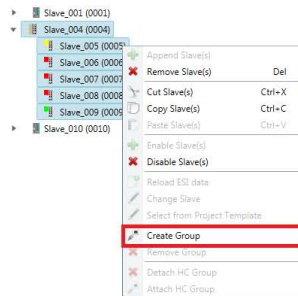


Please consider that the first slave station after the EtherCAT master must not be optional!

To use the hot connect function with E-Bus slave stations, the E-Bus head station and the connected slave stations must be in the same group! ↪ Chap. 11.9 'Grouping logic' page 413

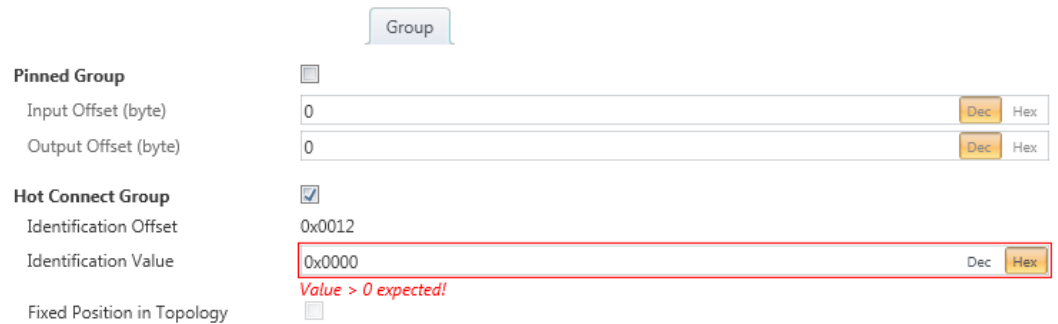
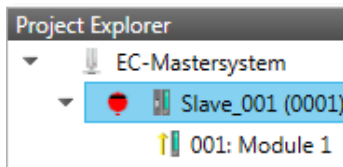
Create Group

1. ➔ Click in the Toolbar of the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager* at [Configuration].
2. ➔ Click in the *Project Explorer* at the slave station and select 'Context menu' ➔ *Create Group*.
 - ⇒ The dialog 'Create Group' opens. Here always the 1. slave station is selected. You can either select more slave stations or depending on the group type selection, the necessary save stations are automatically selected.



Hot connect group

1. Choose from 'Select the slaves' the slave stations, which you want to include in the 'Hot connect group'.
 - ⇒ The dialog is closed, the slave station is marked as group in the 'Project Explorer' and a tab "Group" is created in the 'Device Editor'.



2. Enable the option 'Hot connect group'.
3. Enter an 'Identification value': This is the *Station-Alias-Address*, which you have to assign before to the slave station in the 'Diagnosis' Mode. [↪ Chap. 11.8.4 'EEPROM \(Expert mode\)' page 410](#)
Please regard that the slave station takes the new address after a power-cycle.
4. For a fix position of the group in the topology the option 'Pinned group' can be enabled.

11.9.3.2 Combination possibilities

Hot Connect group with Dynamic Position in Topology

The group must start with a MII slave. Here, all slave stations below the selected are automatically added to the group. This group ends at himself, at a following slave station, at a following group or at the last slave station.

Hot Connect group with Fixed Position in Topology

The group is fix coupled to a predecessor slave station and its port. You always have the possibility to change the link to the previous slave station via the dialog box. If the group is removed, the slave stations remain in place.



A Hot Connect group with Fixed Position in Topology cannot be removed, if the slave stations before are a part of another Hot Connect group with Fixed Position in Topology!

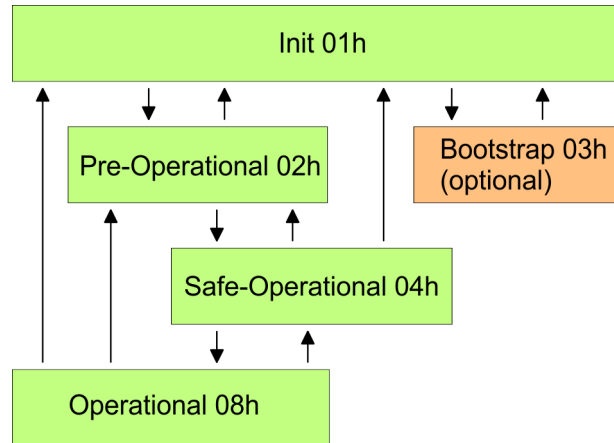
Hot Connect group with Pinned or Dynamic Process Data Offset

This group does not depend on slave station or port. The group has no predecessor slave station and is moved to the end of the tree when created. When the group is removed it is searched for a suited free port starting from the end of the main tree. If there is no suited slave station available, the group will be rejected! Due to the system the group has no predecessor slave station, the connection cannot be changed via the dialog box.

11.10 EtherCAT State Machine

States

In each EtherCAT communication device a *state machine* is implemented. For each state there is defined which communication service is active via EtherCAT. The state machine of the slave station is controlled by the state machine of the EtherCAT master.



Init - 01h

After power-on the EtherCAT members are in state *Init*. There is neither mailbox nor process data communication possible. The EtherCAT master initializes the SyncManager channels 0 and 1 for the mailbox communication.

Pre-Operational (Pre-Op) - 02h

The EtherCAT master initializes the SyncManager channels for process data (starting with SyncManager channel 2), the FMMU channels and the PDO mapping respectively the SyncManager PDO assignment. Further in this state the settings for process data transfer and the module-specific parameters, which deviate from the default values are transferred. During the transition from *Init* to *Pre-Op* the EtherCAT slave checks whether the mailbox was correctly initialized. In the state *Pre-Op* mailbox communication and Ethernet over EtherCAT (EoE) are possible but the process data communication is blocked.

Safe-Operational (Safe-Op) - 04h

In *Safe-Op* the input data are cyclically updated but the outputs are de-activated. With the transition from *Pre-Op* to *Safe-Op* the EtherCAT slave checks if the SyncManager channels for process data communication are correct. Before it acknowledges the state change, the EtherCAT slave copies current input data to the corresponding DP RAM areas of the EtherCAT slave controller. In the state *Safe-Op* mailbox and process data communication is possible.

Operational (Op) - 08h

In the state *Op* the input data are cyclically updated and the EtherCAT master sends output data to the EtherCAT slave. The EtherCAT slave copies the output data of the master to its outputs and return input data to the EtherCAT master. In this state process data and mailbox communication is possible.

Bootstrap - option (Boot) - 03h

In state *Boot* the firmware of an EtherCAT slave may be updated via the EtherCAT master. This state may only be reached via *Init*. In the state *Boot* is mailbox communication via the protocol File-Access over EtherCAT (FoE) possible. Other mailbox and process data communications are de-activated.

11.11 Firmware update - VIPA System SLIO IM 053-1EC0x

Current firmware at www.vipa.com

The latest firmware versions are to be found in the service area at www.vipa.com. Load the Px000xxx.pkg file.



CAUTION!

- When installing a new firmware you have to be extremely careful. Under certain circumstances you may destroy the slave station, for example if the voltage supply is interrupted during transfer or if the firmware file is defective. In this case, please call the VIPA Hotline!
- Please regard that the version of the update firmware has to be different from the existing firmware otherwise no update is executed.

Precondition

- There is an Ethernet respectively remote connection between the PC and the VIPA EtherCAT slave station, where a firmware update is to be established.

Proceeding

Below the proceeding is shown by the example of the VIPA System SLIO slave station. For other devices, please follow the procedures described in the according manual.

1. ➤ Open if not already done the *SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager*.
2. ➤ Click in the *'Project Explorer'* at *'EC-Mastersystem'*.
3. ➤ Select in *'Device Editor > Master'* at *'Network Adapter'* your network card and enter at *'IP Address'* the IP address of the PG/OP channel of the CPU and click at [Select].
4. ➤ Click in the Toolbar at [Diagnosis Mode].
 - ⇒ An online connection to your EtherCAT system is established via the preset communication channel and the current project configuration in the *'Project explorer'*.
5. ➤ Click in the *'Project explorer'* at the master.
6. ➤ Select in the register *'General'* at *'State Machine'* the state *'Init'*. Wait, until all slave station response the state *'Init'*.
7. ➤ Click in the *'Project explorer'* at the slave, where the firmware update is to be established.
8. ➤ Select in the register *'General'* at *'State Machine'* the state *'Bootstrap'*.
9. ➤ Enter in the register *'FoE'* at *'FoE Download'* as follows:
 - Filename: Px000xxx
 - Password (hex): 0x0000000
 - Timeout (ms): 60000
 - Max File Size (kb): 3000
10. ➤ Click at [Download].
 - ⇒ A dialog for file selection opens.
11. ➤ Select the file. The transfer starts with [OK].
 - ⇒ There will be a progress bar displayed, which informs you about the transfer state.
12. ➤ After successful download bring your slave in the *'Init'* state.
 - ⇒ With this operation the firmware file is taken.

12 Index

A

Absolute addresses	24, 67
Accumulator	281
Add	
Axis (Motion Control)	343
Block	208
Cam (Motion Control)	349
Component	108
Device	81, 82
Drive (Motion Control)	336
Slave	86
Address	211
Address overview	254
Address register	281
Addressing	24
All connections	80
All variables	245
Archive	137, 138
Area of operations	38
ASC file	301, 304
ASCII sources	301, 304
Assignment list	261
Async. error interrupt	125
Automatic completion	59
Axes (Motion Control)	343

B

B-Stack	146
Basic parameters	132
Block	
Check consistency	266
compare	277
compile	267
edit	209, 234, 239
export	301, 304
List	140, 207
load from device	274
print	71
Stack	146
synchronisation	217, 234
transfer	217, 234, 271
watch	217, 234, 280

Block editor	209, 234, 239
Block interface	211, 266
Block list	140, 207
Block stack	146
Block variables	211

C

Cam	349
Catalog	34
Certificate	202
Changing IP address	116
Channel	132
Clock	127
Clock memory	124
Close	
Project	67
Code block	206
Cold start	122
Communication error	44
Communication events	44
Communication information (CPU)	141
Communication interrupt	125
Communication settings	113, 313, 314
Comparison	
Blocks	277
Compile	267
Component	
add	108
Labelling strip	111
Properties	120, 133, 135
removing	110
State	139
Component properties	120, 133, 135
Component state	139
Configure	
CPU	120
Configuring	
Device	111
Configuring the drive	336
Connect devices	196
Connections	80
Consistency	266
Consistency messages	45

Context menu	53	Start-up	122
Control		State	139
add	81	STOP	49, 146
print	71	Store project on MMC/SD	138
Copy	33	Synchronous cycle interrupts	123
Copying from RAM to ROM	138	Time of day interrupts	126
CPU		Version	139
Advanced Configurations	128	Create communication connection	113, 313
Basic parameters	132	Create new	
Blocks	140	Project	65
Channel	132	Creating a visualisation	320
Clock	127, 148	Cross-reference list	257
Clock memory	124	Cycle	124
Communication	141	Cycle times	146
Connection resources	141	Cyclic interrupt error	128
Control centre	49	Cyclic interrupts	126
Cycle	124, 146	D	
Cyclic interrupts	126	Data block	232, 234
Diagnostics	127, 144	Data type	211
Firmware	139	Date/time	148
General	130	DB	232, 234
I/O addresses	130	Declaration section	211
Inputs (analogue)	132	Default value	211
Inputs (digital)	131	Delete	
Interrupts	125	Project	68
Local data	125	Device	
Memory	143	add	81, 82
Memory reset	150	configuring	111
Monitoring time	122	duplicate	95
Motion Control	122	removing	95
MPI	121	Device configuration	103, 104, 106, 107, 271
Name	121	Device description file	95
Outputs (analogue)	132	Device name	121
Outputs (digital)	131	Device overview	77, 206, 311
Parameter	133	Device properties	112, 313
PG/OP	129	Devices and networking	77, 79, 80
PROFIBUS	122	Diagnostic buffer	144
Properties	120	Diagnostics	127
Protection	127	Direct addresses	24
Retentive memory	125	DOC file	74
RUN	49	Documentation	74
Select interrupt	132	Drag & drop	54
Serial number	139		
Stack	146		

Drive		EtherCAT messages	46
add	336	Ethernet connection	196
Dynamic sampling (HMI)	325	Ethernet interface	113, 118, 313
E		Examples	14
Editor		Export	70, 301, 331
Address overview	254	Export all (WLD)	137
Assignment list	261	External source files	301, 304
Block	209, 234, 239	F	
Block list	207	FB	206, 208, 209
Cam	350	FBD	222, 225
Communication settings	113, 313	FC	206, 208, 209
Connections	80	Feature Sets	122
Cross-reference list	257	Find controls	116
DB	234	Find devices	116
Declaration section	211	Find PROFINET devices	116
Device configuration	103, 104, 106, 107	Firmware version	139
Device overview	77, 206, 311	Formal parameter	211
Device properties	112, 313	Function	206, 208, 209
Devices and networking	77, 79, 80	Function block	206, 208, 209
FB	209	Function block diagram	222, 225
FC	209	G	
HMI configurations	314	Group	211
Image (HMI)	320	GSD file	96, 98
Instruction section	216	H	
List of devices	76	Hardware configuration	
Local components (= local modules)	79	archive	138
Motion Control axis	344	transfer	271
Motion Control Overview	339	Help	60
OB	209	HMI	311
Project overview	76	HMI configurations	314
Search / Replace in block	46	HMI device	
Translations (HMI)	330	add	82
UDT	239	print	71
User program	216	HMI elements	317
Variable table	244	HMI library	318
Watch table	284	HMI simulation	333
Editors	38	Hungarian notation	24
Electronic cam	349	I	
Enumeration (HMI)	329	I device	92
ESI file	101	I-Slave	88
EtherCAT		I/O addresses	130, 134, 136
Configurations	195		
ESI file	101		

Icons		List of devices	76
in the manual	14	Load	69, 271
IL	222	Load memory	143
Image	319, 320	Local components (= local modules)	79
Import	70, 300, 304, 308, 331	Local data	125
Import an STEP7 program	300	Local data stack	146
Importing WinPLC7 project	300	Location designation	121
IN	214	Logic analysis	290
IN_OUT	214	M	
Input help	55	Master axis	361
Inputs		MC blocks	339
analogue	132	Memory	143
digital	131	Memory reset	150
Installation	18	Menu commands	61
Instruction list	222	Messages	55
Instruction section	216	MMC	138
Interface		Module (component)	108
CPU	121	monitoring	280
Ethernet	118	Monitoring time	122
HMI	313, 314	Motion Control	336
MPI	113, 121	Add axis	343
PLC	113	Add cam	349
Programming device	113, 121	Add drive	336
Select adapter	24	Application	339
serial	113, 121	Function blocks	339
Simulation	113	Library	339
Interruption stack	146	Overview	339
Interrupts	125	Motion Control axis	344
K		Motion diagram	352
Keyboard commands	61	Motion functions	362
Block editor	310	Motion laws	362
HMI	334	Mouse operation	53, 54
L		Move	33
L-Stack	146	Movicon	85, 311
Labelling strip	111	MPI	
Ladder diagram	222, 230	Address	128
Language	23, 24, 330	Baud rate	128
LD	222, 230	MPI interface	121
Leading axis	361	Multi Point Interface	121
LED state	49	Multimedia Card	138
Libraries	308	N	
Licence	18	Network (block)	216

Network adapter	24	PLC program	206, 271
Networking	196	PLC variable	211
Notes	14	PLC variables	244
O		Power consumption (SLIO module)	106
OB	206, 208, 209	Power module	106
OB 28	128	Prefix	24
OB 29	128	Presentation	14
OB 61	123	Print	71
OB 80	128	Print Preview	74
OB 85	124	Process image	123, 124
OP connection	141	Process interrupt	125
OPC UA	200	PROFIBUS	
Open		Add I-Slave	88
Project	66	Configurations	154
Operand areas (= Address areas)	140	Control (CPU) as slave	88, 122
Operating instructions	14	GSD file	96, 98
Operating mode	49	Online diagnostics	162
Operating panel		PROFINET	
CPU	49	Adding an I device	92
Organisation block	206, 208, 209	Configurations	169
OUT	214	Online diagnostics	182
Output	43	Program	206
Output current (SLIO module)	106	Program block	206, 208, 209
Output range	43	Program processing	146
Outputs		Programming error	44
analogue	132	Programming events	44
digital	131	Programming language	222
Overview		Project	65
Keyboard commands	61	archive	137
Menu commands	61	Check consistency	266
User interface	26	close	67
P		compile	267
Panel user management (HMI)	314	create new	65
Parameter	133, 135, 137	delete	68
Password	127	export/import	70, 300, 308
Paste	33, 54	open	66
PD connection	141	print	71
PDF file	74, 111	rename	68
PDU size	129	save	68
pfx file	202	save as	68
PG/OP Ethernet	129	transfer	69
Plant designation	121	Project logbook	45
		Project overview	76
		Project tree	28

Properties	37	Configuration slave station	387
Protection	127	Create group with fix IP address	415
Protection level	127	Diagnostics EC-Mastersystem	405
PtP	128	Diagnostics slave station	408
R		Distributed clocks	382
Reference axis	361	Distributed Clocks	385, 397
Register	38, 281	E-Bus slave	413
Rename		Expert mode	378
Project	68	Firmwareupdate slave station	419
Replace	46	Grouping logic	413
Resource (HMI)	318	Hot Connect group	416
Restart	122	MII slave	413
Result of logical operation	280, 281	Numeric format Dec/Hex	378
Retentive memory	125, 128	Overview	377
RETURN	214	State machine	418
RLO	280, 281	SPEED7 Studio	
RS485	128	Activate	18
RUN	49	Area of operations	38
S		Catalog	34
S7L file	300, 308	Communication events	44
S7P file	300	Consistency messages	45
Safety notes	14	Context menu	53
Save		CPU control centre	49
Project	68	Drag & drop	54
SCADA	85, 311	Editors	38
Search	46	end	23
Search for accessible partners	116	EtherCAT messages	46
SEQ file	301, 304	Help	60
Serial number	139	installation	18
Simatic project	308	Keyboard commands	61
Simulation	269	Language	23, 24
HMI	333	Licence	18
Slave		Menu commands	61
add	86	Messages	55
Slave axis	361	Mouse operation	53, 54
Software version	13, 17	Operation	52
SPEED7 EtherCAT Manager		Output	43
Colors and states	405, 408	Output range	43
Configuration automatic	378	Programming events	44
Configuration EC-Mastersystem	380	Project logbook	45
Configuration manual	380	Project tree	28
Configuration modules	402	Properties	37
		Register	38
		start	23

Typed representation	49	Tips	14
User interface	26	Token Watch	128
Version	17	Tool tips	58
STA	280, 281	Transfer	
Stack	146	Blocks	271, 274
Standard project configuration	251	Device configuration	271
Start DriveWizard	339	Project	69
Start image (HMI)	314	SDB	271
Start page	41	User program	271
Start SigmaWin+	339	Translate	267
Start-up	122	Translations	330
STAT	214	Typed representation	49
Status bit	280, 281	U	
STOP	49, 146	U-Stack	146
Structure block	238, 239	UDT	238, 239
Structure of the user interface	26	Used operands	257, 261
Structured Control Language	222	User interface	26
Sub display	319	User program	
SVG file	318	archive	138
Symbolic addresses	24, 60, 67, 130, 134, 136, 220	Check consistency	266
Synchronisation	127	compare	277
Synchronous cycle interrupts	123	compile	267
Syntax	24, 222	Create	206
System hardware configuration	248	display used operands	257, 261
System MICRO		export	301, 304
General	136	import	300
I/O addresses	136	Language (mnemonics)	24
Parameter	137	load from device	274
Properties	135	print	71
System SLIO		Search / Replace in block	46
General	133	simulate	269
I/O addresses	134	transfer	271
Parameter	135	watch	280
Properties	133	User qualification	17
T		V	
Tags	15	Variable table	220, 244, 315
Target group	17	Variable type	214
TEMP	214	Variables (block)	211, 220
Temporary data	146	Variables (component)	134, 136
Text document	74	Variables (CPU)	130
Time	148	Variables (HMI)	49, 315
Time delay interrupt	125	Version (CPU)	139
Time of day interrupts	126		

Version (SPEED7 Studio)	13, 17
Visualisation device	311
VPP file	70
VPZ file	70
VTR file	330

W

Warm restart	122
Warm start	125
Watch table	284
WebVisu	115, 311
Window of the user interface	26
WLD file	137, 138
Working memory	143, 150